

FROM THE LIBRARY OF
REV. LOUIS FITZGERALD BENSON, D. D.
BEQUEATHED BY HIM TO
THE LIBRARY OF
PRINCETON THEOLOGICAL SEMINARY

ScB
15000

Br

do

200



T H E

R U D I M E N T S

O F

L A T I N A N D E N G L I S H

G R A M M A R ;

D E S I G N E D

T O F A C I L I T A T E T H E S T U D Y O F B O T H L A N G U A G E S , B Y
C O N N E C T I N G T H E M T O G E T H E R .

B Y

A L E X A N D E R A D A M , L L . D .

R e c t o r o f t h e H i g h S c h o o l o f E d i n b u r g h .

Grammaticæ est ars, necessaria pueris, jucunda senibus, dulcis secretorum comes, et quæ vel sola omni studiorum genere plus habet operis quam ostentationis. Ne quis igitur tanquam parva fastidiat Grammaticæ elementa ; quia interiora velut sacri hujus adeuntibus, apparebit multa rerum subtilitas, quæ non modo acuere ingenia puerilia, sed exercere altissimam quoque eruditionem ac scientiam possit.

Quintilian l. 4. 5.

F i r s t A m e r i c a n f r o m t h e F i f t h E n g l i s h E d i t i o n , w i t h
I m p r o b e m e n t s .

R e c o m m e n d e d b y t h e U n i v e r s i t y a t *Cambridge (Mass.)*
t o b e u s e d b y t h o s e w h o a r e i n t e n d e d f o r t h a t S e m i n a r y .

B O S T O N :

P r i n t e d b y M A N N I N G & L O R I N G ,
F o r S . H A L L , W . S P O T S W O O D , J . W H I T E ,
T H O M A S & A N D R E W S , D . W E S T ,
E . L A R K I N , W . P . & L . B L A K E ,
a n d J . W E S T .

D E C E M B E R , 1 7 9 9 .

ADVERTISEMENT of CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY.

WHEREAS the *University in Cambridge* for several years past has suffered much inconvenience, and the interest of Letters no small detriment, from the variety of Latin and Greek Grammars used by the Students, in consequence of that diversity, to which, under different instructors, they have been accustomed in their preparatory course; to promote, so far as may be, the cause of Literature, by preventing those evils in future, the Government of the University, on due consideration of the subject, has thought it expedient to request all instructors of Youth, who may resort to Cambridge for education, to adopt "*Adam's Latin Grammar*," and the "*Gloucester Greek Grammar*," with reference to such pupils, as Books singularly calculated for the improvement of students in these languages. The University has no wish to recommend, much less to dictate, to any other institution, but only to facilitate the acquisition of Literature by promoting uniformity within itself. These being the Grammars which will be used at this College by all classes, admitted after the present year, it seems necessary, to prevent future difficulty, by giving this public and timely notice; for though a knowledge of the Grammar is not at present made indispensably necessary to admission into the University, yet every Scholar, who may be accepted after the present Commencement without such knowledge, will be required immediately to form a radical and intimate acquaintance with them, as no student will be permitted at the classical exercises to use any other Grammar.

Cambridge, July 7, 1799.

P R E F A C E

TO THE

FIRST EDITION.

MAN enjoys the singular advantage of being able to communicate his thoughts by articulate sounds. Different nations employ very different verbal signs for the expression of thought ; but with respect to the nature and use of the several parts of speech in general, they uniformly agree. Hence the Principles of Grammar in all languages are much the same.

The study of Grammar has been considered as an object of great importance by the wisest men in all ages. But, like other sciences, it has often been involved in mystery, and perplexed with needless difficulties. Instead of facilitating the acquisition of languages, which was its original design, it has frequently served to render that more laborious.

As language is regular in its general structure, rules must no doubt be useful to assist us in understanding it. We first learn to speak from imitation. We use the expressions which we hear from others. But when we have once gained a certain stock of words, we employ them according to general rules. When a child, for instance, has occasion to speak of two persons, he will say, "two mans," instead of "two men ;" because he learns the general method of forming the plural, before he attends to particular exceptions. The same may be observed of a person who endeavours to acquire any foreign language. Memory furnishes us with proper terms to express our thoughts,
but

but judgment must be exerted in adapting these to particular circumstances.

Every science may be reduced to principles. The principles of Grammar may be traced from the progress of the mind in the acquisition of language. Children first express their feelings by motions and gestures of the body, by cries and tears. This is the language of nature, and therefore universal. It fitly represents the quickness of sentiment and thought, which are as instantaneous as the impression of light on the eye. Hence we always express our stronger feelings by these natural signs. But when we want to make known to others the particular conceptions of the mind, we must represent them by parts, we must divide and analyze them. We express each part by certain signs, and join these together according to the order of their relations. Thus words are both the instrument and signs of the division of thought. But as words are only artificial signs of thought, and their connection with what they represent, merely arbitrary; the same thought may be expressed by different signs, and these signs variously arranged: Hence the diversity of languages and idioms. All languages, however, must consist of the same essential parts. There must be some words to mark the subject of discourse, and others to express what we affirm concerning it. The former excite our curiosity, and by the latter it is gratified. In this manner must language have been originally invented, if it be a human invention; and in this manner do children always acquire the use of speech. We are first taught the names of objects; and then we learn the words, which express their qualities and actions. As we grow up, we become acquainted with the use of Prepositions, Adverbs, and Conjunctions, together with the different variations of Verbs employed to mark time, number, and person. By joining these together, we form sentences, which we compound and arrange variously, according to the sentiments we want to express. Thus we come to analyze our thoughts, and represent them by parts, so as to convey them properly to others, with all their circumstances and relations.

Grammar is founded on common sense. Every sentiment expressed by words exemplifies its rules, and the ignorant observe them, as well as the learned. The Principles of Grammar are the first abstract truths which a young mind can comprehend. Children discover their capacity for understanding the rules of Grammar, by putting them in practice. It is indeed difficult to make young people attend to what passes in their own minds. But perhaps this is partly owing to the abstruse manner in which it is laid before them. The Principles of Grammar will be most successfully taught by arranging and explaining them according to the order of nature. Every art is more or less involved in obscurity by the hard terms peculiar to it. In no art is this more remarkably the case than in Grammar. The terms it employs are so abstract, that, unless they be properly explained, even persons of advanced years cannot understand them. Could this inconvenience be thoroughly removed, the Principles of Grammar might be adapted to the meanest capacity: For were the nature of the different parts of speech, and their use in sentences properly explained, the mind would recognise its own operations, and perceive that Grammar is nothing else than a delineation of those rules which we observe in every expression of thought by words. Thus the study of Grammar would not only improve the memory, but serve in a high degree to strengthen and enlarge all the faculties of the mind.

Whatever we learn first, is the most familiar to us. For this reason children will most easily apprehend the Principles of Grammar, when explained and exemplified in that language which is natural to them. Hence it seems proper to begin in Grammar, as in reading, with the language of our own country. But as most of the modern languages in Europe are in a great measure founded on the Latin, and as a very considerable part of our knowledge, with regard both to science and taste, is derived from Latin authors, the study of Latin Grammar has generally been preferred to that of the Grammar of the mother tongue. This has particularly been the practice in this country. Till of late very little attention has been paid to the study of

English Grammar ; in consequence of which many irregularities have crept into the language, which might otherwise have been prevented. Were the importance of the two languages to come into competition, that would no doubt deserve the preference which we have the most frequent occasion to use. But to such as aim at polite literature, the study of both seems necessary : and the knowledge of the one will be found highly conducive to that of the other. The English language has received its greatest improvements from those who were masters of classical learning ; and perhaps it cannot be thoroughly understood, without some acquaintance with the Latin. It is certain, no one can properly translate from the one language into the other, without understanding the idioms of both. In order therefore to teach Latin Grammar with success, we should always join with it a particular attention to the rudiments of English. This is the design of the following attempt. And as in writing upon Grammar, materials entirely new cannot be expected, the compiler has with freedom borrowed from all hands whatever he judged fit for his purpose. He acknowledges himself particularly indebted to Mr Harris's *Hermes* with regard to the principles of universal Grammar ; to Wallis and Dr Lowth, for most of his observations concerning the English ; and to Gerard Vossius, and Ruddiman, with respect to the Latin.

The merit of any performance on this subject must in a great measure depend upon the method of illustration and arrangement. In the present essay that arrangement has been observed, which appeared most natural. The several parts of Grammar are reduced to general principles ; and after these are subjoined particular observations and exceptions. The most essential rules and remarks are printed in larger characters ; and the committing of these to memory, together with the examples, will to a learner at first, it is thought, be found sufficient. - A careful perusal of the particular observations, afterwards, joined with the reading of the classics, and the practice of writing and speaking Latin, will supersede the use of any other Grammar rules. If a further exercise for the memory
be

be wanted, beautiful passages selected from the Classics seem much more proper for this purpose, than Latin verses about words and phrases, however accurately composed.

Whatever other Grammar may have formerly been taught, the perusal of the following, it is hoped, will be attended with advantage. The compiler has done every thing in his power to prepare it for the public. He has examined with care the method of education, and the several Grammars made use of both at home and abroad. He has communicated his own plan to many persons of the first character for letters in this kingdom ; and the attention which they have been pleased to pay to it, and the many useful observations which he has received from them, he will always remember with gratitude. He is still afraid, that notwithstanding all his care, some defects may be found in the execution ; but hopes that his design at least will meet with approbation, and earnestly entreats the assistance of the encouragers of learning, to enable him to bring his scheme to greater perfection..

EDINBURGH, *J*
May, 1772. *S*

PREFACE

P R E F A C E.

TO THE

FOURTH EDITION.

THE compiler was first led, at an early period of life, to think of composing this Book, by observing the hurtful effects of teaching boys Grammar Rules in Latin verse, which they did not understand; while they were ignorant, not only of the principles of that language, but also of those of their mother tongue. Experience has since afforded him the most convincing proofs of the impropriety of this practice; and his opinion has been still further confirmed by perusing the writings of the old Grammarians, and of the most eminent among the moderns. The old Grammarians, *Charisius, Diomêdes, Priscianus, Probus, Donatus, Servius, Victorinus, Augustinus, Cassiodorus, Macrobius, Beda, Alcuinus,* &c.* have no verse rules; and so in latter times *Perotte, Manutius, Erasmus, Valerius, Buchanan, Milton, &c.* Nicolaus Perotte was one of the chief restorers of learning in the fifteenth century. He died Archbishop of Siponto in 1480. The compiler has a copy of the first edition of his Grammar, printed at Brescia anno 1474. It is composed by way of question and answer; but without any verse rules.—Soon after the invention of printing, and perhaps before, for the compiler has not been able to ascertain the precise period, the custom was introduced of expressing the principles

* TERENTIANUS MAURUS, a learned Grammarian, by birth an African, who is supposed to have lived under Trajan, and wrote in verse, treats only of poetry.

ples of almost every art and science in Latin and Greek verse. The rules of Logic, and even the aphorisms of Hippocrates, were taught in this manner. Among the versifiers of Latin Grammar *Despauter* and *Lily* were the most conspicuous. The first complete edition of *Despauter's* Grammar was printed at Cologne, anno 1522 ; his *Syntax* had been published anno 1509. *Lily* was made first Master of St Paul's school in London, by Dr. Colet, its founder, anno 1510 ; so that he was contemporary with *Despauter*. His Grammar was appointed, by an act which is still in force, to be taught in the established schools of England. Various attempts were afterwards made by different authors ; as, *Sanctius*, *Alvarus*, *Scioppius*, *Kirkwood*, *Watt*, *Ruddiman*, &c. to improve on the plan of *Despauter* and *Lily* ; but with little success. The truth is, it seems impracticable to express with sufficient perspicuity the Principles of Grammar in Latin verse ; and it appears strange, that when scholastic jargon is exploded from elementary books on other sciences, it should be retained by public authority, where it ought never to have been admitted, in Latin Grammars for children. But such is the force of habit and attachment to established modes, that we go on in the use of them, without thinking whether they be founded in reason or not. When there are a great many exceptions from a general rule, whatever can assist the memory is no doubt useful. On this account the principal rules for the genders of nouns, &c. are here subjoined, for local reasons, from *Ruddiman's* Grammar ; although many of them are by no means adapted to the capacity of boys ; and more of them are inserted, in compliance with the opinion of others, than the compiler judges necessary. They are printed at the end of the book ; and such as choose it, may have *Lily's* rules, *Watt's* rules, or any other, substituted in their place.

The authors of the *Nouvelle Methode*, or *Port Royal Grammar* in France, judging it as absurd to teach Latin by rules in Latin verse, as to teach Greek, by rules in Greek verse, or Hebrew by rules in Hebrew, composed the rules of Latin Grammar, in French verse. Some authors in England, as, *Clarke*, *Phillips*, &c. have imitated their example.

example. But this plan has not in either country been much followed. Nothing can be more uncouth than such verification. So that Latin rules, on the whole, seem preferable.—However this may be, the following remarks concerning the method of teaching Latin, it is hoped, will not be deemed improper.

When the learner is once master of the inflexion of nouns and verbs, he should be exercised in getting by heart words and phrases, while at the same time he is employed in reading some easy author; and in turning plain sentences from English into Latin. The sooner he can be brought to write part of his exercises, the better; but he should never be obliged to get Grammar rules in Latin verse, till he is capable of understanding them by himself; because although the teacher may explain them, the scholar will soon forget the interpretation, and repeat the words merely by rote, without attending to their meaning: Nor should he be forced to get rules in Latin verse, which may be remembered equally well in English prose. Rules in verse are only useful when they assist the memory; as when there is a number of exceptions from a general rule, where alone they are indeed of advantage: and even here, perhaps, any chime of words might answer the purpose as well as Latin hexameters. It is of importance, when the rule is long, that the learner be accustomed to repeat no more of it than is strictly applicable to the word or phrase in question. The repetition of the whole is an useless waste of time. The great object ought to be, to bring the learner, in as short time as possible, to join without hesitation an adjective with a substantive in any case, number, or degree of comparison; and in like manner to touch upon any part of a verb, and tell readily by what case any adjective, verb, or preposition is followed. This facility practice alone can teach, and the method of acquiring it must in all languages be much the same.

The niceties of construction, the figures of Syntax, and the other parts of Grammar, should be occasionally taught, as the learner proceeds in reading the more difficult authors.

As the ancient Romans joined the Grammar of their own language with that of the Greek ; so we ought to connect the study of English Grammar with that of the Latin ; and when the learner properly understands Latin Grammar, he ought to join with it the study of the Greek ; the knowledge of both these languages being requisite for the thorough understanding of the English. This is the practice in England, and other countries, where the best Greek and Latin scholars are formed. It is particularly necessary in Scotland to pay attention to the English in conjunction with the Latin, as by neglecting it boys at school learn many improprieties in point of Grammar, as well as of pronunciation, which it is difficult in after life to correct. This attention is less requisite in England ; though even there, in the opinion of Dr. Lowth, to use his own words, “ the connection of the English with the Latin Grammar, if it could be introduced into schools, might be of good service.”*

EDINBURGH, }
Oct. 25, 1793. }

In the present edition the Appendix to Etymology has been omitted, because a larger work on that subject is intended, and will probably soon be sent to the press.

EDINBURGH, }
Jan. 23. 1798. }

* In a letter concerning this book, after having read the manuscript, dated, Cuddeston, Sept. 27, 1771.

C O N T E N T S.

	Page
Part I. ORTHOGRAPHY, which treats of	
LETTERS,	1
Diphthongs	2
Syllables	3
 Part II. ETYMOLOGY, which treats of WORDS,	 4
Division of WORDS or PARTS of SPEECH	ib.
The ARTICLE ;—wanting in Latin	5
I. NOUN or SUBSTANTIVE,	6
English Nouns	7
Latin Nouns	8
DECLENSION of NOUNS	ib.
GENDER of NOUNS	10
First Declension	13
Second Declension	19
Third Declension	28
Fourth Declension	47
Fifth Declension	49
IRREGULAR Nouns	ib.
DIVISION of Nouns, according to their signification and derivation	56
ADJECTIVE	58
Numeral Adjectives	66
COMPARISON of Adjectives	69
II. PRONOUN	72
English Pronouns	ib.
Latin Pronouns	73
1. Simple Latin Pronouns	ib.
2. Compound Latin Pronouns	74
III. VERB	78
English Verbs	81
CONJUGATION of LATIN VERBS	86
First Conjugation	90
Second Conjugation	95
Third Conjugation	97
Fourth Conjugation	98
FORMATION of the different parts of Latin Verbs	99
SIGNIFICATION of the different TENSES	101

CONTENTS.

	Page
VERBS of the FIRST CONJUGATION	104
SECOND CONJUGATION	108
THIRD CONJUGATION	112
FOURTH CONJUGATION	122
DEPONENT and COMMON VERBS	124
IRREGULAR VERBS	128
DEFECTIVE VERBS	133
IMPERSONAL VERBS	135
REDUNDANT VERBS	136
<i>Obsolete Conjugation</i>	138
DERIVATION and COMPOSITION of Verbs	ib.
IV. PARTICIPLE	140
V. ADVERB	142
VI. PREPOSITION	146
VII. INTERJECTION	148
VIII. CONJUNCTION	149

PART III. SYNTAX or CONSTRUCTION, which treats of SENTENCES,

Division of Sentences into Simple and Compound.	151
I. SIMPLE SENTENCES	ib.
CONCORD or Agreement of Words in Simple Sentences	ib.
GOVERNMENT of Words in Simple Sentences	157
I. Government of SUBSTANTIVES	ib.
II. Government of ADJECTIVES	160
III. Government of VERBS	166
1. VERBS governing one case	ib.
2. VERBS governing two cases	172
Government of PASSIVE VERBS	177
of IMPERSONAL VERBS	179
Construction of the INFINITIVE	181
of PARTICIPLES, &c.	182
of GERUNDS	183
of SUPINES	185
of ADVERBS	186
Government of Adverbs	189
of PREPOSITIONS	190
Construction of CIRCUMSTANCES	196
1. Price	ib.
2. Manner and Cause	ib.
3. Place	177
4. Measure and Distance	200
5. Time	201

B

II. COMPOUND

C O N T E N T S.

	Page
II. COMPOUND SENTENCES	201
Sentences are compounded by Relatives and Conjunctions	ib.
Construction of RELATIVES	220
of CONJUNCTIONS	205
of COMPARATIVES	210
The ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE	211
APPENDIX to SYNTAX ; containing	
I. Various SIGNIFICATION and CONSTRUCTION of VERBS	214
II. FIGURATIVE CONSTRUCTION, or FIGURES of SYNTAX	235
III. ANALYSIS and TRANSLATION	237
IV. Different kinds of STYLE	241
V. FIGURES of RHETORIC	243
1. Figures of Words or TROPES	ib.
2. Repetition of Words	248
3. Figures of Thought	249
Part IV. PROSODY, which treats of the Quantity	
of Syllables, of Accent and Verse,	252
I. QUANTITY of SYLLABLES	ib.
1. Quantity of first and middle Syllables	253
2. Quantity of final Syllables	261
Quantity of Derivatives and Compounds	264
II. ACCENT	266
III. VERSE	267
The measuring of Verses by Feet, or SCANNING	ib.
Different kinds of Verses	268
FIGURES in SCANNING	275
Different kinds of POEMS	277
Combination of Verses in Poems	278
Different kinds of Verse in Horace and Buchanan	279
ENGLISH VERSE	281
APPENDIX I. Punctuation, Capitals, &c.	286
II. Rules from Ruddiman's Grammar	291

THE

R U D I M E N T S

O F

L A T I N A N D E N G L I S H

G R A M M A R.

GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing correctly.

Latin or English Grammar is the art of speaking and writing the Latin or the English language correctly.

The *Rudiments* of Grammar are plain and easy instructions, teaching beginners the first principles and rules of it.

Grammar treats of sentences, and the several parts of which they are compounded.

Sentences consist of words; Words consist of one or more syllables; Syllables of one or more letters. So that Letters, Syllables, Words, and Sentences, make up the whole subject of grammar.

L E T T E R S.

A Letter is the mark of a sound, or of an articulation of sound.

That part of Grammar which treats of letters, is called *Orthography*.

The letters in Latin are twenty-five: A, a; B, b; C, c; D, d; E, e; F, f; G, g; H, h; I, i; J, j; K, k; L, l; M, m; N, n; O, o; P, p; Q, q; R, r; S, s; T, t; U, u; V, v; X, x; Y, y; Z, z;

In English there is one letter more, namely, *W*, *w*.

Letters

Letters are divided into *Vowels*, and *Consonants*.)

Six are vowels ; *a, e, i, o, u, y*. All the rest are consonants.)

[A vowel makes a full sound by itself ; as, *a, e*.]

[A consonant cannot make a perfect sound without a vowel ; as, *b, d*.]

A vowel is properly called a *simple sound* ; and the sounds formed by the concurrence of vowels and consonants, *articulate sounds*.

Consonants are divided into *Mutes*, *Semi-vowels*, and *Double Consonants*.

A mute is so called, because it entirely stops the passage of the voice ; as, *p* in *ap*.

The mutes are, *p, b ; t, d ; c, k, q*, and *g* ; but *b, d*, and *g*, perhaps may more properly be termed *Semi-mutes*.

A semi-vowel, or half vowel, does not entirely stop the passage of the voice ; thus, *al*.

The semi-vowels are, *l, m, n, r, s, f*. The first four of these are also called *Liquids*, particularly *l* and *r* ; because they flow softly and easily after a mute in the same syllable ; as, *bla, stra*.

The mutes and semi-vowels may be thus distinguished. In naming the mutes, the vowel is put after them ; as, *pe, be*, &c. but in naming the semi-vowels, the vowel is put before them ; as, *el, em*, &c.

The double consonants are, *x, z*, and *j*. *X* is made up of *cs, ks*, or *gs*. *Z* seems not to be a double consonant in English. It has the same relation to *s*, as *v* has to *f*, being founded somewhat more softly.

In Latin *z*, and likewise *k* and *y*, are found only in words derived from the Greek.

Y in English is sometimes a consonant, as in *youth*.

H by some is not accounted a letter, but only a breathing.

DIPHTHONGS.

[A diphthong is two vowels joined in one sound.]

If the sound of both vowels be distinctly heard, it is called a *Proper Diphthong*; if not, an *Improper Diphthong*.

The proper diphthongs in Latin are commonly reckoned three; *au*, *eu*, *ei*; as in *aurum*, *Eurus*, *omneis*. To these, some, not improperly, add other three, namely, *ai*; as in *Maius*; *oi*, as in *Troia*; and *ui*, as in *Harpuia*, or in *cui* and *huic*, when pronounced as monosyllables.

The improper diphthongs in Latin are two, *ae*, or when the vowels are written together, *æ*; as *aetas*, or *ætas*; *oe*, or *æ*; as *poena* or *pæna*; in both of which the sound of the *e* only is heard. The ancients commonly wrote the vowels separately, thus, *aetas*, *poena*.

The English language abounds with improper diphthongs, the just pronunciation of which practice alone can teach. In some words derived from the French, there are three vowels in the same syllable, but two of them only are sounded; as in *beauty*, *lieutenant*.

SYLLABLES.

A syllable is the sound of one letter, or of several letters pronounced by one impulse of the voice; as *a*, *to*, *strength*.

In every word there are as many syllables as there are distinct sounds; as, *in-fal-li-bi-li-ty*.

In Latin there are as many syllables in a word as there are vowels or diphthongs in it; unless when *u* with any other vowel comes after *g*, *q*, or *s*, as in *lingua*, *qui*, *sua-deo*; where the two vowels are not reckoned a diphthong, because the sound of the *u* vanishes, or is little heard.

Words consisting of one syllable, are called *Monosyllables*; of two, *Disyllables*; and of more than two, *Poly-syllables*. But all words of more than one syllable are commonly called *Poly-syllables*.

In dividing words into syllables, we are chiefly to be directed by the ear. Compound words should be divided into the parts of which they are made up; as, *up-on*, *with-out*, &c. and so in Latin words, *ab-ūtor*, *in-ops*, *propt̄r-ea*, *et-ēnim*, *vel-ut*, &c. In like manner, when a syllable is added in the formation of the English verb, as, *lov-ed*, *lov-ing*, *lov-eth*, *will-ing*, &c.

Observe, A long syllable is thus marked [-]; as, *amāre*;

or with a circumflex accent thus, [ˆ] ; as, *amāris*. A short syllable is marked thus [˘] ; as, *omnibus*.

What pertains to the quantity of syllables, to accent, and verse, will be treated of afterwards.

WORDS.

Words are articulate sounds significant of thought.

That part of Grammar which treats of words, is called *Etymology*, or *Analogy*.

All words may be divided into three kinds ; namely, 1. such as mark the names of things ; 2. such as denote what is affirmed concerning things ; and 3. such as are significant only in conjunction with other words ; or what are called *Substantives*, *Attributives*, and *Connectives*. Thus in the following sentence, “ *The diligent boy reads the lesson carefully in the school, and at home,*” the words *boy*, *lesson*, *school*, *home*, are the names we give to the things spoken of ; *diligent*, *reads*, *carefully*, express what is affirmed concerning the boy ; *the*, *in*, *and*, *at*, are only significant when joined with the other words of the sentence.

All words whatever are either *simple* or *compound*, *primitive* or *derivative*.

The division of words into simple and compound, is called their *Figure* ; into primitive and derivative, their *Species* or kind.

A simple word is that which is not made up of more than one ; as, *pius*, pious ; *ego*, I ; *dōceo*, I teach.

A compound word is that which is made up of two or more words ; or of one word, and some syllable added, as, *impius*, impious ; *dēdōceo*, I unteach ; *egōmet*, I myself.

A primitive word is that which comes from no other ; as, *pius*, pious ; *disco*, I learn ; *dōceo*, I teach.

A derivative word is that which comes from another word ; as, *pietas*, piety ; *doctrīna*, learning.

The different classes into which we divide words, are called *Parts of Speech*.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

[The parts of speech in Latin are eight ;
1. *Noun*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, *Participle* ; declined :
2. *Adverb*, *Preposition*, *Interjection*, and *Conjunction* ; undeclined.]

In English the adjective and participle are not declined.

Those words or parts of speech are said to be *declined* which receive different changes, particularly on the end, which is called the *Termination* of words.

The changes made upon words are by grammarians called *Accidents*.

Of old, all words which admit of different terminations were said to be declined. But *Declension* is now applied only to nouns. The changes made upon the verb are called *Conjugation*.

The English language has one part of speech more than the Latin, namely, the ARTICLE.

The *article* is a word put before substantive nouns, to point them out, and to shew how far their signification extends.

There are two articles, *a* and *the* : *a* becomes *an* before a vowel, or a silent *h*.

A is called the *Indefinite*, *The* the *Definite Article*.

A is used to point out one single thing of a kind, without fixing precisely what that thing is : *The* determines what particular thing is meant.

A man means simply some one or other of that kind : *the man* signifies that particular man who is spoken of.

The want of the article is a defect in the Latin tongue, and often renders the meaning of nouns undetermined : thus, *filius regis*, may signify, either, *a son of a king*, or *a king's son* ; or *the son of the king*, or *the king's son*.

The placed before certain common names, marks either a whole kind, or some individual of that kind, with which we are acquainted ; as, *the lion*, *the ox*, &c.

A can only be joined to substantive nouns in the singular number : *the* may also be joined to plurals. *A* is likewise used before adjectives which express number, when many are considered as one whole ; as, *a thousand men*, *a few*, *a great many men*.

The is likewise applied to adjectives and adverbs in the comparative or superlative degree, to mark their sense more strongly ; as, "*the wiser*," "*the better* ;" "*the more I think of it, the better I like it*."

NOUN.

N O U N.

† A noun is either substantive or adjective. /

The adjective seems to be improperly called *noun*: it is only a word added to a substantive or noun, expressive of its quality; and therefore should be considered as a different part of speech. But as the substantive and adjective together express but one object, and in Latin are declined after the same manner, they have both been comprehended under the same general name.

S U B S T A N T I V E.

| A Substantive, or Noun, is the name of any person, place, or thing; as, *boy, school, book.*)

| Substantives are of two sorts; *proper* and *common* names.)

| *Proper names* are the names appropriated to individuals; as the names of persons and places; such are, *Cæsar, Rome.*)

| *Common names* stand for whole kinds, containing several sorts; or for sorts, containing many individuals under them; as, *animal, man, beast, fish, fowl, &c.*)

Every particular being should have its own proper name; but this is impossible, on account of their innumerable multitude: men have therefore been obliged to give the same common name to such things as agree together in certain respects. These form what is called a *genus*, or kind; a *species*, or sort.

A proper name may be used for a common, and then in English it has the article joined to it; as, when we say of some great conqueror, "He is *an* Alexander;" or, "*The* Alexander of his age."

To proper and common names may be added a third class of nouns, which mark the names of qualities, and are called *abstract nouns*; as, *hardness, goodness, whiteness, virtue, justice, piety, &c.*

When we speak of things, we consider them as one or more. This is what we call *Number*. When one thing is spoken of, a noun is said to be of the *singular number*; when two or more, of the *plural*.

Things considered according to their kinds, are either male or female, or neither of the two. Males are said to be of the *masculine gender*; females of the *feminine*; and all other things, of the *neuter gender*.

Such

Such nouns as are applied to signify either the male or the female, are said to be of the *common gender*, that is, either masculine or feminine.

Various methods are used, in different languages, to express the different connexions or relations of one thing to another. In the English, and in most modern languages, this is done by prepositions, or particles placed before the substantive : in Latin, by declension, or by different cases ; that is, by changing the termination of the noun ; as, *rex*, a king, or the king ; *rēgis*, of a king, or of the king.

ENGLISH NOUNS.

In English, nouns have only one case, namely, the genitive, or possessive case, which is formed from the noun, by adding an *s*, with an apostrophe, or mark to separate it ; as, *John's book*, the same with, *the book of John*. It was formerly written *Johnis book*.

Some have thought the *'s* a contraction for *his* ; but improperly ; because, instead of *the woman's book*, we cannot say, *the woman his book*. Others have imagined, and with more justness, that by the addition of the *'s* the substantive is changed into a possessive adjective.

When the noun ends in *s*, the sign of the possessive case is sometimes not added ; as, *for righteousness sake* ; and never to the plural number ending in *s* ; as, *on eagles wings*. Perhaps it would be better in the plural, when it ends in *s*, always to use the particle, and not the possessive form ; as, *on the wings of eagles*. Both the sign and the preposition seem sometimes to be used ; as, *a soldier of the king's* : but here there are two possessives ; for it means, *one of the soldiers of the king*.

A singular noun, in English, is made plural by adding to it *s*, or, for the sake of sound, *es* ; as, *king, kings* ; *church, churches* ; *brush, brushes* ; *witness, witnesses* ; *fox, foxes* ; *leaf, leaves* ; in which last, and in many others, *f* is also turned into *v*, to make the pronunciation easier.

Several plurals are formed by adding *en* ; as *ox, oxen*. Of these some are contracted, or interpose a letter on account of sound ; as, *brethren, children, swine, kine, women, men*, &c. for *brotheren, sowen*, &c. Instead of *kine* we now commonly say *cows* ; and we seldom use *brethren* but in solemn discourse.

Nouns in *y* change *y* into *ie* ; as, *cherry, cherries* ; *city, cities*. *Cherry's, city's*, &c. are in the possessive case.

Some

Some nouns form the plural more irregularly ; as, *mouse*, *mice* ; *louse*, *lice* ; *tooth*, *teeth* ; *foot*, *feet* ; *goose*, *geese*, &c.

The words *sheep*, *deer*, are the same in both numbers. Some nouns, from the nature of the things which they express, are used only in the singular, or in the plural form ; as, *wheat*, *pitch*, *gold*, *sloth*, *pride*, &c. and *bellows*, *scissars*, *lungs*, *bowels*, &c.

Several nouns in English are changed in their termination, to express gender ; as *prince*, *princess* ; *actor*, *actress* ; *lion*, *lioness* ; *hero*, *heroine* ; *duke*, *duchess*, &c.

The English language has a peculiar advantage over most other languages, in making all words whatever, except the names of males and females, to be of the neuter gender : unless when inanimate beings are personified, or considered as persons ; as, when we say of the sun, *he shines* ; or of the moon, *she shines*.

LATIN NOUNS.

[A Latin noun is declined by *Genders*, *Cases*, and *Numbers*.]

[There are three genders, *Masculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*.]

[The cases are six, *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, *Vocative*, and *Ablative*.]

[There are two numbers, *Singular* and *Plural*.]

[There are five different ways of varying or declining nouns, called, the *first*, *second*, *third*, *fourth*, and *fifth* *declensions*.]

Cases are certain changes made upon the termination of nouns, to express the relation of one thing to another.

They are so called, from *cado*, to fall ; because they fall, as it were, from the nominative ; which is therefore named *cāsus rectus*, the straight case ; and the other cases, *cāsus obliqui*, the oblique cases.

The different declensions may be distinguished from one another by the termination of the genitive singular. The first declension has *a* diphthong ; the second has *i* ; the third

third has *is* ; the fourth has *ūs* ; and the fifth has *ēi* in the genitive.

Although Latin nouns be said to have six cases, yet none of them have that number of different terminations, both in the singular and plural.

GENERAL RULES of Declension.

1. | Nouns of the neuter gender have the Accusative and Vocative like the Nominative, in both numbers ; and these cases in the plural end always in *a*. |

2. | The Dative and Ablative plural end always alike. |

3. | The Vocative for the most part in the singular, and always in the plural, is the same with the Nominative. |

Greek nouns in *s* generally lose *s* in the Vocative ; as, *Thomas, Thoma* ; *Anchises, Anchise* ; *Pāris, Pari* ; *Panthus, Panthu* ; *Pallas, -antis* ; *Palla*, names of men. But nouns in *es* of the third declension oftener retain the *s* ; as, *ō Achilles*, rarely *-e* ; *O Socrātes*, seldom *-e* ; and sometimes nouns in *is* and *as* ; as, *O Thais, Mysis, Pallas, -adis*, the goddesses Minerva, &c.

4. | Proper names for the most part want the plural : |

Unless several of the same name be spoken of ; as, *duōdecim Cæsares*, the twelve Cæsars.

The cases of Latin nouns are thus expressed in English ;

1. With the indefinite article, *a king*.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.	<i>a king,</i>	Nom.	<i>kings,</i>
Gen. <i>of</i>	<i>a king,</i>	Gen. <i>of</i>	<i>kings,</i>
Dat. <i>to or for</i>	<i>a king,</i>	Dat. <i>to or for</i>	<i>kings,</i>
Acc.	<i>a king,</i>	Acc.	<i>kings,</i>
Voc. <i>O</i>	<i>king,</i>	Voc. <i>O</i>	<i>kings,</i>
Abl. <i>with, from, in, by,</i>	<i>a king,</i>	Abl. <i>with, from, in, by,</i>	<i>kings.</i>

2. With

2. With the definite article, *the king*.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.	<i>the king,</i>	Nom.	<i>the kings,</i>
Gen. <i>of</i>	<i>the king,</i>	Gen. <i>of</i>	<i>the kings,</i>
Dat. <i>to or for</i>	<i>the king,</i>	Dat. <i>to or for</i>	<i>the kings,</i>
Acc.	<i>the king,</i>	Acc.	<i>the kings,</i>
Voc. <i>O</i>	<i>king,</i>	Voc. <i>O</i>	<i>kings,</i>
Ab. <i>with, from, in, by,</i>	<i>the king:</i>	Ab. <i>with, from, in, by,</i>	<i>the kings.</i>

G E N D E R.

Nouns in Latin are said to be of different genders, not merely from the distinction of sex; but chiefly from their being joined with an adjective of one termination, and not of another. Thus, *penna*, a pen, is said to be feminine, because it is always joined with an adjective in that termination which is applied to females; as, *bōna penna*, a good pen, and not *bōnus penna*.

The gender of nouns which signify things without life, depends on their termination, and different declension.

To distinguish the different genders, grammarians make use of the pronoun *hic*, to mark the masculine; *hæc*, the feminine; and *hoc*, the neuter.

GENERAL RULES concerning Gender.

1. Names of males are masculine; as, *Hômērus*, Homer; *pāter*, a father; *poēta*, a poet.

2. Names of females are feminine; as, *Hēlēna*, Helen; *mūlier*, a woman; *uxor*, a wife; *māter*, a mother; *sōror*, a sister; *Tellus*, the goddess of the earth.

3. Nouns which signify either the male or female, are of the common gender; that is, either masculine or feminine; as, *Hic bos*, an ox; *hæc bos*, a cow; *hic pārens*, a father; *hæc pārens*, a mother.)

The following list comprehends most nouns of the common gender.

Adōlescens,

<i>adolescens</i> , { a young	<i>Conjux</i> , a husband or	<i>Nemo</i> , no body.
<i>Juvenis</i> , { man, or	wife.	<i>Obses</i> , an hostage.
{ woman.	<i>Conviva</i> , a guest.	<i>Patruelis</i> , a cousin-ger-
<i>Affinis</i> , a relation by	<i>Custos</i> , a keeper.	man by the father's
marriage.	<i>Dux</i> , a leader.	<i>Præs</i> , a surety. [side.
<i>Antistes</i> , a prelate.	<i>Hæres</i> , an heir.	<i>Princeps</i> , a prince or
<i>Auctor</i> , an author.	<i>Hostis</i> , an enemy.	princeps.
<i>Augur</i> , a soothsayer.	<i>Infans</i> , an infant.	<i>Sacerdos</i> , a priest or
<i>Canis</i> , a dog or bitch.	<i>Interpres</i> , an interpre-	priestess.
<i>Civis</i> , a citizen.	<i>Judex</i> , a judge. [ter.	<i>Sus</i> , a swine.
<i>Cliens</i> , a client.	<i>Martyr</i> , a martyr.	<i>Testis</i> , a witness.
<i>Comes</i> , a companion.	<i>Miles</i> , a soldier.	<i>Vates</i> , a prophet.
	<i>Municipes</i> , a burghers.	<i>Vindex</i> , an avenger.*

But *antistes*, *cliens*, and *hospes*, also change their termination to express the feminine, thus, *antistita*, *clienta*, *hospita*: in the same manner with *leo*, a lion; *leona*, a lioness; *equus*, *equa*; *mulus*, *mula*; and many others.

There are several nouns, which, though applicable to both sexes, admit only of a masculine adjective; as, *advena*, a stranger; *agricola*, a husbandman; *assecta*, an attendant; *accola*, a neighbour; *exul*, an exile; *latro*, a robber; *fur*, a thief; *opifex*, a mechanic; &c. There are others, which, though applied to persons, are, on account of their termination, always neuter; as, *scortum*, a courtesan; *mancipium*, *servitium*, a slave, &c.

In like manner *opæra*, slaves or day-labourers; *vigilia*, *excubie*, watches; *noxæ*, guilty persons; though applied to men, are always feminine.

OBSERVATIONS.

Obs. I. The names of brute animals commonly follow the gender of their termination.

Such are the names of wild beasts, birds, fishes, and insects, in which the distinction of sex is either not easily discerned, or seldom attended to. Thus, *passer*, a sparrow, is masculine, because nouns in *er* are masculine; so *âquila*,

* *Conjux*, atque *parens*, *infans*, *patruelis*, et *hæres*.
Affinis, *vindex*, *judex*, *dux*, *miles*, et *hostis*,
Augur, et *antistes*, *juvenis*, *conviva*, *sacerdos*,
Muniqueceps, *vates*, *adolescens*, *civis*, et *auctor*,
Custos, *nemo*, *comes*, *testis*, *fus*, *bosque*, *canisque*,
Interpresque, *cliens*, *princeps*, *præs*, *martyr*, et *obses*.

āquīla, an eagle, is feminine, because nouns in *a* of the first declension are feminine. These are called *Epicene* or promiscuous nouns. When any particular sex is marked, we usually add the word *mas* or *fēmīna*; as, *mas passer*, a male sparrow; *fēmīna passer*, a female sparrow.

Obs. 2. A proper name, for the most part, follows the gender of the general name under which it is comprehended.

Thus, the names of months, winds, rivers, and mountains, are masculine; because *mensis*, *ventus*, *mons*, and *fluvius*, are masculine; as, *hic Aprilis*, April; *hic Aquilo*, the north wind; *hic Africus*, the south-west wind; *hic Tiberis*, the river Tiber; *hic Othrys*, a hill in Thessaly. But many of these follow the gender of their termination; as, *hæc Matrōna*, the river Marne in France; *hæc Ætna*, a mountain in Sicily; *hoc Sōraçte*, a hill in Italy.

In like manner, the names of countries, towns, trees, and ships, are feminine, because *terra* or *rēgio*, *urbs*, *arbor*, and *nāvis*, are feminine; as, *hæc Ægyptus*, Egypt; *Sāmos*, an island of that name; *Cōrinthus*, the city Corinth; *pōnus*, an apple-tree; *Centaurus*, the name of a ship: Thus also the names of poems, *hæc Ilias*, *-ados*, and *Odyssēa*, the two poems of Homer; *hæc Ænēis*, *-idos*, a poem of Virgil's; *hæc Eunūchus*, one of Terence's comedies.

The gender, however, of many of these depends on the termination; thus, *hic Pontus*, a country of that name; *hic Sulmo*, *-ōnis*; *Pessinus*, *-untis*; *Hydrus*, *-untis*, names of towns; *hæc Persis*, *-idis*, the kingdom of Persia; *Carthāgo*, *-inis*, the city Carthage; *hoc Albion*, Britain; *hoc Cere*, *Reāte*, *Præneste*, *Tibur*, *ilium*, names of towns. But some of these are also found in the feminine; as, *Gelida Præneste*, Juvenal. iii. 190.; *Alta Ilion*, Ovid. Met. xiv. 456.

The following names of trees are masculine, *oleaster*, *-tri*, a wild olive tree; *rhamnus*, the white bramble.

The following are masculine or feminine; *cylissus*, a kind of shrub; *rūbus*, the bramble-bush; *larix*, the larch-tree; *lotus*, the lot-tree; *cupressus*, the cypress-tree. The first two however are oftener masculine; the rest oftener feminine.

Those in *um* are neuter; as, *buxum* the bush, or box-tree; *ligustrum*, a privet; so likewise are *cūber*, *-ēris* the cork-

cork-tree; *sīler*, -ēris, the osier; *rōbur*, -ōris, oak of the hardest kind; *ācer*, -ēris, the maple-tree.

The place where trees or shrubs grow is commonly neuter; as, *Arbustum*, *quercētum*, *esculētum*, *sālīctum*, *frūticētum*, &c. a place where trees, oaks, beeches, willows, shrubs, &c. grow: Also the names of fruits and timber, as, *pōnum*, or *mālum*, an apple; *pīrum*, a pear; *ēbēnum*, ebony, &c. But from this rule there are various exceptions.

Obs. 3. Several nouns are said to be of the *doubtful gender*; that is, are sometimes found in one gender, and sometimes in another; as, *dies*, a day, masculine or feminine; *vālgus*, the rabble, masculine or neuter.

FIRST DECLENSION.

/ Nouns of the first declension end in *a*, *e*, *as*, *es*.

Latin nouns end only in *a*, and are of the *feminine gender*. /

The terminations of the different cases are; Nom. and Voc. Sing. *a*; Gen. and Dat. *æ* diphthong; Acc. *am*; Abl. *â*: Nom. and Voc. Plur. *æ*; Gen. *ārum*; Dat. and Abl. *is*; Acc. *as*: Thus,

Penna, a pen, fem.		Terminations.	
Singular.	Plural.		
N. penna,	<i>a pen</i> ;	N. pennæ,	<i>pens</i> ;
G. pennæ,	<i>of a pen</i> ;	G. pennārum,	<i>of pens</i> ;
D. pennæ,	<i>to a pen</i> ;	D. pennis,	<i>to pens</i> ;
A. pennam,	<i>a pen</i> ;	A. pennas,	<i>pens</i> ;
V. penna,	<i>O pen</i> ;	V. pennæ,	<i>O pens</i> ;
A. pennâ,	<i>with a pen</i> :	A. pennis,	<i>with pens.</i>
			<i>a, æ,</i> <i>æ, arum,</i> <i>æ, is,</i> <i>am, as,</i> <i>a, æ,</i> <i>â, is.</i>

In like manner decline,

Acerra, a censer.	Alūta, tanned leather.	Ancilla, an handmaid.
Acta, the shore.	Ambrōsia, the food of the gods.	Ānchōra, an anchor.
Æra, a period of time.	Āmīta, an aunt, the father's sister.	Anguilla, an eel.
Ærumna, toil.	Āmphōra, a cask.	Ansa, a handle.
Agrīcōla, a husbandman.	Ampulla, a jug. plur. bombast.	Antenna, a sail-yard.
Āla, a wing.	Āmurca, the lees of oil.	Antlia, a pump.
Ālāpa, a blow.		Aqua, water.
Ālauda, a lark.		Āquīla, an eagle.
Alga, sea-weed.		Āra, an altar.

Ārēnea,

Arănea, a spider.	Cătăpulta, an engine to cast darts.	Crăpida, a slipper.
Arca, a chest.	Cătēna, a chain.	Crēta, chalk.
Ardea, & -eōla, a heron.	Căterva, a body of men.	Crīsta, a crest.
Area, an open place.	Căthedra, a chair, a pulpit.	Crūmēna, a purse.
Arēna, sand.	Cauda, the tail.	Cruſta, & -um, a mouſel.
Argilla, potter's earth.	Caula, a ſteep-cote.	Culcita, a cuſcion.
Ariſta, an ear of corn.	Cauſa, a cauſe.	Cūlina, a kitchen.
Airha, an earneſt penny.	Căverna, a cavern.	Culpa, a fault.
Arvina, fat.	Căvilla, a banter.	Cūmēra, a corn lyket.
Aſcia, an ax.	Cella, a cell.	Cūpa, a tun.
Athlēta, m. a wreſtler.	Cēra, wax.	Cūra, care.
Aula, a hall.	Cērēmonia, a ceremony.	Cūria, a ſenate-houſe.
Aura, a breeze.	Cerviſia, ale, beer.	Currūca, a hedge ſparrow.
Auriga, m. a charioteer.	Cēruffa, white lead, paint.	Cymba, a boat.
Avia, a grandmother.	Cetra, a ſquare target.	Dēcempēda, a pole of ten feet.
Axilla, the arm-pit.	Charta, paper.	Diata, diet, food.
Bălăna, a whale.	Chorda, a ſtring.	Dōlābra, an ax.
Barba, a beard.	Cicāda, a kind of inſect.	Drachma, a drachm, a weight or coin.
Bēla, any large beaſt.	Cicōnia, a ſtork.	Epīſtōla, a letter.
and Bivreaſt.	Cicūta, hemlock.	Eſca, a bait.
Bēta, beet, an herb.	Cināra, an artichoke.	Fāba, a bean.
Bibliōpōla, a bookſeller.	Ciſta, a cheſt.	Fābūla, a fable.
Bibliōthēca, a library.	Ciſterna, a ciſtern.	Fāma, fame.
Blatta, a moth.	Cithāra, a harp.	Fārīna, meal.
Bractea, a thin leaf of gold.	Clāva, a club.	Faſcia, a bandage.
Brasica, collyſlower.	Clepsydra, an hour-glaſs.	Fāvilla, embers.
Brūma, winter.	Cloūca, a ſink.	Fēneſtra, a window.
Bulla, a bubble, a ball or boſs.	Cochlea, a ſnail.	Fēra, a wild beaſt.
Byrſa, an ox-hide.	Cœna, a ſupper.	Fērūla, a red.
Caliga, a kind of ſhoe ſet with nails.	Cōlumba, a pigeon.	Feſtūca, the ſhoot of a tree.
Caltha, marygold.	Cōma, the hair.	Fibra, a fibre.
Calva & calvaria, a ſkull.	Cōmœdia, a comedy.	Fibūla, a clasp. [ſcl.
Cālumnia, ſlander.	Concha, a ſhell.	Fidēlia, an earthen veſ-
Cāmēna, a muſe, a ſong.	Cōpia, plenty.	Fimbria, a fringe.
Cāmēra, a vault.	Cōpūla, a bond.	Fiſcina, a bag, or baſket.
Campāna, a bell.	Corrigia, a ſhoe latchet.	Fiſtūca, a rammer.
Canna, a cane or reed.	Cōrōna, a crown, a circle.	Fiſtūla, a pipe.
Candēla, a candle.	Cortina, a cauldron.	Flamma, a flame.
Capra, a ſhe-goat.	Coſta, a rib.	Fœmīna, a woman.
Capſa, a coffer.	Coxa, the haunch.	Forma, a form.
Cārīna, the keel of a ſhip.	Crāpūla, a ſurfeit.	Formica, an ant.
Cāſa, a cottage.	Crātēra, a cup.	Foſſa, a ditch.
Caſtānea, a cheſnut.	Crātīcūla, a gridiron.	Fōvea, a pit.
	Crēna, a notch.	Frāmea, a ſhort ſpear.
		Fūlica, a ſea-ſowl.

Funda,

Funda, *a sling.*
 Furca, *a fork.*
 Fuscina, *a trident.*
 Gălăa, *an helmet.*
 Gallina, *a hen.* [ulcer.
 Gangræna, *an eating*
 Gaza, *a treasure.*
 Genima, *a gem.*
 Gēna, *the cheek.*
 Gēnista, *broom.*
 Gingiva, *the gum.*
 Glărea, *gravel.*
 Glēba, *a clod.*
 Gūla, *the gullet.*
 Gutta, *a drop.*
 Hăbēna, *a rein.*
 Hăra, *a hog-fly.*
 Hărūga, *a sacrifice.*
 Hasta, *a spear.*
 Hēdēra, *ivy.*
 Herba, *an herb.*
 Herma, v. -es, m. *a statue of Mercury.*
 Hernia, *a rupture.*
 Hilla, *a sausage.*
 Hōra, *an hour.*
 Hostia, *a victim.*
 Hydria, *a water-pot.*
 Jactūra, *loss.*
 Jānuā, *a gate.*
 Idea, *a form, an idea.*
 Idiōta, m. *an illiterate person.*
 Ignōmīniā, *an affront.*
 Illēcebra, *an allure-ment.*
 Impensa, *expense.*
 Indīgēna, m. *a native.*
 Inēdia, *hunger.*
 Infūla, *a mitre.*
 Injūria, *a wrong.*
 Inōpia, *want.*
 Instita, *a fringe.*
 Infūla, *an island.*
 Inūla, *elecampane, an herb.*
 Invidia, *envy.*
 Ira, *anger.*
 Juba, *the mane.*

Iăcerna, *a riding coat.*
 Lăcerta, *a lizard.*
 Lăcinia, *a fringe.*
 Lacrȳma, *a tear.*
 Lactūca, *lettuce.*
 Lăcūna, *a ditch.*
 Lăgēna, *a flagon.*
 Lāma, *a ditch.*
 Lāmia, *a sorceress.*
 Lāmīna, *a plate.*
 Lāna, *wool.*
 Lancea, *a lance or spear.*
 Lănista, m. *a fencing-master.*
 Larva, *a mask.*
 Lăterna, *a lantern.*
 Latrīna, *a house of office.*
 Lectica, *a sedan or chair.*
 Lēna, *a barnd.*
 Lepra, *the leprosy.*
 Libra, *a pound.*
 Līgūla, *a latchet.*
 Līma, *a file.*
 Līnea, *a line.*
 Lingua, *the tongue.*
 Līra, *a ridge or furrow.*
 Lītēra, *a letter.*
 Lōcūsta, *a locust.*
 Lūcerna, *a light.*
 Lūna, *the moon.*
 Luscīnia, *a nightingale.*
 Lympha, *water.*
 Lyra, *a lyre.*
 Măchīna, *a machine.*
 Măcīra, *a kneading trough.*
 Măcūla, *a stain.*
 Măla, *the cheek-bone.*
 Mălăcia, *a calm.*
 Malva, *a mallow.*
 Mamma, *a pap.*
 Mănīca, *a sleeve.*
 Mantica, *a wallet.*
 Mappa, *a napkin.*
 Margărita, *a pearl.*
 Marra, *a mattock.*
 Massa, *a lump.*

Mătēria, *matter, stuff, timber.*
 Mătērtēra, *the mother's sister.* [treſt.
 Matta, *a mat or mat-*
 Mătūla, *a chamber-pot.*
 Mēdulla, *marrow.*
 Membrāna, *a thin skin, a film; parchment.*
 Mēmōria, *memory.*
 Mensa, *a table.*
 Mensūra, *a measure.*
 Merda, *dung.*
 Merga, *a pitch-fork.*
 Mērūla, *a black bird.*
 Mēta, *a goal.*
 Mētăphōra, *a trope.*
 Mīca, *a crumb.*
 Mitra, *a mitre.*
 Mōla, *a mill.*
 Mōnēdūla, *a jack-daw.*
 Mōnēta, *money.*
 Mōra, *a delay.*
 Multa, *a fine.*
 Mūrāna, *a lamp-ray.*
 Mūrīa, *pickle, brine.*
 Mūsa, *a muse.*
 Muica, *a fly.*
 Mustēla, *a weasel.*
 Myrrha, *myrrh.*
 Myrica, *a tamarisk.*
 Mysta, v. -es, m. *a priest.*
 Naſa, *a net.*
 Nausea, *sea-sickness.*
 Nauta, m. *a mariner.*
 Nītēdūla, *a field mouse.*
 Nōnia, *a funeral song.*
 Norma, *a rule.*
 Nōvācūla, *a razor.*
 Nōverca, *a step-mother.*
 Nympha, *a nymph.*
 Occa, *an harrow.*
 Ocrea, *a boot.*
 Ōda, v. -e, *an ode or song.*
 Offa, *a morsel.*
 Ōlea, *an olive.*
 Olla, *a pot.*

Ōra, a coast.	Pīca, a magpy.	Rāna, a frog.
Orbīta, a paib.	Pīla, a ball.	Rēpulsa, a refusal.
Ōrca, a jar.	Pīla, a pillar.	Resīna, rosin.
Orchestra, the stage, or the place next it, where the nobles sat.	Pincerna, m. a butler.	Rhēda, a chariot.
Ostrea, an oyster.	Pinna, a fin, a wing.	Rīma, a chink.
Pænūla, a riding coat.	Pīrāta, m. a pirate.	Rīpa, a bunk.
Pāgina, a page.	Piscīna, a fish-pond.	Rīxa, a scoll.
Pāla, a shovel.	Pītuīta, phlegm.	Rōsa, a rose.
Pālæstra, a wrestling, or place for it.	Plīcenta, a cake.	Rōta, a wheel.
Pālea, chaff.	Plāga, a climate.	Rūga, a wrinkle.
Palinōdia, a recanta- tion.	Plāga, a blow.	Ruīna, a downfall.
Palla, a large gown.	Planta, a plant.	Runcīna, a saw or
Palma, the palm.	Plātēa, or Platēa, a broad street.	Rūta, rue. [plane.
Palpebra, the eye lid.	Plūma, a feather.	Sāburra, ballast.
Pāpilla, the nipple.	Plūvia, rain.	Sāga, a sorcerer.
Pāpūla, a pimple.	Pōdagra, the gout.	Sāgīna, cramming.
Pārābōla, comparing things together.	Pœna, a punishment.	Sāgitta, an arrow.
Parma, a shield.	Poēta, m. a poet.	Sālebra, a rugged way.
Parra, a jay.	Poetria, a poetess.	Sāliunca, lavender.
Pātēra, a goblet.	Pōlenta, malt.	Sāliva, spittle.
Pausa, a stop or pause.	Pōlītia, policy.	Salpa, stock fish.
Pēdica, a fetter.	Pompa, a procession.	Sambūca, an harp, or engine of war.
Pēnūla, a mantle.	Pōpa, m. a priest who slew the sacrifice.	Sanctīmōnia, devotion.
Pēnūria, want.	Pōpīna, a tavern.	Sandāpīla, a bier.
Pēra, a purse.	Porta, a gate.	Sanna, a scuff.
Perca, a perch.	Præda, plunder.	Sarcīna, a burden.
Perfūga, m. a deserter.	Prærogātiva, sc. tri- bus, v. centuria, that voted first.	Sārīssa, a long spear.
Pergāmēna, sc. char- ta, parchment.	Prōcella, a storm.	Satrāpa, v. -es, m. a Persian governor.
Perna, a gammon of bacon.	Prōra, the prow.	Sātyra, a satyr.
Perfōna, a mask.	Prōsa, prose.	Scāla, a ladder.
Pertica, a pole.	Prōsapia, a race.	Scandūla, a lath to cov- er houses.
Petra, a rock.	Pruīna, hoar frost.	Scāpha, a boat.
Phālārīca, a long spear.	Prūna, a burning coal.	Scāpūla, the shoulder.
Phāretra, a quiver.	Pfaltria, a music girl.	Scēna, a stage.
Phāsiāna, sc. avis, a pheasant.	Puella, a girl.	Schēda, a sheet or scroll.
Phiāla, a vial.	Pugna, a battle.	Schōla, a school.
Philōmēla, a nightin- gale.	Pulpa, the pulp.	Scintilla, a spark.
Philŷra, the linden tree, a leaf of paper.	Pūpūla, the apple of the eye.	Scriblīta, a tart or wafer.
Phōca, a sea-calf.	Purpūra, purple.	Scrofūla, the king's evil.
	Pustūla, a blister.	Scurra, m. a buffoon.
	Pyra, a funeral pile.	Scūtīca, a scourge.
	Quadra, Ū -um, a square.	Scytāla, a kind of ser- pent, or round staff.
	Rābūla, m. a wrangler.	Sēlibra, half a pound.
		Sēmihōra, half an hour.
		Sēmīta,

Sēmīta, a path.	Sublīca, a pile.	Tūba, a trumpet.
Sententia, an opinion.	Sūbūcūla, a skirt.	Tūnica, a waistcoat.
Sentīna, a sink.	Sūbūla, an awl. [con.	Turba, a crowd.
Sēra, a lock.	Succīdia, a flitch of ba-	Turma, a troop.
Serra, a saw.	Summa, a sum, the	Ulna, an ell.
Sesquihōra, an hour and	whole.	Ūlūla, an owl.
a half.	Sūperbia, pride.	Ulva, sedge.
Sēta, a bristle.	Sūra, the calf of the leg.	Umbra, a shade.
Sīhylla, a propheteſs.	Sutrina, ſc. taberna,	Unda, a wave.
Sīca, a dagger.	a ſhoe-maker's ſhop.	Ungūla, a nail, the
Sīliqua, an huſk.	Sūtūra, a ſeam.	hoof.
Silva, a wood.	Sycōphanta, m. a	Ūpūpa, the houſe, a
Sīmīa, an ape.	ſcarper.	bird.
Sīmīla, flour.	Syllāba, a ſyllable.	Ūrīna, urine.
Sītūla, a bucket.	Symbōla, a club, a	Urna, an urn.
Sōcordia, ſloth.	ſhare of a reckoning.	Urtica, a nettle.
Sōlea, a ſhoe.	Symphōnia, harmony.	Ūva, a grape.
Sōphiſta, ſophiſt, m.	Syngſrapha, a bill or	Vacca, a cow.
a ſophiſt.	bond.	Vāgina, a ſcabbard.
Spēcūla, a watch tower.	Tāberna, a ſhop.	Vappa, ſpiced wine, a
Spelunca, a cave.	Tābūla, a table.	ſpendthrift.
Sphæra, a ſphere.	Tāda, a torch.	Vena, a vein.
Spica, an ear of corn.	Tānia, a ribbon.	Vēnia, leave.
Spīna, the back bone.	Techna, a trick or	Verna, m. an home-
Spīra, a wreath.	wile.	born ſlave.
Sponda, a bedſtead.	Tēgūla, a tile.	Verrūca, a wart.
Spongia, a ſponge.	Tēla, a web.	Vēsica, the bladder.
Sponſa, a bride.	Tēchra, a twindle.	Veſpa, a waſp.
Sporta, a baſket.	Terra, the earth.	Via, a way.
Spūma, foam.	Teſſera, a dye.	Vicia, a vetch or tare.
Squāma, a ſcale.	Teſta, an earthen pot.	Victīma, a victim.
Squilla, a prawn or	Textrina, a weaver's	Victōria, a conqueſt.
ſhrimp.	ſhop.	Villa, a country ſeat.
Stātēra, a balance.	Thēca, a caſe.	Vindēmia, vintage.
Stātua, a ſtatue.	Tibia, a pipe, the leg.	Vindiſta, vengeance:
Stella, a ſtar.	Tilia, the linden tree.	a rod laid on the head
Stipūla, ſtubble.	Tinea, a moth.	of ſlaves when freed.
Stīria, an icicle.	Tonſtrīna, a barber's	Viōla, a violet.
Stīva, the plough-tail.	ſhop.	Vipēra, a viper.
Stōla, a gown.	Trāgœdia, a tragedy.	Virga, a rod.
Strangūria, the making	Trāgūla, a javelin	Vita, life.
of water with great	with a barbed head.	Vikta, a fillet.
pain.	Trahea, a ſledge or dray.	Viverra, a ferret.
Strēna, a new year's	Trāma, the woof.	Vōla, the palm of the
gift.	Trochlea, a pulley.	band.
Strūma, a botch.	Trulla, a trowel.	Zōna, a girdle, a zone.
Stūpa, tow.	Trūtina, a balance.	

EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine: *Hadria*, the Hadriatic sea; *cōmeta*, a comet; *planēta*, a planet; and sometimes *talpa*, a mole; and *dāma*, a fallow-deer. *Pascha*, the passover, is neuter.

Exc. 2. The ancient Latins sometimes formed the genitive singular in *āi*; thus, *aula*, a hall, gen. *aulāi*; and sometimes likewise in *as*; which form the compounds of *fāmilia* usually retain; as, *māter-fāmīlias*, the mistress of a family; genit. *matris-familias*; nom. plur. *matres-familias*, or *matres-familiarum*.

Exc. 3. The following nouns have more frequently *ābus* in the dative and ablative plural, to distinguish them in these cases from masculines in *us* of the second declension:

Ānīma, the soul, the life.

Filia, & *Nāta*, a daughter.

Dea, a goddess.

Liberta, a freed woman.

Fqua, a mare.

Mūla, a she-mule.

Fāmūla, a female servant.

Thus *deābus*, *filiābus*, rather than *filīs*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS.

(Nouns in *as*, *es*, and *e*, of the first declension, are Greek. Nouns in *as* and *es* are masculine: nouns in *e* are feminine.)

(Nouns in *as* are declined like *penna*; only they have *am* or *an* in the accusative, as, *Ānēas*, *Āneās*, the name of a man; gen. *Ānēe*; dat. *-e*; acc. *-am* or *an*; voc. *-a*; abl. *ā*.) So *Bōreas*, *-eē*, the north wind; *Tiāras*, *-e*, a turban. In prose they have commonly *am*, but in poetry oftener *an*, in the accusative. Greek nouns in *a* have sometimes also *an* in the acc. in poetry; as *Ossa*, *-am*, or *-an*, the name of a mountain.

(Nouns in *es* and *e* are thus declined,

Anchīses, *Anchīses*, the name of a man.

Singular.

Nom. *Anchīses*,

Acc. *Anchisen*,

Gen. *Anchisæ*,

Voc. *Anchise*,

Dat. *Anchisæ*,

Abl. *Anchise*.

Pēnclōpe, *Penelope*, the name of a woman.

Singular.

Nom. *Pēnclōpe*,

Acc. *Penelopen*,

Gen. *Penelopes*,

Voc. *Penelope*,

Dat. *Penelope*,

Abl. *Penelope*.)

These

These nouns, being proper names, want the plural, unless when several of the same name are spoken of, and then they are declined like the plural of *penna*.

/ The Latins frequently turn Greek nouns in *es* and *e* into *a*; as, *Atrīda*, for *Atrīdes*; *Perſa*, for *Perſes*,) a Persian; *Geometra*, for *-tres*, a Geometrician; *Circa*, for *Circe*; *Epīdima*, for *-me*, an abridgment; *Grammātica*, for *-ce*, grammar; *Rhētōrica*, for *-ce*, oratory. So *Clinia*, for *Clinius*, &c. The accusative of nouns in *es* and *e* is found sometimes in *em*.

Note. We sometimes find the genit. plur. contracted; as, *Calicōlūm*, for *Calicolarum*; *Æneādūm*, for *-arum*.

SECOND DECLENSION.

(Nouns of the second declension end in *er*, *ir*, *ur*, *us*, *um*; *os*, *on*.)

/ Nouns in *um* and *on* are neuter; the rest are masculine.)

Nouns of the second declension have the gen. sing. in *i*; the dat. and abl. in *o*; the acc. in *um*; the voc. like the nom. (But nouns in *us* make the vocative in *e*.) The nom. and voc. plur. in *i*, or *a*; the gen. in *orum*; the dat. and abl. in *is*; and the acc. in *os*, or *a*; as,

/ *Gēner*, a son in law, masc.

Sing.	Plur.	Terminations.
<i>Nom.</i> gēner,	<i>Nom.</i> gēnēri,	<i>er</i> , <i>ir</i> , <i>us</i> , <i>i</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i> gēnēri,	<i>Gen.</i> generōrum,	<i>i</i> , <i>orum</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i> genero,	<i>Dat.</i> generis,	<i>o</i> , <i>is</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i> generum,	<i>Acc.</i> generos,	<i>um</i> , <i>os</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i> gener,	<i>Voc.</i> generi,	<i>er</i> , <i>ir</i> , <i>e</i> , <i>i</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i> genero.	<i>Abl.</i> generis.)	<i>o</i> , <i>is</i> .

After the same manner decline *sōcer*, *-ēri*, a father-in-law; *puer*, *-ēri*, a boy: So *Farcifer*, a villain; *Lucifer*, the morning star; *adulter*, an adulterer; *armiger*, an armour bearer; *presbyter*, an elder; *Mulciber*, a name of the god Vulcan; *vesper*, the evening; and *iber*, *-ēri*, a Spaniard, the only noun in *er* which has the gen. long, and its compound *Celiber*, *-ēri*: Also, *vir*, *viri*, a man, the only noun in *ir*; and its compounds, *Lēvir*, a brother-in-law; *Semivir*, *duumvir*, *triumvir*, &c. And likewise *Satur*, *-ūri*, full, (of old *satūrus*,) an adjective.

But

[But most nouns in *er* lose the *e* in the genitive ; as,
Ager, a field, masc.

Sing.

Plur.

Nom. āger,
Gen. agri,
Dat. agro,
Acc. agrum,
Voc. ager,
Abl. agro.

Nom. agri,
Gen. agrōrum,
Dat. agris,
Acc. agros,
Voc. agri,
Abl. agris.)

In like manner decline,

Āper, a wild boar. Cāper, an he goat. Fāber, a workman.
Arbiter, (Ů -tra,) a judge. Cōlūter, Ů -bra, a serpent. Māgister, a master.
Auster, the south-wind. Culter, the coultter of a plough, a knife. Mīnister, a servant.
Cancer, a crab fish. Scalper, a lancet.

Also *liber*, the bark of a tree, or a book, which has *libri* ; but *liber*, free, an adjective, and *Liber*, a name of Bacchus, the God of wine, have *liberi*. So likewise proper names, *Alexander, Evander, Periander, Mēnander, Teucer, Mēleāger, &c.* gen. *Alexandri, evandri, &c.*

[*Dōminus, a lord, masc.*

Sing.

Plur.

Nom. dōminus,
Gen. domini,
Dat. domino,
Acc. dominum,
Voc. domine,
Abl. domino.

Nom. dōmini,
Gen. dominōrum,
Dat. dominis,
Acc. dōminos,
Voc. domini,
Abl. dominis.)

In like manner decline,

Abācus, a table or desk. Argentārius, a banker. Cāchinnus, a loud laugh.
Ācervus, a heap. Arnius, the shoulder of a beast ; also of a man. Cādūceus, a wand.
Ācūleus, a sling. Āsinus, Ů -a, an ass. Cādus, a cask.
Āgnus, a lamb. Āstus, Ů -a, an ass. Cālāmus, a reed.
Ālnus, f. an alder tree. Autumnus, the autumn. Cālāthus, a basket.
Ālveus, the channel of a river. Āvus, a grandfather. Callus, Ů -um, hard flesh.
Āngūlus, a corner. Āvuncūlus, the mother's brother. Cānūnus, a chimney.
Ānūnus, the mind. Bajūlus, a porter. Campus, a plain.
Ānnus, a year. Barrus, an elephant. Canthārus, a cup or jug.
Ānnūlus, a ring. Bōlus, a morsel. Carduus, a thistle.
Ānus, a circle. Bombus, a buzz. Carpus, the wrist.
Architectus, a master-builder. Cāballus, a pack-horse. Carrus, Ů -um, a cart.

Cāseus,

Cāseus, <i>che. se.</i>	Cūbitus, <i>a cubit.</i>	Furnus, <i>an oven.</i>
Cātālōgus, <i>a roll.</i>	Cūcullus, <i>a hood.</i>	Fūsus, <i>a spindle.</i>
Cātīnus, <i>a platter.</i>	Cūcūlus <i>vel</i> cūcūlus, <i>a</i> <i>cuckoo.</i>	Gallus, <i>a cock.</i>
Caurus, <i>a west wind.</i>	Cūleus, <i>a leathern bag.</i>	Gērūlus, <i>a porter.</i>
Cedrus, <i>f. a cedar tree.</i>	Culmus, <i>a stalk.</i>	Gibbus, <i>a swelling.</i>
Cervus, <i>a stag.</i>	Cūlullus, <i>a pot or jug.</i>	Glādius, <i>a sword.</i>
Cetus, <i>a whale, pl. ce-</i> <i>te, n. indecl.</i>	Cūmūlus, <i>an heap.</i>	Glōbus, <i>a globe.</i>
Chīrurgus, <i>a surgeon.</i>	Cūneus, <i>a wedge.</i>	Grābātus, <i>a couch.</i>
Chōrus, <i>a choir.</i>	Cūnicūlus, <i>a rabbit.</i>	Grācūlus, <i>a jackdaw.</i>
Cibus, <i>meat.</i>	Cyāthus, <i>a cup or glass.</i>	Grūmus, <i>a billock.</i>
Cincinnus, <i>a curl.</i>	Cygnus, <i>a swan.</i>	Guttus, <i>a cruet or vial.</i>
Cinnus, <i>a medley.</i>	Cylindrus, <i>a roller.</i>	Gyrus, <i>a circle.</i>
Cippus, <i>a grave-stone.</i>	Diālōgus, <i>a discourse</i> <i>between two or more.</i>	Hædus, <i>a kid.</i>
Circinus, <i>a pair of</i> <i>compasses. (circle.</i>	Dīgītus, <i>a finger.</i>	Hāmus, <i>a hook.</i>
Circus & circūlus, <i>a</i>	Discus, <i>a quoit.</i>	Hāriōlus, <i>a diviner.</i>
Cirrus, <i>a tuft, or curl.</i>	Dīvus, <i>a god.</i>	Hērū, <i>a master.</i>
Citrus, <i>f. a citron tree.</i>	Dōlus, <i>deceit,</i>	Hesp̄rus, <i>the evening.</i>
Clathrus, <i>a grate.</i>	Dūmus, <i>a bush.</i>	Hinnūleus, <i>a young</i> <i>hind or fawn.</i>
Clāvus, <i>a nail.</i>	Echīnus, <i>an urchin.</i>	Hinnūs, <i>a mule.</i>
Clēbānus, <i>a portable</i> <i>oven.</i>	Elēgus, <i>an elegy.</i>	Hircus, <i>a goat.</i>
Clivus, <i>a bill.</i>	Ephēbus, <i>a youth.</i>	Hortus, <i>a garden.</i>
Clypeus, <i>a round shield.</i>	Epilōgus, <i>a conclusion.</i>	Hūmērus, <i>a shoulder.</i>
Coccus, <i>v. -um. scarlet.</i>	Episcōpus, <i>an overseer,</i> <i>a bishop.</i>	Hydrus, <i>a water-ser-</i> <i>pent.</i>
Colāphus, <i>a box on the</i> <i>ear.</i>	Lquūleus, <i>an instru-</i> <i>ment of torture.</i>	Internunciū, <i>a go be-</i> <i>tween.</i>
Condu, <i>a butler.</i>	Equus, <i>an horse.</i>	Isthmus, <i>a neck of land</i> <i>between two seas.</i>
Condylus, <i>the knuckle.</i>	Frēbus, <i>bell.</i>	Juncus, <i>a bulrush.</i>
Congius, <i>a gallon.</i>	Eurus, <i>the east wind.</i>	Jūvencus, <i>a bullock.</i>
Consobrīnus, <i>a cousin-</i> <i>german by the mother's</i> <i>side.</i>	Fāgus, <i>f. a beech-tree.</i>	Lābŷrinthus, <i>a maze.</i>
Contus, <i>a long pole.</i>	Fāmūlus, <i>a man ser-</i> <i>vant.</i>	Lācertus, <i>the arm.</i>
Conus, <i>a cone.</i>	Fāvōnius, <i>the west wind.</i>	Lānius, <i>a butcher.</i>
Cophīnus, <i>a basket.</i>	Fāvus, <i>an honeycomb.</i>	Lāqueus, <i>a noose.</i>
Cōquus, <i>a cook.</i>	Figūlus, <i>a potter.</i>	Leētus, <i>a couch.</i>
Cornus, <i>f. the cornel</i> <i>tree.</i>	Fiscus, <i>the exchequer.</i>	Lēgātus, <i>an ambassador.</i>
Corvus, <i>a raven.</i>	Floccus, <i>a lock of wool.</i>	Lēgūleius, <i>an ignorant</i> <i>lawyer, a pettefogger.</i>
Cōrylus, <i>f. a hase-tree.</i>	Flūvius, <i>a river.</i>	Lēthargus, <i>the lethargy.</i>
Corymbus, <i>a bunch of</i> <i>ivy berries.</i>	Fōcus, <i>a hearth.</i>	Limbus, <i>a selvedge.</i>
Cōryphæus, <i>a ring-</i> <i>leader.</i>	Fraxīnus, <i>f. an ash tree.</i>	Līmus, <i>slime.</i>
Cōrytus, <i>or -os, a bow-</i> <i>case.</i>	Fritillus, <i>a dice-box.</i>	Lītūus, <i>a crooked staff.</i>
Cōthurnus, <i>a buskin.</i>	Fūcus, <i>a drone bee,</i> <i>paint.</i>	Lūcus, <i>a sacred grove.</i>
	Fūmus, <i>smoke. [dancer.</i>	Lumbrīcus, <i>an earth</i> <i>worm.</i>
	Fūnambūlus, <i>a rope-</i>	Lumbus, <i>the loin.</i>
	Fundus, <i>a farm.</i>	Lūpus, <i>a wolf.</i>
	Fungus, <i>a mushroom.</i>	Lychnus, <i>a lamp.</i>

Māgus, *a magician.*Malleus, *a mallet.*Mēlus, *the mast of a ship.*Mālus, *f. an apple-tree.*Mannus, *a little horse.*Māthēmāticus, *a mathematician.*Mēdiastīnus, *a slave, a drudge.*Mēdicus, *a physician.*Mendīcus, *a beggar.*Mergus, *a cormorant.*Milvus, *a kite.*Mīmus, *a mimic.*Mōdius, *a bushel.*Mōdus, *a manner.*Mōechus, *an adulterer.*Mōrus, *f. a mulberry tree.*Mūcus, *the fish of the nose, snout.*Mullus, *a mullet fish.*Mūlus, & -a, *a mule.*Mūrus, *a wall.*Muscus, *moss.*Myrtus, *f. a myrtle tree.*Nævus, *a spot.*Nānus, *a dwarf.*Nāsus, *the nose.*Nervus, *a string.*Nīdus, *a nest.*Nimbus, *a cloud.*Nōdus, *a knot.*Nōthus, *a bastard.*Nōtus, *the south wind.*Nucleus, *a kernel.*Nūmērus, *a number.*Nummus, *a piece of money.*Nuntius, *a messenger.*Obōlus, *a farthing.*Occānus, *the ocean.*Occūlus, *the eye.*Orcus, *hell.*Ornus, *f. a wild ash.*Ostrācīsmus, *a voting with shells.*Padāgōgus, *a servant who attended boys.*Pāgus, *a canton or village.*Pālus, *a stake.*Pannus, *cloth.*Pārāsītus, *a flatterer.*Pardus, *a panther.*Pārōchus, *an entertainer.*Patruus, *the father's brother.*Patrōnus, *a patron.*Pēdicūlus, *a louse.*Pēsūlus, *a belt.*Pētāsus, *a broad brimmed hat.*Phārus, or -os, *a watch-tower.*Philōsōphus, *a lover of wisdom.*Phœbus, *poet. the sun.*Phŷsicus, *an inquirer into nature.*Pīcus, *a wood-pecker.*Pīleus, *a hat.*Pīlus, *a hair.*Pīrus, *f. a pear-tree.*Plāgiarius, *a plagiarist, a man-stealer; or one who steals from others books.*Plānus, *a vagrant, a beggar.*Plūteus, *a pent-house, a press for books.*Pōlus, *the pole, heaven.*Pontus, *the sea.*Pōpūlus, *a people.*Pōpūlus, *f. a poplar-tree.*Porcus, *a hog.*Porrus, *a leak.*Primīpīlus, *the chief centurion.*Prīvignus, *a stepson.*Prōcus, *a suitor.*Prōmus, *a steward.*Prūnus, *f. a plum-tree.*Psittācus, *a parrot.*Pugnus, *the fist.*Pullus, *a chicken.*Pulvīnus, *a pillow.*Pūpillus, *an orphan.*Pūpus, *a young child, a babe.*Pūteus, *a well.*Quālus & quāfillus, *a basket.* [grapes.Rācēmus, *a cluster of*Rādīus, *a ray.*Rāmus, *a branch.*Rēmus, *an oar.*Rhombus, *a turbot.*Rhonchus, *a snorting.*Riscus, *a trunk.*Rīvus, *a rivulet.*Rōgus, *a funeral pile.*Rythmus, *metre, rhyme.*Saccus, *a sack.*Sarcōphāgus, *a stone, in which dead bodies were inclosed.*Sātŷrus, *a satyr, a kind of demigod.*Scalmus, *a boat; a piece of wood where the oars hang.*Scāpus, *a stalk, a staff or scank.*Scārus, *the scar, a fish.*Scirpus, *a rush.*Sciūrus, *a squirrel.*Scōpūlus, *a rock.*Scōpus, *a mark.*Scrūpūlus, *a doubt or scruple.*Scrūpus, *a little stone.*Scyphus, *a bowl.*Servus, *a slave.*Sestertius, *two pounds and a half; a sesterce, a Roman coin.*Sīcarius, *an assassin.*Sīmīus, & -a, *an ape.*Sīrius, *the dog star.*Soccus, *a kind of shoe.*Somnus, *sleep.*Sōnus, *a sound.*Spārus, *a spear.*Sponsus, *a bridegroom.*

Stimūlus,

Stimulus, a sting, a spur.	Thronus, a royal seat.	Typus, a figure or type.
Stomachus, the stomach.	Thyasus, a chorus in honour of Bacchus.	Ulmus, f. an elm tree.
Strupus, a thong, a strap.	Thyrus, a spear wrapt with ivy.	Umbilicus, the navel.
Stylus, a style, or iron pen to write with on waxen tables.	Titulus, a title.	Uncus, a hook.
Sulculus, a swine herd.	Tonus, a volume.	Urceus, a pitcher.
Succus, juice.	Tonus, a note in music.	Ursus, a bear.
Sulcus, a furrow.	Tophus, a gravel stone.	Urus, a buffalo.
Surculus, a young twig.	Tornus, a turner's wheel.	Uterus, the womb.
Sufurrus, a whisper.	Torus, a couch.	Vallus, a stake.
Talus, the ankle, a die.	Tribulus, a thistle.	Veneficus, a sorcerer.
Taurus, a bull.	Triumphus, a triumph.	Ventus, the wind.
Taxus, f. the yew tree.	Trachus, a top.	Vicus, a village, a street.
Terminus, a bound.	Truncus, the trunk.	Villicus, & -a, an overseer of a farm.
Thalamus, a marriage bed-chamber.	Tubus, a tube or pipe.	Villus, shaggy hair.
Theologus, a divine.	Tumulus, a hillock.	Vitellus, the yolk of an egg.
Thesaurus, a treasure.	Turdus, a thrush.	Vitricus, a stepfather.
Thelus, the roof of a temple.	Tyrannus, a tyrant.	Vitulus, a calf [wind].
		Zephyrus, the west-

Regnum, a kingdom, neut.

Sing.

Plur.

Nom. regnum,	Nom. regna,
Gen. regni,	Gen. regnorum,
Dat. regno,	Dat. regnis,
Acc. regnum,	Acc. regna,
Voc. regnum,	Voc. regna,
Abl. regno :	Abl. regnis.)

In like manner decline,

Acetum, vinegar.	Armentum, an herd.	Butyrum, butter.
Acōnītum, wolfs-bane, a poisonous plant.	Arvum, & -us, a field.	Calum, a graving tool.
Adagium, a proverb.	Astrum, a star.	Cementum, materials for building.
Admīcūlum, a prop.	Asylum, a sanctuary.	Canistrum, a basket.
Adytum, the most secret part of a temple.	Atrium, a court or hall.	Capistrum, a halter or muzzle.
Album, a register.	Auleum, tapestry.	Castum, a castle.
Allium, garlick.	Aurum, gold.	Centrum, the centre.
Amentum, a thong.	Auxilium, assistance.	Cerebrum, the brain.
Amuletum, a charm.	Aviārium, a cage.	Chirographum, a hand-writing.
Anethum, anise.	Balsamum, balm.	Cilium, the eye-lashes.
Anticum, a fore-door.	Bārathrum, an abyss.	Citrum, citron wood.
Antrum, a cave.	Basium, a kiss.	Classicum, a trumpet.
Apium, parsley.	Bellum, war.	Cælum, pl. -i, heaven.
Argentum, silver.	Biduum, two days.	Cœnum,
	Biennium, two years.	
	Brachium, an arm.	

Cænum, mire, dirt.	Ervum, vetches.	Initium, a beginning.
Collōquium, a conference.	Ersēdum, a chariot.	Intervallum, distance between.
Collum, the neck.	Everricūlum, a drag-net.	Jūdicium, judgment.
Commōdum, advantage.	Exemplum, an example.	Jūgūlum, the throat.
Confinium, a bound or limit.	Exitium, destruction.	Jūgum, a yoke, the ridge of a hill.
Congiārium, a largess.	Exordium, a beginning.	Jurgium, a quarrel.
Convīcium, a reproach.	Fānum, a temple.	Jussum, an order.
Cōrium, a hide.	Fascinum, witchcraft.	Justitium, a vacation.
Costum, spikenard.	Fastigium, the top.	Lābium, the lip.
Crēmum, a dry stick.	Fercūlum, a dish of meat.	Lardum, bacon.
Crēpusculum, the twilight.	Ferrum, iron.	Lāsānum, a chamber-pot.
Cribrum, a sieve.	Filum, a thread.	Libum, a sweet-cake.
Cubiculum, a bed-chamber.	Flābellum, a fan.	Līcium, the woof.
Cumīnum, cumin, an herb.	Flagrum & flagellum, a whip.	Lignum, wood.
Cymbālum, a cymbal.	Flammeum, a veil.	Līlium, a lily.
Damnum, loss.	Fœnum, hay.	Linteum, a sheet.
Dēlūbrum, a temple.	Fōlium, a leaf.	Līnum, lint.
Dēmensum, an allowance of meat.	Fōrum, a market-place.	Lōrum, a thong.
Detrimentum, damage.	Frāgum, a strawberry.	Lūcrum, gain.
Diārium, a day's wages.	Frētum, a narrow sea.	Lūdibrium, a laughing stock.
Dīlucūlum, the dawning of day.	Frūmentum, corn.	Lustrum, a survey.
Dium, poet. the open air.	Frustum, a bit or piece.	Lūteum, the yolk of an egg.
Dōlium, a cask.	Fulcrum, a prop.	Lūtum, clay.
Dōmicīlium, an abode.	Furtum, theft.	Macellum, the scambles.
Dōnum, a gift.	Grānārium, a granary.	Mānubrium, a hilt or handle.
Dorsum, the back.	Grānum, a grain.	Matrīmōnium, marriage.
Effūgium, an escape.	Grāphium, a pencil.	Mausolæum, any sumptuous monument.
Electrum, amber.	Grēmum, the bosom.	Membrum, a member.
Elementum, an element, a letter.	Gymnāsium, a place of exercise.	Mendācium, a lie.
Elōgium, a brief saying, a testimonial in one's praise.	Gynæcēum, the women's apartment.	Mentum, the chin.
Emōlumentum, profit.	Gypsum, plaster.	Mētallum, metal, a mine.
Emplastrum, a plaster.	Hautrum, a bucket.	Mīlium, millet, a kind of grain.
Empōrium, a mart or market town.	Heliebōrum, & -us, heliobore, a plant.	Mīnium, vermilion.
Ephippium, a saddle.	Hōrōlōgium, any thing that tells the hours.	Mōmentum, weight, importance.
Epitāphium, an inscription on a tomb.	Idōlum, an image.	Mōnōpōlium, the sole right of selling any thing.
Ergastūlum, a work-house.	Idyllium, a pastoral poem.	Monstrum, a monster, any
	Impērium, command.	
	Inceptum, an enterprise.	
	Indicium, a discovery.	
	Indūsiūm, a shirt.	
	Ingēnium, wit, genius.	

<i>any thing against the common course of nature.</i>	Perpendiculū, <i>a straight line upwards or downwards.</i>	Rastrum, <i>a rake.</i>
Mortarium, <i>a mortar.</i>	Pectoritum, <i>a waggon.</i>	Refugium, <i>a shelter.</i>
Museum, <i>a study or library.</i>	Pilentum, <i>a chariot.</i>	Remedium, <i>a cure.</i>
Mustum, <i>new wine.</i>	Pilum, <i>a javelin.</i>	Remuleum, <i>a tow-barge.</i>
Mysterium, <i>a mystery, a thing not easily comprehended.</i>	Pistillum, <i>the pestle of a mortar.</i>	Rēpāgūlum, <i>a bar.</i>
Nasturtium, <i>creases.</i>	Pisum, <i>pease.</i>	Rēpūdium, <i>a divorce.</i>
Naulum, <i>freight.</i>	Plaustrum, <i>a waggon.</i>	Responsum, <i>an answer.</i>
Naufragium, <i>shipwreck.</i>	Plectrum, <i>a quill or bow to play with on a musical instrument.</i>	Retinaculum, <i>a cable.</i>
Negotium, <i>a thing, business.</i>	Plumbum, <i>lead.</i>	Rostrum, <i>the bill of a bird, the beak of a ship.</i>
Nitrum, <i>nitre.</i>	Pomarium, <i>an orchard.</i>	Rudimentum, <i>pl. -a, the first principles of any art.</i>
Obsequium, <i>compliance.</i>	Pomcerium, <i>a void space on each side of a town-wall.</i>	Rutrum, <i>a pick-ax.</i>
Odium, <i>hatred.</i>	Pomum, <i>an apple.</i>	Sabbatum, <i>the sabbath.</i>
Omasum, <i>the paunch.</i>	Posticum, <i>a back-door.</i>	Sabulum, <i>gravel.</i>
Omentum, <i>the caul, or skin which covers the bowels.</i>	Postliminium, <i>a return to one's country.</i>	Saccharum, <i>sugar.</i>
Oppidum, <i>a town.</i>	Prædium, <i>a farm.</i>	Sacellum, <i>a chapel.</i>
Opprobrium, <i>a reproach.</i>	Prejudicium, <i>a fore-judging.</i>	Sacerdotium, <i>the priesthood.</i>
Opsonium, <i>fish, or any thing eaten with bread.</i>	Prælium, <i>a battle.</i>	Sacramentum, <i>a military oath.</i>
Organum, <i>any instrument. [the lips.]</i>	Præmium, <i>a reward.</i>	Sacrificium, <i>a sacrifice.</i>
Osculum, <i>a kiss; pl.</i>	Præsidium, <i>a defence, a garrison.</i>	Sacrilegium, <i>stealing sacred things.</i>
Ostrum, <i>purple.</i>	Prandium, <i>a dinner.</i>	Sagum, <i>a soldier's cloak.</i>
Otium, <i>repose.</i>	Pratum, <i>a meadow.</i>	Salarium, <i>a salary.</i>
Ostium, <i>the door.</i>	Prælum, <i>a press.</i>	Salinum, <i>a salt-cellar.</i>
Ovum, <i>an egg.</i>	Prætium, <i>a price.</i>	Salsamentum, <i>salt-meat.</i>
Pabulum, <i>fodder.</i>	Primordium, <i>a beginning.</i>	Salum, <i>the sea.</i>
Pactum, <i>an agreement.</i>	Principium, <i>a beginning.</i>	Sandalium, <i>a slipper.</i>
Palatium, <i>a palace.</i>	Privilegium, <i>a private law or special right.</i>	Sarculum, <i>a weeding-book, a spade.</i>
Palatum, <i>the palate.</i>	Probrum, <i>a disgrace.</i>	Sarinentum, <i>a twig.</i>
Pallium, <i>a cloak.</i>	Prodigium, <i>a prodigy, any thing preternatural.</i>	Satisfactum, <i>a bond of security.</i>
Paludamentum, <i>a general's robe.</i>	Promissum, <i>a promise.</i>	Saxum, <i>a large stone.</i>
Panarium, <i>a bread-basket.</i>	Propositum, <i>a purpose.</i>	Scalprum, <i>dim. Scalpellum, a knife.</i>
Patibulum, <i>a gibbet.</i>	Propugnaculum, <i>a bulwark. [saying.]</i>	Scamnum, <i>dim. Scabellum, a bench or form.</i>
Pensum, <i>a task. [robe.]</i>	Proverbium, <i>an old saying.</i>	Sceptrum, <i>a sceptre, a mace.</i>
Peplum, <i>a woman's dress.</i>	Pulpitum, <i>a pulpit.</i>	Scitum, <i>a decree.</i>
Perjūrium, <i>perjury, taking a false oath.</i>	Ramentum, <i>a chip or shaving.</i>	Scortum, <i>an harlot.</i>
		Scrinium, <i>a coffer.</i>
		Scriptum,

Scriptum, a writing.	Sterquilinium, a dung-bill.	Tinnābūlum, a little bell.
Scrūpulum, a scruple, a certain weight.	Stipendium, pay.	Tirocinium, an apprenticeship.
Scūtum, a shield.	Stragulum, a blanket.	Tormentum, an engine, a torment.
Sēculum, an age.	Stratum, a couch.	Toxicum, poison.
Sēminārium, a nursery.	Strigmentum, a scraping.	Tributum, tax or custom.
Sēnāculum, a senate-house.	Studium, desire, study.	Triclinium, a dining-room.
Sēnātūs consultum, a decree of the senate.	Stuprum, debauchery.	Triduum, three days.
Sēricum, silk.	Suāvium, a kiss.	Triennium, three years.
Servitium, slavery.	Subsellium, a bench.	Triputium, a dancing.
Serpyllum, wild thyme.	Subsidium, help.	Trivium, a place where three ways meet.
Sertum, a garland.	Suburbanum, a house near the town.	Tropæum, a trophy, a token of victory.
Serum, robbery.	Suburbium, the suburbs, the part of a town without the walls.	Tugūrium, a cottage.
Sestertium, a thousand sesterii.	Sūdārium, a handkerchief.	Tympānum, a drum.
Sevum, tallow.	Suffragium, a vote.	Vaccinium, a berry.
Signum, a sign, a standard.	Suggestum, ἔ -us, ūs, a place raised above others.	Vādīmōnium, bail; a promise to appear in court.
Sigillum, a seal.	Sunnārium, an abridgment.	Vādum, a ford, the sea.
Silicernium, a funeral supper, an old man.	Supercilium, the brow, pride.	Vallum, a rampart.
Sinum, a milk pail.	Suspīrium, a sigh.	Velum, a veil, a sail.
Sistrum, a timbrel.	Symbolum, a sign or token.	Venābūlum, a hunting pole.
Sōdālitiūm, a company, a corporation.	Sympōsium, ἑ -on, a banquet.	Venenum, poison.
Sōlārium, a sun-dial.	Tabernaculum, a tent.	Ventilabrum, a fan.
Sōlātium, comfort.	Tābulatum, a story.	Verbum, a word.
Sōlium, a throne.	Tābum, black gore.	Vestibulum, a porch.
Solum, the ground.	Tædium, weariness.	Vestigium, the print of the foot.
Somnium, a dream.	Tālentum, a talent.	Vexillum, a banner.
Spātium, a space.	Teetum, the roof, a house.	Viaticum, money, or provisions for a journey.
Speetāculum, a show.	Telum, a weapon.	Vinculum, a chain.
Speetrum, a phantom, or apparition.	Templum, a church.	Vinum, wine.
Speetulum, a looking glass.	Tergum, the back.	Vitium, vice, a fault.
Spelæum, a den.	Testimōnium, an evidence.	Vitrum, glass.
Spicillegium, a gleanings.	Theatrum, a theatre.	Vivarium, a place to keep beasts in, a warren or fish-pond.
Spiculūm, a dart.	Thūribūlum, a censer, a vessel to burn incense in.	Vocābūlum, a name or word.
Spiraculum, a breathing hole.		Votum, a vow.
Spolium, spoil.		
Spūtum, spittle.		
Stābūlum, a stable.		
Stādium, a furlong.		
Stagnum, a pond.		
Stannum, tin.		

EXCEPTIONS in Gender.

Exc. 1. The following nouns in *us* are feminine, *hūmus*, the ground ; *alvus*, the belly ; *vannus*, a sieve.

And the following, derived from Greek nouns in *os* :

Abyssus, <i>a bottomless pit.</i>	Carbāsus, <i>a sail.</i>	Erēmus, <i>a desert.</i>
Antidōtus, <i>a preservative against poison.</i>	Dialectus, <i>a dialect, or manner of speech.</i>	Méthodus, <i>a method.</i>
Arctos, <i>the Bear, a constellation near the north pole.</i>	Diāmetros, <i>the diameter of a circle.</i>	Périodus, <i>a period.</i>
	Diphthongus, <i>a diphthong.</i>	Pérímetros, <i>the circumference.</i>
		Phārus, <i>a watch tower.</i>
		Synodus, <i>an assembly.</i>

To these add some names of jewels and plants, because *gemma* and *planta* are feminine ; as,

Amēthystus, <i>an amethyst.</i> [solite.	Sappirus, <i>a sapphire.</i>	Byssus, <i>fine flax or linen.</i>
Chrysolithus, <i>a chrysolith.</i>	Topazius, <i>a topaz.</i>	
Chrysōphrāsus, <i>a kind of topaz.</i>	Biblus, { <i>an Egyptian reed of</i>	Costus, <i>costmary.</i>
Chrysalus, <i>crystal.</i>	Papyrus, { <i>which paper was made.</i>	Crōcus, <i>saffron.</i>
Leucōchrysus, <i>a jacinth.</i>		Hysōpus, <i>hyssop.</i>
		Nardus, <i>spikenard.</i>

Other names of jewels are generally masculine ; as, *Bēryllus*, the beryl ; *carbunculus*, a carbuncle ; *Pyrōpus*, a ruby ; *Smāragdus*, an emerald. : And also names of plants ; as, *Aspārāgus*, asparagus, or sparrowgrass ; *ellebōrus*, ellobore ; *raphānus*, radish or colewort ; *intybus*, endive or succory, &c.

Exc. 2. The nouns which follow, are either masculine or feminine :

Ātōmus, <i>an atom.</i>	Barbītus, <i>a harp.</i>	Grossus, <i>a green fig.</i>
Balānus, <i>the fruit of the palm-tree, ointment.</i>	Cāmēlus, <i>a camel.</i>	Pēnus, <i>a store-house.</i>
	Cōlus, <i>a distaff.</i>	Phāsēlus, <i>a little ship.</i>

Exc. 3. *Vīrus*, poison ; *pēlāgus*, the sea, are neuter.

Exc. 4. *Vulgus*, the common people, is either masculine or neuter, but oftener neuter.

EXCEPTIONS in Declension.

(Proper names in *ius* lose *us* in the vocative ; as, *Hōrātius*, *Hōrāti* ; *Virgilius*, *Virgili* ; *Georgius*, *Georgi*, names of men ; *Lārius*, *Lāri* ; *Mincius*, *Minci*, names of lakes. *Filius*, a son, also hath *filī* : *gēnius*, one's guardian angel, *geni* ; and *deus*, a god, hath *deus*, in the voc.

and in the plural more frequently *dii* and *diis*, than *dēi* and *dēis*. *Meus*, my, an adjective pronoun, hath *mi*, and sometimes *meus* in the vocative.

Other nouns in *ius* have *e*; as, *tābellārius*, *tabellarie*, a letter-carrier; *pīus*, *pie*, &c. So these epithets, *Dēlius*, *Dēlie*; *Tīrynthius*, *Tīrynthie*; and these possessives, *Laertius*, *Laertie*; *Saturnius*, *Saturnie*, &c. which are not considered as proper names.

The poets sometimes make the voc. of nouns in *us* like the nom. as, *fluvius*, *Latinus*, for *fluvie*, *Latine*, Virg. This also occurs in prose, but more rarely. Thus, *Audi tu pōpulus*, for *pōpule*. Liv. i, 24.

The poets also change nouns in *er* unto *us*; as *Evander*, or *Evandrus*, voc. *Evander*, or *Evandre*: So *Meander*, *Leander*, *Tymber*, *Tacer*, &c. and so anciently *puer* in the voc. had *puere* from *puerus*.

Note, When the gen. sing. ends in *ii*, the latter *i* is sometimes taken away by the poets, for the sake of quantity; as, *tugūrī*, for *tugurii*; *ingēnī*, for *ingenii*, &c. And in the gen. plur. we find *dēūm*, *liberūm*, *fabrūm*, *duūm virūm*, &c. for *dēorum*, *liberorum*, &c. and in poetry, *Teucrūm*, *Graiūm*, *Argivūm*, *Dānāūm*, *Pēlōsgūm*, &c. for *Teucrorum*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS.

(*Os* and *on* are Greek terminations; as, *Alphēos*, a river in Greece; *īlion*, the city Troy; and are often changed into *us* and *um*, by the Latins; *Alphēus*, *īlium*, which are declined like *dominus* and *regnum*.)

Nouns in *es* or *ius* are sometimes contracted in the genitive; as, *Orphēus*, gen. *Orphēi*, *Orphēi* or *Orphēi*. So *Tlesēus*, *Promethēus*, &c. But nouns in *eus*, when the *eu* is a diphthong, are of the third declension.

Some nouns in *os* have the gen. sing. in *o*; as, *Androgeos*, gen. *Androgeo*, or *-ii*, the name of a man; *Athos*, *Atho*, or *-i*, a hill in Macedonia: both which are also found in the third decl. thus, nom. *Androgeo*, gen. *Androgeōnis*: So *Atho* or *Athon*, *-onis*, &c. Anciently nouns in *os*, in imitation of the Greeks, had the gen. in *u*; as, *Mēnandru*, *Apollodōru*, for *Mēnandri*, *Apollodori*, Ter.

Nouns in *os* have the acc. in *um* or *on*; as, *Delos* or *Delos*, acc. *Delum* or *Delon*, the name of an island.

Some neuters have the gen. plur. in *ēn*; as, *Georgica*, gen. pl. *Georgicōn*, books which treat of husbandry, as, Virgil's *Georgicks*.

(THIRD DECLENSION.)

There are more nouns of the third declension than of all the other declensions together. The number of its final syllables is not ascertained. Its final letters, are thirteen, *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *y*, *c*, *d*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *x*. Of these, eight are peculiar to this declension, namely, *i*, *o*, *y*, *c*, *d*, *l*, *t*, *x*; *a* and *e* are common to it with the first declension; *n* and *r*, with

with the second ; and *s*, with all the other declensions. *A*, *i*, and *y*, are peculiar to Greek nouns.

The terminations of the different 'cases are these : nom. sing. *a*, *e*, &c. ; gen. *is* ; dat. *i* ; acc. *em* ; voc. *the same with the nominative* ; abl. *e*, or *i* ; nom. acc. and voc. plur. *es*, *a*, or *ia* ; gen. *um*, or *ium* ; dat. and abl. *ibus* ; thus,

Sermo, <i>speech</i> , <i>masc.</i>	
Sing.	Plur.
N. sermo,	N. sermōnes,
G. sermōnis,	G. sermōnum,
D. sermoni,	D. sermonibus,
A. sermonem,	A. sermōnes,
V. sermo,	V. sermōnes,
A. sermone.	A. sermonibus.)

Căput, <i>the head</i> , <i>neut.</i>	
Sing.	Plur.
N. căput,	N. capita,
G. capitis,	G. capitum,
D. capiti,	D. capitibus,
A. caput,	A. capita,
V. caput,	V. capita,
A. capite.	A. capitibus.)

Rupes, <i>a rock</i> , <i>fem.</i>	
Sing.	Plur.
N. rūpes,	N. rupes,
G. rupis,	G. rupium,
D. rupi,	D. rupibus,
A. rupem,	A. rupes,
V. rupes,	V. rupes,
A. rupe.	A. rupibus.)

Sedile, <i>a seat</i> , <i>neut.</i>	
Sing.	Plur.
N. sedile,	N. sedilia,
G. sedilis,	G. sedilium,
D. sedili,	D. sedilibus,
A. sedile,	A. sedilia,
V. sedile,	V. sedilia,
A. sedili.	A. sedilibus.)

Lapis, <i>a stone</i> , <i>masc.</i>	
Sing.	Plur.
N. lāpis,	N. lāpides,
G. lapīdis,	G. lapidum,
D. lapidi,	D. lapidibus,
A. lapidem,	A. lapides,
V. lapis,	V. lapides,
A. lapide.	A. lapidibus.)

Iter, <i>a journey</i> , <i>neut.</i>	
Sing.	Plur.
N. iter,	N. itinēra,
G. itinēris,	G. itinerum,
D. itinēri,	D. itinēribus,
A. iter,	A. itinera,
V. iter,	V. itinera,
A. itinere.	A. itineribus.)

Of the *GENDER* and *GENITIVE* of Nouns of the Third Declension.

A, *E*, *I*, and *Y*.

1. (Nouns in *a*, *e*, *i*, and *y*, are neuter.)

(Nouns in *a* form the genitive in *ātis* ; as, *diadēma*, *diadēmātis*,) a crown ; *dogma*, *-ātis*, an opinion. So,

Ænigma, a riddle.

Diplōma, a charter.

Poēma, a poem.

Apōthēgma, a short
pithy saying.

Ēpigramma, an in-
scription.

Schēma, a scheme or
figure.

Arōma, sweet spices.

Nūmīsmā, a coin.

Sōphīsmā, a deceitful

Axiōma, a plain truth.

Phasma, an apparition.

argument.

Stemna,

Stemma, a pedigree.
Stigma, a mark or
brand, a disgrace.

Strātāgēma, an artful
contrivance.
Thēma, a theme, a

subject to write or
speak on.
Tōreuma, a carved
vessel.

Nouns in *e* change *e* into *is* ; as, *rēle*, *retis*, a net. So,
Ancile, a shield. Crīnāle, a pin for the Nāvāle, a dock or place
Aplustre, the flag of a ship. hair. for shipping.
Cūbīle, a couch. Ōvīle, a sheep-fold.
Campestre, a pair of Equīle, a stable for Præsēpe, a stall ; a
drawers. horses. bee-hive.
Cochleāre, a spoon. Lāqueāre, a ceiled roof. Sēcāle, rye.
Conclāve, a room. Mantīle, a towel. Sūle, a fore-cote.
Mōnīle, a necklace. Tibīale, a stocking.

Nouns in *i* are generally indeclinable ; as, *gummi*, gum ;
zingītēri, ginger : but some Greek nouns add *ilis* ; as,
hydrōmēli, *hydromelitis*, water and honey sodden together,
mead.

Nouns in *y* add *os* ; as, *moly*, *molyos*, an herb ; *mysy*, *-yes*,
vitriol.

O.

2. (Nouns in *o* are masculine, and form the
genitive in *ōnis* ;) as,

Sermo, *sermōnis*, speech ; draco, *dracōnis*, a dragon. — So,
Agāso, a horse-keeper. Cārio, the chief of a Pēro, a kind of shoe.
Aquilo, the north wind. ward or curi. Præco, a common crier.
Arrhābo, an earnest- Equiso, a groom or Prædo, a robber.
penny, a pledge. ofler. Pulmo, the lungs.
Bālatro, a pitiful fel- Erro, a wanderer. Pāso, a little child.
low. Fullo, a fuller of cloth. Salmo, a salmon.
Bambālio, a flatterer. Helluo, a glutton. Sannio, a buffoon.
Bāro, a blockhead. Histrīo, a player. Sāpo, soap.
Būbo, an owl. Iatro, a robber. Sīpho, a pipe or tube.
Būfo, a toad. Lēno, a pimp. Spādo, an eunuch.
Cālo, a soldier's slave. Lūdio, & -ius, a player. Stōlo, a shoot or scion.
Cāpo, a capon. Lurco, a glutton. Strābo, a goggle-eyed
Carbo, a coal. Māngo, a slave-mer- person.
Caupo, an innkeeper. chant. Tēmo, the pole or
Cerdo, a cobbler, or one draught-tree.
who follows a mean Tiro, a raw soldier.
trade. Mirmillo, a fencer. Umbo, the boss of a
Cīnīlo, a frizler of shield.
hair. Mulio, a multerer. Ūpīlio, a shepherd.
Crabro, a wasp, or Volo, a volunteer.
hornet. Pāvo, a peacock.

Exc.

Exc. 1. Nouns in *io* are feminine, when they signify any thing without a body; as, *rātio, rationis, reason.*—So,

Captio, a quirk.	Perduellio, treason.	Sectio, the confiscation or forfeiture of one's goods
Cautio, caution, care.	Portio, a part.	Seditio, a mutiny.
Concio, an assembly, a speech.	Potio, drink.	Sessio, sitting.
Cessio, a yielding.	Prodatio, treachery.	Statio, a station.
Dictio, a word.	Proscriptio, a proscription, ordering citizens to be slain, and confiscating their effects.	Suspicio, mistrust.
Deditio, a surrender.	Quæstio, an inquiry.	Titillatio, a tickling.
Lectio, a lesson.	Rebellio, rebellion.	Translatio, a transferring.
Legio, a legion, a body of men.	Regio, a country.	Usucapio, the enjoyment of a thing by prescription.
Mentio, mention.	Relutio, a telling.	Vacatio, freedom from labour, &c.
Notio, a notion or idea.	Religio, religion.	Visio, an apparition.
Opinio, an opinion.	Remissio, a slackening.	
Optio, a choice.	Sanctio, a confirmation.	
Oratio, a speech.		
Pensio, a payment.		

But when they mark any thing which has a body, or signify numbers, they are masculine; as,

Curculio, the throstle, the weasand.	Scipio, a staff.	Unio, a pearl.
Papilio, a butterfly.	Scorpio, a scorpion.	Vespertilio, a bat.
Pugio, a dagger.	Septentrio, the north.	Ternio, the number three.
Puio, a little child.	Stellio, a lizard.	Quaternio, — four.
	Titio, a firebrand.	Senio, — six.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *do* and *go* are feminine, and have the genitive in *inis*; as, *arundo, arundinis, a reed; imago, imaginis, an image.*—So,

Ærugo, rust, (of brass.)	Hirundo, a swallow.	Sartago, a frying-pan.
Caligo, darkness.	Intercapedo, a space between.	Scaturigo, a spring.
Cartilago, a gristle.	Lanugo, down.	Testudo, a tortoise.
Crëpido, a creek, a bank.	Lentigo, a pimple.	Torpëdo, a numbness.
Farrago, a mixture.	Origo, an origin.	Uligo, the natural moisture of the earth.
Ferrugo, rust, (of iron.)	Porrigo, scurf, or scales in the head; dandruff.	Valëtudo, health.
Formido, fear.	Pröpagö, a lineage.	Vertigo, a dizziness.
Fuligo, spot.	Rubigo, rust, mildew.	Virgo, a virgin.
Grando, hail.		Vörägo, a gulf.
Hirudo, a horse-leech.		

But the following are masculine:

Cardo, -inis, a hinge.	Margo, -inis, the brink of a river; also fem.
Cüdo, -önis, a leather cap.	Ordo, -inis, order.
Harpägo, -önis, a drag.	Tendo, -inis, a tendon.
Ligo, -önis, a spade.	Üdo, -önis, a linen or swollen sock.

Cupido, desire, is often masc. with the poets; but in prose always fem.

Exc.

Exc. 3. The following nouns have *inis*,

Apollō, -inis, *the god Apollo*

Nēmo, -inis, m. or f. *no body*.

Hōmo, -inis, *a man or woman*.

Turbo, -inis, m. *a whirlwind*.

Cāro, flesh, fem. has *carnis*: Anio, masc. the name of a river, *Aniēnis*: Neris, *Neiriēnis*, the wife of the god Mars; from the obsolete nominatives *Aniez*, *Nerien*. Turbo, the name of a man, has *ōnis*.

Exc. 4. Greek nouns in *o* are feminine, and have *us* in the genitive, and *o* in the other cases singular; as, *Dīdo*, the name of a woman; genit. *Didūs*; dat. *Didō*, } &c. Sometimes they are declined regularly; thus, *Dido*, *Didōnis*: so *ēcho*, -ūs, f. the resounding of the voice from a rock or wood; *Argo*, -ūs, the name of a ship; *hālo*, -onis, f. a circle about the sun or moon.

C, D, L.

3. Nouns in *c* and *l* are neuter, and form the genitive by adding *is*; as,

Animāl, *animālis*, } a living creature; *tōral*, -ālis, a bed-cover; *hālec*, *halēcis*, a kind of pickle.—So,

Cervīcal, *a bolster*.

Minerval, *entry-money*.

Pūteal, *a well cover*.

Cūbital, *a cushion*.

Mīnūtāl, *minced meat*.

Veclīgāl, *a tax*.

Except. Consul, -ūlis, m. *a consul*.

Mūgil, -ilis, m. *a mullet-fish*.

Fel, fellis, n. *gall*.

Sal, sālis, m. or n. *salt*.

Lac, lactis, n. *milk*.

Sāles, -ium, pl. m. *witty sayings*.

Mel, mellis, n. *honey*.

Sol, sōlis, m. *the sun*.

D is the termination only of a few proper names, which form the genitive by adding *is*; as, *Dāvid*, *Davidis*.

N.

4. Nouns in *n* are masculine, and add *is* in the genitive; as,

Cānon, -ōnis, *a rule*.

Phŷsiognōmon, -ōnis, *one who guesses at the dispositions of men from the face*.

Dæmon, -ōnis, *a spirit*.

Delphin, -inis, *a dolphin*.

Gnōmon, -ōnis, *the cock of a dial*.

Rēn, rēnis, *the reins*.

Hŷmen, -ēnis, *the god of marriage*.

Splen, splēnis, *the spleen*.

Lien, -ēnis, *the milt*.

Sŷren, -ēnis, f. *a Syren*.

Pæan, -ānis, *a song*.

Tītan, -ānis, *the sun*.

Exc. 1. Nouns in *men* are neuter, and make their genitive in *inis*; as *flūmen*, *fluminis*, a river.—So,

Abdōmen, *the paunch*.

Agmen, *an army on*

Alūmen, *alum*.

Ācūmen, *sharpness*.

march.

Bitūmen, *a kind of clay*.

Cācūmen,

Căcūmen, <i>the top.</i>	Germen, <i>a sprout.</i>	Sagmen, <i>vervain, an herb.</i>
Carmen, <i>a song, a poem.</i>	Grāmen, <i>grass.</i>	Sēmen, <i>a seed.</i>
Cognōmen, <i>a surname.</i>	Lēgūmen, <i>all kind of pulse.</i>	Spēcimen, <i>a proof.</i>
Cōlūmen, <i>a support.</i>	Lūmen, <i>light.</i>	Stāmen, <i>the warp.</i>
Crīmen, <i>a crime.</i>	Nōmen, <i>a name.</i>	Subtēmen, <i>the woof.</i>
Discrīmen, <i>a difference.</i>	Nūmen, <i>the deity.</i>	Tegmen, <i>a covering.</i>
Exāmen, <i>a swarm of bees.</i>	Ōmen, <i>a presage.</i>	Vīmen, <i>a twig.</i>
Fōrāmen, <i>a hole.</i>	Pūtāmen, <i>a nut-shell.</i>	Vōlūmen, <i>a folding.</i>

The following nouns are likewise neuter :

Glūten, -inis, <i>glue.</i>	Inguen, -inis, <i>the groin.</i>
Unguen, -inis, <i>ointment.</i>	Pollen, -inis, <i>fine flour.</i>

Exc. 2. The following masculines have *inis* ; *peāden*, a comb ; *tūbīcen*, a trumpeter ; *tībīcen*, a piper ; and *oscen*, v. *oscīnis*, sc. *avis*, f. a bird, which foreboded by singing.

Exc. 3. The following nouns are feminine : *Sindon*, -ōnis, fine linen ; *āēdon*, -ōnis, a nightingale ; *Halcyon*, -ānis, a bird called the King's fisher ; *icon*, -ōnis, an image.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *ontis* ; as, *Laōmēdon*, -ontis, a king of Troy. So *Achēron*, *Chameleon*, *Phaēthon*, *Chāron*, &c.

AR and UR.

5. | Nouns in *ar* and *ur* are neuter, and add *is* to form the genitive ; as,

<i>Calcar</i> , <i>calcāris</i> , } a spur ;	<i>murmur</i> , <i>murmūris</i> , a noise.—So,
<i>Guttur</i> , -ūris, <i>the throat.</i>	<i>Neācar</i> , -āris, <i>drink of the gods.</i>
<i>Jūbar</i> , -āris, <i>a sun-beam.</i>	<i>Fulvīnar</i> , -āris, <i>a pillow.</i>
<i>Lācūnar</i> , -āris, <i>a ceiling.</i>	<i>Sulphur</i> , -ūris, <i>sulphur.</i>
Except, <i>Ēbur</i> , -ōris, n. <i>ivory.</i>	<i>Jēcū</i> , -ōris, or <i>jecinōris</i> , n. <i>the liver.</i>
<i>Far</i> , <i>farris</i> , n. <i>corn.</i>	<i>Rōbur</i> , -ōris, n. <i>strength.</i>
<i>Fēmū</i> , -ōris, n. <i>the thigh.</i>	<i>Sālar</i> , -aris, m. <i>a trout.</i>
<i>Furfur</i> , -ūris, m. <i>bran.</i>	<i>Turtur</i> , -ūris, m. <i>a turtle-dove.</i>
<i>Fur</i> , <i>fūris</i> , m. <i>a thief.</i>	<i>Vultur</i> , -ūris, m. <i>a vulture.</i>
<i>Hēpar</i> , -ātis, or <i>ātos</i> , n. <i>the liver.</i>	

ER and OR.

6. | Nouns in *er* and *or* are masculine, and form the genitive by adding *is* ; as,

Anser, *ansēris*, } a goose or gander ; *agger*, -ēris, a rampart ; *āer*, -ēris, the air ; *carcer*, -ēris, a prison ; *asser*, -ēris, & *affis*, -is, a plank ; *dōlor*, -ōris, pain ; *cōlor*, -ōris, a colour.—So,

Actor,

<i>Ag̃tor</i> , a deer, a pleader.	<i>Ödor</i> , <i>Ů</i> -os, a smell.	<i>Söpor</i> , sleep.
<i>Crēditor</i> , he that trusts or lends.	<i>Ölor</i> , a swan.	<i>Splendor</i> , brightness.
<i>Cruor</i> , gore.	<i>Pædor</i> , filth.	<i>Sponsor</i> , a surety.
<i>Dēbitor</i> , a debtor.	<i>Pastor</i> , a shepherd.	<i>Squālor</i> , filthiness.
<i>Fætor</i> , an ill smell.	<i>Prætor</i> , a commander.	<i>Stūpor</i> , dulness.
<i>Hōnor</i> , honour.	<i>Pūdor</i> , shame.	<i>Sūtor</i> , a sewer.
<i>Lēstor</i> , a reader.	<i>Rūbor</i> , blushing.	<i>Tēpor</i> , warmth.
<i>Lictor</i> , an officer among the Romans who attended the magistrates.	<i>Rūmor</i> , a report.	<i>Terror</i> , dread.
<i>Līvor</i> , paleness, malice.	<i>Sāpor</i> , a taste.	<i>Timor</i> , fear.
<i>Nīdor</i> , a strong smell.	<i>Sartor</i> , a cobbler or tailor.	<i>Tonsor</i> , a barber.
<i>Rhetor</i> , a rhetorician, has <i>rhetōris</i> ;	<i>Sātor</i> , a sewer, a father.	<i>Tutor</i> , a guardian.
<i>castor</i> , a beaver, -ōris.		<i>Vāpor</i> , a vapour.
		<i>Vēnātor</i> , a hunter.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are neuter :

<i>Acer</i> , -ēris, a maple-tree.	<i>Marmor</i> , ōris, marble.
<i>Ādor</i> , -ōris, fine wheat.	<i>Pāpāver</i> , -ēris, poppy.
<i>Æquor</i> , -ōris, a plain, the sea.	<i>Pīper</i> , -ēris, pepper.
<i>Cādāver</i> , -ēris, a dead carcass.	<i>Spinther</i> , -ēris, a clasp.
<i>Cīcer</i> , -ēris, vetches.	<i>Tūber</i> , -ēris, a swelling.
<i>Cor</i> , cordis, the heart.	<i>Ūber</i> , -ēris, a pap, or fatness.
<i>Iter</i> , itinēris, a journey.	<i>Ver</i> , vēris, the spring.

Arbor, -ōris, a tree, is fem. *Tuber*, -ēris, the fruit of the tuber tree, is masc. but when put for the tree, fem.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *ber* have *bris* in the genitive ; as, *hic imber*, *imbris*, a shower. So *Insūber*, *Ōdōber*, &c.

Nouns in *ter* have *tris* ; as *venter*, *ventris*, the belly ; *pāter*, *patris*, a father ; *frāter*, -tris, a brother ; *accipiter*, -tris, a hawk ; but *crāter*, a cup, has *crātēris* ; *sōter*, -ēris, a saviour ; *lāter*, a tile, *latēris* ; *Jūpiter*, the chief of the Heathen gods, has *Jōvis* ; *linter*, -tris, a little boat, is masc. or fem.

AS.

7. (Nouns in *as* are feminine, and have the genitive in *ātis* ; as, *ælas*, *ætātis*,) an age.——So,

<i>Alfas</i> , the summer.	<i>Simultas</i> , a feud, a grudge.	<i>Vēritas</i> , truth.
<i>Piētas</i> , piety.	<i>Tempeſtas</i> , a time, a tempest.	<i>Vōluntas</i> , will.
<i>Pōteſtas</i> , power.		<i>Voluptas</i> , pleasure.
<i>Prōbitas</i> , probity.		<i>Anās</i> , a duck, has <i>anatis</i> .
<i>Sātiētas</i> , a glut or disgust.	<i>Ūbertas</i> , fertility.	

Except. 1. *As*, *allis*, m. a piece of money, or any thing which may be divided into twelve parts.

Mas, *māgis*, m. a male.
Vas, *vādis*, m. a surety.
Vas, *vāſis*, n. a vessel.

Note.

Note. All the parts of *as* are likewise masculine, except *uncia*, an ounce, fem.; *as sextans*, 2 ounces; *quadrans*, 3; *triens*, 4; *quincunx*, 5; *semiss*, 6; *septunx*, 7; *bes*, 8; *decrans*, 9; *dextans*, or *dēunx*, 10; *deunx*, 11 ounces.

Exc. 2. Of Greek nouns in *as*, some are masculine; some feminine; some neuter. Those that are masculine have *antis* in the genit. as, *gigas*, *gigantis*, a giant; *ādāmas*, *-antis*, an adamant; *ēlēphas*, *-antis*, an elephant. Those that are feminine have *adis*, or *ados*; as, *lampas* *lampadis*, or *lampados*, a lamp; *drōmas*, *-adis*, f. a dromedary: likewise *Arcas*, an Arcadian, though masculine, has *Ar-cadis*, or *-ados*. Those that are neuter have *atis*; as, *būs-cēras*, *-atis*, an herb; *artocreas*, *-atis*, a pie.

E S.

8. Nouns in *es* are feminine, and in the genitive change *es* into *is*; as,

rāpes, *rupis*, a rock; *nūbes*, *nubis*, a cloud.——So,

<i>Ædes</i> , or <i>-is</i> , temple;	<i>Lues</i> , a plague.	<i>Sēpes</i> , a hedge.
plur. a house.	<i>Mōles</i> , a heap.	<i>Sōbōles</i> , an offspring.
<i>Cautes</i> , a rugged rock.	<i>Nātes</i> , the buttock.	<i>Strāges</i> , a slaughter.
<i>Clādes</i> , an overthrow,	<i>Pālumbes</i> , m. or f. a	<i>Strues</i> , a heap.
destruction.	pigeon.	<i>Sūdes</i> , a scale.
<i>Crātes</i> , a hurdle.	<i>Prōles</i> , an offspring.	<i>Tābes</i> , a consumption.
<i>Fāmes</i> , hunger	<i>Pūbes</i> , youth.	<i>Vulpes</i> , a fox.
<i>Fides</i> , a fiddle.		

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and most of them likewise excepted in the formation of the genitive:

<i>Ales</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a bird.	<i>Palmes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a vine-branch.
<i>Arms</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a Fowler's staff.	<i>Pāries</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , a wall.
<i>Āries</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , a ram.	<i>Pes</i> , <i>pedis</i> , the foot.
<i>Bes</i> , <i>bestis</i> , two thirds of a pound.	<i>Pēdes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a footman.
<i>Cēpes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a turf.	<i>Poples</i> , <i>-itis</i> , the ham of the leg.
<i>Ēques</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a horseman.	<i>Præses</i> , <i>-idis</i> , a president.
<i>Fōmes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , fuel.	<i>Sātelles</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a life-guard.
<i>Gurges</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a whirlpool.	<i>Stīpes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , the fork of a tree.
<i>Hēres</i> , <i>-ēdis</i> , an heir.	<i>Termes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , an olive bough.
<i>Indīges</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , a man deified.	<i>Trāmes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a path.
<i>Interpres</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , an interpreter.	<i>Vēles</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a light-armed soldier.
<i>Līmes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a limit or bound.	<i>Vātes</i> , <i>vatis</i> , a prophet.
<i>Mīles</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a soldier.	<i>Verres</i> , <i>verris</i> , a boar-pig.
<i>Obfes</i> , <i>-idis</i> , a hostage.	

But *ales*, *miles*, *heres*, *interpres*, *olfes*, and *vates*, are also used in the feminine.

Exc. 2. The following feminines are excepted in the formation of the genitive :

Abies, -ētis, a fir-tree.

Cēres, -ēris, the goddess of corn.

Mercēs, -ēdis, a reward, hire.

Mergēs, -ītis, a handful of corn.

Quies, -ētis, rest.

Rēquies, -ētis ; or requiēi, (of the fifth declension,) rest.

Sēges, -ētis, growing corn.

Tēges, -ētis, a mat or coverlet.

Tūdes, -is, or -ītis, a hammer.

To these add the following adjectives.

Ales, -ītis, swift.

Bipes, -ēdis, two-footed.

Quadrupes, -ēdis, four-footed.

Dēses, -īdis, slothful.

Dīves, -ītis, rich.

Hēbes, -ētis, dull.

Perpes, -ētis, perpetual.

Præpes, -ētis, swift-winged.

Rēses, -īdis, idle.

Sospes, -ītis, safe.

Sūperstes, -ītis, surviving.

Tēres, -ētis, round and long, smooth.

Lōcuples, -ētis, rich.

Manſues, -ētis, gentle.

Exc. 3. Greek nouns in *es* are commonly masculine ; as *hic acināces*, -is, a Persian sword, a scimitar ; but some are neuter ; as, *hoc cācoēthes*, an evil custom, *hippōmānes*, a kind of poison which grows in the forehead of a foal ; *pānāces*, the herb all-heal ; *nēpenthes*, the herb kill-grief. Dissyllables, and the monosyllables *Cres*, a Cretan, have *ētis* in the genitive, as, *hic magnes*, *magnētis*, a loadstone ; *tāpes*, -ētis, tapestry ; *lēbes-ētis*, a cauldron. The rest follow the general rule. Some proper nouns have either *ētis* or *is* ; as, *Dāres*, *Darētis*, or *Daris* ; which is also sometimes of the first declension ; *Achilles*, has *Āchillis* ; or *Achilli* contracted for *Achillēi* or *Achillei*, of the second decl. from *Achillēus* : So *Ūlysses*, *Pēricles*, *Verres*, *Aristōtēles*, &c.

IS.

9. Nouns in *is* are feminine, and have their genitive the same with the nominative ; as,

auris, *auris*, the ear ; *avis*, *avis*, a bird.——So,

Apis, a bee.

Bilis, the gall, anger.

Classis, a fleet.

Felis, a cat.

Fōris, a door ; ostener

plur. fores, -ium.

Messis, a harvest or crop.

Nāris, the nostril.

Neptis, a niece.

Ovis, a sheep.

Pellis, a skin.

Pestis, a plague.

Rātis, a raft.

Rūdis, a rod.

Vallis, a valley.

Vestis, a garment.

Vitis, a vine.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and form the genitive according to the general rule :

Axis,

Axis, axis, an axle-tree.	Ensis, a sword.	Patruēlis, a cousin-german.
Aqualis, a water-pot, an ewer.	Fascis, a bundle.	Piscis, a fish.
Callis, a beaten road.	Fēciālis, a herald.	Postis, a post.
Caulis, the stalk of an herb.	Follis, a pair of bellows.	Sōdālis, a companion.
Collis, a hill.	Fustis, a staff.	Torris, a fire-brand.
Cenchris, a kind of serpent.	Mensis, a month.	Unguis, the nail.
	Mūgilis, or -il, a mullet fish. [world.	Vectis, a lever.
	Orbis, a circle, the	Vermis, a worm.

To these add Latin nouns in *nis* ; as, *pānis*, bread ; *crīnis*, the hair ; *ignis*, fire ; *fūnis*, a rope, &c. But Greek nouns in *nis* are feminine, and have the genitive in *idis* ; as *týrannis*, *týrannidis*, tyranny.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are also masculine, but form their genitive differently :

Cīnis, -ēris, a dog.	Pūbis or pūbes, -is, or oftener -ēris, marriageable.
Cūcūmis, -is, or -ēris, a cucumber.	Pulvis, -ēris, dust.
Dis, dītis, the god of riches, or rich, an adj.	Quiris, -ītis, a Roman.
Glis, glīris, a dormouse, a rat.	Samnis, -ītis, a Samnite.
Impūbis, or impūbes, -is or -ēris, not marriageable.	Sanguis, -īnis, blood.
Lāpis, -idis, a stone.	Sēmis, -issis, the half of any thing.
	Vōmis, or -er, -ēris, a ploughshare.

Pulvis and *cinis* are sometimes feminine. *Semis* is also sometimes neuter, and then it is indeclinable. *Pubis* and *impubis* are properly adjectives ; thus, *Puberibus caulem foliis*, a stalk with downy leaves, *Virg. Æn. xii. 413.* *Impube corpus*, the body of a boy not having yet got the down (*pubes*, -is, f) of youth, *Horat. epod. 5. 13.* *Exsanguis*, bloodless, an adj. has *exsanguis* in the gen.

Exc. 3. The following are either masc. or feminine, and form the genitive according to the general rule.

Amnis, a river.	Finis, the end : fines, the boundaries of a field, or territories, is always masc.
Anguis, a snake.	Scrōbis, or serōbs, a ditch.
Cānālis, a conduit-pipe.	Torquis, a chain.
Clūnis, the buttock.	
Corbis, a basket.	

Exc. 4. These feminines have *idis* : *Cassis*, -īdis, a helmet ; *cuspis*, -īdis, the point of a spear ; *capis*, -īdis, a kind of cup ; *prōmulsis*, -īdis, a kind of drink, metheglin. *Lis*, strife, f. has *litis*.

Exc. 5. Greek nouns in *is* are generally feminine, and form the genitive variously : Some have *eos* or *ios* ; as, *hæresis*, -eos, or -ios or -is, a heresy ; so, *basis*, f. the foot of a pillar ; *phrasis*, a phrase ; *phthisis*, a consumption : *psēsis*, poetry : *metrōpolis*, a chief city, &c. Some have *idis*, or *idos* ;

īdos ; as, *Pāris*, *-īdis*, or *-idos*, the name of a man ; *aspis*, *-īdis*, f. an asp ; *ēphēmēris*, *-īdis*, f. a day book ; *īris*, *-īdis*, f. the rainbow ; *pysis*, *-īdis*, f. a box. So, *Ægis*, the shield of Pallas ; *canthāris*, a sort of fly ; *pērisceōlis*, a garter ; *prolofcis*, an elephant's trunk ; *p̄rāmis*, a pyramid ; and *tigris*, a tiger, *-īdis*, seldom *tigris* : all fem. Part have *īdis* ; as, *Psophis*, *-īdis*, the name of a city : others have *īnis* ; as, *Eleusis*, *-īnis*, the name of a city ; and some have *entis* ; as, *Simois*, *Simoentis*, the name of a river, *Chāris*, one of the graces, has, *Chārītis*.

O S.

10. Nouns in *os* are masculine, and have the genitive in *ōtis* ; as,

nēpos, *-ōtis*, a grandchild ; *sācerdos*, *-ōtis*, a priest, also fem.

Exc. 1. The following are feminine :

Arbos, or *-or*, *-ōris*, a tree.

Eos, *eōis*, the morning.

Coa, *cōtis*, a whetstone.

Glos, *glōris*, the husband's sister, or brother's wife.

Doa, *dōtis*, a dowry.

Exc. 2. The following masculines are excepted in the genitive :

Flos, *flōris*, a flower.

Custos, *-ōdis*, a keeper ; also fem.

Hōnos, or *-or*, *-ōris*, honour.

Hēros, *herōis*, a hero.

Lābos, or *-or*, *-ōris*, labour.

Mīnos, *-ōis*, a king of Crete.

Lēpos, or *-or*, *-ōris*, wit.

Tros, *Trōis*, a Trojan.

Mos, *mōris*, a custom.

Bos, *bōvis*, m. or f. an ox or cow.

Res, *rōris*, dew.

Exc. 3. *Os*, *offis*, a bone ; and *ōs*, *oris*, the mouth, are neuter.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *-ōis* ; as *hēros*, *-ōis*, a hero, or great man : So *Mīnos*, a king of Crete ; *Tros*, a Trojan ; *thos*, a kind of wolf.

U S.

11. Nouns in *us* are neuter, and have their genitive in *ōris* ; as,

pectus, *pectōris*, the breast ; *tempus*, *temporis*, time. So,

Corpus, a body.

Frīgus, cold.

Pēnus, provisions.

Dēcus, honour.

Littus, a shore.

Pignus, a pledge.

Dēdēcus, disgrace.

Nēmus, a grove.

Stercus, dung.

Pācīnus, a great action.

Pēcus, cattle.

Tergus, a hide.

Ūnus, a fury.

Exc. 1.

Exc. 1. The following neuters have *ēris*.

<i>Acus</i> , <i>chaff</i> .	<i>Mūnus</i> , <i>a gift, or office</i> .	<i>Scēlus</i> , <i>a crime</i> .
<i>Fūnus</i> , <i>a funeral</i> .	<i>Ōlus</i> , <i>pot-herbs</i> .	<i>Sīdus</i> , <i>a star</i> .
<i>Fœdus</i> , <i>a covenant</i> .	<i>Ōnus</i> , <i>a burden</i> .	<i>Vellus</i> , <i>a fleece of wool</i> .
<i>Gēnus</i> , <i>a kind, or kindred</i> .	<i>Ōpus</i> , <i>a work</i> .	<i>Viſcus</i> , <i>an entrail</i> .
<i>Glōmus</i> , <i>a clow</i> .	<i>Pondus</i> , <i>a weight</i> .	<i>Ulcus</i> , <i>a pile</i> .
<i>Lātus</i> , <i>the side</i> .	<i>Rūdus</i> , <i>rubbiſh</i> .	<i>Vulnus</i> , <i>a wound</i> .

Thus *acēris*, *funēris*, &c. *Glōmus*, a clow, is ſometimes masculine, and has *glōmi*, of the ſecond declenſion. *Vēnus*, the goddeſs of love, and *vētus*, old, an adjective, likewise have *ēris*.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are feminine, and form the genitive variously :

<i>Incus</i> , -ūdis, <i>an anvil</i> .	<i>Jūventus</i> , -ūtis, <i>youth</i> .
<i>Pālus</i> , -ūdis, <i>a pool or morass</i> .	<i>Sālus</i> , -ūtis, <i>safety</i> .
<i>Pēcus</i> (not used), -ūdis, <i>a sheep</i> .	<i>Sēnectus</i> , -ūtis, <i>old age</i> .
<i>Subſcus</i> , -ūdis, <i>a dove-tail</i> .	<i>Servītus</i> , -ūtis, <i>slavery</i> .
<i>Tellus</i> , -ūris, <i>the earth, or goddess of the earth</i> .	<i>Virtus</i> , -ūtis, <i>virtue</i> .
	<i>Intercus</i> , -ūtis, <i>an hydropsy</i> .

Intercus is properly an adjective, having *aqua* understood.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables of the neuter gender have *ūris* in the genitive ; as,

<i>Crus</i> , <i>crūris</i> , <i>the leg</i> .	<i>Rus</i> , <i>rūris</i> , <i>the country</i> .
<i>Jus</i> , <i>jūris</i> , <i>law or right ; also broth</i> .	<i>Thus</i> , <i>thūris</i> , <i>frankincense</i> .
<i>Pus</i> , <i>pūris</i> , <i>the corrupt matter of any sore</i> .	So <i>Mus</i> , <i>mūris</i> , <i>maſc. a moſe</i> .

Ligus, or -ur, a Ligurian, has *Ligūris* ; *lēpus*, maſc. a hare, *lēpōris* ; *jus*, maſc. or fem. a ſwine, *ſuis* ; *grus*, maſc. or fem. a crane, *gruis*.

OEdipus, the name of a man, has *OEdipōdis* : ſometimes it is of the ſecond declenſion, and has *OEdīpi*. The compounds of *pus* have *ōdis* ; as, *tripūs*, maſc. a tripod, *tripōdis* ; but *lāgōpus*, -ōdis, a kind of bird, or the herb hares-foot, is fem. Names of cities have *untis* ; as, *Trāpezus*, *Trapezuntis* ; *Ōpus*, *Opuntis*.

Y S.

12. Nouns in *ys* are all borrowed from the Greek, and are for the moſt part feminine. In the genitive, they have ſometimes *jis* or *yos* ; as *hæc chēlys*, *chelyis*, or -*yos*, a harp ; *Cāpys*, *Cap̄yis*, or -*yos* ; the name of a man : ſometimes they have *jdis*, or *jaos* ; as, *hæc chlām̄ys*, *chlām̄jdis* or *chlām̄jdos*, a ſoldier's cloak ; and ſometimes *ynis*, or *ynos* ; as, *Trāchys*, *Trach̄ynis*, or *Trach̄ynos*, the name of a town.

ÆS, AUS, EUS.

13. The nouns ending in *æs* and *aus* are,

<i>Æs</i> , <i>æris</i> , n. <i>braſs</i> , or <i>money</i> .	<i>Laus</i> , <i>laudis</i> , f. <i>praiſe</i> .
<i>Fraus</i> , <i>fraudis</i> , f. <i>fraud</i> .	<i>Præs</i> , <i>prædis</i> , m. or f. <i>a ſurety</i> .

Subſtantives ending in the ſyllable *eus* are all proper names, and have

have the genitive in *es*; as, *Orpheus, Orpheos*; *Tereus, Tereos*. But these nouns are also found in the second declension, where *us* is divided into two syllables: thus, *Orphēus*, genit. *Orphēi*, or sometimes contracted *Orphei*, and that into *Orphē*.

S with a consonant before it.

14. Nouns ending in *s* with a consonant before it, are feminine; and form the genitive by changing the *s* into *is* or *tis*; as,

trabs, trābis, a beam; *scobs, scōbis*, saw-dust; *hiems, hiēmis*, winter; *gens, gentis*, a nation; *stips stipis*, alms; *pars, partis*, a part; *sors, sortis*, a lot; *mors, -tis*, death.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine:

Chālybs, -ybis, *steel*.

Dens, -tis, a tooth.

Fons, -tis, a well.

Gryps, grȳphis, a griffin.

Hydrops, -ōpis, the dropsy.

Mērops, -ōpis, a wood-pecker.

Mons, -tis, a mountain.

Pons, -tis, a bridge.

Seps, sēpis, a kind of serpent; bat.

Seps, sēpis, a hedge, is fem.

Exc. 2. The following are either masc. or feminine:

Adeps, adīpis, fatness.

Rūdens, -tis, a cable.

Scrobs, scrōbis, a ditch.

Serpens, -tis, a serpent.

Stirps, stirpis, the root of a tree.

Stirps, an offspring, always fem.

Animans, a living creature, is found in all the genders, but most frequently in the feminine or neuter.

Exc. 3. Polysyllables in *eps* change *e* into *i*; as, *hæc forceps, forcīpis*, a pair of tongs; *princeps, -īpis*, a prince or princess; *particeps, -cīpis*, a partaker; so likewise *cælebs, calībis*, an unmarried man or woman. The compounds of *cāput* have *cipītis*; as, *præceps, præcipītis*, headlong; *anceps, ancipītis*, doubtful; *biceps, -cipītis*, two-headed. *Auceps*, a fowler, has *aucūpis*.

Exc. 4. The following feminines have *dis*:

Frons, frondis, the leaf of a tree.

Glans, glandis, an acorn.

Juglans, dis, a walnut.

Lens, lendis, a nit.

So, *libripens, libripēdis*, m. a weigher; *nefrens, -dis*, m. or f. a grice, or pig; and the compounds of *cor*; as, *concors, concorētis*, agreeing; *discors, disagreeing*; *vēcors, mad*, &c. But *frons*, the forehead, has *frontis*, fem. and *lens*, a kind of pulse, *lentis*, also fem.

Exc. 5. *Iens*, going; and *quiens*, being able, participles from the verbs *eo* and *queo*, with their compounds, have *euntis*: thus, *iens, euntis*; *quiens, queuntis*; *rediens, redēntis*; *nēquiens, nequeuntis*: but *ambiens*, going round, has *ambientis*.

Exc. 6.

Exc. 6. *Tīryns*, a city in Greece, the birth-place of Hercules, has *Tīrynth's*.

T.

15. There is only one noun in *t*, namely, *cāput*, *capitis*, the head, neuter. In like manner, its compounds, *sinūput*, *sinūpitis*, the forehead: and *occiput*, *-itis*, the hind-head.

X.

16. Nouns in *x* are feminine, and in the genitive change *x* into *cis*; as,

vox, *vōcis*, the voice; *lux*, *lūcis*, light.—So,

Appendix, <i>-icis</i> , an addition; dim. <i>-icūla</i> .	Crux, <i>crūcis</i> , a cross.	Merx, <i>-cis</i> , merchandise.
Arx, <i>arcis</i> , a castle.	Fæx, <i>-cis</i> , dregs.	Nutrix, <i>-icis</i> , a nurse.
Cēlox, <i>-ōcis</i> , a pinnace.	Falx, <i>-cis</i> , a scythe.	Nux, <i>nūcis</i> , a nut.
Cervix, <i>-icis</i> , the neck.	Fax, <i>-ācis</i> , a torch.	Pax, <i>-ācis</i> , peace.
Cicātrix, <i>-icis</i> , a scar.	Filix, <i>-icis</i> , a fern.	Pix, <i>pīcis</i> , pitch.
Cornix, <i>-icis</i> , a crow.	Lanx, <i>-cis</i> , a plate.	Rādex, <i>-icis</i> , a root.
Cōturnix, <i>-icis</i> , a quail.	Lōdix, <i>-icis</i> , a fleece.	Sālix, <i>-icis</i> , a willow.
Coxendix, <i>-icis</i> , the hip.	Mēretrix, <i>-icis</i> , a courtesan.	Vībix, or <i>-ex</i> , <i>-icis</i> , the mark of a wound.

Exc. 1. Polyfyllables in *ax* and *ex* are masculine; as, *thōrax*, *-ācis*, a breast-plate; *Cōrax*, *-ācis*, a raven. *Ex* in the genitive is changed into *icis*; as, *pollex*, *-icis*, m. the thumb.—So the following nouns, also masculine,

Āpex, the tuft or tassel on the top of a priest's cap, the cap itself, or the top of any thing.	Cimex, a bug.	Pōdex, the breech.
Artifex, an artist.	Cōdex, a book.	Pontifex, a chief priest.
Carnifex, an executioner.	Cūlex, a gnat, a midge.	Pālex, a flea.
Caudex, the trunk of a tree.	Frūtex, a scrub.	Rēmex, a rupture.
	Index, an informer.	Sūrex, a rat.
	Lātex, any liquor.	Vertex, the crown of the head.
	Mūrex, a shell-fish, purple.	Vortex, a whirlpool.

Vervex, a wedder sheep, has *vervēcis*; *fanifex*, a mower of hay, *fanisēcis*; *Rēfex*, m. *-ēcis*, a vine-branch cut off.

To these masculines add,

Cālix, <i>-icis</i> , a cup.	Ōryx, <i>-ycis</i> , a wild goat.
Cūlyx, <i>-ycis</i> , the bud of a flower.	Phœnix, <i>-icis</i> , a bird so called.
Coccyx, <i>-ygis</i> , vel <i>-ycis</i> , a cuckoo.	Trādux, <i>-ūcis</i> , a graft, or off-set of a vine; also fern.
Fornix, <i>-icis</i> , a vault.	

But

But the following polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are feminine.

Fornax, -ācis, *a furnace.*

Smīlax, -ācis, *the herb rope-weed.*

Pānax, -ācis, *the herb all-heal.*

Cērex, -īcis, *a sedge.*

Clunax, -ācis, *a ladder.*

Sūpellex, supellectilis, *Leusebold-*

Forfex, -īcis, *a pair of scissors.*

furniture.

Hālex, -ēcis, *a herring.*

Exc. 2. A great many nouns in *a* are either masculine or feminine; as,

Calk, -cis, *the heel, or the end of any thing, the goal; but calx, lime, is always fem.*

Līmax, -ācis, *a snail.*

Cortex, -īcis, *the bark of a tree.*

Ōbex, -īcis, *a bolt or bar.*

Hystrix, -īcis, *a porcupine.*

Perdix, -īcis, *a partridge.*

Imbrex, -īcis, *a gutter or roof-tile.*

Pūmex, -īcis, *a pumice-stone.*

Lynx, -cis, *an ounce, a beast of a very quick sight.*

Rūmex, -īcis, *sorrel, an herb.*

Sandix, -īcis, *a purple colour.*

Sīlex, -īcis, *a flint.*

Vārix, -īcis, *a swollen vein.*

Exc. 3. The following nouns depart from the general rule in forming the genitive:

Aquilēx, -ēgis, *a well-maker.*

Phālanx, -angis, *f. a phalanx.*

Conjūnx, or -ux, -ūgis, *a husband or wife.*

Rēmex, -īgis, *a rover.*

Frux, (*not used*), frūgis, *f. corn.*

Rex, rēgis, *a king.*

Grex, grēgis, *m. or f. a flock.*

Nix, nīvis, *f. snow.*

Lex, lēgis, *f. a law.*

Nox, noctis, *f. night.*

Sēnex, sēnis, (*an adj.*), *old.*

Exc. 4. Greek nouns in *x*, both with respect to gender and declension, are as various as Latin nouns: thus, *bombyx*, *bombycis*, *a silk-worm*, masc. but when it signifies silk, or the yarn spun by the worm, it is feminine; *ōnyx*, masc. or fem. *onychis*, *a precious stone*; and so *sardōnyx*; *lārynx*, *laryngis*, fem. *the top of the wind-pipe*; *Phryx*, *Phrygis*, *a Phrygian*; *sphinx*, -ngis, *a fabulous hag*; *strix*, -īgis, *f. a screechowl*; *Styx*, -ygis, *f. a river in hell*; *Hylax*, -tis, *the name of a dog*; *Bibrax*, *Bibraētis*, *the name of a town*, &c.

DATIVE SINGULAR.

The Dative singular anciently ended also in *e*; as, *Ejuriēte leoni ex ore exculpere prādam*, *To pull the prey out of the mouth of a hungry lion*, Lucil. *Hæret pede pes*, *Foot sticks to foot.* *Æn. x. 361.* for *esurienti* and *pedi*.

Ex.

EXCEPTIONS in the ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

Exc. 1. The following nouns have the accusative in *im* :

Amūsis, f. a mason's rule.

Cannābis, f. hemp.

Būris, f. the beam of a plough.

Cūcūmis, m. a cucumber.

Gunmis, f. gum.

Sītis, f. thirst.

Mēphitis, f. a damp or strong smell.

Tussis, f. the cough.

Rāvis, f. hoarseness.

Vis, f. strength.

Sināpis, f. mustard.

To these add proper names, 1. of cities, and other places ; as, *Hispālis*, Seville, a city in Spain ; *Syr̄tis*, a dangerous quicksand on the coast of Libya ;—2. of rivers ; as, *Tibēris*, the Tiber, which runs past Rome ; *Betis*, the Guadalquiver in Spain : So *Athēsis*, *Ar̄aris*, *Albis*, *Liris*, &c.—3. Of gods ; as, *Anūbis*, *Apis*, *Osiris*, *Sc̄rāpis*, deities of the Egyptians. But these sometimes make the accusative also in *in* ; thus, *Syr̄tim* or *Syr̄tin*, *Tiberim* or *-in*, &c.

Exc. 2. Several nouns in *is* have either *em* or *im* ; as,

Clāvis, f. a key.

Pelvis, f. a basin.

Sēcūris, f. an ax.

Cūtis, f. the skin.

Puppi, f. the stern of

Sēmentis, f. a sowing.

Pebria, f. a fever.

a ship.

Strigilis, f. a horse-comb.

Nāvis, f. a ship.

Reksis, f. a rope.

Turris, f. a tower.

Thus *navem*, or *navim* ; *puppem*, or *puppin*, &c. The ancients said *avim*, *aurim*, *ovim*, *pestim*, *vallim*, *vitim*, &c. which are not to be imitated.

Exc. 3. GREEK NOUNS form their accusative variously :

1. Greek nouns, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os* impure, that is, with a consonant going before, have the accusative in *em* or *a*, as, *lampas*, *lampadis*, or *lampados*, *lampadem*, or *lampada*. In like manner, these three, which have *is* pure in the genitive, or *is* with a vowel before it : *Tros*, *Trōis*, *Troem*, and *Troa*, a Trojan ; *hēros*, a hero ; *Mīnos*, a king of Crete. The three following have almost always *a* : *Pan*, the god of shepherds ; *aiter*, the sky ; *delphin*, a dolphin ; thus, *Pāna*, *athēra*, *delphina*.

2. Masculine Greek nouns in *is*, which have their genitive in *is* or *os* impure, form the accusative in *im* or *in* ; sometimes in *idem*, never *ids*, as, *Pāris*, *Paridis* ; or *Paridos* ; *Parim*, or *Parin*, sometimes *Paridem*, never *Parida*.—So *Daphnis*.

3. Feminines in *is*, increasing impurely in the genitive, have commonly *idem* or *ids*, but rarely *im* or *in* ; as, *Elis*, *Elidis* or *Elidos*, *Elidem* or *Elids* ; seldom *Elim* or *Elin* ; a city in Greece. In like manner feminines in *ys*, *ȳdos*, have *ȳdem*, or *ȳda*, not *ym* or *yn* in the accusative ; as, *chlamys*, *-ȳdem*, or *-ȳda*, not *chlamyn*, a soldier's cloak.

4. But all Greek nouns in *is* or *ys*, whether masculine or feminine, having *is* or *os* pure in the genitive, form the accusative by changing *s* of the nominative into *m* or *n* ; as, *metamorphōsis*, *-eor*, or *-is*, *metamorphōsin* or *-in*, a change : *Tēthys*, *-ȳos*, or *-ȳis*, *Tēthym*, or *-yn* ; the name of a goddess.

5. Nouns ending in the diphthong *aus*, have the accusative in *aus* ; as, *Thēseus*, *Thesēus* ; *Tydeus*, *Tydeu*.

EXCEPTIONS in the ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

Exc. 1. Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, have *i* in the ablative; as, *ſédîle*, *ſedîli*; *ănîmal*, *animăli*; *calcar*, *calcări*. Except proper names; as, *Prăneſte*, abl. *Prăneſte*, the name of a town; and the following neuters in *ar*:

Far, farre, corn.

Neſtar, -ăre, drink of the gods.

Hépar, -ăte, the liver.

Par, păre, a match, a pair.

Jăbar, -ăre, a ſun beam.

Sal, săle, ſalt.

Exc. 2. Nouns which have *im* or *in* in the accusative, have *i* in the ablative; as, *vis*, *vim*, *vi*: but *canălis*, *Beis*, and *tigris*, have *e* or *i*.

Nouns which have *im* or *in* in the accusative, make their ablative in *e* or *i*; as, *turris*, *turre*, or *turri*; but *roſis*, a rope; and *călis*, the ſkin, have *e* only.

Several nouns which have only *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative; as, *fănis*, *ſupellex*, *actis*; *păgil*, a champion; *măgil* or *mugilis*; ſo, *rus*, *ocăput*: Also names of towns, when the queſtion is made by *ubi*; as *habitat Carthagine* or *Carthagini*, he lives at Carthage. So, *civis*, *claffis*, *ſors*, *imber*, *anguis*, *avis*, *poſtis*, *fuſtis*, *amnis*, and *ignis*; but theſe have oftener *e*. *Canalis* has only *i*. The moſt ancient writers made the ablative of many other nouns in *i*; as, *aſiati*, *cuni*, *lapidi*, *cvi*, &c.

Exc. 3. Adjectives uſed as ſubſtantives have commonly the ſame ablative with the adjectives; as, *bipennis*, -i, an halbert; *mălăris*, -i, a millſtone; *quadrirămis*, -i, a ſhip with four banks of oars. So names of months, *Aprălis*, -i; *Dăcember*; -bri, &c. But *rădis*, f. a rod given to gladiators when diſcharged; *jăvėnis*, a young man, have only *e*; and likewise nouns ending in *il*, *x*, *ceps*, or *us*; as,

Adăleſcens, a young man.

Princeps, a prince.

Torrens, a brook.

Infans, an infant.

Sănex, an old man.

Văgil, a watchman.

Thus, *adoleſcente*, *infante*, *ſene*, &c.

Exc. 4. Nouns in *ys*, which have *ym* in the accusative, make their ablative in *ye* or *y*; as, *Atys*, *Atye*, or *Aty*, the name of a man.

NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

1. The nominative plural ends in *es*, when the noun is either maſculine or feminine; as, *ſermones*, *rupes*.

Nouns in *is* and *es* have ſometimes in the nominative plural alſo *is* or *is*, as, *puppes*, *puppeis*, or *puppis*.

2. Neuters

2. Neuters which have *e* in the ablative singular, have *a* in the nominative plural; as, *capita*, *itinera*: but those which have *i* in the ablative, make *ia*; as, *sedilia*, *calcarea*.

GENITIVE PLURAL.

Nouns which in the ablative singular have *i* only, or *e* and *i* together, make the genitive plural in *ium*; but if the ablative be in *e*, the genitive plural has *um*; as, *sedile*, *sedili*, *sedilium*; *turris*, *turre* or *turri*, *turrium*; *caput*, *capite*, *capitum*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in *as* have *ium*, though their ablative end in *e*; as, *mas*, a male, *māre*, *marium*; *vas*, a surety, *vadium*; but polysyllables have rather *um*; as, *civitas*, a state or city, *civitatum*, and sometimes *civitatum*.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *es* and *is*, which do not increase in the genitive singular, have also *ium*; as *hostis*, an enemy, *hostium*. So likewise nouns ending in two consonants; as, *gens*, a nation, *gentium*; *urbs*, a city, *urbium*.

But the following have *um*: *parens*, *vātes*, *pānis*, *jūvēnis*, and *cānis*.

Exc. 3. The following nouns form the ablative plural in *ium*, though they have *e* only in the ablative singular:

Caro, <i>carnis</i> , f. <i>flesh</i> .	Lis, <i>litis</i> , f. <i>strife</i> .
Cohors, <i>-tis</i> , f. <i>a company</i> .	Mus, <i>mūris</i> , m. <i>a mouse</i> .
Cor, <i>cordis</i> , n. <i>the heart</i> .	Nix, <i>nivis</i> , f. <i>snow</i> .
Cos, <i>cotis</i> , f. <i>a bore or wrackstone</i> .	Nox, <i>noctis</i> , f. <i>the night</i> .
Dos, <i>dōtis</i> , f. <i>a dowry</i> .	Os, <i>ossis</i> , n. <i>a bone</i> .
Faux, <i>faucis</i> , f. <i>the jaws</i> .	Quiris, <i>-itis</i> , a <i>Roman</i> .
Glis, <i>gliris</i> , m. <i>a rat</i> .	Samnis, <i>-itis</i> , m. or f. <i>a Samnite</i> .
Lar, <i>laris</i> , m. <i>a household-god</i> .	Ūter, <i>utris</i> , m. <i>a bottle</i> .
Linter, <i>-tris</i> , m. or f. <i>a little boat</i> .	

Thus *Samnitium*, *linterium*, *litium*, &c. Also the compounds of *uncia* and *as*; as, *septunx*, seven ounces, *septuncium*; *bes*, eight ounces, *besium*. *Bes*, an ox or cow, has *boum*, and in the dative, *bōbus* or *lūbus*.

Greek nouns have generally *um*; as, *Macedo*, a Macedonian; *Arabs*, an Arabian; *Aethiops*, an Ethiopian; *Monoceros*, an unicorn; *Lynx*, a beast so called; *Thrax*, a Thracian: *Macedonium*, *Arabum*, *Aethiopum*, *Monocerotum*, *Lyncum*, *Thracum*. But those which have *a* or *is* in the nominative singular, sometimes form the genitive plural in *on*; as, *Epigramma*, *epigrammatum*, or *epigrammaton*, an epigram; *metamorphosis*, *-ium*, or *-con*.

Obs. 1. Nouns which want the singular, form the genitive plural as if they were complete; thus *manes*, m. souls departed, *manium*; *caliter*, m,

m. inhabitants of heaven, *calitum*; because they would have had in the sing. *manis* or *manes*, and *celes*. But names of feasts often vary their declension; as, *Saturnalia*, the feasts of Saturn, *Saturnaliūm* and *Saturnalierum*. So, *Bacchanalia*, *Compitalia*, *Terminalia*, &c.

Obs. 2. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, are, by the poets, often contracted into *um*; as, *nōcentiā* for *nocentium*; and sometimes, to increase the number of syllables, a letter is inserted; as, *calituum* for *calitum*. The former of these is said to be done by the figure *Syncope*; and the latter by *Epenthesis*.

EXCEPTIONS in the DATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Greek nouns in *a* have commonly *tis* instead of *tibus*; as, *poēma*, a poem, *poematis*, rather than *poemati-bus*, from the old nominative *poematum* of the second decl.

Exc. 2. The poets sometimes form the dative plural of Greek nouns in *si*, or when the next word begins with a vowel, in *sin*; as, *Troāsi* or *Troāsin*, for *Troādibus*, from *Troas*, *Troadis*, a Trojan woman.

EXCEPTIONS in the ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, make their accusative plural in *as*, *is*, or *is*; as, *partes*, *partium*, acc. *partes*, *parteis*, or *partis*.

Exc. 2. If the accusative singular end in *a*, the accusative plural also ends in *as*; as, *lampas*, *lampādem*, or *lampāda*, *lampādes* or *lampādas*. So *Tros*, *Troas*; *heros*, *heros*; *Æthiops*, *Æthiopas*, &c.

(GREEK NOUNS through all the Cases.

Lampas, a lamp, f. *lampādis*, or *-ādos*; *-ādi*, *ādem*, or *-āda*; *-as*; *-āde*; Plur. *-ādes*; *-ādum*; *-ādibus*; *-āds*, or *-ādas*; *-ādes*, *-adibus*.)

Troas, f. *Trōādis*, or *-ādos*; *-i*; *em* or *a*; *as*; *e*;

Pl. *Troadēs*; *-um*; *ibus*, *si* or *sin*; *ēs* or *as*; *es*; *ibus*.

Tros, m. *Trois*; *Troi*; *Troem* or *-a*; *Tros*; *Troe*, &c.

Phillis, f. *Phillidis* or *-dos*, *-di*, *-dem*, or *-da*; *i* or *is*; *de*.

Paris, m. *Paridis* or *-dos*; *-di*; *-dem*, *Parim* or *in*; *i*; *de*.

Chlamys, f. *Chlamydis* or *-ydos*, *-ydi*, *-ydem* or *-yda*, *ys*, *-yde*, &c.

Cāpys, m. *Cāpyis*, or *-yos*; *yi*; *ym* or *yn*; *y*; *ye* or *y*.

Mētāmorphōsis, f. *-is* or *-eos*, *i*, *em* or *in*, *i*, *i*, &c.

Orpheus, m. *-eos*, *ēi* or *ei*, *ea*, *eu*, abl. *eo* of the second decl.

Dido, f. *Didās* or *Didōnis*, *Dido* or *Didoni*, &c.

FOURTH

FOURTH DECLENSION.

(Nouns of the fourth declension end in *us* and *u*.)

(Nouns in *us* are masculine; nouns in *u* are neuter, and indeclinable in the singular number.)

The terminations of the cases are; nom. sing. *us*; gen. *us*; dat. *ui*; acc. *um*; voc. *like the nom.*; nom. acc. voc. plur. *us* or *ua*; gen. *uum*; dat. and abl. *ibus*; as,

Fructus, fruit, masc.

Cornu, a horn, neut.

Sing.

Plur.

Sing.

Plur.

N. fructus,

N. fructus,

N. cornu,

N. cornua,

G. fructus,

G. fructuum,

G. cornu,

G. cornuum,

D. fructui,

D. fructibus,

D. cornu,

D. cornibus,

A. fructum,

A. fructus,

A. cornu,

A. cornua,

V. fructus,

V. fructus,

V. cornu,

V. cornua,

A. fructu.

A. fructibus.)

A. cornu.

A. cornibus.)

In like manner decline,

Aditus, an access.

Hautus, a draught.

Rictus, a grinning.

Anfractus, a winding.

Ictus, a stroke.

Ritus, a rite, a cerema-

Auditus, the sense of hearing. [song.

Impetus, an attack.

Risus, laughter. [ry.

Cantus, a singing or

Incessus, a stately gate.

Ructus, a belching.

Casus, a fall, an accident or chance.

Luetus, grief.

Saltus, a leap, a forest.

Cæstus, a gauntlet.

Luxus, luxury, riot.

Senatus, the senate, the

Cestus, a marriage-girdle.

Metus, fear.

supreme council among the Romans.

Cæstus, a gauntlet.

Missus, a throw; a

Sensus, a sense, feeling,

Cæstus, a gauntlet.

turn or heat in races.

meaning.

Cæstus, a gauntlet.

Motus, a motion.

Sexus, a sex.

Cæstus, a gauntlet.

Nexus, servitude for

Sinus, a bosom.

Cæstus, a gauntlet.

debt.

Singultus, a sob, the

Cæstus, a gauntlet.

Nurus, a daughter-in-

hiccup.

Cæstus, a gauntlet.

Nutus, a nod. [larv.

Situs, a situation.

Cæstus, a gauntlet.

Obtutus, a look.

Status, a posture.

Cæstus, a gauntlet.

Odoratus, the sense of

Socrus, a mother-in-

Cæstus, a gauntlet.

smelling.

larv.

Cæstus, a gauntlet.

Passus, a pace.

Spiritus, a breathing,

Cæstus, a gauntlet.

Principatus, pre-emi-

spirit.

Cæstus, a gauntlet.

nence.

Succellus, success.

Cæstus, a gauntlet.

Procellus, a progress.

Sumptus, expense.

Cæstus, a gauntlet.

Progressus, an advance-

Tactus, the touch.

Cæstus, a gauntlet.

ment.

Tonitru, thunder.

Cæstus, a gauntlet.

Prospectus, a view.

Transitus, a passage.

Cæstus, a gauntlet.

Proventus, an increase,

Tumultus, an uproar.

Cæstus, a gauntlet.

revenue.

Venatus, hunting.

Cæstus, a gauntlet.

Quæstus, gain.

Visus, the sight.

Cæstus, a gauntlet.

Questus, a complaint.

Victus, food.

Cæstus, a gauntlet.

Reditus, a return; an

Vultus, the countenance.

F

Exc.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are feminine :

Ācus, <i>a needle.</i>	Ficus, <i>a fig.</i>	Porticus, <i>a gallery.</i>
Ānus, <i>an old woman.</i>	Mānus, <i>the hand.</i>	Spēcus, <i>a den.</i>
Dōmus, <i>a house.</i>	Pēnus, <i>a storehouse.</i>	Tribus, <i>a tribe.</i>

Penus and *specus* are sometimes masc. *Ficus*, *penus*, and *domus*, with several others, are also of the second declension. *Capricornus*, m. the sign Capricorn, although from *cornu*, is always of the second decl. and so are the compounds of *manus* ; *unimānus*, having one hand ; *centimānus*, &c. adj. *Domus* is but partly of the second declension, thus,

(*Dōmus*, *a house*, *fem.*)

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. domus,	Nom. domus,
Gen. domūs, or -mi,	Gen. domorum, or -uum,
Dat. domui, or -mo,	Dat. domibus,
Acc. domum,	Acc. domos, or -us,
Voc. domus,	Voc. domus,
Abl. domo.	Abl. domibus.)

Note. *Domūs*, in the genit. signifies, of a house ; and *domi*, at home, or of home ; as, *memineris domi.* Terent. iv. 7. 45.

Exc. 2. The following nouns have *ūs*, in the dative and ablative plural.

Ācus, <i>a needle.</i>	Lācus, <i>a lake.</i>	Spēcus, <i>a den.</i>
Arcus, <i>a bow.</i>	Partus, <i>a birth.</i>	Tribus, <i>a tribe.</i>
Artus, <i>a joint.</i>	Portus, <i>a harbour.</i>	Vēru, <i>a spit.</i>
Gēnu, <i>the knee.</i>		

Portus, *genu*, and *veru*, have likewise *ibus* ; as, *portibus* or *portūbus*.

Exc. 3. *Iesus*, the venerable name of our Saviour, has *um* in the accusative, and *u* in all the other cases.

Nouns of this declension anciently belonged to the third, and were declined like *grus*, *gruis*, a crane ; thus *fructus*, *fructuis*, *fructui*, *fructuem*, *fructue* ; *fructues*, *fructuum*, *fructuibus*, *fructues*, *fructues*, *fructuibus*. So that all the cases are contracted, except the dative singular, and genitive plural. In some writers, we still find the genitive singular in *uis* ; as, *Ejus annis causā*, for *anūs*. Terent. Heaut. ii. 3. 46. and in others, the dative in *u* ; as, *Resistere impetu*, for *impetui*, Cic. Fam. x. 24. *Esse usu sibi*, for *usui*, Ib. xiii. 71. The gen. plur. is sometimes contracted ; as, *currūm* for *curruum*.

/ FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fifth declension end in *es*, and are of the feminine gender : as,

Sing.	Plur.	Terminations.	
<i>Nom. res,</i>	<i>Nom. res,</i>	<i>es,</i>	<i>es,</i>
<i>Gen. rēi,</i>	<i>Gen. rērum,</i>	<i>ēi,</i>	<i>erum,</i>
<i>Dat. rēi,</i>	<i>Dat. rēbus,</i>	<i>ēi,</i>	<i>ebus,</i>
<i>Acc. rem,</i>	<i>Acc. res,</i>	<i>em,</i>	<i>es,</i>
<i>Voc. res,</i>	<i>Voc. res,</i>	<i>es,</i>	<i>es,</i>
<i>Abl. re.</i>	<i>Abl. rēbus.</i>)	<i>e.</i>	<i>ebus.</i>

In like manner decline,

<i>Ācies, the edge of a thing, or an army in order of battle.</i>	<i>Inglūvies, gluttony.</i>	<i>Scābies, the scab, or itch.</i>
<i>Cāries, rottenness.</i>	<i>Mācies, leanness.</i>	<i>Sēries, an order.</i>
<i>Cāsāries, the hair.</i>	<i>Mātēries, matter.</i>	<i>Spēcies, an appearance.</i>
<i>Fācies, the face.</i>	<i>Pernīcies, destruction.</i>	<i>Sūperfīcies, the surface.</i>
<i>Glācies, ice.</i>	<i>Prōlūvies, a looseness.</i>	<i>Tempēries, temperateness.</i>
	<i>Rābies, madness.</i>	
	<i>Sānies, gore.</i>	

Except *dies*, a day, masc. or fem. in the singular, and always masc. in the plural ; and *mēridēs*, the mid-day, or noon, masc.

The poets sometimes make the genitive, and more rarely the dative, in *e*.

The nouns of this declension are few in number, not exceeding fifty, and seem anciently to have been comprehended under the third declension. Most of them want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and many the plural altogether.

All nouns of the fifth declension end in *ies*, except three, *fīdes*, faith ; *spēs*, hope ; *res*, a thing : and all nouns in *ies* are of the fifth, except these four, *ābies*, a fir-tree ; *āries*, a ram ; *pāries*, a wall ; and *quies*, rest ; which are of the third declension.

/ IRREGULAR NOUNS.

Irregular nouns may be reduced to three classes, *Variable*, *Defective*, and *Redundant*.)

I. VARIABLE NOUNS.

/ Nouns are variable, either in gender, or declension, or in both.)

/ I. Those which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous*, and may be reduced to the following classes :)

1. Masculine

1. *Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural :*

Ævernus, a lake in Campania, bell. *Mænālus*, a hill in Arcadia.
Dindȳmus, a hill in Phrygia. *Pangæus*, a promontory in Thrace.
Ismārus, a hill in Thrace. *Tænārus*, a promontory in Laconia.
Malsicus, a hill in Campania, famous for excellent wines. *Tartārus*, bell.
 Tāygetus, a hill in Laconia.

Thus, *Æverna*, *Ævernorum*; *Dindyma*, *-orum*, &c. These are thought by some to be properly adjectives, having *mons* understood in the singular, and *jūga* or *cacumina*, or the like, in the plural.

2. *Masc. in the sing. and in the plur. masc. and neuter.*

Focus, a jest, pl. *joci* and *joca*; *locus*, a place, pl. *loci* and *loca*. When we speak of passages in a book, or topics in discourse, *loci* only is used.

3. *Feminine in the singular, and neuter in the plural :*

Carbāsus, a sail, pl. *carbāsa*; *Pergāmus*, the citadel of Troy, pl. *Pergama*.

4. *Neuter in the singular, and masculine in the plural :*

Cælum, pl. *cæli*, heaven; *Elysium*, pl. *Elysi*, the Elysian fields; *Argos*, pl. *Argi*, a city in Greece.

5. *Neuter in the sing. in the plur. masc. or neuter :*

Rastrum, a rake, pl. *rastri* and *rastra*; *frēnum*, a bridle, pl. *freni* and *frena*.

6. *Neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural :*

Dēlicium, a delight, pl. *deliciæ*; *Epulum*, a banquet, pl. *ēpula*; *Balneum*, a bath, pl. *balneæ* and *balnea*.

II. Nouns which vary in declension are called *heteroclites*; as, *vas*, *vās*, *vās*, a vessel, plur. *vāsa*, *vasorum*; *jūgērum*, *jugēri*, an acre, plur. *jūgēra*, *jūgērum*, *jugeribus*, which has likewise sometimes *jugēris* and *jugēre* in the singular, from the obsolete *jugus*, or *juger*.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

/ Nouns are defective, either in cases or in number.

Nouns are defective in cases different ways.)

1. Some are altogether indeclinable; as, *pondus*, a pound or pounds; *fas*, right; *nēfas*, wrong; *sināpi*, mustard; *māne*, the morning; as *clārum mānē*, Pers. *A mane ad vesperam*, Plaut. *Multo mane*, &c.; *cēpe*, an onion; *gausāpe*,

sāpe, a rough coat, &c.; all of them neuter. We may rank among indeclinable nouns, any word put for a noun; as, *velle suum*, for *sua voluntas*, his own inclination, *Perf. Istud cras*, for *iste crastinus dies*, that to-morrow. *Mart. O magnum Græcorum*, the *Omēga*, or the large O of the Greeks; *Infidus est compositum ex in et fidus*; *infidus* is compounded of *in* and *fidus*. To these add foreign or barbarous names; that is, names which are neither Greek nor Latin, as *Job*, *Elisabet*, *Jerusalem*, &c.

2. / Some are used only in one case, and therefore called *mēnoptōta*: as, *inquies*, want of rest, in the nominative singular; *dīcis*, and *nauci*, in the genit. sing.; thus, *dicis gratiā*, for form's sake; *res nauci*, a thing of no value; *infīcias*, and *incīta* or *incītas*, in the acc. plur.; thus *ire infīcias*, to deny; *ad incītas redactus*, reduced to a strait or non-plus; *ingrātīs*, in the abl. plur. in spite of one; and these ablatives singular, *noctū*, in the night-time; *diū*, *interdiū*, in the day-time; *prompiū*, in readiness; *nātu*, by birth; *injussu*, without command or leave: *ergō* for the sake, as, *ergo illius*, Virg. *Ambāge*, f. with a winding or a tedious story; *Compēde*, m. with a fetter; *Casse*, m. with a net; *veprem*, m. a briar: Plur. *Ambāges*, *-ibus*; *compedes*, *-ibus*; *casses*, *-ium*; *vepres*, *-ium*, &c.

3. / Some are used in two cases only, and therefore called *diptōta*; as, *nēcesse* or *-um*, necessity; *vōlūpe* or *volup*, pleasure; *instar*, likeness, bigness; *astu*, a town; *hir*, the palm of the hand; in the nom. and acc. sing.; *vesper*, m. abl. *vespēre* or *vespēri*, the evening; *siemps*, the same, all alike, abl. *sīempse*; *spontis*, f. in the genitive, and *sponte* in the ablative, of its own accord: so *impētis*, m. and *impēte*, force; *verbēris*, n. genit. and *verbēre*, abl. a stripe; in the plural entire; *verbēra*, *verberum*, *verberibus*, &c. *rēpētundarum*, abl. *repetundis*, sc. *pecuniis*, money unjustly taken in the time of one's office, extortion; *suppētīæ*, nom. plur. *suppētias*, in the acc. help; *infēriæ*, *inferias*, sacrifices to the dead.

4. / Several nouns are only used in three cases, and therefore called *triptōta*; as, *prēcī*, *precem*, *prece*, f. a prayer, from *prex*, which is not used: in the plural it is entire, *preces*, *precum*, *precibus*, &c. *Fēmīnis*, gen. from the obsolete *femēn*, the thigh; in the dat. and abl. sing.; in the

nom. acc. and voc. plur. *femina*. *Dīca*, a process, acc. sing. *dicam*, pl. *dicas*; *tantundem*, nom. and acc. *tantūdem*, genit. even as much. Several nouns in the plural want the genitive, dative, and ablative; as, *hiems*, *rus*, *thus*, *mētus*, *mel*, *far*, and most nouns of the fifth declension.

To this class of defective nouns may be added these neuter, *mēlos*, a song; *mēle*, songs; *ēpos*, a heroic poem; *cūcoēthes*, an evil custom; *cēte*, whales; *Tempe*, plur. a beautiful vale in Thessaly, &c. used only in the nom. acc. and voc.; also *grātes*, f. thanks.

5. [The following nouns want the nominative, and of consequence the vocative, and therefore are called *tetrap-tōta*:] *vīcis*, f. of the place or stead of another; *pēcūdis*, f. of a beast; *sordis*, f. of filth; *ditiōnis*, f. of dominion, power; *ōpis*, f. of help. Of these *pēcūdis* and *sordis* have the plural entire: *ditiōnis* wants it altogether: *vīcis* is not used in the genitive plural; *ōpis* in the plural, generally signifies wealth, or power, seldom help. To these add *nex*, slaughter; *daps*, a dish of meat; and *frux*, corn; hardly used in the nominative singular, but in the plural mostly entire.

6. [Some nouns only want one case, and are called *pentap-tōta*:] thus, *os*, the mouth; *lux*, light; *fax*, a torch, together with some others, want the genitive plural. *Chaos*, n. a confused mass, wants the genit. sing. and the plural entirely; dat. sing. *chao*. So *sātiās*, i. e. *satietas*, a glut or fill of any thing. *Situs*, a situation, nastiness, of the fourth decl. wants the gen. and perhaps the dat. sing. also the gen. dat. and abl. plur.

Of nouns defective in number there are various sorts.

1. Several nouns want the plural, from the nature of the things which they express. Such are the names of virtues and vices, of arts, herbs, metals, liquors, different kinds of corn, most abstract nouns, &c. as, *justitia*, justice; *ambitus*, ambition; *astus*, cunning; *mūsica*, music; *āpium*, parsley; *argentum*, silver; *aurum*, gold; *lac*, milk; *trī-ticum*, wheat; *hordeum*, barley; *āvēna*, oats; *jūventus*, youth, &c. But of these we find several sometimes used in the plural.

2. The

2. The following masculines are hardly ever found in the plural :

Aër, aëris, *the air.*
 Æther, -ëris, *the sky.*
 Fîmus, -i, *dung.*
 Hespërus, -i, *the evening star.*
 Lîmus, -i, *slime.*
 Mëridies, -iëi, *mid-day.*
 Murdus, *a woman's ornaments.*
 Muscus, -i, *moss.*

Nëmo, -înis, *no body.*
 Pënus, -i, or -ûs, *all manner of provisions.*
 Pontus, -i, *the sea.*
 Pulvis, -ëris, *dust.*
 Sanguis, -înis, *blood.*
 Sôpor, -ôris, *sleep.*
 Viscus, -i, *bird-lime.*

3. The following feminines are scarcely used in the plural :

Argilla, -æ, *potter's earth.*
 Fâma, -æ, *fame.*
 Hûmus, -i, *the ground.*
 Lues, -is, *a plague.*
 Plebs, plëbis, *the common people.*
 Pûbes, -is, *the youth.*
 Quies, -ëtis, *rest.*

Sûlus, -ûtis, *safety.*
 Sîtis, -is, *thirst.*
 Sûpellex, -ëtis, *household-furniture.*
 Tâbes, -is, *a consumption.*
 Tellus, -ûris, *the earth.*
 Vespëra, -æ, *the evening.*

4. These neuters are seldom used in the plural :

Album, -i, *a list of names.*
 Dilûcûlum, -i, *the dawning of day.*
 Ebur, -ôris, *ivory.*
 Gëlu, *ind. frost.*
 Hîlum, -i, *the black speck of a beam, a trifle.*
 Iustîtium, -i, *a vacation, the time when courts do not sit.*
 Lëthum, *slush.*

Lûtum, -i, *clay.*
 Nihil, nihîlum, or nil, *nothing.*
 Pëlagus, -i, *the sea.*
 Pënum, -i, and penus, -ôris ; *all kind of provisions.*
 Sal, sâlis, *salt.*
 Sënium, -ii, *old age.*
 Ver, vëris, *the spring.*
 Vîrus, -i, *poison.*

5. Many nouns want the singular ; as the names of feasts, books, games, and several cities ; thus,

Âpollinâres, -ium, *games in honour of Apollo.*
 Bacchânâlia, -ium, & -iorum, *the feasts of Bacchus.* [*terals.*
 Bûcôlica, -orum, *a book of psalms.*

Ôlympia, -orum, *the Olympic games.*
 Syracûlæ, -arum, *Syracuse.*
 Hierosolyma, -orum, *Jerusalem ;*
 or. Hierosolyma, -æ, *of the first declension.*

6. The following masculines are hardly used in the singular :

Cancelli, *lattices, or windows, made with cross bars like a net ; a rail or balustrade round any place ; bounds or limits.*
 Cîni, *gray hairs.*
 Castes, -ium, *a hunter's net.*

Cëlëres, -um, *the light-horse.*
 Cōdicilli, *writings.*
 Druïdes, -um, *the Druids, priests of the ancient Britons and Gauls.*
 Fasces, -ium, *a bundle of rods, carried before the chief magistrates of Rome.*

Fasti,

Fasti, -orum, or fastus, -um, *calendars, in which were marked festival days, the names of magistrates, &c.*

Fines, -ium, *the borders of a country, or a country.*

Fōri, *the gang-ways of a ship, seats in the Circus, or the cells of a beehive.*

Furfures, -um, *scales in the head.*

Infēri, *the gods below.*

Lēmūres, -um, *hobgoblins, or spirits in the dark.*

Lībēri, *children.*

Majōres, -um, *ancestors.*

Mīnōres, -um, *successors.*

Nātāles, -ium, *parentage.*

Postēri, *posterity.*

Prōcēres, -um, *the nobles.*

Pūgillāres, -ium, *writing-tables.*

Sentes, -ium, *thorns.*

Sūpēri, *the gods above.*

Vepres, -ium, *briars.*

7. The following feminines want the singular number :

Alpes, -ium, *the Alps.*

Angustiae, *difficulties.*

Apinae, *georgas.*

Argutiae, *quirks, wit-ticisms.*

Bīgæ, *a chariot drawn by two horses.*

Trīgæ, — *by three.*

Quadrīgæ, — *by four.*

Braccæ, *breeches.*

Branchiæ, *the gills of a fish.*

Charites, -um, *the three graces.*

Cūnæ, *a cradle.*

Dēcimæ, *tribes.*

Dīræ, *imprecations, the furies.*

Dīvitiæ, *riches.*

Dryādes, -um, *the nymphs of the woods.*

Excūbiæ, *watches.*

Exēquiae, *funerals.*

Exūviæ, *spoils.* [ings.

Fāciliæ, *pleasant say-*

Fācultates, -ium, *one's goods and chattels.*

Fēriæ, *holidays.*

Gādes, -ium, *Cadiz.*

Gerræ, *trifles.*

Hyādes, -um, *the seven stars.*

Indūciæ, *a truce.*

Indūviæ, *cloaths to put on.*

Ineptiæ, *silly stories.*

Insidiæ, *snares.*

Kālendæ, Nōnæ, Īdus, -uum, *names which the Romans gave to certain days in each month.*

Lāpicidīnæ, *stone-quarries.*

Lītēre, *an epistle.*

Lactes, -ium, *the small guts.*

Mānūbiæ, *spoils taken in war.*

Mīnæ, *threats.*

Mīnūtīæ, *little niceties.*

Nūgæ, *trifles.*

Nundīnæ, *a market.*

Nuptiæ, *a marriage.*

Offūciæ, *cheats.*

Ōpēræ, *workmen.*

Pāriētīnæ, *ruinous walls.*

Partes, -ium, *a party.*

Phālēræ, *trappings.*

Plāgæ, *nets.*

Pleiādes, -um, *the seven stars.* [ments.

Prestigiæ, *enchant-*

Prīmītiæ, *first fruits.*

Quisquiliæ, *sweepings.*

Rēliquiæ, *a remainder.*

Sālebræ, *rugged places.*

Sālīnæ, *salt-pits.*

Scālæ, *a ladder.*

Scātebræ, *a spring.*

Scōpæ, *a besom.*

Tēnebræ, *darkness.*

Thermæ, *hot baths.*

Thermōpylæ, *straits of mount Ceta.*

Trīcæ, *toys.*

Valvæ, *folding doors.*

Vergīliæ, *the seven stars.*

Vindicīæ, *a claim of liberty, a defence.*

8. The following neuter nouns want the singular :

Acta, *public acts or records.*

Æstīva, sc. castra, *summer quarters.*

Arma, *arms.*

Bellāria, -orum, *sweet meats.*

Eona, *goods.*

Brēvia, -ium, *shelves.*

Castra, *a camp.*

Chāristia, -orum, *a peace-feast.*

Cībāria, *victuals.*

Cōmitia, *an assembly of the people, to make laws, elect magistrates, or hold trials.*

Crēpundia,

Crēpundia, children's rattles.
 Cūnābūla, a cradle, an origin.
 Diētēria, scoffs, twitticisms.
 Extā, the entrails.
 Februa, -orum, purifying sacrifices.
 Flabra, blasts of wind.
 Frāga, strawberries.
 Hiberna, sc. castra, winter quarters.
 Ilia, -ium, the entrails.
 Incūnābūla, a cradle.
 Insecta, insects.
 Iusta, funeral rites.
 Lāmenta, lamentations.
 Lautia, provisions for the entertain-
 ment of foreign ambassadors.
 Lustra, dens of wild beasts.
 Māgālia, -ium, cottages.
 Mœnia, -ium, the walls of a city.
 Mūnia, -iorum, offices.
 Orgia, the sacred rites of Bacchus.
 Ōvilia, -ium, an inclosure, where the
 people went to give their votes.
 Pālēaria, -ium, the dew-lap of a beast.

Pārāpherna, all things the wife
 brings her husband except her
 dowry.
 Pārentālia, -ium, solemnities at the
 funeral of parents.
 Philtra, love potions.
 Præcordia, the bowels.
 Principia, the place in the camp
 where the general's tent stood.
 Pūthia, games in honour of Apollo.
 Rostra, a place in Rome made of the
 beaks of ships, from which orators
 used to make orations to the people.
 Scrūta, old cloaths.
 Sponsālia, -ium, espousals.
 Stātiva, sc. castra, a standing camp.
 Suōvētaurilia, -ium, a sacrifice of
 a fawn, a sheep, and an ox.
 Tālāria, -ium, winged shoes.
 Tesqua, rough places.
 Transtra, the seats where the rowers
 sit in ships.
 Ūtensilia, -ium, utensils.

Several nouns in each of the above lists are found also in the singular, but in a different sense; thus, *castrum*, a castle; *littera*, a letter of the alphabet, &c.

III. REDUNDANT NOUNS.

Nouns are redundant in different ways: 1. In termination only; as, *arbor* and *arbor*, a tree. 2. In declension only; as, *laurus*, genit. *lauri*, and *laurus*, a laurel tree, *sēquester*, -tri, or -tris, a mediator. 3. Only in gender; as, *hic* or *hoc vulgus*, the rabble. 4. Both in termination and declension; as, *mātēria*, -æ, or, *materies*, -iēi, matter; *plebs*, -is, the common people, or *plebes*, -is, -ēi, or contracted, *plebi*. 5. In termination and gender; as, *tōnitrus*, -ūs, masc. *tonitru*, neut. thunder. 6. In declension and gender; as, *pēnus*, -i, and -ūs, m. or f. or *penus*, -ōris, neut. all kind of provisions. 7. In termination, gender, and declension; as, *æther*, -ēris, masc. and *æthra*, -æ, fem. the sky. 8. Several nouns in the same declension are differently varied; as, *tigris*, -is, or *ūlis*, a tyger: to which may be added, nouns which have the same signification in different numbers; as, *Fidēna*, -æ; or *Fidene*, -arum, the name of a city.

The most numerous class of redundant nouns consists of those which express the same meaning by different terminations; as, *menda*, -æ; and *mendum*, -i, a fault; *cassis*, -idis; and *cassida*, -æ, a helmet.—So,

Acinus,

Ācīnus, & -um, *a grape-stone*.
 Alvear, & -e, & -ium, *a bee-bive*.
 Āmārācus, & -um, *sweet mar-joram*.
 Ancīle, & -ium, *an oval shield*.
 Angīportus, -ūs, & -i, & -um, *a narrow lane*.
 Aphractus, & -um, *an open ship*.
 Aplustre, & -um, *the flag, colours*.
 Bācūlus, & -um, *a staff*.
 Balteus, & -um, *a belt*.
 Bātillus, & -um, *a fire-shovel*.
 Cāpūlus, & -um, *a bilt*.
 Cāpus, & -o, *a capon*.
 Cēpa, & -e, indec. *an onion*.
 Clypeus, & -um, *a shield*.
 Collūvies, & -io, *filth, dirt*.
 Compāges, & -go, *a joining*.
 Conger, & -grus, *a large eel*.
 Crōcus, & -um, *saffron*.
 Cūbītus, & -um, *a cubit*.
 Dilūvium, & -es, *a deluge*.
 Ēlēphantus, & Elephas, -antis, *an elephant*.
 Flēgus, & -ēia, *an elegy*.
 Efsēda, & -um, *a chariot*.
 Eventus, & -um, *an event*.
 Fulgetra, & -um, *lightning*.
 Gālērus, & -um, *a hat*.
 Gibbus, & -a; & -er, -ēris, *or* -ēri, *a bunch, a swelling*.
 Glūtīnum, & -en, *glue*.

Hebdomas, & -āda, *a week*.
 Intrīta, & -um, *fine mortar, mixed meat*.
 Librārium, & -a, *a book-case*.
 Mācēria, & -es, iēi, *a wall*.
 Milliāre, & -ium, *a mile*.
 Mōnītum, & -us, -ūs, *an admonition*.
 Muria, & -es, -iēi, *brine or pickle*.
 Nāsus, & -um, *the nose*.
 Obsīdio, & -um, *a siege*.
 Oestrus, & -um, *a gad bee*.
 Ostrea, & -um, *an oyster*.
 Peplus, & -um, *a veil, a robe*.
 Pistrīna, & -um, *a bake-house*.
 Prætextus, -us, & -um, *a pretext*.
 Rāpa, & -um, *a turnip*.
 Rūma, & -men, *the cud*.
 Rufcus, & -um, *a brush*.
 Seps, & sēpes, f. *an hedge*.
 Segmen, & -mentum, *a piece or parting*.
 Sībīlus, & -um, *a hissing*.
 Sīnus, & -um, *a milk-pail*.
 Sparcītia, & -es, *naftiness*.
 Strāmen, & -tum, *straw*.
 Suffīmen, & -tum, *a perfume*.
 Tīgnus, & -um, *a plank*.
 Tōral, & -āle, *a bed-covering*.
 Torcūlar, & -are, *a wine-press*.
 Viscus, & -um, *bird lime*.
 Vēternus, and -um, *a lethargy*.

Note. The nouns which are called variable and defective, seem originally to have been redundant: thus *vāsu*, -orum, properly comes from *vasum*, and not from *vas*; but custom, which gives laws to all languages, has dropt the singular, and retained the plural; and so of others.

Division of Nouns according to their signification and derivation.

1. | A substantive which signifies many in the singular number, is called a *Collective* noun; as, *pōpūlas*, a people; *exercītus*, an army.

2. | A substantive derived from another substantive proper, signifying one's extraction, is called a *Patronymic* noun; as, *Priāmīdes*, the son of Priamus; *Æētias*, the daughter

daughter of *Æetes* ; *Nērīnē*, the daughter of *Nereus*. Patronymics are generally derived from the name of the father ; but the poets, by whom they are chiefly used, derive them also from the grandfather, or from some other remarkable person of the family ; sometimes likewise from the founder of a nation or people ; as, *Æäcides*, the son, grandson, great-grandson, or one of the posterity of *Æäcus* ; *Römŭlida*, the Romans, from their first king *Romulus*.

/ Patronymic names of men end in *des* ; of women, in *is*, *as*, or *ne*. Those in *des* and *ne* are of the first declension, and those in *is* and *as*, of the third ; as, *Priamides*, *de*, &c. pl. *-de*, *darum*, &c. ; *Nērīne*, *es* : *Tyndāris*, *-idis* or *-idos* ; *Æētias*, *-adis*, &c.)

3. / A noun derived from a substantive proper, signifying one's country, is called a *Patrial* or *Gentile* noun ; as, *Tros*, *Trois*, a man born at Troy ;) *Troas*, *-adis*, a woman born at Troy. *Sicŭlus*, *-i*, a Sicilian man ; *Sicēlis*, *-idis*, a Sicilian woman : so, *Măcēdo*, *-onis* ; *Arpīnas*, *-ātis*, a man born in Macedonia, *Arpinum* ; from *Troja*, *Sicilia*, *Măcedonia*, *Arpinum*. But patrials for the most part are to be considered as adjectives, having a substantive understood, as, *Romānus*, *Athēniensis*, &c.

4. / A substantive derived from an adjective, expressing simply the quality of the adjective, without regard to the thing in which the quality exists, is called an *Abstract* ;) as *justitia*, justice ; *bŏnitas*, goodness ; *dulcēdo*, sweetness : from *justus*, just ; *bonus*, good ; *dulcis*, sweet. The adjectives from which these abstracts come, are called *Concretes* ; because, besides the quality, they also suppose something to which it belongs. Abstracts commonly end in *a*, *as*, or *do*, and are very numerous, being derived from most adjectives in the Latin tongue.

5. / A substantive derived from another substantive, signifying a diminution or lessening of its signification, is called a *Diminutive* ;) as, *libellus*, a little book ; *chartŭla*, a little paper ; *ŏpusculum*, a little work ; *corcŭlum*, a little heart ; *rētĭculum*, a small net ; *scăbellum*, a small form ; *lăpillus*, a little stone ; *cultellus*, a little knife ; *păgella*, a little
little

little page : from *liber, charta, opus, cor, rete, scamnum, lapis, culter, pagina*. Several diminutives are sometimes formed from the same primitive ; as, from *puer, puerulus, puellus, puellulus* ; from *cista, cistula, cistella, cistellula* ; from *homo, homuncio, homunculus*. Diminutives for the most part end in *lus, la, lum* ; and are generally of the same gender with their primitives. When the signification of the primitive is increased, it is called an *Amplificative*, and ends in *o* ; as, *Capito, -onis*, having a large head : So, *naso, labeo, bucco*, having a large nose, lips, cheeks.

6. A substantive derived from a verb is called a *Verbal noun* ; as, *amor*, love ; *doctrina*, learning : from *amo*, and *doceo*. Verbal nouns are very numerous, and commonly end in *io, or, us*, and *ura* ; as, *lectio*, a lesson ; *amator*, a lover ; *luctus*, grief, *creatura*, a creature.

ADJECTIVE.

An adjective is a word *added* to a substantive, to express its quality ; as, *hard, soft*.

We know things by their qualities only. Every quality must belong to some subject. An adjective therefore always implies a substantive expressed or understood, and cannot make full sense without it.

An adjective may be thus distinguished from a substantive : If the word *thing* be joined to an adjective, it will make sense ; but if it be joined to a substantive, it will make nonsense : thus we can say, " a good thing ; " but we cannot say, " a book thing."

Adjectives in English admit of no variation, except that of the degrees of comparison.

LATIN ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives in Latin are varied by gender, number, and case, to agree with substantives in all these accidents.

An adjective properly hath neither genders, numbers, nor cases ; but certain terminations answering to the gender, number, and case of the substantive with which it is joined.

Adjectives are varied like three substantives of the same termination and declension.

All adjectives are either of the first and second declension, or of the third only.

Adjectives of three terminations are of the first and second declension ; but adjectives of one or two terminations are of the third.

Exc. The following adjectives, though they have three terminations, are of the third declension.

<i>Ācer, sharp.</i>	<i>Cēlēber, famous.</i>	<i>Pēdestēr, on foot.</i>
<i>Ālācer, cheerful.</i>	<i>Cēler, swift. [horse.]</i>	<i>Sālūber, wholesome.</i>
<i>Campester, belonging to a plain.</i>	<i>Ēquester, belonging to a marshy.</i>	<i>Sylvestēr, woody.</i>
		<i>Völūcer, swift.</i>

ADJECTIVES of the FIRST and SECOND DECLENSION.

(Adjectives of the first and second declension have their masculine in *us* or *er*, their feminine always in *a*, and their neuter always in *um*; as, *bōnus*, for the masc. *bona*, for the fem. *bonum*, for the neut. good: thus,)

Sing.			Plur.		
N. bōn-us,	-a,	-um,	N. bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
G. bon-i,	-æ,	-i,	G. bon-orum,	-arum,	-orum,
D. bon-o,	-æ,	-o,	D. bon-is,	-is,	-is,
A. bon-um,	-am,	-um,	A. bon-os,	-as,	-a,
V. bon-e,	-a,	-um,	V. bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
A. bon-o,	-ā,	-o.	A. bon-is,	-is,	-is. /

In like manner decline,

<i>Ācerbus, unripe, bitter.</i>	<i>Arctus, strait.</i>	<i>Cæcus, blind.</i>
<i>Ācidus, sour, tart.</i>	<i>Arduus, lofty.</i>	<i>Callidus, cunning.</i>
<i>Ācūtus, sharp.</i>	<i>Argūtus, quick, shrill.</i>	<i>Calvus, bald.</i>
<i>Ādultērīnus, counter- feit.</i>	<i>Assus, roasted, hot, pure.</i>	<i>Cāmūrus, crooked.</i>
<i>Āegrōtus, sick.</i>	<i>Astūtus, cunning.</i>	<i>Candīdus, fair, sincere.</i>
<i>Āemūlus, vying with.</i>	<i>Avārus, covetous.</i>	<i>Cānus, hoary.</i>
<i>Āequus, equal, just.</i>	<i>Āvidus, greedy.</i>	<i>Cārus, dear.</i>
<i>Āhēnus, of brass.</i>	<i>Augustus, venerable.</i>	<i>Cassus, void.</i>
<i>Albus, white.</i>	<i>Austērus, harsh, rough.</i>	<i>Castus, chaste.</i>
<i>Altus, high.</i>	<i>Balbus, stammering.</i>	<i>Cautus, wary.</i>
<i>Āmārus, bitter.</i>	<i>Barbārus, savage.</i>	<i>Cāvus, hollow.</i>
<i>Āmcēnus, pleasant.</i>	<i>Bardus, dull, slow.</i>	<i>Celsus, high, lofty.</i>
<i>Ambīguus, doubtful.</i>	<i>Beātus, blessed.</i>	<i>Cernuus, stooping.</i>
<i>Āmicus, friendly.</i>	<i>Bellus, pretty.</i>	<i>Certus, certain, sure.</i>
<i>Amplus, large.</i>	<i>Bēnignus, kind.</i>	<i>Clārus, famous.</i>
<i>Annuus, yearly.</i>	<i>Bīmus, two years old.</i>	<i>Claudus, lame.</i>
<i>Angustus, narrow.</i>	<i>Blāsus, lisping.</i>	<i>Cærūlus, or -ēus, a- zure, sky coloured.</i>
<i>Antīquus, ancient.</i>	<i>Blandus, flattering.</i>	<i>Commodus, convenient.</i>
<i>Aprīcus, sunny.</i>	<i>Brūtus, brutish, sense- less.</i>	<i>Concinnus, fine, neat.</i>
<i>Aptus, fit.</i>	<i>Cādūcus, fading.</i>	<i>Cōruscus, glittering.</i>
<i>Arcānus, secret.</i>		<i>Crassus, thick.</i>

Crēpērus, *doubtful.*Crispus, *curled.*Crūdus, *raw.*Cunctus, *all.*Curtus, *short.*Curvus, *crooked.*Cynicus, *churlish.*Dædalus, poet. *curiously made.*Dēcōrus, *graceful.*Densus, *thick.*Dignus, *worthy.*Dirus, *direful.*Disertus, *eloquent.*Diuturnus, *lasting.*Doctus, *learned.*Dubius, *doubtful.*Dūrus, *hard.*Ebrius, *drunk.*Effætus, *past having young.*Egēnus, *poor.*Egrēgius, *remarkable.*Elixus, *boiled.*Exiguus, *small.*Eximius, *excellent.*Exōticus, *from a foreign country.*Externus, *outward.*Fācētus, *witty.*Fācundus, *eloquent.*Falsus, *false, lying.*Fāmēlicus, *famished.*Fātuus, *foolish.*Faustus, *lucky.*Fērus, *wild, savage.*Fessus, *tweary.*Festīnus, *hastening.*Festus, *festival.*Fīdus, *faithful.*Finitimus, *neighbouring.*Firmus, *firm, steady.*Flaccus, *flap-eared.*Flāvus, *yellow.*Fædus, *ugly.*Fœtus, *big with young.*Formōsus, *fair.*Frētus, *trusting.*Frivōlus, *trifling.*Fulvus, *yellow.*Furvus, *swarthy.*Fuscus, *brown.*Garrūlus, *prattling.*Gēlidus, *cold as ice.*Gēmīnus, *double.*Germānus, *of the same stock, real.*Gibbus, *convex.*Gilvus, *flesh-coloured.*Glaucus, *grey.*Gnārus, *skilful.*Gnāvus, *active.*Grātus, *thankful.*Hirsūtus, *hirsute, rough.*Hispidus, *rugged.*Hōnestus, *honourable, honest.*Hornus, *of this year.*Hūmānus, *human, belonging to a man : humane, polite.*Hūmidus, *moist.*Idōneus, *fit.*Jejūnus, *fasting.*Ignārus, *ignorant.*Ignāvus, *lothful.*Imprōbus, *wicked.*Incestus, *unchaste.*Inclūtus, *renowned.*Indīgus, *needy.*Industrius, *diligent.*Ineptus, *unfit.*Infīdus, *unfaithful.*Ingēnuus, *free-born.*Inimicus, *unfriendly.*Inīquus, *uneven, unjust.*Intentus, *intense, strait.*Invidus, *envious.*Invītus, *unwilling.*Irācundus, *passionate.*Irātus, *angry.*Irrītus, *fruitless, vain.*Jūcundus, *pleasant.*Lætus, *joyful.*Lævus, *on the left hand.*Largus, *large.*Lascīvus, *wanton.*Lassus, *tweary.*Lātus, *broad.*Laxus, *loose, slack.*Lentus, *slow, pliant.*Lēpidus, *pretty, witty.*Limpīdus, *clear, pure.*Līmus, *squinting.*Lippus, *blear-eyed.*Longinquus, *far off.*Longus, *long.*Lubricus, *slippery.*Lūcidus, *bright.*Lūridus, *pale, ghastly.*Luscus, *blind of one eye.*Mācilentus, *lean.*Mālinus, *spiteful.*Mancus, *maimed, lame.*Mānifestus, *evident.*Marcīdus, *rotten.*Mēdius, *mid or middle.*Mendīcus, *beggar-like.*Menstruus, *monthly.*Mērācus, *without mixture.*Mērus, *pure.*Mīrus, *wonderful.*Mōdestus, *modest.*Mœstus, *sad.*Mōlestus, *troublesome.*Mōrōsus, *surly.*Mōrus, *foolish.*Mūcīdus, *musty.*Mundus, *neat.*Mūtīlus, *maimed, without horns.*Mūtus, *dumb.*Mūtus, *mutual, lent or borrowed.*Nīmīus, *too much.*Noxius, *hurtful.*Nūdus, *naked.*Nuntius, *bringing news.*Ōbēsus, *fat, dull.*Obliquus, *crooked.*Obscānus, *obscene, emissive.*

Obscūrus

Obscūrus, <i>dark, mean.</i>	Prōfundus, <i>deep.</i>	Sentus, <i>rough.</i>
Obsolētus, <i>old, out of use.</i>	Prōmiscuus, <i>confused.</i>	Sērēnus, <i>clear.</i>
Obstipus, <i>stiff, sorry.</i>	Promptus, <i>ready.</i>	Sērius, <i>earnest.</i>
Obtūsus, <i>blunt.</i>	Prōnus, <i>with the face downward.</i>	Sērus, <i>late.</i>
Ōdiōsus, <i>hateful.</i>	Prōpērus, <i>hasty.</i>	Sevērus, <i>severe, harsh.</i>
Ōpācus, <i>dark, steady.</i>	Prōpinquus, <i>near.</i>	Siccus, <i>dry.</i>
Ōpīmus, <i>rich, fat.</i>	Proprius, <i>proper.</i>	Sīmus, <i>flat-nosed.</i>
Ōpīpārus, <i>costly, dainty.</i>	Prōtervus, <i>saucy.</i>	Sincērus, <i>sincere, pure.</i>
Opportūnus, <i>seasonable.</i>	Pūblicus, <i>public.</i>	Sītus, <i>situate, placed.</i>
Ōpulentus, <i>op.-ens, rich.</i>	Pūdīcus, <i>chaste.</i>	Sobrius, <i>sober, temperate.</i>
Orbus, <i>destitute.</i>	Pullus, <i>blackish.</i>	Sōcius, <i>in alliance, a companion.</i>
Ōtiōsus, <i>at leisure.</i>	Pūrus, <i>pure, clean.</i>	Sōlidus, <i>solid.</i>
Pætus, <i>pink-eyed.</i>	Pūtus, <i>without mixture.</i>	Sordidus, <i>dirty.</i>
Pallidus, <i>pale.</i>	Quantus, <i>how great.</i>	Spīnōsus, <i>prickly.</i>
Parcus, <i>sparing.</i>	Quadrīmus, <i>four years old.</i>	Spissus, <i>thick.</i>
Patrīmus, <i>having father and</i>	Quōtīdīanus, <i>daily.</i>	Splendīdus, <i>bright.</i>
Matrīmus, <i>mother alive.</i>	Rābīdus, <i>mad.</i>	Spūrius, <i>base-born, not genuine.</i>
Pātūlus, <i>wide, spreading.</i>	Rancīdus, <i>rank, stale.</i>	Squālīdus, <i>naughty.</i>
Paulus, <i>little.</i>	Rārus, <i>rare, thin.</i>	Stōlidus, <i>foolish.</i>
Pauci, <i>-æ, -ca, few.</i>	Raucus, <i>hoarse.</i>	Strēnuus, <i>active, stout.</i>
Pērītus, <i>skilful.</i>	Rectus, <i>right, straight.</i>	Strīgōsus, <i>lean, lank.</i>
Perfidus, <i>treacherous.</i>	Reus, <i>impeached.</i>	Stultus, <i>foolish.</i>
Perpētus, <i>continual.</i>	Rīgidus, <i>cold, stiff, severe.</i>	Stūpidus, <i>stupid, dull.</i>
Perspīcus, <i>evident.</i>	Rīguus, <i>moist, well watered.</i>	Sūbītus, <i>sudden.</i>
Pius, <i>pious.</i>	Rōbustus, <i>strong.</i>	Subsecīvus, <i>cut off, or taken from other business.</i>
Plānus, <i>plain.</i>	Roscīdus, <i>deceitful.</i>	Sūdus, <i>fair, without clouds.</i>
Plēnus, <i>full.</i>	Rōtundus, <i>round.</i>	Sūperbus, <i>proud.</i>
Plērīque, <i>-æque, -āque, the most part : sing. fem. plerāque.</i>	Rūbīcundus, <i>blushing.</i>	Sūpīnus, <i>lying on the back.</i>
Posticus, <i>on the back part of a house.</i>	Rūfus, <i>reddish.</i>	Surdus, <i>deaf.</i>
Præditus, <i>endued with.</i>	Russus, <i>of a carnation colour.</i>	Tācītus, <i>silent.</i>
Prāvus, <i>wicked.</i>	Rūtīlus, <i>fiery, red.</i>	Tantus, <i>so great.</i>
Prēcārius, <i>at another's pleasure.</i>	Sævus, <i>cruel.</i>	Tardus, <i>slow.</i>
Priscus, <i>old, out of use.</i>	Sāgus, <i>knowing.</i>	Tēmērārius, <i>rash.</i>
Pristīnus, <i>ancient.</i>	Salsus, <i>salted, smart.</i>	Tempestīvus, <i>seasonable.</i>
Prīvātus, <i>private, retired.</i>	Salvus, <i>safe.</i>	Tēmūlentus, <i>drunken.</i>
Prīvus, <i>single, peculiar.</i>	Sanctus, <i>holy.</i>	Tēpidus, <i>lukewarm.</i>
Prōbus, <i>good, honest.</i>	Sānus, <i>sound.</i>	Tīmīdus, <i>fearful.</i>
Prōcērus, <i>high, tall.</i>	Saucius, <i>wounded.</i>	Torvus, <i>stern.</i>
Prōfānus, <i>profane, unholy.</i>	Scevus, <i>left.</i>	Tranquillus, <i>calm.</i>
	Scambus, <i>bow-legged.</i>	Trēpidus, <i>trembling for fear.</i>
	Scaurus, <i>club-footed.</i>	
	Sēcūrus, <i>secure; out of danger.</i>	
	Sedūlus, <i>careful.</i>	
		Trucūlentus,

Trūcūlentus, <i>cruel.</i>	Vācuus, <i>empty, void.</i>	Verboſus, <i>talkative.</i>
Truncus, <i>maimed,</i> <i>wanting.</i>	Vāgus, <i>wandering.</i>	Vērēcundus, <i>baſtful.</i>
Tūmīdus, <i>ſwollen.</i>	Vālgus, <i>bow-legged.</i>	Vernācūlus, <i>born in</i> <i>one's houſe.</i>
Turbīdus, <i>muddy.</i>	Vālidus, <i>ſtrong.</i>	Vērūs, <i>true.</i>
Tūtus, <i>ſafe.</i>	Vānus, <i>vain, empty.</i>	Veſcuſ, <i>ſit for eating.</i>
Ūdus, <i>wet.</i>	Vārius, <i>various, dif-</i> <i>ferent.</i>	Vicīnus, <i>neighbouring.</i>
Uncus, <i>crooked.</i>	Vārus, <i>bandy-legged.</i>	Vīduus, <i>deprived.</i>
Ūnicus, <i>only.</i>	Vaſtuſ, <i>huge.</i>	Viētus, <i>withered.</i>
Urbānuſ, <i>courteouſ.</i>	Vēgētus, <i>vigorous.</i>	Vīviduſ, <i>lively.</i>
Vācīvuſ, <i>at leiſure.</i>	Venuſtuſ, <i>comely.</i>	Vīvuſ, <i>alive.</i>

/ Tēner, tenēra, tenērum, *tender.*

Sing.			Plur.		
N. tēn-er,	-ēra,	-ērum,	N. ten-ēri,	-ēræ,	-ēra,
G. ten-ēri,	-ēræ,	-ēri,	G. ten-eroum,	-erarum,	-erorum,
D. ten-ero,	-eræ,	-ero,	D. ten-eris,	-eris,	-eris,
A. ten-erum,	-eram,	-erum,	A. ten-eros,	-eras,	-era,
V. ten-er,	-era,	-erum,	V. ten-eri,	-eræ,	-era,
A. ten-ero,	-erâ,	-ero.	A. ten-eris,	-eris,	-eris.

In like manner decline,

Asper, <i>rough.</i>	Lācer, <i>torn.</i>	Mīſer, <i>wretched.</i>
Cēter, (<i>hardly uſed</i>) <i>the reſt.</i>	Liber, <i>free.</i>	Proſper, <i>proſperouſ.</i>
Gibber, <i>crook-backed.</i>		

Alſo the compounds of *gero* and *fero*; as, *lāniger*, bearing wool: *ōpiſer*, bringing help, &c. Likewiſe, *ſātur*, *ſotūra*, *ſatūrum*, full. But moſt adjectives in *er* drop the *e*; as, *āter*, *atra*, *atrum*, black: *gen*, *atri*, *atræ*, *atri*; *dat*, *atro*, *atræ*, *atro*, &c.—So,

Æger, <i>ſick.</i>	Mācer, <i>lean.</i>	Sācer, <i>ſacred.</i>
Crēber, <i>frequent.</i>	Nīger, <i>black.</i>	Scāber, <i>rough.</i>
Glāber, <i>ſmooth.</i>	Pīger, <i>ſlow.</i>	Tēter, <i>ugly.</i>
Intēger, <i>entire.</i>	Pulcher, <i>fair.</i>	Vāſer, <i>crafty.</i>
Lūdicer, <i>ludicrous.</i>	Rūber, <i>red.</i>	

Dexter, *right*, haſ -tra, trum, or -tēra, -tērum.

Obſ. 1. (The following adjectives have their genitive ſingular in *ius*, and the dative in *i*, through all the genders: in the other caſes like *bonus* and *tener*.)

Unuſ, -a, -um; gen. uniuſ, dat. uni, <i>one.</i>)	Alter, altērīuſ, <i>one of two, the other.</i>
Aliuſ, -iuſ, <i>one of many, another.</i>	Neuter, -triuſ, <i>neither.</i>
Nulluſ, nulliuſ, <i>none.</i>	Ūter, utriuſ, <i>whether of the two.</i>
Sōluſ, -iuſ, <i>alone.</i>	Ūterque, utriuſque, <i>both.</i>
Tōtuſ, -iuſ, <i>whole.</i>	Ūterlibet, -triuſlibet, { <i>which of</i>
Ulluſ, -iuſ, <i>any.</i>	Ūterviſ, -triuſviſ, { <i>the two</i>
	Alterāter, { <i>you pleaſe.</i>

Alterūter, the one or the other, alterutrius, alterutri, and sometimes alterius utrius, alteri utri, &c.

These adjectives, except *totus*, are called *Partitives*; and seem to resemble, in their signification as well as declension, what are called pronominal adjectives. In ancient writers we find them declined like *bonus*.

Obf. 2. To decline an adjective properly, it should always be joined with a substantive in the different genders; as *bonus liber*, a good book; *bona penna*, a good pen; *bonum fidile*, a good feat. But as the adjective in Latin is often found without its substantive joined with it, we therefore, in declining *bonus*, for instance, commonly say, *bonus* a good man, understanding *vir* or *homo*; *bona*, a good woman, understanding *femina*; and *bonum*, a good thing, understanding *negotium*.

ADJECTIVES of the THIRD DECLENSION.

1. Adjectives of one termination; as *fēlix*, for the masc. *felix*, for the fem. *felix*, for the neut. happy; thus,

Sing.			Plur.		
N. fēl-ix,	-ix,	-ix,	N. fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
G. fel-īcis,	-īcis,	-īcis,	G. fel-icium,	-icium,	-icium,
D. fel-ici,	-ici,	-ici,	D. fel-icibus,	-icibus,	-icibus,
A. fel-icem,	-icem,	-ix,	A. fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
V. fel-ix,	-ix,	-ix,	V. fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
A. fel-ice, or -ici, &c.			A. fel-icibus,	-icibus,	-icibus.)

In like manner decline,

Amens, -tis, mad.	Fallax, deceitful.	Prūdens, prudent.
Atorx, -ōcis, cruel.	Fērax, fertile.	Rēcens, fresh.
Audax, -ācis, & -ens, -tis, bold.	Fērox, fierce.	Rēpens, sudden.
Bīlix, -īcis, woven with a double thread.	Frequens, frequent.	Sāgax, -ācis, sagacious.
Cāpax, capacious.	Ingens, huge.	Sālux, -acis, lustful.
Cīcur, -ūris, tame.	Iners, -tis, sluggish.	Sāpiens, wise.
Clēmens, -tis, merciful.	Infons, guiltless.	Sōlers, shrewd.
Contūmax, stubborn.	Mendax, lying. [cal.	Sons, guilty.
Dēmens, mad.	Mordax, biting, satiri-	Tēnax, tenacious.
Fdax, gluttonous.	Pernix, -īcis, swift.	Trux, -ūcis, cruel.
Efficax, effectual.	Pervīcax, wilful.	Ūber, -ēris, fertile.
Elēgans, handsome.	Pētūlans, forwards, saucy.	Vehemens, vehement.
	Prægnans, with child.	Vēlox, -ōcis, swift.
		Vōrax, devouring.

2. / Adjectives of two terminations; as, *mītis*, for the masc. and fem. *nite*, for the neut. meek; so, *mītiōr*, *mītiōr*, *mītiōr*, meeker } thus,

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
N. mītis,	mitis, mite,	N. mītes,	mites, mitia,
G. mitis,	mitis, mitis,	G. mitium,	mitium, mitium,
D. miti,	miti, miti,	D. mitibus,	mitibus, mitibus,
A. mitem,	mitem, mite,	A. mites,	mites, mitia,
V. mitis,	mitis, mite,	V. mites,	mites, mitia,
A. miti,	miti, miti.	A. mitibus,	mitibus, mitibus.)

In like manner decline,

Agilis, <i>active.</i>	Ignōbilis, <i>of mean pa-</i>	Rūdis, <i>raw.</i>
Amābilis, <i>lovely.</i>	<i>rentage.</i>	Sagax, <i>shrewd.</i>
Biennis, <i>of two years.</i>	Immānis, <i>huge, cruel.</i>	Segnis, <i>slow.</i>
Brēvis, <i>short.</i>	Inānis, <i>empty.</i>	Sōlennis, <i>annual, so-</i>
Cīvīlis, <i>courteous.</i>	Incōlūmis, <i>safe.</i>	<i>lemn.</i>
Cælestis, <i>heavenly.</i>	Infāmis, <i>infamous.</i>	Stērīlis, <i>barren.</i>
Cōmis, <i>mild, affable.</i>	Insignis, <i>remarkable.</i>	Suāvis, <i>sweet.</i>
Crūdēlis, <i>cruel.</i>	Jūgis, <i>perpetual.</i>	Sublīmis, <i>lofty.</i>
Debīlis, <i>weak.</i>	Lævis, <i>smooth.</i>	Subtilis, <i>subtile, fine.</i>
Dēformis, <i>ugly.</i>	Lēnis, <i>gentle.</i>	Tālis, <i>such.</i>
Dōcīlis, <i>teachable.</i>	Lēvis, <i>light.</i>	Tēnuis, <i>small.</i>
Dulcis, <i>sweet in taste.</i>	Mēdiocris, <i>middling.</i>	Terrestris, <i>earthly.</i>
Exīlis, <i>slender.</i>	Mirābilis, <i>wonderful.</i>	Terribīlis, <i>dreadful.</i>
Exsanguis, <i>bloodless.</i>	Mollis, <i>soft.</i>	Tristis, <i>sad.</i>
Fortis, <i>brave.</i>	Omnis, <i>all.</i>	Turpis, <i>base.</i>
Frāgilis, <i>brittle.</i>	Pernix, <i>swift, fleet.</i>	Ūtilis, <i>useful.</i>
Grandis, <i>great.</i>	Putris, <i>rotten.</i>	Vīlis, <i>worthless.</i>
Grāvis, <i>heavy.</i>	Pinguis, <i>fat.</i>	Vīridis, <i>green.</i>
Hīlāris, <i>cheerful.</i>	Quālis, <i>of what kind.</i>	Vītīlis, <i>pliant,</i>

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
N. mīti-or,	-or, -us,	N. miti-ōres,	-ōres, -ōra,
G. miti-ōris,	-ōris, -ōris,	G. miti-orum,	-orum, -orum,
D. miti-ori,	-ori, -ori,	D. miti-oribus,	-oribus, -oribus,
A. miti-orem,	-orem, -us,	A. miti-ores,	-ores, -ora,
V. miti-or,	-or, -us,	V. miti-ores,	-ores, -ora,
A. miti-ore, or-ori, &c.		A. miti-oribus,	-oribus, -oribus.)

In this manner all comparatives are declined. |

| 3. Adjectives of three terminations; as, ācer, or acris, for the masc. acris, for the fem. acre, for the neut. sharp; thus,

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
N. ā-cer or ācris,	acris, acre,	N. a-cres,	-cres, -cria,
G. a-cris,	-cris, -cris,	G. a-crium,	-crium, -crium,
D. a-cri,	-cri, -cri,	D. a-cribus,	-cribus, -cribus,
A. a-crem,	-crem, -cre,	A. a-cres,	-cres, -cria,
V. a-cer, or acris,	-cris, -cre,	V. a-cres,	-cres, -cria,
A. a-cri,	-cri, -cri.	A. a-cribus,	-cribus, -cribus.)

In like manner *ālācer* or *alacris*, *cēler* or *celēris*, *cēlēber* or *celebris*, *sālūber* or *salūbris*, *volūcer* or *volucris*, &c.

RULES.

1. Adjectives of the third declension have *e* or *i* in the ablative singular: but if the neuter be in *e*, the ablative has *i* only.

2. The genitive plural ends in *ium*, and the neuter of the nominative, accusative, and vocative, in *ia*: except comparatives, which have *um* and *a*.

EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. *Dīves*, *hōspes*, *sospes*, *sūperstes*, *jūvēnis*, *sēnex*, and *pauper*, have *e* only in the ablative singular, and consequently *um* in the genitive plural.

Exc. 2. The following have also *e* in the abl. sing. and *um*, not *ium*, in the genit. plur. *Compos*, -ōtis, master of, that hath obtained his desire; *impos*, -ōtis, unable; *inops*, -ōtis, poor; *supplex*, -icis, suppliant, humble; *uber*, -ēris, fertile; *confors*, -tis, sharing, a partner; *dēgener*, -ēris, degenerate, or degenerating; *vīgil*, watchful; *pūber*, -ēris, of age, marriageable; and *celer*: Also compounds in *ceps*, *pes*, and *corper*; as, *particeps*, partaking of; *artifex*, -icis, cunning, an artist; *bipes*, -pēdis, two-footed; *bicorper*, -ōris, two-bodied, &c. All these have seldom the neut. sing. and almost never the neut. plur. in the nominative and accusative. To which add *mēmōr*, mindful, which has *memōri*, and *memōrum*: also *dēsēs*, *rēsēs*, *hēsēs*, *perpes*, *præpes*, *tēres*, *consōlor*, *versicōlor*, which likewise for the most part want the genitive plural.

Exc. 3. *Par*, equal, has only *pāri*: but its compounds have either *e* or *i*; as *compāre*, or -ri. *Vetus*, old, has *vetēra*, and *vetērum*: *plus*, more, which is only used in the neut. sing. has *plure*: and in the plural, *plūres*, *plura*, or *pluria*, *plurium*.

Exc. 4. *Exspes*, hopeless; and *pōtis*, -e, able, are only used in the nominative. *Potis* has also sometimes *potis* in the neuter.

REMARKS.

1. Comparatives, and adjectives in *us*, have *e* more frequently than *i*; and participles in the ablative called absolute have generally *e*; as, *Tiberio regante*, not *reganti*, in the reign of Tiberius.

2. Adjectives joined with substantives neuter for the most part have *i*; as, *vitrici ferro*, not *vitricē*.

3. Different words are sometimes used to express the different genders; as, *victror*, victorious, for the masc. *victrix*, for the fem. *Victrix*, in the plur. has likewise the neuter gender; thus, *victrīces*, *victricia*: so *ultor*; and *ultrix*, revengeful. *Victrix* is also neut. in the singular.

4. Several

4. Several adjectives compounded of *clivus*, *frenum*, *basillum*, *arma*, *jūgum*, *linus*, *somnus*, and *animus*, end in *is* or *us*; and therefore are either of the first and second declension, or of the third; as, *declivis*, -is, -e; and *declivus*, -a, -um, steep; *imbēcillis*, and *imbecillus*, weak; *semisomnis*, and *semisomnus*, half-asleep; *exanimis*, and *exanimus*, lifeless. But several of them do not admit of this variation; thus we say *magnānimus*, *flexanimus*, *effrēnus*, *levisomnus*, not *magnanimis*, &c. On the contrary, we say, *pufillanimis*, *injūgis*, *illimis*, *insomnis*, *exsomnis*; not *pufillanimus*, &c. So *semianimis*, *inermis*, *sublimis*, *acclivis*, *declivis*, *proclivis*; rarely *semianimus*, &c.

5. Adjectives derived from nouns are called *Denominatives*; as *cordatus*, *mōratus*, *cœlestis*, *ādāmantinus*, *corpōrius*, *agressis*, *estivus*, &c. from *cor*, *mōs*, *cœlum*, *adamas*, &c. Those which diminish the signification of their primitives are called *Diminutives*; as, *misellus*, *parvulus*, *dūriuscūlus*, &c. Those which signify a great deal of a thing are called *Amplificatives*, and end in *osus* or *entus*; as, *vīnōsus*, *vīnolentus*, given to much wine; *ōpērōsus*, laborious; *plumbōsus*, full of lead; *nōdōsus*, knotty, full of knots; *corpulēntus*, corpulent, &c. Some end in *tus*; as, *auritus*, having long or large ears; *nasūtus*, having a large nose; *litteratus*, learned, &c.

6. An adjective derived from a substantive or from another adjective, signifying possession or property, is called a *Possessive adjective*; as, *Scoticus*, *paternus*, *herilis*, *aliēnus*, of or belonging to Scotland, a father, a master, another: from *Scotia*, *pater*, *herus*, and *alius*.

7. Adjectives derived from verbs are called *Verbals*; as, *amabilis*, amiable; *capax*, capable; *docilis*, teachable: from *amo*, *capio*, *doceo*.

8. When participles become adjectives, they are called *Participials*; as, *sapiens*, wise; *acutus*, sharp; *disertus*, eloquent. Of these many also become substantives; as, *adolescens*, *animans*, *rudens*, *seupens*, *advocatus*, *sponsus*, *natus*, *legatus*; *sponsa*, *nata*, *ferta*, sc. *corona*, a garland; *prætexta*, sc. *vestis*; *debitum*, *decretum*, *præceptum*, *satum*, *tectum*, *votum*, &c.

9. Adjectives derived from adverbs, are called *Adverbials*; as, *hodiernus*, from *hodie*; *crastinus*, from *cras*; *binus*, from *bis*; &c. There are likewise adjectives derived from prepositions; as, *contrarius*, from *contra*; *anticus*, from *ante*; *posticus*, from *post*.

/ NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives which signify number, are divided into four classes, *Cardinal*, *Ordinal*, *Distributive*, and *Multiplicative*.)

1. (The *Cardinal* or *Principal* numbers are :

Unus,	one.	Septem,	seven.
Duo,	two.	Octo,	eight.
Tres,	three.	Novem,	nine.
Quatuor,	four.	Décem,	ten.
Quinque,	five.	Undecim,	eleven.
Sex,	six.	Duodécim,	twelve.
			Trédécim,

Trēdecim,	thirteen.	Nōnaginta,	ninety.
Quatuordecim,	fourteen.	Centum,	a hundred.
Quindecim,	fifteen.	Dūcenti,	two hundred.
Sexdecim,	sixteen.	Trēcenti,	three hundred.
Septendecim,	seventeen.	Quadrīngenti,	four hundred.
Octōdecim,	eighteen.	Quīngenti,	five hundred.
Nōvīdecim,	nineteen.	Sexcenti,	six hundred.
Vīginti,	twenty.	Septīngenti,	seven hundred.
Viginty unus, or } Unus & viginti, }	twenty-one.	Octīngenti,	eight hundred.
Viginti. duo, or } Duo & viginti, }	twenty-two.	Nongenti,	nine hundred.
Trīginta,	thirty.	Mille,	a thousand.
Quadrāginta,	forty.	Duo millia, or } bis mille, }	two thousand.
Quinquāginta,	fifty.	Dēcem millia, or } dēcies mille, }	ten thousand.
Sexāginta,	sixty.	Viginti millia, or } vīcies mille, }	twenty thousand.
Septuāginta,	seventy.		
Octōginta,	eighty.		

The Cardinal numbers, except *unus* and *mille*, want the singular.

Unus is not used in the plural, unless when joined with a substantive which wants the singular; as, *in unis adibus*, in one house, *Terent. Eun. ii. 3. 75.* *Una nuptia*, *Id.* *And. iv. 1. 51.* *In una mania convenēre*, *Sallust, Cat. 6.* or when several particulars are considered as one whole; as, *una vestimenta*, one suit of cloaths, *Cic. Flacc. 29.*

Duo and *tres* are thus declined: /

Plur.			Plur.		
N. duo,	duæ,	duo,	N. tres,	tres,	tria,
G. duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum,	G. trium,	trium,	trium,
D. duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus,	D. tribus,	tribus,	tribus,
A. duos or duo,	duas,	duo,	A. tres,	tres,	tria,
V. duo,	duæ,	duo,	V. tres,	tres,	tria,
A. duobus,	duabus,	duobus.	A. tribus,	tribus,	tribus.

In the same manner with *duo*, decline *ambo*, both.

All the Cardinal numbers from *quatuor* to *centum*, including them both, are indeclinable; and from *centum* to *mille*, are declined like the plural of *bonus*; thus, *ducenti*, -*tæ*, -*ta*; *ducentorum*, -*tarum*, -*torum*, &c.

Mille is used either as a substantive or adjective; when taken substantively it is indeclinable in the singular number; and in the plural has *millia*, *milliam*, *millibus*, &c.

Mille, an adjective, is commonly indeclinable, and to express more than one thousand, has the numeral adverbs joined with it; thus, *mille homines*, a thousand men; *mille hominum*, of a thousand men, &c. *Bis mille homines*, two thousand men; *ter mille homines*, &c. But with *mille*, a substantive, we say *mille hominum*, a thousand men: *duo millia hominum*, *tria millia*, *quatuor millia*, *centum* or *centena millia hominum*; *Decies centena millia*, a million; *Vicies centena millia*, two millions, &c.

2. / The Ordinal numbers are, *prīmus*, first; *secundus*, second, &c. declined like *bonus*.)

3. / The distributive are, *singūli*, one by one; *līni*, two by two, &c. declined like the plural of *bonus*.)

The following Table contains a list of the Ordinal and Distributive Numbers, together with the Numeral Adverbs, which are often joined with the Numeral Adjectives.

	<i>Ordinal.</i>	<i>Distributive.</i>	<i>Numeral Adverbs.</i>
1	<i>Prīmus</i> , a, um.	<i>Singūli</i> , æ, a.	<i>Semel</i> , <i>once</i> .
2	<i>secundus</i> .	<i>bīni</i> .	<i>bis</i> , <i>twice</i> .
3	<i>tertius</i> .	<i>terni</i> .	<i>ter</i> , <i>thrice</i> .
4	<i>quartus</i> .	<i>quaterni</i> .	<i>quater</i> , <i>four times</i> .
5	<i>quintus</i> .	<i>quīni</i> .	<i>quinquies</i> , &c.
6	<i>sextus</i> .	<i>seni</i> .	<i>sexies</i> .
7	<i>septīmus</i> .	<i>septēni</i> .	<i>septies</i> .
8	<i>octāvus</i> .	<i>octōni</i> .	<i>octies</i> .
9	<i>nōnus</i> .	<i>nōvēni</i> .	<i>novies</i> .
10	<i>dēcīmus</i> .	<i>dēni</i> .	<i>dēcies</i> .
11	<i>undēcīmus</i> .	<i>undēni</i> .	<i>undecies</i> .
12	<i>duodēcīmus</i> .	<i>duodēni</i> .	<i>duodecies</i> .
13	<i>dēcīmus tertius</i> .	<i>trī dēni</i> , <i>terni dēni</i> .	<i>tredecies</i> .
14	<i>dēcīmus quartus</i> .	<i>quaterni dēni</i> .	<i>quatuordecies</i> .
15	<i>dēcīmus quintus</i> .	<i>quīndēni</i> .	<i>quindecies</i> .
16	<i>dēcīmus sextus</i> .	<i>seni dēni</i> .	<i>sexdecies</i> .
17	<i>dēcīmus septīmus</i> .	<i>septēni dēni</i> .	<i>decies ac septies</i> .
18	<i>dēcīmus octāvus</i> .	<i>octōni dēni</i> .	<i>decies ac octies</i> .
19	<i>dēcīmus nōnus</i> .	<i>nōvēni dēni</i> .	<i>decies et novies</i> .
20	<i>vīgēsīmus</i> , <i>vīcesīmus</i> .	<i>vīcēni</i> .	<i>vīcies</i> .
21	<i>vīgēsīmus prīmus</i> .	<i>vīcēni singuli</i> .	<i>vīcies semel</i> .
30	<i>trīgēsīmus</i> , <i>trīcesīmus</i> .	<i>trīcēni</i> .	<i>trīcies</i> .
40	<i>quadrāgēsīmus</i> .	<i>quadrāgēni</i> .	<i>quadrāgies</i> .
50	<i>quīnquāgēsīmus</i> .	<i>quīnquāgēni</i> .	<i>quīnquāgies</i> .
60	<i>sexāgēsīmus</i> .	<i>sexāgēni</i> .	<i>sexāgies</i> .
70	<i>septuāgēsīmus</i> .	<i>septuāgēni</i> .	<i>septuāgies</i> .
80	<i>octogēsīmus</i> .	<i>octogēni</i> .	<i>octōgies</i> .
90	<i>nonagēsīmus</i> .	<i>nonagēni</i> .	<i>nonāgies</i> .
100	<i>centēsīmus</i> .	<i>centēni</i> .	<i>centies</i> .
200	<i>dūcentēsīmus</i> .	<i>dūcēni</i> .	<i>dūcenties</i> .
300	<i>trīcentēsīmus</i> .	<i>trīcentēni</i> .	<i>trīcenties</i> .
400	<i>quadrīngentēsīmus</i> .	<i>quāter centēni</i> .	<i>quadrīngenties</i> .
500	<i>quīngentēsīmus</i> .	<i>quinquies centēni</i> .	<i>quīngenties</i> .
600	<i>sexcentēsīmus</i> .	<i>sexies centēni</i> .	<i>sexcenties</i> .
700	<i>septīngentēsīmus</i> .	<i>septies centēni</i> .	<i>septīngenties</i> .
800	<i>octīngentēsīmus</i> .	<i>octies centēni</i> .	<i>octīngenties</i> .
900	<i>nōngentēsīmus</i> .	<i>novies centēni</i> .	<i>nōngingenties</i> .
1000	<i>mīllēsīmus</i> .	<i>mīllēni</i> .	<i>mīllies</i> .
2000	<i>bis mīllēsīmus</i> .	<i>bis mīllēni</i> .	<i>bis mīllies</i> .

4. The multiplicative numbers are *simplex*, simple; *duplex*, double, or two-fold; *triplex*, triple, or three-fold; *quadruple*, four-fold; &c.; all of them declined like *felix*; thus, *simplex*, *-icis*, &c.

The interrogative words, to which the above numerals answer, are *quot*, *quōtus*, *quōtēni*, *quōties*, and *quōtūplex*.

Quot, how many? is indeclinable: So *Tot*, so many; *tōtīdem*, just so many; *quotquot*, *quotcurque*, how many soever; *aliquot*, some.

To these numeral adjectives may be added such as express division, proportion, time, weight, &c. as, *bīpartītus*, *tripartītus*, &c. *duplus*, *triplus*, &c. *bīmus*, *trīmus*; &c. *biennis*, *triennis*, &c. *hīmestris*, *trīmestris*, &c. *bīlibris*, *trīlibris*, &c. *bīnārius*, *ternārius*, &c. which last are applied to the number of any kind of things whatever; as *versus sēnārius*, a verse of six feet; *dēnārius nummus*, a coin of ten asses; *octogenārius senex*, an old man eighty years old; *grex centenārius*, a flock of an hundred, &c.

/ COMPARISON of ADJECTIVES.

The comparison of adjectives expresses the quality in different degrees; as, *hard*, *harder*, *hardest*.

/ Those adjectives only are compared, whose signification admits the distinction of *more* and *less*. /

/ The degrees of comparison are three, the *Positive*, *Comparative*, and *Superlative*. /

The *Positive* seems improperly to be called a degree. It simply signifies the quality: as, *durus*, hard: and serves only as a foundation for the other degrees. By it we express the relation of equality; as *he is as tall as I*.

The *Comparative* expresses a greater degree of the quality, and has always a reference to a less degree of the same; as, *stronger*, *wisser*.

The *Superlative* expresses the quality carried to the greatest degree; as, *strongest*, *wisest*.

Comparison of ENGLISH Adjectives.

In English the comparative is formed from the positive, by adding to the end of the word *r* or *er*; and the superlative by adding *st* or *est*; as, *wise*, *wiser*, *wisest*; *cold*, *colder*, *colest*. The adverbs *more* and *most*, put before the adjective, have the same effect; as *brave*, *more brave*, *most brave*.

Monosyllables for the most part are compared by *er* and *est*; as, *fair*, *fairer*, *fairest*; and polysyllables by *more* and *most*; as, *beautiful*, *more beautiful*, *most beautiful*.

In some few adjectives, the superlative is formed by adding *most*; as, *undermost*, *uttermost*, or *utmost*, *uppermost*, *nethermost*, *foremost*.

Comparison

Comparison of LATIN Adjectives.

The comparative degree is formed from the first case of the positive in *i*, by adding the syllable *or*, for the masculine and feminine, and *us* for the neuter: The superlative is formed from the same case, by adding *ssimus*; as, *Altus*, high, genit. *alti*: Comparative *altior*, for the masc. *altior*, for the fem. *altius*, for the neut. higher; Superlative, *altissimus*, -a, -um, highest. So *mitus*, meek; dat. *miti*: *mitior*, -or, -us, meeker: *mitissimus*, -a, -um, meekest.

If the positive end in *er*, the superlative is formed by adding *rimus*; as, *pauper*, poor; *pauperrimus*, poorest.

The comparative is always of the third declension: The superlative of the first and second; as, *altus*, *altior*, *altissimus*; *alta*, *altior*, *altissima*; *altum*, *altius*, *altissimum*; gen. *alti*, *altiōris*, *altissimi*, &c.

Irregular and defective Comparison.

1. Bonus,	mēlior,	optimus,	good,	better,	best.
Mālus,	pejor,	peſsimus,	bad,	worſe,	worſt.
Magnus,	major,	maximus,	great,	greater,	greatest.
Parvus,	minor,	minimus,	ſmall,	leſs,	leaſt.
Multus,	—	plūrimus,	much,	more,	moſt.

Fem. *Multa*, plurima; neut. *multum*, plus, plurimum; plur. *multi*, plures, plurimi; *multæ*, plures, plurimæ, &c.

In ſeveral of theſe, both in Engliſh and Latin, the comparative and ſuperlative ſeem to be formed from ſome other adjective, which in the poſitive has fallen into diſuſe: in others, the regular form is contracted; as, *maximus*, for *magniſſimus*; *moſt*, for *moreſt*; *leaſt*, for *leſſeſt*; *worſt*, for *worſeſt*.

2. Theſe five have their ſuperlative in *rimus*;

<i>Fācilis</i> , <i>facilior</i> , <i>facillimus</i> , <i>eaſy</i> .	<i>Imbēcillis</i> , <i>imbecillior</i> , <i>imbecillimus</i> , <i>weak</i> .
<i>Grācilis</i> , <i>gracilior</i> , <i>gracillimus</i> , <i>lean</i> .	
<i>Hūmilis</i> , <i>humilior</i> , <i>humillimus</i> , <i>low</i> .	<i>Similis</i> , <i>ſimilior</i> , <i>ſimillimus</i> , <i>like</i> .

3. The following adjectives have regular comparatives, but form the ſuperlative differently;

<i>Citer</i> , <i>citerior</i> , <i>citimus</i> , <i>near</i> .	<i>Mātūrus</i> , -ior, <i>maturrimus</i> , or <i>maturiffimus</i> , <i>ripe</i> .
<i>Dexter</i> , <i>dexterior</i> , <i>dextimus</i> , <i>right</i> .	
<i>ſiniſter</i> , <i>ſiniſterior</i> , <i>ſiniſtimus</i> , <i>left</i> .	<i>Posterus</i> , <i>poſterior</i> , <i>poſtremus</i> , <i>behind</i> .
<i>Exter</i> , -erior, <i>extimus</i> , or <i>extrēmus</i> , <i>outward</i> .	<i>Sūperus</i> , -rior, <i>ſuprēmus</i> , or <i>ſummus</i> , <i>high</i> .
<i>Inferus</i> , -ior, <i>inſimius</i> or <i>imus</i> , <i>below</i> .	
<i>Intērus</i> , <i>intērior</i> , <i>intimius</i> , <i>inward</i> .	<i>Vētus</i> , <i>vētērior</i> , <i>vēterrimus</i> , <i>old</i> .

4. Compounds

4. Compounds in *dīcus*, *lēquus*, *fīcus*, and *volus*, have *entior*, and *entissimus*; as, *mālēdīcus*, railing, *mālēdicentior*, *maledicentissimus*: So *magnilōquus*, one that boasteth; *bēnēfīcus*, beneficent; *mālēvōlus*, malevolent; *mīrīfīcus*, wonderful; *-entior*, *-entissimus*, or *mīrīfīcissimus*. *Nēquam*, indecl. worthless, vicious, has *nēquior*, *nequissimus*.

There are a great many adjectives, which, though capable of having their signification increased; yet either want one of the degrees of comparison, or are not compared at all.

1. The following adjectives are not used in the positive:
Dētērior, worse, *deterimus*. *Prōpior*, nearer, *proximus*, nearest
Ōcior, swifter, *ocissimus*. or next.
Prior, former, *prīmus*. *Ultērior*, farther, *ultimus*.

2. The following want the comparative:
Inclūtus, *inclutissimus*, renowned. *Nūpērus*, *nuperrimus*, late.
Mēritus, *meritissimus*, deserving. *Par*, *pāriissimus*, equal.
Nōvus, *novissimus*, new. *Sācer*, *facerrimus*, sacred.

3. The following want the superlative:
Adōlescens, *adolescētiōr*, young. *Prōnus*, *pronior*, inclined down-
Diūturnus, *diuturnior*, lasting. wards.
Ingens, *ingētiōr*, huge. *Sātur*, *satūriōr*, full.
Jūvēnis, junior, young. *Sēnex*, senior, old.
Ōpīmus, *opīmiōr*, rich.

To supply the superlative of *jūvēnis* or *adōlescens*, we say, *minimus natu*, the youngest; and of *senex*, *maximus natu*, the oldest.

Adjectives in *ilis*, *ālis*, and *bilis*, also want the superlative; as *cīvilis*, *civilior*, civil; *rēgālis*, *regalior*, regal; *flēbīlis*, *-ior*, lamentable. So, *juvenilis*, youthful; *exilis*, small, &c.

To these add several others of different terminations: Thus, *arcānus*, *-ior*, secret; *declivis*, *-ior*, bending downwards; *longinquus*, *-ior*, far off; *propinquus*, *-ior*, near.

Antērior, former; *sēquior*, worse; *sātior*, better; are only found in the comparative.

4. Many adjectives are not compared at all: such are those compounded with nouns or verbs; as, *versicōlor*, of diverse colours; *pestifer*, poisonous: also adjectives in *us* pure, in *ivus*, *inus*, *orus*, or *imus*, and diminutives; as, *dūbius*, doubtful; *vācuus*, empty; *fūgītīvus*, that flieth away; *mātūtīnus*, early; *cānōrus*, shrill; *lēgītīvus*, lawful; *tēnelus*, somewhat tender; *majuscūlus*, &c.: together with a great many others of various terminations; as, *almus*, gracious; *præcox*, *-ōcis*, soon or early ripe; *mīrus*, *ēgēnus*, *lācer*, *mēmōr*, *suspēs*, &c.

This defect of comparison is supplied by putting the adverb *magis* before the adjective, for the comparative degree; and *valde* or *maxime*

for the superlative; thus, *egēnus*, needy; *magis egenus*, more needy; *valde* or *maxime egenus*, very or most needy. Which form of comparison is also used in those adjectives which are regularly compared.

PRONOUN.

(A Pronoun is a word which stands *instead of a Noun*.)

Thus, *I* stands for the name of the person who speaks; *thou* for the name of the person addressed.

Pronouns serve to point out objects, whose names we either do not know, or do not want to mention. They also serve to shorten discourse, and prevent the too frequent repetition of the same word; thus, instead of saying, *When Caesar had conquered Gaul, Caesar turned Caesar's arms against Caesar's country*, we say, *When Caesar had conquered Gaul, he turned his arms against his country*.

ENGLISH PRONOUNS.

In English there are five substantive pronouns, *I*, *thou*, *he*, *she*, and *it*.

The first is used, when one speaks of himself; as, *I love*: the second, when the person spoken to is the subject of the discourse; as, *thou lovest*: and the last three, in speaking of any other person or thing; as, *he*, *she*, or *it falls*.

I is said to be of the first person; *thou*, of the second; and *he*, *she*, or *it*, together with all other words, of the third: and so in the plural number, *we*, *ye*, *they*. Hence these are called *Personal Pronouns*.

The person speaking, and the person spoken to, do not need the distinction of gender; because they are supposed to be present, and therefore their sex is commonly known. But the third person, or thing spoken of, being frequently absent, and often unknown, requires to be distinguished by different genders; thus, *he*, *she*, *it*.

Substantive pronouns in English have three cases, the *nominative*, the *genitive* or *possessive*, and the *objective* or *accusative* case, which follows the verb active, or the preposition.

Substantive Pronouns, according to their Cases, Numbers, and Persons.

Cases.	Singular. Persons.			Plural. Persons.		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Nom.	I,	thou,	he, she, it;	we,	ye or you,	they.
Gen.	mine,	thine,	his, hers, its;	ours,	yours,	theirs.
Acc.	me,	thee,	him, her, it;	us,	you,	them.

All other pronouns are adjectives; as, *this, that, our, your, &c.* A pronominal adjective differs from a common adjective in this, that it does not express quality.

Several adjective pronouns do not admit the article before them, because they very much resemble it in their signification; as, *that man, &c.*

From the personal pronouns are formed these pronominal adjectives, *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their.* *Mine* and *thine* are often used as adjectives for *my* and *thy*, when the substantive following them begins with a vowel.

Some adjective pronouns are varied to mark number; as, *this, these; that, those.* To these add the adjectives *other, one, which*, when their substantive is not expressed, have in the plural *others, ones*; as, *many others, great ones*; in which case they seem to be used as substantives.

Who, which, that, are called RELATIVES, because they refer to some substantive going before, which is therefore called the ANTECEDENT. *Who* is varied by cases, thus, *who, whose, whom.* *His* and *whose* seem to be contractions for *him's* and *whom's*, the possessive case being formed from the objective; as *hers* from *her*; *mine* from *me*, &c.

Who, which, what, whether, are called INTERROGATIVES, when used in asking questions; when used otherwise, they are called INDEFINITES.

Own, and *self*, in the plural *selves*, are joined to the possessives, *my, our, thy, your, his, her, their*; as, *my, or mine own hand, myself, yourselves.* *Self* is likewise joined to the substantive pronoun, as *itself.* *Himself, themselves*, seem to be used by corruption for *hisself, theirselves.*

/ LATIN PRONOUNS.

The simple pronouns in Latin are eighteen; *ego, tu, sui; ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, quis, qui; meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester; nostras, vestras, and cujas.*

(Three of them are substantives, *ego, tu, sui*; the other fifteen are adjectives. /

Ego, I.

Sing.

(*Nom. ego, I,*
Gen. mei, of me.
Dat. mihi, to me,
Acc. me, me,
Voc. ———
Abl. me, with me.

Plur.

Nom. nos, we,
Gen. nostrum or nostri, of us,
Dat. nobis, to us,
Acc. nos, us,
Voc. ———
Abl. nobis, with us.)

Tu,

Tu, thou.

Sing.			Plur.		
N.	tu,	thou,	N.	vos,	ye or you,
G.	tui,	of thee,	G.	vestrum or vestri,	of you,
D.	tibi,	to thee,	D.	vobis,	to you,
A.	te,	thee,	A.	vos,	you,
V.	tu,	O thou,	V.	vos,	O ye or you.
A.	te,	with thee,	A.	vobis,	with you.

or you.

Sui, of himself, of herself, of itself.

Sing.			Plur.		
N.	_____		N.	_____	
G.	sui,	of himself, of herself, of itself,	G.	sui,	of themselves,
D.	sibi,	to himself, to herself, &c.	D.	sibi,	to themselves,
A.	se,	himself, &c.	A.	se,	themselves,
V.	_____		V.	_____	
A.	se,	with himself, &c.	A.	se,	with themselves.

Obf. 1. *Ego* wants the vocative, because one cannot call upon himself, except as a second person: thus, we cannot say, *O ego*, *O I*; *O nos*, *O we*.

Obf. 2. *Mibi* in the dative is sometimes by the poets contracted into *mihi*.

Obf. 3. The genitive plural of *ego* was anciently *nostrorum* and *nostrarum*; of *tu*, *vestrorum* and *vestrarum*, which were afterwards contracted into *nostrum* and *vestrum*.

We commonly use *nostrum* and *vestrum* after partitives, numerals, comparatives, or superlatives; and *nostri* and *vestri* after other words.

The English substantive pronouns, *he*, *she*, *it*, are expressed in Latin by these pronominal adjectives, *ille*, *iste*, *hic*, or *is*; as,

(*Ille*, for the masc. *Illa*, for the fem. *illud*, for the neut. that; or, *ille*, he; *illa*, she; *illud*, it, or that; thus,

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
<i>N.</i>	ille,	illa, illud,	<i>N.</i>	illi, illæ, illa,	
<i>G.</i>	illius,	illius, illius,	<i>G.</i>	illorum, illarum, illorum,	
<i>D.</i>	illi,	illi, illi,	<i>D.</i>	illis, illis, illis,	
<i>A.</i>	illum,	illam, illud,	<i>A.</i>	illos, illas, illa,	
<i>V.</i>	ille,	illa, illud,	<i>V.</i>	illi, illæ, illa,	
<i>A.</i>	illo,	illâ, illo.	<i>A.</i>	illis, illis, illis.)

Ipse,

Ipsē, he himself, *ipsa*, she herself, *ipsum*, itself; and *iste*, *ista*, *istud*, that, are declined like *ille*; only *ipse* has *ipsum* in the nom. acc. and voc. sing. neut.)

Ipsē is often joined to *ego*, *tu*, *sui*; and has in Latin the same force with *self* in English, when joined with a possessive pronoun; as, *ego ipse*, I myself.)

Hic, hæc, hoc, *this*.

	Sing.				Plur.		
N. hic,	hæc,	hoc,		N. hi,	hæ,	hæc,	
G. hujus,	hujus,	hujus,		G. horum,	harum,	horum,	
D. huic,	huic,	huic,		D. his,	his,	his,	
A. hunc,	hanc,	hoc,		A. hos,	has,	hæc,	
V. hic,	hæc,	hoc,		V. hi,	hæ,	hæc,	
A. hoc,	hac,	hoc.		A. his,	his,	his.	

/ Is, ea, id; *he, she, it; or that*.)

	Sing.				Plur.		
N. is,	ea,	id,		N. ii,	eæ,	ea,	
G. ejus,	ejus,	ejus,		G. eorum,	earum,	eorum,	
D. ei,	ei,	ei,		D. iis or eis, &c.			
A. eum,	eam,	id,		A. eos,	eas,	ea,	
V. ———				V. ———			
A. eo,	eâ,	eo,		A. iis or eis, &c.)			

/ *Quis, quæ, quod, or quid?* which, what? Or *Quis?* who? or what man? *quæ?* who? or what woman? *quod* or *quid?* what? which thing? or what thing? / thus,

	Sing.				Plur.		
N. quis,	quæ,	quod or quid,		N. qui,	quæ,	quæ,	
G. cujus,	cujus,	cujus,		G. quorum,	quarum,	quorum,	
D. cui,	cui,	cui,		D. queis or quibus, &c.			
A. quem,	quam,	quod or quid,		A. quos,	quas,	quæ,	
V. ———				V. ———			
A. quo,	qua,	quo;		A. queis or quibus, / &c.			

Qui, quæ, quod, who, which, that; Or *vir qui*, the man *who* or *that*; *fœmina quæ*, the woman *who* or *that*; *negotium quod*, the thing *which* or *that*: genit. *vir cujus*, the man *whose* or *of whom*; *mulier cujus*, the woman *whose* or *of whom*; *negotium cujus*, the thing *of which*, seldom *whose*, &c. thus,

Sing.			Plur.		
N. qui,	quæ,	quod,	N. qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	G. quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D. cui,	cui,	cui,	D. quibus or	quibus,	&c.
A. quem,	quam,	quod,	A. quos,	quas,	quæ,
V. —	—	—	V. —	—	—
A. quo,	qua,	quo.	A. quibus or	quibus,	&c.

✱ The other pronouns are derivatives, coming from *ego*, *tu*, and *sui*. *Meus*, my or mine; *tuus*, thy or thine; *suus*, his own, her own, its own, their own, are declined like *bonus*, -a, -um; and *noster*, our; *vester*, your, like *pulcher*, -chra, -chrum, of the first and second declension.

✱ *Nostras*, of our country; *vestras*, of your country; *cujas*, of what or which country, are declined like *felix*, of the third declension: gen. *nostrātis*, dat. *nostrāti*, &c.

✱ Pronouns as well as nouns, that signify things, which cannot be addressed, or called upon, want the vocative.

✱ *Meus* hath *mi*, and sometimes *meus*, in the voc. sing. masc.)

The relative *qui* has frequently *quī* in the ablative, and that, which is remarkable, in all genders and numbers.

Qui is sometimes used for *quis*: and instead of *cujus*, the gen. of *quis*, we find an adjective pronoun, *cujus*, -a, -um.

Simple pronouns, with respect to their signification, are divided into the following classes:

1. *Demonstratives*, which point out any person or thing present, or as if present: *Ego*, *tu*, *hic*, *iste*, and sometimes *ille*, *is*, *ipse*.
2. *Relatives*, which refer to something going before: *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *qui*.
3. *Possessives*, which signify possession: *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*.
4. *Patrials*, or *Gentiles*, which signify one's country: *nostras*, *vestras*, *cujas*.
5. *Interrogatives*, by which we ask a question: *quis*? *cujas*? When they do not ask a question, they are called *Indefinites*, like other words of the same nature.
6. *Reciprocals*, which again call back or represent the same object to the mind: *sui*, and *suus*.

COMPOUND LATIN PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are compounded variously:

1. ✱ With other pronouns; as, *isthic*, *isthæc*, *isthoc*, *isthuc*, or *istuc*.
Acc. *isthunc*, *isthanc*, *isthoc*, or *isthuc*. Abl. *isthoc*, *isthac*, *isthoc*. Nom. and acc. plur. neut. *isthæc*, of *iste* and *hic*. So *illic*, of *ille* and *hic*.
2. ✱ With some other parts of speech; as *hujusmodi*, *cujusmodi*, &c.
mecum, *ttecum*, *tecum*, *nobiscum*, *vobiscum*, *quocum* or *quicum* and *quibiscum*:

sum: *ecum*, *ecum*; *ecos*, *ecce*, and sometimes *ecce*, in the nom. sing. of *ecce* and *is*. So *ellum*, of *ecce* and *ille*.

3. With some syllable added; as, *tute* of *tu* and *te*, used only in the nom. *egimmet*, *tutemmet*, *summet*, through all the cases, thus, *metmet*, *tuimmet*, &c. of *ego*, *tu*, *sui*, and *met*. Instead of *tumet* in the nom. we say, *tutemmet*: *hicine*, *hæcine*, &c. in all the cases that end in *C*; of *hic* and *cine*: *Meapte*, *tuapte*, *suaapte*, *nostrapte*, *vestrapte*, in the ablat. fem. and sometimes *meapte*, *tuapte*, &c. of *meus*, &c. and *pte*: *hicce*, *hæcce*, *boce*: *hujusce*, *hice*, *hisce*, *hosee*: of *hic* and *ce*: whence *hujuscemodi*, *ejuscemodi*, *cujuscemodi*. So *IDEM*, the same, compounded of *is* and *dem*, which is thus declined:

Sing.			Plur.		
N. <i>idem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>idem</i> ,	N. <i>iīdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,
G. <i>ejusdem</i> ,	<i>ejusdem</i> ,	<i>ejusdem</i> ,	G. <i>eorundem</i> ,	<i>eorundem</i> ,	<i>eorundem</i> ,
D. <i>eīdem</i> ,	<i>eīdem</i> ,	<i>eīdem</i> ,	D. <i>eīdem</i> or <i>iīdem</i> ,	&c.	
A. <i>eundem</i> ,	<i>eandem</i> ,	<i>idem</i> ,	A. <i>eōdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,
V. <i>idem</i> ,	<i>eadem</i> ,	<i>idem</i> ,	V. <i>iīdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,
A. <i>eōdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>eōdem</i> ,	A. <i>eīdem</i> or <i>iīdem</i> ,	&c.	

The pronouns which we find most frequently compounded; are *quis* and *qui*.

Quis in composition is sometimes the first, sometimes the last, and sometimes likewise the middle part of the word compounded: but *qui* is always the first.

1. The compounds of *quis*, in which it is put first, are, *quisnam*, who? *quispiam*, *quisquam*, any one; *quisque*, every one; *quisquis*, who-soever; which are thus declined.

Nom.		Gen.	Dat.
Quisnam,	quænam,	quodnam or quidnam;	cujusnam, cuinam,
Quispiam,	quæpiam,	quodpiam or quidpiam;	cujuspiam, cuipiam,
Quisquam,	quæquam,	quodquam or quidquam;	cujusquam, cuiquam,
Quisque,	quæque,	quodque or quidque;	cujusque, cuique.
Quisquis,	——	quidquid or quicquid;	cujuscujus, cuicui. ✓

And so in the other cases; according to the simple *quis*. But *quisquis* has not the feminine at all, and the neuter only in the nominative and accusative. *Quisquam* has also *quicquam* for *quidquam*. Accusative, *quenquam*, without the feminine. The plural is scarcely used.

2. The compounds of *quis*, in which *quis* is put last, have *qua* in the nominative sing. fem. and in the nominative and accusative plur. neut. as, *aliquis*, some; *ecquis*, who? of *et* and *quis*; also *nequis*, *siquis*, *numquis*, which for the most part are read separately, thus, *ne quis*, *si quis*, *num quis*. They are thus declined.

<i>Nom.</i>		<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>
<i>Aliquis, aliqua,</i>	<i>aliquod or aliquid,</i>	<i>alicujus,</i>	<i>alicui,</i>
<i>Ecquis, ecqua or ecquæ,</i>	<i>ecquod or ecquid,</i>	<i>eccujus,</i>	<i>eccui,</i>
<i>Si quis, si qua,</i>	<i>si quod or si quid,</i>	<i>si cujus,</i>	<i>si cui,</i>
<i>Ne quis, ne qua,</i>	<i>ne quod or ne quid,</i>	<i>ne cujus,</i>	<i>ne cui,</i>
<i>Num quis, num qua,</i>	<i>num quod or num quid,</i>	<i>num cujus,</i>	<i>num cui.)</i>

3. The compounds which have *quis* in the middle, are, *quisquāque*, who? *unusquisque*, gen. *uniuscujusque*, every one. The former is used only in the nom. sing. and the latter wants the plural.

4. The compounds of *qui* are *quicumque*, whosoever; *quidam*, some; *quilibet*, *quivis*, any one, whom you please; which are thus declined.

Nom.			Gen.	Dat.
Quicumque,	quæcunque,	quodcunque,	cujuscunque,	cuiunque,
Quidam,	quædam,	quoddam or quiddam,	cujusdam,	cuidam,
Quilibet,	quælibet,	quodlibet or quidlibet,	cujuslibet,	cuilibet,
Quivis,	quævis,	quodvis or quidvis,	cujusvis,	cuivis.

Obs. 1. All these compounds have seldom or never *queis*, but *quibus*, in their dat. and abl. plur.; thus, *aliquibus*, &c.

Obs. 2. *Quis*, and its compounds in comic writers, have sometimes *quis* in the feminine gender.

Obs. 3. *Quidam* has *quendam*, *quandam*, *quoddam* or *quiddam*, in the acc. sing. and *quorundam*, *quarundam*, *quorundam*, in the gen. plur. *n* being put instead of *m*, for the better sound.

Obs. 4. *Quod*, with its compounds, *aliquid*, *quodvis*, *quoddam*, &c. are used, when they agree with a substantive in the same case; *quid*, with its compounds, *aliquid*, *quidvis*, &c. for the most part have either no substantive expressed, or govern one in the genitive. For this reason they are by some reckoned substantives.

VERB.

A verb is a word which expresses what is affirmed of things; as, The boy *reads*. The sun *shines*. The man *loves*.

(Or, A verb is that part of speech which signifies to be, to do, or to suffer.)

It is called *Verb* or *Word*, by way of eminence, because it is the most essential word in a sentence, without which the other parts of speech can form no complete sense. Thus, *the diligent boy reads his lesson with care*, is a perfect sentence; but if we take away the affirmation, or the word *reads*, it is rendered imperfect, or rather becomes no sentence at all: thus, *the diligent boy his lesson with care*.

A verb therefore may be thus distinguished from any other part of speech: Whatever word expresses an affirmation or assertion is a verb; or thus, Whatever word, with a substantive noun or pronoun before or after it, makes full sense, is a verb; as, *stones fall*, *I walk*, *walk thou*. Here *fall* and *walk* are verbs, because they contain an affirmation; but when we say, *a long walk*, *a dangerous fall*, there is no affirmation expressed; and the same words *walk* and *fall* become substantives or nouns. We often find likewise in Latin the same word used as a verb, and also as some other part of speech; thus, *amor*, -*oris*, love, a substantive; and *amor*, I am loved, a verb.

Verbs,

(Verbs, with respect to their signification, are divided into three different classes, *Active*, *Passive*, and *Neuter*; because we consider things either as acting, or being acted upon; or as neither acting, nor being acted upon; but simply existing, or existing in a certain state or condition; as in a state of motion or rest,) &c.

1. / An *Active* verb expresses an action, and necessarily supposes an agent, and an object acted upon, as, *amāre*, to love; *amo te*, I love thee. /

2. / A verb *Passive* expresses a passion or suffering, or the receiving of an action; and necessarily implies an object acted upon, and an agent, by which it is acted upon; as, *amāri*, to be loved; *tu amāris a me*, thou art loved by me. /

3. / A *Neuter* verb properly expresses neither action nor passion, but simply the being, state, or condition of things; as, *dormio*, I sleep; *sedeo*, I sit. /

/ The verb *Active* is also called *Transitive*, when the action *passeth over* to the object, or hath an effect on some other thing; as, *scribo litteras*, I write letters: but when the action is confined within the agent, and *passeth not over* to any object, it is called *Intransitive*; as, *ambulo*, I walk; *curro*, I run, which are likewise called *Neuter Verbs*. Many verbs in Latin and English are used both in a transitive and in an intransitive or neuter sense; as, *stare*, to stop; *incipere*, to begin; *durare*, to endure, or to harden, &c. /

/ Verbs which simply signify *being*, are likewise called *Substantive* verbs; as, *esse* or *existere*, to be or to exist. The notion of existence is implied in the signification of every verb; thus, *I love*, may be resolved into, *I am loving*. /

/ When the meaning of a verb is expressed without any affirmation, or in such a form as to be joined to a substantive noun, partaking thereby of the nature of an adjective, it is called a *Participle*; as, *amans*, loving; *amatus*, loved. But when it has the form of a substantive, it is called a *Gerund*, or a *Supine*: as, *amandum*, loving; *amatum*, to love; *amatu*, to love, or to be loved. /

/ A verb is varied or declined by *Voices*, *Modes*, *Tenses*, *Numbers*, and *Persons*. /

/ There are two voices; the *Active* and *Passive*. /
The

(The modes are four; *Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitive.*)

(The tenses are five; the *Present, the Preter-imperfect, the Preter-perfect, the Preter-pluperfect, and the Future.*)

(The numbers are two; *Singular and Plural.*
The persons are three; *First, Second, Third.*)

1. *Voice* expresses the different circumstances in which we consider an object, whether as acting, or being acted upon. The *Active voice* signifies action; as, *amo*, I love; the *Passive*, suffering, or being the object of an action; as, *amor*, I am loved.

2. *Modes or Moods* are the various *manners* of expressing the signification of the verb.

The *Indicative* declares or affirms positively; as, *amo*, I love; *amāto*, I shall love; or asks a question; as, *an tu amas?* dost thou love?

The *Subjunctive* is usually joined to some other verb, and cannot make a full meaning by itself; as, *si me obsecraret, redibo*, if he entreat me, I will return. *Ter.*

The *Imperative* commands, exhorts, or entreats; as, *ama*, love thou.

The *Infinitive* simply expresses the signification of the verb, without limiting it to any person or number; as, *amare*, to love.

3. *Tenses, or Times* express the time when any thing is supposed to be, to act, or to suffer.

Time in general is divided into three parts, the present, past, and future.

Past time is expressed three different ways. When we speak of a thing, which was doing, but not finished at some former time, we use the *Preter-imperfect*, or past time not completed; as, *scribēbam*, I was writing.

When we speak of a thing now finished, we use the *Preter-perfect*, or past time completed; as, *scripsi*, I wrote, or have written.

When we speak of a thing finished at or before some past time, we use the *Preter-pluperfect*, or past time more than completed; as, *scripsēram*, I had written.

Future time is expressed two different ways. A thing may be considered either as simply about to be done, or as actually finished, at some future time; as, *scribam*, I shall write, or, I shall [then] be writing; *scripsēro*, I shall have written.

4. *Number* marks *how many* we suppose to be, to act, or to suffer.

5. *Person* shews to what the meaning of the verb is applied, whether to the person speaking, to the person addressed, or to some other person or thing.

Verbs have two numbers and three persons, to agree with substantive nouns and pronouns in these respects: for a verb properly hath neither numbers nor persons, but certain terminations answering to the person and number of its nominative.

A verb is properly said to be *conjugated*, when all its parts are properly classed, or, as it were, yoked together, according to Voice, Mode, Tense, Number, and Person.

ENGLISH VERBS.

English verbs change their termination to express only the present and the past time of the Active voice; and in regular verbs, the Perfect participle is always the same with the perfect or past time, both of them ending in *ed* or *'d*. The present participle always ends in *ing*. The English has no future participle, which defect is supplied by a circumlocution; as, *about to love*.

An English Verb is thus varied;

To LOVE.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Present Time.

Past Time.

Person.	Present Time.		Past Time.	
	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
1.	I love,	We love,	1. I loved,	We loved,
2.	Thou lovest,	Ye or you love,	2. Thou lovedst,	Ye or you loved,
3.	He loveth or loves;	They love.	3. He loved;	They loved.

Subjunctive Mode.

Imperative Mode.

Present Time.

Person.	Present Time.		Imperative Mode.	
	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
1.	I love,	We love,	2. Love thou,	Love ye, or love you,
2.	Thou love,	Ye or you love,	Infinitive Mode. Present, To love.	
3.	He love;	They love.		

Participle Present, Loving; Perfect, Loved.

The several remaining parts of the English verb are formed by the assistance of other verbs, called therefore *Auxiliaries* or *Helpers*. The chief of these are *have*, *be*, *shall*, and *will*, which are thus varied,

To HAVE.

Indicative Mode.

Present Time.

Past Time.

Person.	Present Time.		Past Time.	
	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
1.	I have,	We have,	1. I had,	We had,
2.	Thou hast,	Ye have,	2. Thou hadst,	Ye had,
3.	He hath, or has;	They have.	3. He had,	They had.

Subjunctive

*Subjunctive Mode.**Imperative Mode.**Present.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I have,	We have,	2. Have thou ;	Have ye.
2. 'Thou have,	Ye have,	<i>Infinitive Mode.</i>	
3. He have ;	They have.	<i>Present, To have.</i>	

*Participle Present, Having ; Perfect, Had.**To BE.**Indicative Mode.**Present Time.**Past Time.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I am,	We are,	1. I was,	We were,
2. 'Thou art,	Ye are,	2. Thou wast,	Ye were,
3. He is ;	They are.	3. He was ;	They were.

*Subjunctive Mode.**Present.**Past Time.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I be,	We be,	1. I were,	We were,
2. 'Thou be,	Ye be,	2. 'Thou wert,	Ye were,
3. He be ;	They be.	3. He were ;	They were.

*Imperative Mode.**Infinitive Mode.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
2. Be thou ;	Be ye.

*Present, To be.**Participle.**Present, Being.**Perfect, Been.**SHALL.**WILL.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I shall,	We shall,	1. I will,	We will,
2. 'Thou shalt,	Ye shall,	2. Thou wilt,	Ye will,
3. He shall ;	They shall.	3. He will ;	They will.

The terminations of these auxiliary verbs seem to be irregular. Most of them however are only contractions of the regular form. Thus, *hast* is contracted for *havest* ; *bath*, for *haveth* ; *has*, for *haves* ; and *wilt* for *willest* ; which last is likewise used from the regular verb, *to will* ; thus, *I will, thou willest, he willeth, or wills, &c.*

The tenses of the subjunctive mode are expressed by *may* or *can* ; *might*, *could*, *would*, and *should*, together with the other auxiliary verbs.

Would, *wouldst*, comes from *will* ; and *should*, *shouldst*, from *shall*. *Might* and *could* seem to be the past time of *may* and *can*.

To express with greater force the present and past time of the indicative Mode, we use the auxiliary verb *do* ; as, *I do love ; I did love*. And so in the Imperative, *do thou love, do ye love*. In the third person of the Imperative, we always use *let*, which being an active verb, has always an accusative after it ; as, *let him love ; let them love*.

When we speak of present time indeterminately, we use the simple form ;

form; as, *I love, I loved*: but when we speak of it with some particular limitation, we use an auxiliary; as, *I am loving* just now; *I was* (then) *loving*. The termination *th*, in the third person of the present of the Indicative, properly belongs to solemn discourse; as, *he bath, he doth, &c.*

The whole of the passive voice in English is formed by the auxiliary verb *to be*, and the participle perfect; as, *I am loved, I was loved, &c.* In many verbs the present participle also is used in a passive sense; as, *These things are doing, were doing, &c.*; *The house is building, was building, &c.*

When an auxiliary is joined to a verb, the auxiliary is varied according to number and person, and the verb itself always continues the same. When there are two or more auxiliaries joined to the verb, the first of them only is varied according to person and number. The auxiliary *must* admits of no variation.

Shall and *will* are always employed to express future time. *Will*, in the first person singular and plural, promises or threatens; in the second and third persons, only foretels: *shall*, on the contrary, in the first person, simply foretels; in the second and third persons, promises, commands, or threatens. But the contrary of this holds, when we ask a question: thus, “*I shall go*?”—“*you will go*?” express event only; but “*will you go*?” imports intention: and “*shall I go*?” refers to the will of another.

The neuter verb is varied like the active; but sometimes it assumes the passive form; as, *I had fallen, or I was fallen.*

IRREGULAR ENGLISH VERBS.

The English language abounds in irregular verbs.

A verb in English is said to be irregular, which has not the Past Time and the Participle Perfect in *ed*.

Most English verbs are liable to some irregularity from contraction.

To this we are led by the nature of the language, and the manner of pronouncing it. Thus, instead of *loved, lovedest*, we say, *lov'd, lov'dest*. Hence in many verbs *ed* is changed into *t*; as *snatcht, checkt, snapt, mixt, dwelt, past, meant, felt, left, bereft, &c.* for *snatched, checked, &c.* In such words, however, the entire form is also used, and in general to be preferred. They are not therefore commonly ranked among irregular verbs.

Irregular verbs in English, properly so called, are all monosyllables, unless compounded; and may be reduced to the three following classes, in which those marked thus*, are likewise used in the regular form.

I. Irregulars by contraction.

These commonly end in *d* or *t*, and have the Present, the Past time, and the Participle Perfect, all alike, without any variation: *, beat, burst, cast, cost, cut, bit, hurt, knit, let, list, light*, put, it*, read, rent, rid, set, sped, sbred, sbut, slit, split, spread, thrust, &c.* all of which are contracted for *beated, bursted, casted, &c.*

The following in the Past Time, and Participle Perfect, vary a little from the Present; as, *lead, led*; *sweat, swet**; *meet, met*; *breed, bred*; *feed, fed*; *speed, sped*; *band, bent**; *lend, lent*; *rend, rent*; *send, sent*; *spend, spent*; *build, built**; *geld, gelt**; *gild, gilt**; *gird, girt**; *lose, lost*. *Sold, told, had, made, fled, fiod, clad**; from *sell, tell, have, make, see, shoe, clothe*; are contracted for *felled, telled, &c.* *Stand* has *flood*; *smell, smelt*; *dare, durst*, in the participle *dared*.

2. Irregulars in ght.

These are few in number, and have the Past Time and Participle in *ght*; as, *bring, brought*; *buy, bought*; *catch, caught*; *fight, fought*; *teach, taught*; *think, thought*; *seek, sought*; *work, wrought*.

3. Irregulars in en.

This is by far the most numerous class of irregular verbs. They have commonly the Participle perfect in *en*, and form the Past Time by changing the vowel or diphthong of the Present. Some form the Past Time regularly.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
Fall,	fell,	fallen.	Creep,	crope *,	crept *.
Awake,	awoke *,	(awaked).	Freeze,	froze,	frozen.
Forake,	forfook,	forfaken.	Seethe,	fod,	fodden.
Shake,	shook,	shaken.	See,	saw,	seen.
Take,	took,	taken.	Bite,	bit,	bitten.
Draw,	drew,	drawn.	Chide,	chid,	chidden.
Slay,	flew,	flain.	Hide,	hid,	hidden.
Get,	gat or got,	gotten.	Slide,	slid,	slidden.
Help,	(helped)	holpen *.	Abide,	abode,	
Melt,	melted,	molten *.	Climb,	clomb,	(climbed).
Swell,	swelled,	swollen *.	Drive,	drove,	driven.
Eat,	ate,	eaten.	Ride,	rode,	ridden.
Bear,	bare, or bore,	born.	Rise,	rose,	risen.
Break,	brake, or broke,	broken.	Shine,	shone *,	shined.
Cleave,	clave, or clove *,	cloven.	Strive,	strove *,	striven *.
Speak,	spake, or spoke,	spoken.	Smite,	smote,	smitten.
Swear,	fware, or fware,	sworn.	Stride,	strode,	stridden.
Tear,	tare or tore,	torn.	Shrive,	shrove,	shriven.
Wear,	ware, or wore,	worn.	Thrive,	throve,	thriven.
Heave,	hove *,	hoven *.	Write,	wrote,	written.
Shear,	shore,	shorn.	Strike,	struck,	stricken or strucken.
Steal,	stole,	stolen.	Bid,	bade,	bidden.
Tread,	trod,	trodden.	Give,	gave,	given.
Weave,	wove,	woven.	Sit,	sat,	fitten.
			Spit,	spat,	spitten.
			Dig,	dug *,	digged.
			Lie,	lay,	lain or lien.
			Chuse,	chose,	chosen.
			Hold,	held,	holden.

Do,

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
Do,	did,	done.	Rive,	(rived),	riven.
Blow,	blew,	blown.	Saw,	(sawed),	sawn*.
Crow,	crew,	(crowed).	Shave,	(shaved),	shaven*.
Grow,	grew,	grown.	Shew,	(shewed),	shewn*.
Know,	knew,	known.	Show,	(showed),	shown.
Throw,	threw,	thrown.	Sow,	(sowed),	sown*.
Fly,	flew,	flown.	Straw,	(strawed,	strawn*.
Bake,	(baked),	baken*.	strew, or	(strewed,	
Grave,	(graved),	graven*.	strow,	&c.)	
Hew,	(hewed),	hewen or	Wash,	(washed),	washen*.
		hewn.	Wax,	(waxed),	waxen*.
Lade,	(laded),	laden.	Wreath,	(wreathed),	wreathen*.
Load,	(loaded),	loaden*.	Writhe,	(writhed),	writen.
Mow,	(mowed),	mown*.			

Several verbs seem to have dropt the termination *en* in the Participle ; as,

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
Begin,	began,	begun.	Stink,	stank or	stunk.
Cling,	clang or			stunk,	
	clung,	clung.	String,	strung,	strung.
Drink,	drank,	drunk or	Swim,	swam or	swum.
		drunken.		swum,	
Fling,	flung,	flung.	Swing,	swung,	swung.
Ring,	rang or	rung.	Wring,	wrung,	wrung.
	rung,				bound or
Shrink,	shrank or	shrunk.	Bind,	bound,	bounden.
	shrunk,		Find,	found,	found.
Sing,	sang or sung,	sung.	Grind,	ground,	ground.
Sink,	sank or sunk,	sunk.	Wind,	wound,	wound.
Sling,	slang or	slung.	Hang,	hung*,	hung*.
	slung,		Shoot,	shot,	shot.
Slink,	slunk,	slunk.	Stick,	stuck,	stuck.
Spin,	span or spun,	spun.	Come,	came,	come.
Spring,	sprang or	sprung.	Run,	ran,	run.
	sprung,		Win,	won,	won.
Sting,	stung,	stung.			

Frequent mistakes are committed with regard to those verbs which make the Participle Perfect different from the Past Time ; thus it is said, *he begun*, for *he began* ; *he run*, for *he ran* ; the Participle being used instead of the Past Time : and much more frequently the Past Time instead of the Participle ; as, *I had wrote*, for *I had written* ; *it was wrote*, for *it was written* ; *so bore* for *borne* ; *chose* for *chosen* ; *bid*, for *bidden* ; *drove*, for *driven* ; *broke*, for *broken* ; *rode*, for *ridden*, &c.

Several verbs are either defective, or made up of parts derived from different verbs of the same signification ; as, *go*, *went*, *gone*, *went*, *wit* or *wot*, *wot* ; *wis*, *wist* ; *aught*, *quoth*, *must*, together with most of the auxiliary verbs.

LATIN VERBS.

The Latins have four different ways of varying verbs, called the *First*, the *Second*, the *Third*, and the *Fourth Conjugation*.

The Conjugations are thus distinguished :

The First has *a* long before *re* of the Infinitive ; the Second has *e* long, the Third has *e* short, and the Fourth has *i* long, before *re* of the Infinitive.

Except *dāre*, to give, which has *ā* short, and also its compounds ; thus, *Circumdāre*, to surround ; *circumdāmus*, -*dātis*, -*dābam*, -*dābo*, &c.

The different conjugations are likewise distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the following tenses :

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Present Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>			
<i>Persons.</i>				<i>Persons.</i>			
I.		2.	3.	I.	2.	3.	
Conjugation.	1.	-o,	-as,	-at ;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
	2.	-eo,	-es,	-et ;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
	3.	-o,	-is,	-it ;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-unt.
	4.	-io,	-is,	-it ;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-iunt.

Imperfect.

1.	-ābam,	-ābas,	-ābat ;	-ābāmus,	-ābātis,	-ābant.
2.	-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat ;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
3.	-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat ;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
4.	-iēbam,	-iēbas,	-iēbat ;	-iēbāmus,	-iēbātis,	-iēbant.

Future.

1.	-ābo,	-ābis,	-ābit ;	-ābīmus,	-ābītis,	-ābunt.
2.	-ēbo,	-ēbis,	-ēbit ;	-ēbīmus,	-ēbītis,	-ēbunt.
3.	-am,	-es,	-et ;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
4.	-iam,	-ies,	-iet ;	-iēmus,	-iētis,	-ient.

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense.

1.	-em,	-es,	-et ;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
2.	-eām,	-eas,	-eat ;	-eāmus,	-eātis,	-eant.
3.	-am,	-as,	-at ;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
4.	-iam,	-ias,	-iat ;	-iāmus,	-iātis,	-iant.

Imperfect.

Imperfect.

1. -ārem,	-āres,	-āret ;	-ārēmus,	-ārētis,	-ārent.
2. -ērem,	-ēres,	-ēret ;	-ērēmus,	-ērētis,	-ērent.
3. -ěrem,	-ěres,	-ěret ;	-ěrēmus,	-ěrētis,	-ěrent.
4. -īrem,	-īres,	-īret ;	-irēmus,	-irētis,	-īrent.

Imperative Mode.

2.	3.	2.	3.
1. -a or -āto,	-āto ;	-āte or -ātōte,	-anto.
2. -e or -ēto,	-ēto ;	-ēte or -ētōte,	-ento.
3. -e or -īto,	-īto ;	-īte or -ītōte,	-unto.
4. -i or -īto,	-īto ;	-īte or -ītōte,	-iunto.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Present Tense.

1. -or,	-āris or -āre,	-ātur ;	-āmur,	-āmīni,	-antur.
2. -eor,	-ēris or -ēre,	-ētur ;	-ēmur,	-ēmīni,	-entur.
3. -or,	-ěris or -ěre,	-itur ;	-imur,	-imīni,	-untur.
4. -ior,	-īris or -īre,	-itur ;	-imur,	-imīni,	-iuntur.

Imperfect.

1. -ābar,	-ābāris or -ābāre,	-ābātur ;	-ābāmur,	-ābāmīni,	-ābantur.
2. -ēbar,	-ēbāris or -ēbāre,	-ēbātur ;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāmīni,	-ēbantur.
3. -ēbar,	-ēbāris or -ēbāre,	-ēbātur ;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāmīni,	-ēbantur.
4. -iēbar,	-iēbāris or -iēbāre,	-iēbātur ;	-iēbāmur,	-iēbāmīni,	-iēbantur.

Future.

1. -ābor,	-ābēris or -abēre,	-ābītur ;	-ābīmur,	-ābīmīni,	-ābuntur.
2. -ēbor,	-ēbēris or -ēbēre,	-ēbītur ;	-ēbīmur,	-ēbīmīni,	-ēbuntur.
3. -ar,	-ēris or -ēre,	-ētur ;	-ēmur,	-ēmīni,	-entur.
4. -iar,	-iēris or -iēre,	-iētur ;	-iēmur,	-iēmīni,	-ientur.

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense.

1. -er,	-ēris or -ēre,	-ētur ;	-ēmur,	-ēmīni,	-entur.
2. -ear,	-eāris or -eāre,	-eātur ;	-eāmur,	-eāmīni,	-eantur.
3. -ar,	-āris or -āre,	-ātur ;	-āmur,	-āmīni,	-antur.
4. -iar,	-iāris or -iāre,	-iātur ;	-iāmur,	-iāmīni,	-iantur.

Imperfect.

1. -ārer,	-ārēris or -ārēre,	-ārētur ;	-ārēmur,	-ārēmīni,	-ārentur.
2. -ērer,	-ērēris or -ērēre,	-ērētur ;	-ērēmur,	-ērēmīni,	-ērentur.
3. -ěrer,	-ěrēris or -ěrēre,	-ěrētur ;	-ěrēmur,	-ěrēmīni,	-ěrentur.
4. -īrer,	-irēris or -irēre,	-irētur ;	-irēmur,	-irēmīni,	-īrentur.

Imperative Mode.

	2.	3.	2.	3.
1.	-āre or -ātor,	-ātor ;	-āmīni,	-āntor.
2.	-ēre or -ētor,	-ētor ;	-ēmīni,	-ēntor.
3.	-ēre or -ītor,	-ītor ;	-īmīni,	-untor.
4.	-īre or -ītor,	-ītor ;	-imīni,	-iuntor.

Observe, Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation have *iunt* in the third person plur. of the present indic. active, and *iuntur* in the passive; and so in the imperative, *iunto* and *iuntor*. In the imperfect and future of the indicative they have always the terminations of the fourth conjugation, *iēbam* and *iam*; *iēbar* and *iar*, &c.

The terminations of the other tenses are the same through all the Conjugations. Thus,

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

	Sing.			Plur.		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Perf.	-i,	-isti,	-it ;	-īmus,	-istis,	-ērunt or -ēre.
Plu.	-eram,	-eras,	-erat ;	-ērāmus,	-ērātis,	-erant.

Subjunctive Mode.

Perf.	-erim,	-eris,	-erit ;	-erīmus,	-erītis,	-erint.
Plu.	-issem,	-isses,	-isset ;	-issemus,	-issetis,	-issent.
Fut.	-ero,	-eris,	-erit ;	-erīmus,	-erītis,	-erint.

These Tenses, in the Passive Voice, are formed by the Participle Perfect, and the auxiliary verb *sum*, which is also used to express the Future of the Infinitive Active.

(SUM is an irregular verb, and thus conjugated :
Principal Parts.

Pres. Indic.	Perf. Indic.	Pres. Infin.
Sum,	fui,	esse, To be.)

Indicative Mode.

Present Tense. *am.*

	Sing.	Plur.
Person.		
1.	Sum, <i>I am,</i>	Sūmus, <i>We are,</i>
2.	Es, <i>Thou art,</i> or <i>you are,</i>	Estis, <i>Ye or you are,</i>
3.	Est, <i>He is ;</i>	Sunt, <i>They are.</i>)
		Imperfect.

- E** Imperfect. *was.*
 1. *Eram, I was,* *Erāmus, We were,*
 2. *Eras, Thou wast, or you were,* *Erātis, Ye were,*
 3. *Erat, He was ;* *Erant, They were. }*

- Perfect. *have been or was.*
 1. *Fui, I have been,* *Fuimus, We have been,*
 2. *Fuisti, Thou hast been,* *Fuistis, Ye have been,*
 3. *Fuit, He hath been ;* *Fuerunt, or -ēre, They have been. }*

- Plu-perfect. *had been.*
 1. *Fuēram, I had been,* *Fuērāmus, We had been,*
 2. *Fueras, Thou hadst been,* *Fueratis, Ye had been,*
 3. *Fuerat, He had been ;* *Fuerant, They had been. }*

- Future. *shall or will.*
 1. *Ero, I shall be,* *Erīmus, We shall be,*
 2. *Eris, Thou shalt be,* *Erītis, Ye shall be,*
 3. *Erit, He shall be ;* *Erunt, They shall be. }*

Subjunctive Mode.

- Present Tense. *may or can.*
 1. *Sim, I may be,* *Sīmus, We may be,*
 2. *Sis, Thou mayest be,* *Sītis, Ye may be,*
 3. *Sit, He may be ;* *Sint, They may be. }*

- Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should.*
 1. *Essem, I might be,* *Essēmus, We might be,*
 2. *Esset, Thou mightest be,* *Essetis, Ye might be,*
 3. *Esset, He might be ;* *Essent, They might be. }*

- Perfect. *may have.*
 1. *Fuērim, I may have been,* *Fuērīmus, We may have been,*
 2. *Fueris, Thou mayest have been,* *Fueritis, Ye may have been,*
 3. *Fuerit, He may have been ;* *Fuerint, They may have been. }*

- Plu-perfect. *might, could, would, or should have ; or had.*
 1. *Fuissem, I might have been,* *Fuissēmus, We might have been,*
 2. *Fuisses, Thou mightest have been,* *Fuissetis, Ye might have been,*
 3. *Fuisset, He might have been ;* *Fuissent, They might have been.*

- Future. *shall have.*
 1. *Fuēro, I shall have been,* *Fuērīmus, We shall have been,*
 2. *Fueris, Thou shalt have been,* *Fueritis, Ye shall have been,*
 3. *Fuerit, He shall have been ;* *Fuerint, They shall have been. }*

Imperative:

Imperative Mode.

2. *Es vel esto, Be thou, Este vel estōte, Be ye,*
 3. *Esto, Let him be; Sunto, Let them be.*

Infinitive Mode.

Pres. Esse, To be.

Perf. Fuisse, To have been.

Fut. Esse futurus, -a, -um, To be about to be.

Fuisse futurus, -a, -um, To have been about to be.)

Participle.

(Future. Fütürus, -a, -um, About to be.)

Obs. 1. The personal pronouns, which in English are, for the most part, added to the verb, in Latin are commonly understood; because the several persons are sufficiently distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the verb, though the persons themselves be not expressed. The learner however at first may be accustomed to join them with the verb; thus, *ego sum*, I am; *tu es*, thou art, or you are; *ille est*, he is; *nos sumus*, we are, &c. So *ego amo*, I love; *tu amas*, thou lovest, or you love; *ille amat*, he loveth or loves; *nos amamus*, we love, &c.

Obs. 2. In the second person singular in English, we commonly use the plural form, except in solemn discourse; as, *tu es*, thou art, or much oftener, you are; *tu eras*, thou wast, or you were; *tu sis*, thou mayest be, or you may be, &c. So *tu amas*, thou lovest, or you love; *tu amabas*, thou lovedst, or you loved, &c.

Verbs are thus varied in the different Conjugations.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Principal Parts.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Pres. Infinit.</i>
<i>Amo,</i>	<i>āmāvi,</i>	<i>āmātum,</i>	<i>āmāre, To love.</i>

Indicative Mode.

<i>Present Tense. love, do love, or am loving.)</i>	
<i>Sing. 1. A M-o,</i>	<i>I love,</i>
<i>2. Am-as,</i>	<i>Thou lovest, or you love;</i>
<i>3. Am-at,</i>	<i>He loveth, or he loves;</i>
<i>Plur. 1. Am-āmus,</i>	<i>We love,</i>
<i>2. Am-atis,</i>	<i>Ye or you love,</i>
<i>3. Am-ant,</i>	<i>They love.</i>

Imperfect.

Imperfect. *loved, did love, or was loving.*

Sing.	1. Am-ābam,	<i>I loved,</i>
	2. Am-abas,	<i>Thou lovedst,</i>
	3. Am-abat,	<i>He loved ;</i>
Plur.	1. Am-abamus,	<i>We loved,</i>
	2. Am-abatis,	<i>Ye or you loved,</i>
	3. Am-abant,	<i>They loved.</i>

Perfect. *loved, have loved, or did love.*

Sing.	1. Am-āvi,	<i>I have loved,</i>
	2. Am-avisti,	<i>Thou hast loved,</i>
	3. Am-avit,	<i>He hath loved ;</i>
Plur.	1. Am-āvīmus,	<i>We have loved,</i>
	2. Am-avistis,	<i>Ye have loved,</i>
	3. Am-avērunt, v. -avēre,	<i>They have loved.</i>

Plu-perfect. *had.*

Sing.	1. Am-āvēram,	<i>I had loved,</i>
	2. Am-averas,	<i>Thou hadst loved,</i>
	3. Am-averat,	<i>He had loved ;</i>
Plur.	1. Am-averamus,	<i>We had loved,</i>
	2. Am-averatis,	<i>Ye had loved,</i>
	3. Am-averant,	<i>They had loved.</i>

Future. *shall or will.*

Sing.	1. Am-ābo,	<i>I shall love,</i>
	2. Am-abis,	<i>Thou shalt love,</i>
	3. Am-abit,	<i>He shall love ;</i>
Plur.	1. Am-abīmus,	<i>We shall love,</i>
	2. Am-abitis,	<i>Ye shall love,</i>
	3. Am-abunt.	<i>They shall love.</i>

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense. *may or can.*

Sing.	1. Am-em,	<i>I may love,</i>
	2. Am-es,	<i>Thou mayest love,</i>
	3. Am-et,	<i>He may love ;</i>
Plur.	1. Am-ēmus,	<i>We may love,</i>
	2. Am-etis,	<i>Ye may love,</i>
	3. Am-ent,	<i>They may love.</i>

Imperfect.

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should.*

Sing.	1. Am-ārem,	<i>I might love,</i>
	2. Am-ares,	<i>Thou mightest love,</i>
	3. Am-aret,	<i>He might love ;</i>
Plur.	1. Am-arēmus,	<i>We might love,</i>
	2. Am-aretis,	<i>Ye might love,</i>
	3. Am-arent,	<i>They might love.</i>

Perfect. *may have.*

Sing.	1. Am-āvērīm,	<i>I may have loved,</i>
	2. Am-averis,	<i>Thou mayest have loved,</i>
	3. Am-averit,	<i>He may have loved ;</i>
Plur.	1. Am-averīmus,	<i>We may have loved,</i>
	2. Am-averitis,	<i>Ye may have loved,</i>
	3. Am-averint,	<i>They may have loved.</i>

Plu-perfect. *might, could, would, or should have ; or had.*

Sing.	1. Am-avissēm,	<i>I might have loved,</i>
	2. Am-avisses,	<i>Thou mightest have loved,</i>
	3. Am-avisset,	<i>He might have loved ;</i>
Plur.	1. Am-avissēmus,	<i>We might have loved,</i>
	2. Am-avissetis,	<i>Ye might have loved,</i>
	3. Am-avissent,	<i>They might have loved.</i>

Future. *shall have.*

Sing.	1. Am-āvērō,	<i>I shall have loved,</i>
	2. Am-averis,	<i>Thou shalt have loved,</i>
	3. Am-averit,	<i>He shall have loved ;</i>
Plur.	1. Am-averīmus,	<i>We shall have loved,</i>
	2. Am-averitis,	<i>Ye shall have loved,</i>
	3. Am-averint,	<i>They shall have loved.</i>

Imperative Mode.

Sing.	2. Am-a, vel am-āto,	<i>Love thou, or do thou love,</i>
	3. Am-ato,	<i>Let him love ;</i>
Plur.	2. Am-āte, vel amatōte,	<i>Love ye, or do ye love,</i>
	3. Am-anto,	<i>Let them love.</i>

Infinitive Mode.

Pres.	Am-āre,	<i>To love.</i>
Perf.	Am-avisse,	<i>To have loved.</i>
Fut.	Esse amaturus, -a, -um,	<i>To be about to love.</i>
	Fuisse amaturus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been about to love.</i>

Participle.

Participle.

Present, Am-ans, *Loving.*
Future, Am-aturus, -a, -um, *About to love.*

Gerunds.

Nom. Am-andum, *Loving,*
Gen. Am-andi, *Of loving,*
Dat. Am-ando, *To loving,*
Acc. Am-andum, *Loving,*
Abl. Am-ando, *With loving.*

Supine.

Former. Am-ātum, *To love,*
Latter. Am-atu, *To love, or to be loved.*

PASSIVE VOICE.

Present Indicative. *Perfect Participle.* *Infinitive.*
 Amor, amātus, amāri, to be loved.

Indicative Mode.

Present Tense. am.

Sing. 1. Am-or, *I am loved,*
 2. Am-āris, vel -āre, *Thou art loved,*
 3. Am-atur, *He is loved ;*
Plur. 1. Am-amur, *We are loved,*
 2. Am-amīni, *Ye or you are loved,*
 3. Am-antur, *They are loved.*

Imperfect. was.

Sing. 1. Am-ābar, *I was loved,*
 2. Am-abāris vel -abāre, *Thou wast loved,*
 3. Am-abatur, *He was loved ;*
Plur. 1. Am-abamur, *We were loved,*
 2. Am-abamīni, *Ye were loved,*
 3. Am-abantur, *They were loved.*

Perfect. am ; have been, or was.

Sing. 1. Amatus sum, vel fui, *I have been loved,*
 2. Amatus es, v. fuisti, *Thou hast been loved,*
 3. Amatus est, v. fuit, *He hath been loved ;*
Plur. 1. Amati sumus, v. fuimus, *We have been loved,*
 2. Amati estis, v. fuistis, *Ye have been loved,*
 3. Amati sunt, fuerunt, v. fuere, *They have been loved.*

Plu-perfect.

Plu-perfect. *had been, or was.*

- Sing.* 1. Amatus eram *vel* fueram, *I had been loved,*
 2. Amatus eras *v.* fueras, *Thou hadst been loved,*
 3. Amatus erat *v.* fuerat, *He had been loved ;*
Plur. 1. Amati eramus *v.* fueramus, *We had been loved,*
 2. Amati eratis *v.* fueratis, *Ye had been loved,*
 3. Amati erant *v.* fuerant, *They had been loved.*

Future. *shall, or will be.*

- Sing.* 1. Am-ābor, *I shall be loved,*
 2. Am-abēris *vel* -abēre, *Thou shalt be loved,*
 3. Am-abitur, *He shall be loved ;*
Plur. 1. Am-ābimur, *We shall be loved,*
 2. Am-abimini, *Ye shall be loved,*
 3. Am-abuntur, *They shall be loved.*

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense. *may or can be.*

- Sing.* 1. Am-er, *I may be loved,*
 2. Am-ēris *vel* -ēre, *Thou mayest be loved,*
 3. Am-etur, *He may be loved ;*
Plur. 1. Am-ēmur, *We may be loved,*
 2. Am-eminī, *Ye may be loved,*
 3. Am-entur, *They may be loved.*

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should be.*

- Sing.* 1. Am-ārēr, *I might be loved,*
 2. Am-arēris *vel* -arēre, *Thou mightest be loved,*
 3. Am-aretur, *He might be loved ;*
Plur. 1. Am-ārēmur, *We might be loved,*
 2. Am-aremini, *Ye might be loved,*
 3. Am-arentur, *They might be loved.*

Perfect. *may have been.*

- Sing.* 1. Amatus sim *vel* fuerim, *I may have been loved,*
 2. Amatus sis *v.* fueris, *Thou mayest have been loved,*
 3. Amatus sit *v.* fuerit, *He may have been loved ;*
Plur. 1. Amati simus *v.* fuerimus, *We may have been loved,*
 2. Amati sitis *v.* fueritis, *Ye may have been loved,*
 3. Amati sint *v.* fuerint, *They may have been loved.*

Plu-perfect. *might, could, would, or should have been ; or had been.*

- Sing.* 1. Amatus essem *vel* fuissem, *I might have been loved,*
 2. Amatus esses *v.* fuisses, *Thou mightest have been loved,*
 3. Amatus esset *v.* fuisset, *He might have been loved ;*

Plur.

- Plur.* 1. Amati essemus v. fuissetus, *We might have been loved,*
 2. Amati essetis v. fuissetis, *Ye might have been loved,*
 3. Amati essent v. fuissent, *They might have been loved.*

Future. shall have been.

- Sing.* 1. Amatus fuëro, *I shall have been loved,*
 2. Amatus fueris, *Thou shalt have been loved,*
 3. Amatus fuerit, *He shall have been loved;*
Plur. 1. Amati fuërimus, *We shall have been loved,*
 2. Amati fueritis, *Ye shall have been loved,*
 3. Amati fuerint, *They shall have been loved.*

Imperative Mode.

- Sing.* 2. Am-äre vel am-ātor, *Be thou loved,*
 3. Am-ātor, *Let him be loved;*
Plur. 2. Am-amīni, *Be ye loved,*
 3. Am-antor, *Let them be loved.*

Infinitive Mode.

- Pres.* Am-āri, *To be loved.*
Perf. Esse v. fuisse amatus, -a, -um, *To have been loved.*
Fut. Am-ātum iri, *To be about to be loved.*

Participle.

- Perf.* Am-atus, -a, -um, *Loved.*
Fut. Am-andus, -a, -um, *To be loved.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Dōceo, dōcui, doctum, dōcēre, To teach.

Indicative Mode.

- | | <i>Sing.</i> | | | <i>Plur.</i> | | |
|--------------|----------------------|---------|----------|--------------|-----------|-------------------|
| | 1. | 2. | 3. | 1. | 2. | 3. |
| <i>Pres.</i> | D Oc-eo, -es, | -et ; | -ēmus, | -ētis, | -ent. | |
| <i>Imp.</i> | Doc-ēbam, | -ebas, | -ebat ; | -ebāmus, | -ebatis, | -ebant. |
| <i>Perf.</i> | Doc-ui, | -uisti, | -uit ; | -uīmus, | -uistis, | -uērunt, v. uēre. |
| <i>Plu.</i> | Doc-uēram, | -ueras, | -uerat ; | -uerāmus, | -ueratis, | -uerant. |
| <i>Fut.</i> | Doc-ēbo, | -ebis, | -ebit ; | -ebīmus, | -ebitis, | -ebunt. |

Subjunctive Mode.

- Pres.* Doc-eam, -eas, -eat ; -eāmus, -eatis, -eant.
Imp. Doc-ērem, -eres, -eret ; -erēmus, -eretis, -erent.
Perf. Doc-uērim, -ueris, -uerit ; -uerīmus, -ueritis, -uerint.
Plu. Doc-uissēm, -uissēs, -uisset ; -uissēmus, -uissetis, -uissent.
Fut. Doc-uēro, -ueris, -uerit ; -uerīmus, -ueritis, -uerint.

K

Imperative

Imperative Mode.

2. 3. 2. 3.
Pres. Doc-e vel -ēto, -ēto ; -ēte vel -etote, -ento.

*Infinitive.**Participles.**Gerunds.**Supines.*

Pres. Doc-ēre. *Pr.* Doc-ens, Doc-endum, 1. Doc-tum,
Perf. Doc-uisse. *Fut.* Doc-tūrus. Doc-endi, 2. Doc-tu.
Fut. Esse-docturus, -a, -um. Doc-endo, &c.
 Fuisse docturus, -a, -um.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Dōceor, doctus, dōcēri, *To be taught.*

*Indicative Mode.**Sing.**Plur.*

Pres. Doc-eor, -ēris, -etur ; -emur, -emini, -entur.
Imp. Doc-ēbar, -ebāris, -ebatur ; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.
Perf. Doctus sum vel fui, doctus es vel fuisti, &c.
Plu. Doctus eram v. fueram, doctus eras v. fueras, &c.
Fut. Doc-ebor, -ēbēris, -ebitur ; -ebimur, -ebimini, -ebuntur.
 vel -ebere,

Subjunctive Mode.

Pres. Doc-ear, -eāris, -eatur ; -eamur, -eamini, -eantur.
Imp. Doc-erer, -erēris, -eretur ; -eremur, -eremini, -erentur.
Perf. Doctus sim vel fuerim, doctus sis vel fueris, &c.
Plu. Doctus essem v. fuissim, doctus esses v. fuisset, &c.
Fut. Doctus fuero, doctus fueris, doctus fuerit, docti fuerimus, &c.

Imperative Mode.

2. 3. 2. 3.
Pres. Doc-ēre vel -etor, -etor ; -emini, -entor.

*Infinitive.**Participles.*

Pres. Doc-eri, *Perf.* Doc-tus, -a, -um.
Perf. Esse vel fuisse doctus, -a, -um, *Fut.* Doc-endus, -a, -um.
Fut. Doctum iri.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Lēgo, lēgi, lectum, lēgere, To read.

Indicative Mode.

Sing.

Plur.

	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
<i>Pres.</i>	L eg-o,	-is,	-it;	-imus,	-itis,	-unt.
<i>Imp.</i>	Leg-ēbam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
<i>Perf.</i>	Lēg-i,	-isti,	-it;	-imus,	-istis,	-erunt, -ēre.
<i>Plu.</i>	Lēg-eram,	-eras,	-erat;	-eramus,	-eratis,	-erant.
<i>Fut.</i>	Lēg-am,	-ēs,	-et;	-ēmus,	-etis,	-ent.

Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Pres.</i>	Lēg-am,	-as,	-at;	-amus,	-atis,	-ant.
<i>Imp.</i>	Lēg-ērem,	-eres,	-eret;	-ērēmus,	-eretis,	-erent.
<i>Perf.</i>	Lēg-ēim,	-eris,	-erit;	-erīmus,	-eritis,	-erint.
<i>Plu.</i>	Lēg-iſſem,	-iſſes,	-iſſet;	-iſſemus,	-iſſetis,	-iſſent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Lēg-ēro,	-eris,	-erit;	-erīmus,	-eritis,	-erint.

Imperative Mode.

2.

3.

3.

Lēg-e, vel -ito, -ito; -ite, vel -itōte, -unto.

Infinitive.

Participles.

Gerunds.

Supines.

Lēg-ere, *Pr.* Leg-ens. Lēg-endum. 1. Lec-tum.

2. Lēg-iſſe, *Fut.* Lec-tūrus. Leg-endi. 2. Lec-tu.

3. Eſſe lectūrus, -a, -um, Leg-endo, &c.

Fuiſſe lectūrus, -a, -um.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Lēgor, lectus, lēgi, To be read.

Indicative Mode.

Sing.

Plur.

<i>Pres.</i>	Leg-or,	-ēris,	-itur;	-imur,	-imini,	-untur.
	vel -ēre,					
<i>Imp.</i>	Lēg-ēbar,	-ebaris,	-ebatur;	-ebamur,	-ebamini,	-ebantur.
	vel -ebare,					
<i>Perf.</i>	Lectus ſum vel fui, lectus es vel fuiſti, &c.					
<i>Plu.</i>	Lectus eram vel fueram, lectus eras vel fueras, &c.					
<i>Fut.</i>	Leg-ar,	-ēris,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-emini,	-entur.
	vel -ēre,					

Subjunctive

Subjunctive Mode.

Pres. Lĕg-ar, -āris, -atur; -amur, -amini, -antur.
Imp. Lĕg-ĕrer, -erĕris, -eretur; -eremur, -eremini, -erentur.
Perf. Lĕctus sim *vel* fuerim, lĕctus sis *vel* fueris, &c.
Plu. Lĕctus essem *v.* fuisset, lĕctus esses *v.* fuissetis, &c.
Fut. Lĕctus fuero, lĕctus fueris, lĕctus fuerit, &c.

Imperative Mode.

Pres. ^{2.} Lĕg-ĕre, *vel* -itor, ^{3.} -itor; ^{2.} -imĭni, ^{3.} -untor.

*Infinitive.**Participles.*

Pres. Lĕg-i. *Perf.* Lĕc-tus, -a, -um.
Perf. Esse *v.* fuisse lĕctus, -a, -um. *Fut.* Lĕg-endus, -a, -um.
Fut. Lĕctum iri.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Audio, audīvi, audītum, audīre, *To hear.*

*Indicative Mode.**Sing.**Plur.*

	^{1.}	^{2.}	^{3.}	^{1.}	^{2.}	^{3.}
<i>Pr.</i>	Aud-io,	-is,	-it;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-iunt.
<i>Imp.</i>	Aud-iēbam,	-iebas,	-iebat;	-iebamus,	-iebatis,	-iebant.
<i>Per.</i>	Aud-īvi,	-ivisti,	-ivit;	-ivīmus,	-ivistis,	-ivērunt, <i>vel</i> -ivēre.
<i>Plu.</i>	Aud-ivēram,	-iveras,	-iverat;	-iveramus,	-iveratis,	-iverant.
<i>Fut.</i>	Aud-iam,	-ies,	-iet;	-iēmus,	-ietis,	-ient.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Aud-iam, -ias, -iat; -iamus, -iatis, -iant.
Imp. Aud-īrem, -ires, -iret; -irēmus, -iretis, -irent.
Per. Aud-iverim, -iveris, -iverit; -iverīmus, -iveritis, -iverint.
Plu. Aud-ivissem, -ivesses, -ivesset; -ivissemus, -ivissetis, -ivissent.
Fut. Aud-ivero, -iveris, -iverit; -iverimus, -iveritis, -iverint.

Imperative Mode.

Pr. ^{2.} Aud-i, *vel* -īto; ^{3.} -īto; ^{2.} -īte, *vel* -itōte, ^{3.} -iunto.
Infinitive.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>	<i>Gerunds.</i>	<i>Supines.</i>
<i>Pr.</i> Aud-īre.	<i>Pr.</i> Aud-iens.	Aud-iendum.	1. Auditum.
<i>Per.</i> Aud-ivisse.	<i>Fu.</i> Aud-iturus.	Aud-iendi.	2. Auditū.
<i>Fut.</i> Esse auditūrus, -a, -um,	Aud-iendo, &c.		
Fuisse auditurus, -a, -um.			

PASSIVE VOICE.

Audior, Auditus, Audiri, To be heard.

Indicative Mode.

Sing.

Plur.

<i>Pres.</i> Aud-ior,	-īris,	-ītur;	-īmur,	-īmini,	-iuntur.
	vel -īre,				
<i>Imp.</i> Aud-iēbat,	-iebāris,	-iebatur;	-iebāmur,	-iebāmini,	-iebantur.
	vel -iebare,				
<i>Perf.</i> Auditus sum,	vel fui,	Auditus es v. fuisti, &c.			
<i>Plu.</i> Auditus eram	v. fueram,	Auditus eras v. fueras, &c.			

<i>Fut.</i> Aud-iar,	-ieris,	-ietur;	-iemur,	-iemini,	-ientur.
	vel -iere,				

Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Pres.</i> Aud-iar,	-iaris,	-iatur;	-iāmur,	-iāmini,	-iantur.
	vel -iare,				
<i>Imp.</i> Aud-irer,	-ireris,	-irētur;	-iremur,	-iremini,	-irentur.
	vel -irere,				
<i>Perf.</i> Auditus sim v. fuerim,	Auditus sis v. fueris, &c.				
<i>Plu.</i> Auditus essem v. fuissem,	Auditus esies v. fuisses, &c.				
<i>Fut.</i> Auditus fuero,	Auditus fueris, &c.				

Imperative Mode.

2.	3.	2.	3.
<i>Pres.</i> Aud-īre, vel -ītor,	-ītor;	-īmini,	-iuntor.

Infinitive.

Participles.

<i>Pr.</i> Aud-iri,	<i>Per.</i> Aud-itus, -a, -um.
<i>Per.</i> Esse vel fuisse aud-itus, -a, -um,	<i>Fut.</i> Aud-iendus, -a, -um.
<i>Fut.</i> Aud-itum iri.)	

FORMATION of VERBS.

There are four principal parts of a verb, from which all the rest are formed; namely, *o* of the present, *i* of the perfect, *um* of the supine, and *re* of the infinitive; according to the following rhyme: †

1. From *o* are formed *am* and *em*.
 2. From *i*; *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, *ſſe*, and *ſſem*.
 3. *U*, *us*, and *rus*, are formed from *um*.
 4. All other parts from *re* do come; as, *bam*, *bo*, *rem*; *a*, *e*, and *i*; *ns* and *dus*; *dum*, *do*, and *di*; ~~as~~,

AM-O, *em*; AM-AVI, -*eram*, -*erim*, -*iſſem*, -*ero*, -*iſſe*; AMAT-UM, -*u*, -*urus*, -*us*; AM-ARE, -*abam*, -*abo*, -*arem*, -*a*, -*ans*, -*andum*, *di*, *do*; -*andus*.

DOC-EO, -*eam*; DOC-UI, -*ueram*, &c.; DOCT-UM, -*u*, -*urus*, -*us*; DOC-ERE, -*ebam*, -*ebo*, -*erem*, -*e*, -*ens*, -*endum*, *di*, *do*, -*endus*.

LEG-O, -*am*; LEG-I, -*eram*, &c.; LECT-UM, -*u*, -*urus*, -*us*; LEG-ĒRE, -*ebam*, -*ĕrem*, -*e*, -*ens*, -*endum*, &c.

AUD-IO, -*iam*; AUD-IVI, -*iveram*, &c.; AUDIT-UM, -*u*, -*urus*, -*us*; AUD-IRE, -*iebam*, -*irem*, -*i*, -*iens*, -*iendum*, *di*, *do*, -*iendus*.—So verbs of the third conjugation in *io*; as, CAP-IO, -*iam*; CEP-I, -*eram*, &c.; CAPT-UM, -*u*, &c.; CAP-ĒRE, -*iebam*, -*ĕrem*, -*e*, -*iens*, -*iendum*, *di*, *do*, -*iendus*.

The paſſive voice is formed from the active, by adding *r* to *o*, or changing *m* into *r*.

But it is much more eaſy and natural to form all the parts of a verb from the preſent and perfect of the indicative, and from the ſupine; thus,

AM-O, -*ābam*, -*ābo*, -*em*, -*ārem*, -*a* or -*āto*, -*āre*, -*ans*, -*andum*, *di*, *do*, &c. -*andus*;

AMAV-I, -*eram*, -*erim*, -*iſſem*, -*ĕro*, -*iſſe*; AMĀT-UM, -*us*, -*ūrus*.

So DOC-EO, -*ēbam*, -*ēbo*, -*eam*, -*ĕrem*, -*e* or -*eto*, -*ere*, -*ens*, -*endum*, *di*, &c. -*endus*; Docu-I, -*eram*, -*erim*, -*iſſem*, -*ĕro*, -*iſſe*; DOCT-UM, -*us*, -*ūrus*.

LĒG-O, -*ēbam*, -*am*, *es*, *et*, &c. -*am*, *as*, *at*, &c. -*ĕrem*, -*e* or -*ito*, -*ĕre*, -*ens*, -*endum*, &c. -*endus*;

LĒG-I, -*eram*, &c. LECT-UM, -*us*, -*urus*;

CĀP-IO, -*iēbam*, -*iam*, *ies*, *iet*, &c. -*iam*, *ias*, &c. -*ĕrem*, -*e* or -*ito*, -*ĕre*, -*iens*, -*iendum*, -*iendus*; CĒP-I, -*eram*, &c. CAPT-UM, -*us*, -*ūrus*.

AUD-IO, -*iēbam*, &c. AUDĪV-I, -*eram*, &c.

A verb is commonly ſaid to be conjugated, when only its principal parts are mentioned, becauſe from them all the reſt are derived.

The firſt perſon of the Preſent of the Indicative is called the *Theme* or the *Root* of the verb, becauſe from it the other three principal parts are formed.

The letters of a verb which always remain the ſame, are called *Radical* letters; as, *am* in *am-o*. The reſt are called the *Termination*; as, *abamus* in *am-abamus*.

All

All the letters which come before *-āre, -ēre, -ĕre, or -ire*, of the infinitive, are radical letters. By putting these before the terminations, all the parts of any regular verb may be readily formed, except the compound tenses.

SIGNIFICATION of the TENSES in the various Modes.

The tenses formed from the present of the indicative or infinitive signify in general the continuance of an action or passion, or represent them as present at some particular time: the other tenses express an action or passion completed; but not always so absolutely, as entirely to exclude the continuance of the same action or passion; thus, *Amo*, I love, do love, or am loving; *amabam*, I loved, did love, or was loving, &c.

Amavi, I loved, did love, or have loved, that is, have done with loving, &c.

In like manner, in the passive voice; *Amor*, I am loved, I am in loving, or in being loved, &c.

Past time in the passive voice is expressed several different ways, by means of the auxiliary verb *sum*, and the participle perfect; thus,

Indicative Mode.

Perfect. *Amatus sum*, I am, or have been loved, or oftener, I was loved.

Amatus fui, I have been loved, or I was loved.

Plu-perfect. *Amatus eram*, I was or had been loved.

Amatus fueram, I had been loved.

Subjunctive Mode.

Perfect. *Amatus sim*, I may be or may have been loved.

Amatus fuerim, I may have been loved.

Plu-perfect. *Amatus essem*, I might, could, would, or should be or have been loved.

Amatus fuissem, I might, could, would, or should have been loved; or I had been loved.

Future. *Amatus fuerō*, I shall have been loved.

The verb *sum* is also employed to express future time in the indicative mode, both active and passive; thus,

Amaturus sum, I am about to love, I am to love, I am going to love, or I will love. We chiefly use this form, when some purpose or intention is signified.

Amatus ero, I shall be loved.

Obs. 1. The participles *amatus* and *amaturus* are put before the auxiliary verb, because we commonly find them so placed in the classics.

Obs. 2. In these compound tenses the learner should be taught to vary the participle like an adjective noun, according to the gender and number of the different substantives to which it is applied; thus, *amatus est*, he is or was loved, when applied to a man; *amata est*, she was loved, when applied to a woman; *amatum est*, it was loved, when applied to a thing; *amati sunt*, they were loved, when applied

applied to men, &c. The connecting of syntax, so far as is necessary, with the inflection of nouns and verbs, seems to be the most proper method of teaching both.

Obs. 3. The past time and participle perfect in English are taken in different meanings, according to the different tenses in Latin which they are used to express. Thus, "I loved," when put for *amabam*, is taken in a sense different from what it has when put for *amavi*: so *amor*, and *amatus sum*, I am loved; *amabar*, and *amatus eram*, I was loved; *amer*, and *amatus sim*, &c. In the one, *loved* is taken in a present, in the other, in a past sense. This ambiguity arises from the defective nature of the English verb.

Obs. 4. The tenses of the subjunctive mode may be variously rendered, according to their connection with the other parts of a sentence. They are often expressed in English as the same tenses of the indicative, and sometimes one tense apparently put for another.

Thus, *Quasi intelligent, qualis sit*, As if they understood, what kind of person he is, Cic. *In facinus jurasse putes*, You would think, &c. Ov. *Eloquar an sileam?* Shall I speak out, or be silent? *Nec vos arguerim*, *Teucris*, for *arguam*, Virg. *Si quid te fugerit, ego perierim*, for *peribo*, Ter. *Hunc ego si potui tantam sperare dolorem; Et preferre, soror, petero*: for *potuisssem* and *possem*, Virg. *Singula quid referam?* Why should I mention every thing? Id. *Prædiceres mihi*, You should have told me before hand, Ter. *At tu dictis, Albane, maneres*, Ought to have stood to your word, Virg. *Citius crediderim*, I should sooner believe, Juv. *Hauferit ensis*, The sword would have destroyed, Virg. *Fuerint irati*, Grant or suppose they were angry. *Si id fecisset*, If he did or should do that, Cic. The same promiscuous use of the tenses seems, also to take place sometimes in the indicative and infinitive; and the indicative to be put for the subjunctive; as, *Animus meminisse horret, luctuque refugit*, for *refugit*, Virg. *Fuerat melius*, for *fuiisset*, Id. *Invidia dilapsa erat*, for *fuiisset*, Sall. *Quamdiu in portum venis?* for *venissi*, Plaut. *Quam mox navigo Ephesum*, for *navigabo*, Id. *Tu si hic sis, aliter sentias*, Ter. for *esses* and *sentires*. *Cato affirmat, se vivo, illum non triumphare*, for *triumphaturum esse*, Cic. *Persuadet Castico, ut occuparet*, for *occupet*, Cæsar.

Obs. 5. The future of the subjunctive, and also of the indicative, is often rendered by the present of the subjunctive in English; as, *nisi hoc faciet*, or *fecerit*, unless he do this, Ter.

Obs. 6. Instead of the imperative we often use the present of the subjunctive; as, *valeas*, farewell; *huc venias*, come hither, &c. And also the future both of the indicative and subjunctive; as, *non occides*, do not kill; *ne feceris*, do not do it; *valebis*, *neque amabis*, farewell, and love me. Cic.

The present time and the preter-imperfect of the infinitive are both expressed under the same form. All the varieties of past and future time are expressed by the other two tenses. But in order properly to exemplify the tenses of the infinitive mode, we must put an accusative, and some other verb, before each of them: thus,

Dicit me scribere; he says that I write, do write, or am writing.
Dixit me scribere; he said that I wrote, did write, or was writing.
Dicit me scripsisse; he says that I wrote, did write, or have written.
Dixit me scripsisse; he said that I had written.
Dicit me scripturum esse; he says that I will write.
Dixit nos scripturos esse; he said that we would write.
Dicit nos scripturos fuisse; he says that we would have written.
Dicit literas scribi; he says that letters are written, writing, a-writing, or in writing.

Dixit literas scribi; he said that letters were writing, or written.
Dicit literas scriptas esse; he says that letters are or were written.
Dicit literas scriptas fuisse; he says that letters have been written.
Dixit literas scriptas fuisse; he said that letters had been written.
Dicit literas scriptum iri; he says that letters will be written.
Dixit literas scriptum iri; he said that letters would be written.

The future, *scriptum iri*, is made up of the former supine, and the infinitive passive of the verb *eo*, and therefore never admits of any variation.

The future of the infinitive is sometimes expressed by a *periphrasis* or circumlocution; thus, *scio fore vel futurum esse ut scribant*,—*ut literæ scribantur*, I know that they will write,—that letters will be written. *Scivi fore vel futurum esse ut scriberent*,—*ut literæ scriberentur*; I knew that they would write, &c. *Scivi futurum fuisse, ut literæ scriberentur*; I knew that letters would have been written. This form is necessary in verbs which want the supine.

Obs. 7. The different tenses, when joined with any expediency or necessity, are thus expressed:

Scribendum est mihi, puero, nobis, &c. literas; I, the boy, we, &c. must write letters.

Scribendum fuit mihi, puero, nobis, &c. I must have written, &c.

Scribendum erit mihi; I shall be obliged to write.

Scio scribendum esse mihi literas; I know that I must write letters.

—*Scribendum fuisse mihi*;—that I must have written.

Dixit scribendum fore mihi; He said that I would be obliged to write.

Or with the participle in *du*,

Literæ sunt scribendæ mihi, puero, hominibus, &c. or *a me, puero, &c.*; Letters are to be, or must be written by me, by the boy, by men, &c. So *literæ scribendæ erant, fuerunt, erunt, &c.* *Si literæ scribendæ sint, essent, forent, &c.* *Scio literas scribendas esse*; I know that letters are to be, or must be written. *Scivi literas scribendas fuisse*; I knew that letters ought to have been, or must have been written.

Note. Most of the simple tenses of a verb in Latin may be expressed, as in English, by the participle and the auxiliary verb *sum*; as, *Sum amans*, for *amo*, I am loving; *eram amans*, for *amābam*, &c. *Fui te carens*, for *carui*, Plaut. *Ut sis sciens*, for *ut scias*, Ter. Only the tenses in the active which come from the preterite, and those in the passive which come from the present, cannot be properly expressed in this manner; because the Latins have no participle perfect active, nor participle present passive. This manner of expression however does not often occur.

FORMATION

FORMATION OF THE PRETERITE AND SUPINE.

GENERAL RULES.

1. Compound and simple verbs form the preterite and supine in the same manner; as,

Voco, vocāvī, vocātum, to call : so *revoco, revocāvī, revocātum*, to recall.

Exc. 1. When the simple verb in the preterite doubles the first syllable of the present, the compounds lose the former syllable; as, *pello, pēpuli*, to beat; *repello, rēpuli*, never *repēpuli*, to beat back. But the compounds of *do, sto, disco*, and *posco*, follow the general rule; thus, *ēdisco, ēdidici*, to get by heart; *dēposco, dēpōposci*, to demand: So, *præcurro, præcūcurri*; *rēpungo, rēpūpūgi*.

Exc. 2. Compounds which change *a* of the simple verb into *i*, have *e* in the supine; as, *facio, fēcī, factum*, to make; *perficio, perfēcī, perfectum*, to perfect. But compound verbs ending in *do* and *go*; also the compounds of *habeo, placeo, sapio, salio*, and *statuo*, observe the general rule.

2. Verbs which want the preterite, want likewise the supine.

SPECIAL RULES.

First Conjugation.

Verbs of the first conjugation have *āvī* in the preterite, and *ātum* in the supine; as,

Creo, creāvī, creatum, to create; *pāro, pārāvī, pārātum*, to prepare.—So,

Abundo, to abound. *Āriēto, to push like a ram.* *Būlūlo, to hoot like an*

Accūso, to charge with *Apto, to fit.* *owl.*

a crime.

Āro, to plough.

Cæpo, to go to school.

Adumbro, to shade, to *Alcio, to cut or hew.* *Cæco, to blind or dazzle.*

delineate.

Assēvero, to affirm.

Cælo, to carve.

Ædifico, to build.

Ausculdo, to listen.

Calceo, to put on shoes,

Æstimo, to value.

Auctōro, to engage for

to shoe.

Ambulo, to walk.

service.

Calcitro, to kick.

Amplio, to enlarge, to *Autūmo, to suppose.* *Calcō, to tread.*

put off a cause.

Averrunco, to avert.

Cāligo, to be dark, or

Ānimo, to encourage.

Bajūlo, to carry.

dim-sighted.

Anticipo, to anticipate.

Bālo, to bleat.

Carmino, to card wool.

Antīquo, i. e. antiqua

Bālo, to kiss.

Castigo, to chastise.

probo, to reject a law.

Bello, to war.

Castro, to cut off.

Appello, to call.

Bēo, to bless.

Celebro, to make famous.

Appropinquo, to ap-

Blātēro, to babble.

Cēlo, to conceal.

proach.

Boo, to bellow.

Centurio, & concen-

turio,

tūrio, to divide into companies.	Dēdico, to dedicate.	Flo, to blow.
Certo, to strive, to fight.	Dēlecto, to delight.	Focillo, refocillo, to cherish, to warm.
Cesso, to cease.	Dēlibero, to deliberate.	Fodico, to pierce or push.
Clāmo, to cry.	Dēlineo, to trace, to chalk out.	Foro, to bore.
Claudico, to limp.	Dēliro, to doat, to rave.	Fortūno, to prosper.
Coāgūlo, to curdle.	Dēlumbo, to weaken.	Fragro, to smell sweetly.
Cōgito, to think.	Dēsīdēro, to desire.	Fraudo, to defraud.
Collīneo, to aim at, to hit the mark.	Dēsōlo, to lay waste.	Frio, to crumble.
Cōlo, to strain.	Destinō, to design.	Frustro, & -or, to dis- appoint.
Commūnīco, to impart.	Dīco, to dedicate.	Fūco, to colour, to paint.
Compāro, to compare.	Discepto, dispūto, to debate.	Fūgo, to put to flight.
Compenso, to make a- mends.	Disīpo, to scatter.	Fundo, to found.
Compērendīno, to put off a cause to the day after to-morrow.	Dōlo, to hurt or cut.	Gēnero, to beget.
Compīlo, to pile up, to pillage.	Dōno, to present.	Grāvo, to weigh down.
Conciliō, to gain, to rec- oncile.	Duplico, to double.	Gūbernō, to govern.
Concordo, to agree.	Edūco, to bring up.	Gusto, to taste.
Consūto, resūto, to dis- prove.	Ejūlo, to wail, to weep.	Hābito, to dwell.
Congēlo, to freeze.	Emancipo, to free a son from the power of his father.	Hāsīto, to doubt.
Consīdēro, to consider.	Emendo, to amend.	Hālo, to breathe.
Contāmīno, to pollute.	Enucleo, to take out the kernel, to explain.	Hio, to gape.
Cōpūlo, to couple.	Enōdo, to unknit, to ex- plain.	Hōnōro, to honour.
Corrūgo, to wrinkle.	Equito, to ride.	Jacto, to boast, to brag.
Corrusco, to brandish.	Errō, to wander.	Jento, to breakfast.
Crēmo, to burn.	Examīno, to examine, to try.	Ignōro, to be ignorant.
Crēo, to create.	Exantlo, to empty, to endure.	Immōlo, to sacrifice.
Cribro, to sift.	Exāro, to plough up, to scratch, to write fast.	Impēro, to command.
Crispo, to curl.	Exentēro, to take out the guts.	Impetro, to obtain.
Crūcio, to torment.	Existīmo, to think.	Inauro, to gild.
Cūro, to care.	Explōro, to search.	Inchoo, to begin.
Damno, to condemn.	Extrīco, to disentangle.	Inclīno, to incline.
Dēcīme, to take the tenth part, or punish every tenth man.	Fabrīco, to frame.	Indāgo, to trace out.
Declāro, to declare.	Fascīno, to bewitch.	Indico, to sketch.
Dēcollo, to loose a thing from off the neck, to behead.	Fātīgo, to weary.	Inquīno, to pollute.
Dēcōro, to adorn.	Fermento, to leaven with dough, to fer- ment.	Inspīco, to sharpen at the end.
Dēcūrio, to divide sol- diers into files or small companies, or citizens into wards.	Festīno, to hasten.	Instauro, to renew.
	Flāgīto, to dun.	Instīgo, to push on.
	Flagro, to be on fire.	Intercālo, to insert one or more days, to make the year agree with the course of the sun.
		Intro, to enter.
		Invīto, to invite.
		Irrādio, to shine upon.
		Irrīto, to provoke.
		Itēro, to do again.
		Jūbilo, to scout for joy.
		Jurgo,

Jurgo, & -or, to chide or scold.	Narro, to tell.	Pröbo, to approve.
Jūro, to swear.	Nauseo, to be sea-sick.	Procrastino, to delay.
Lābōro, to labour.	Nāvigo, to sail.	Profligo, to rout.
Lācēro, to tear.	Nāvo, to act vigorously.	Prōmulgo, to publish.
Lachrymo, & -or, to weep.	Nēgo, to deny.	Propāgo, to propagate.
Lavīgo, to smooth or polish.	Niēto, to wink.	Prōpēro, to hasten.
Lallo, to sing as a nurse to a child.	No, to swim.	Propīno, to drink to.
Lānio, to tear.	Nōdo, to knot, rar. act.	Prōtēlo, to chase away.
Latro, to bark.	Nōmino, to name.	Publico, to publish, to confiscate.
Laxo, to loose.	Nōto, to mark.	Pugno, to fight.
Lēgo, to send as an am- bassador, to bequeath.	Nōvo, to renew.	Pullūlo, to bud.
Lēvo, to lighten.	Nūdo, to make bare.	Purgo, to cleanse.
Lībo, to taste.	Nūmero, to count.	Pūto, to think.
Lībēro, to free.	Nuncūpo, to call.	Quadro, to square.
Līgo, to bind.	Nuntio, to tell.	Rēcūpēro, to recover.
Līquo, to melt.	Nūto, to nod.	Rēcūso, to refuse.
Litigo, to quarrel.	Obsecro, to beseech.	Refīgēro, to cool.
Lito, to appease by sa- crifice.	Obsēro, to lock.	Rēgēlo, to thaw.
Lūcubro, to sit up late, to study.	Obtempēro, to obey.	Rēpāro, to repair.
Lustro, to survey.	Obtrunco, to kill.	Rēpræsento, to resem- ble, to shew; to pay money in advance.
Luxo, to put out of joint.	Obtūro, to stop up.	Rēsēro, to unlock.
Mactō, to slay, to sa- crifice.	Occo, to harrow.	Rīgo, to water.
Mando, to command, to commit.	Ōdōro, to perfume.	Rōgo, to ask.
Māno, to flow.	Ōnēro, to load.	Rōto, to wheel about.
Mātūro, to hasten.	Opto, to wish.	Ruēto, & -or, to belch.
Mēdico, & -or, to cure.	Orbo, to deprive.	Rūmīno, to chew the
Mēmōro, to tell.	Ordīno, to put in order.	Runco, to weed. [and.
Meo, to go or pass.	Orno, to deck, to adorn.	Sacro, to consecrate.
Mērīdio, & -or, to sleep at noon.	Ōro, to beg.	Sāgīno, to fatter.
Migro, to remove.	Oscito, & -or, to yawn, to be listless.	Sālīvo, to spit or spatter.
Mīlito, to be a soldier.	Pāco, to subdue.	Salto, to dance.
Mīnistro, to serve.	Palpito, to beat or throb.	Sālūto, to salute.
Mītigo, to pacify.	Palpo, to stroke, to gain by flattery.	Sāno, to heal.
Monstro, to shew or tell.	Pārento, to perform fu- neral rites, to revenge.	Sātio, to satisfy.
Mulco, to beat.	Pāro, to prepare.	Sātūro, to fill, to glut.
Multo, & -cto, to fine.	Patro, to perform.	Scārīfico, to lance or open.
Musio, & -ito, to mutter.	Pecco, to sin.	Serco, to hawk or retch in spitting.
Mūtjlo, to maim.	Pēnetro, to pierce.	Sēcundo, to prosper.
Mūto, to change.	Persēvēro, to continue constant.	Sēdo, to allay.
	Pio, to expiate.	Sēpāro, to sever.
	Plāco, to appease.	Servo, to keep.
	Plōro, to bewail.	Sībilo, to hiss.
	Porto, to carry.	Sicco, to dry.
	Postūlo, to demand.	Signo, to mark out.
	Prīvo, to deprive.	Significo,

Significo, to mean, to give notice.	Sulco, to furrow.	Vasto, to lay waste.
Simulo, to pretend.	Sūpero, to overcome.	Vellico, to pluck, twitch or pinch; to taunt or rail at.
Socio, to match, to join.	Suppedito, to afford.	Vēlo, to cover.
Solicito, to stir up, to disquiet.	Sūfurro, to whisper.	Ventilo, to fan.
Somnio, to dream.	Tardo, to stop.	Verbēro, to whip.
Specto, to behold.	Taxo, to rate, to reprove.	Vestigo, to search for.
Spēro, to hope.	Tēmēro, to defile.	Vibro, to brandish, to shake.
Spīro, to breathe.	Tempero, to temper.	Viduo, to deprive.
Spolio, to rob.	Tēnuo, to make small.	Vigilo, to watch.
Spūmo, to foam.	Tērebro, to bere.	Vindico, to claim, to revenge.
Stagno, to stand as water.	Termīno, to bound.	Violo, to violate.
Stillo, to drop.	Tītillo, to tickle.	Vitio, to spoil.
Stimulo, to goad, to vex.	Tītūbo, to stagger.	Vīto, to shun.
Stipo, to stuff, to guard.	Tolēro, to bear.	Vītūpero, to blame.
Strangulo, to strangle.	Trāno, to swim over.	Voco, to call.
Strigo, to breathe, or rest in work, as oxen, or horses do.	Tripiudio, to caper.	Volo, to fly.
Sūdo, to sweat.	Triumpho, to triumph.	Voro, to devour.
Suffoco, to strangle.	Trūcido, to kill.	Vulgo, to spread abroad.
Suffoco, to burn incense.	Turbo, to disturb.	Vulnero, to wound.
Sugillo, to taunt or jeer.	Ūlulo, to howl.	
	Umbro, to shade.	
	Vacillo, to waver.	
	Vāco, to want, to be at leisure.	

Exc. 1. *Do, dēdi, dātum, dāre*, to give : *fo, venundo*, to sell ; *circundo*, to surround ; *peffundo*, to overthrow ; *satisf-do*, to give surety ; *venundēdi, venundātum, venundāre*, &c. The other compounds of *do* are of the third conjugation.

Sto, stēti, statum, to stand. Its compounds have *stīti, stitum*, and oftener *stātum* ; as, *præsto, præstiti, præstitum*, or *præstātum*, to excel, to perform. So *ad-, ante-, con-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-sto*.

Exc. 2. *Lāvo, lāvi, lōtum, lautum, lāvātum*, to wash.

Pōto, pōtavi, pōtum, or *pōtātum*, to drink.

Jūvo, jūvi, jūtum, to help ; fut. part. *juvaturus*. So *adjūvo*.

Exc. 3. *Cūbo, cūbui, cūbitum*, to ly. So, *ac-, ex-, oc-, rē-cūbo*. The other compounds insert an *m*, and are of the third conjugation.

Dēmo, dēmui, dēmītum, to subdue. So *ē-, per-dēmo*.

Sōno, sōnui, sōnītum, to found. So *af-, circum-, con-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, præ-, rē-sōno*.

Tōno, tōnui, tōnītum, to thunder. So *at-, circum-, in-, ūperin-, rē-tōno*. Horace has *intōnatus*.

Vēto, vētui, vēlītum, to forbid.

Crēpo, crēpui, crēpitum, to make a noise. So *con-*, *in-*, *per-*, *rē-crēpo* : *dis-crēpo* has rather *dis-crēpāvi*.

Exc. 4. *Frīco, frīcui, frīctum*, to rub. So *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *per-*, *re-frīco*. But some of these have also *atum*.

Sēco, sēcui, sēctum, to cut. So *circum-*, *con-*, *dē-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *rē-*, *sub-sēco*.

Nēco, nēcui, or nēcavi, nēcātum, to kill. So *inter-*, *ē-nēco* : but these have oftener *ectum* ; *enectum, internectum*.

Mīco, mīcui, — to glitter, to shine. So *inter-*, *prō-mīco*. *Emīco*, has *ēmīcui, ēmicātum* : *dimīco, dimīcāvi, dimīcātum*, rarely, *dimīcui*, to fight.

Exc. 5. These three want both pret. and sup. *lābo*, to fall or faint ; *nexo*, to bind ; and *plico*, to fold.

Plico, compounded with a noun, or with the prepositions *re*, *sub*, has *āvi, ātum* ; as, *duplīco, duplicavi, duplicatum*, to double. So *multi-*, *sup-*, *re-plīco*.

The other compounds of *plico* have either *āvi* and *ātum*, or *ui* and *itum* ; as *applico, applicui, applicitum*, or *-āvi, ātum*, to apply. So *im-*, *com-plīco*. *Explico*, to unfold, has commonly *explicui, explicitum* ; but when it signifies to explain or interpret, *explicāvi, explicātum*.

Second Conjugation.

[Verbs of the second conjugation have *ui* and *itum* ; as *habeo, habui, habitum*,] to have.—So,

Adhībeo, to admit, to use.

Cohībeo, inhībeo, to restrain.

Exhībeo, to shew, to give.

Pērhibeo, to say, to give out.

Prohibeo, to hinder.

Posthabeo, to value less.

Præheo, to afford.

Rēdhībeo, to return or take back a thing that was sold for some fault.

Dēbeo, to owe.

Mēreo, to deserve : *Com-*, *de-*, *e-*, *per-*, *pro-mēreo*, or *mereor*.

Mōneo, to admonish : *Ad-*, *com-*, *præ-mōneo*.

Terreo, to terrify : *Abf-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *per-terreo*.

Dārībeo, to count over, to distribute.

Neuter verbs which have *ui* want the supine ; as, *āreo, ārui*, to be dry : So,

Aceo, & -sco, to be sour.

Albeo, to be white.

Candeo, to be white.

Calleo, to be hard.

Cāneo, to be hoary.

Clāreo, to be bright.

Egeo, indīgeo, to want.

Emīneo, to stand above others.

Flacceo, to wither.

Flōreo, to flourish.

Fœteo, to slink.

Frendeo, to gnash the teeth.

Frondeo, to bear leaves.

Horreo, to be rough.

Hūmeo, to be wet.

Immīneo, to hang over.

Languco,

Languco, to languish.	Páteo, to be open.	Stúdeo, to favour.
Liqueo, licui, to melt, to be clear.	Púteo, to sink.	Stúpeo, to be amazed.
Máceo, to be lean.	Putreo, to rot.	Splendeo, to shine.
Mádeo, to be wet.	Ranceo, to be mouldy.	Tépeo, to be warm.
Marceo, to wither.	Rígeo, to be stiff.	Torpeo, to be benumbed.
Múceo, to be mouldy.	Rúbeo, to be red.	Túmeo, to swell.
Níteo, to shine.	Squáleo, to be foul.	Vígeo, to be strong.
Palleo, to be pale.	Sordeo, to be nasty.	Vireo, to be green.

But the neuter verbs which follow, together with their compounds, have the supine, and are regularly conjugated: *Váleo*, to be in health; and *æqui-*, *con-*, *e-*, *in-*, *præ-váleo*: *Pláceo*, to please; and *com-*, *per-placeo*: *displíceo*, to displease: *Cáreo*, to want: *Páreo*, to appear, to obey; and *ap-*, *com-páreo*: *Jáceo*, to lie; and *ad-*, *circum-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *præ-*, *sub-*, *super-jáceo*: *Calceo*, to be warm; and *con-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *re-cáleo*: *Nóceo*, to hurt; *Dóleo*, to be grieved; and *con-*, *de-*, *in-*, *per-dóleo*: *Coaleo*, to grow together: *Líceo*, which in the active signifies, to be lawful, to be valued; and, what is singular, in the passive, to bid a price: *Láteo*, to lurk, the compounds of which want the supine, *delíteo*, *inter-*, *sub-láteo*: as likewise do those of *Táceo*, *-cui*, *-cítum*, to be silent, *con-*, *re-tíceo*.

These three active verbs likewise want the supine: *Tímeo*, *-ui*, to fear; *Síleo*, *-ui*, to conceal; *Arceo*, *-cui*, to drive away: But the compounds of *arceo* have the supine; as, *exercéo*, *exercui*, *exercítum*, to exercise. So *co-erceo*, to restrain.

Exc. 1. The following verbs in *BEO* and *CEO*:

Júbeo, *jussi*, *jussum*, to order. So *fidē-júbeo*, to bail, or be surety for.

Sorbeo, *sorbui*, *sorptum*, to sup. So *ab-sorbeo*, to suck in; *re-sorbeo*. We also find *absorpsi*, *exsorpsi*: *Exsorptum*, *resorptum*, are not in use.

Dóceo, *dócui*, *doctum*, to teach. So *ad-*, *con-*, *de-*, *e-*, *per-*, *sub-dóceo*.

Misceo, *miscui*, *místum*, or *míxtum*, to mix. So *ad-*, *com-*, *im-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *re-misceo*.

Mulceo, *mulsi*, *mulsum*, to stroak, to soothe. So *ad-*, *circum-*, *com-*, *de-*, *per-*, *re-mulceo*.

Lúceo, *luxi*, — to shine. So *al-*, *circum-*, *col-*, *di-*, *c-*, *il-*, *inter-*, *per-*, or *pel-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *trans-lúceo*.

Exc.

Exc. 2. The following verbs in *DEO* :

Prandeo, prandi, pransum, to dine.

Video, vīdi, vīsum, to see. So *in-, per-, præ-, pro-rē-video*.

Sēdeo, sēdi, sessum, to sit. So *af-, con-, de-, dis-, in-, ob-, per-, pos-, præ-, rē-, sub-sēdeo* : *Circumsēdeo*, or *circumsēdeo, supersēdeo*. But *dē-, dis-, per-, præ-, rē-, sub-sēdeo*, seem to want the supine.

Strīdeo, strīdi, — to make a noise.

Pendeo, pēpendi, pensum, to hang. So *de-, im-, pro-, super-pendeo*.

Mordeo, mōmordi, morsum, to bite. So *ad-, com-, de-, ob-, præ-, re-mordeo*.

Spondeo, spōpondi, sponsum, to promise. So *de-, re-spondeo*.

Tondeo, tōtondi, tonsum, to clip. So *at-, circum-, de-tondeo*.

But the compounds of these verbs do not double the first syllable ; thus, *dependi, remordi, respondi, attondi, &c.*

Rīdeo, rīsi, rīsum, to laugh. So *ar-, de-, ir-, sub-rīdeo*.

Suādeo, suāsi, suāsum, to advise. So *dis-, per-suādeo*.

Ardeo, arsi, arsum, to burn. So *ex-, in-, ob-ardeo*.

Exc. 3. The following verbs in *GEO* :

Augeo, auxi, auctum, to increase. So *ad-, ex-augeo*.

Lūgeo, luxi, — to mourn. So *e-, pro-, sub-lūgeo*.

Frīgeo, frixi, — to be cold. So *per-, re-frīgeo*.

Tergeo, terxi, tersum, to wipe. So *abs-, circum-, de-, ex-, per-tergeo*.

Mulgeo, mulsi, mulsū, or mulctum, to milk. So *c-, im-mulgeo*.

Indulgeo, indulsi, indultum, to grant, to indulge.

Urgeo, urxi, — to press. So *ad-, ex-, in-, per-, sub-, super-urgeo*.

Fulgeo, fulsi, — to shine. So *af-, circum-, con-, ef-, inter-, præ-, re-, super-fulgeo*.

Turgeo, tursi, — to swell. *Algeo, alsi, —* to be cold.

Exc. 4. The following verbs in *IEO* and *LEO* :

Vieo, viēvi, viētum, to bind with twigs, to hoop a vessel.

Cieo, (cīvi) cītum, to stir up, to rouse. So *ac-, con-, ex-, in-, per-cieo*. *Cīvi* comes from *cio* of the fourth conjugation.

Fleo, flēvi, flētum, to weep. So *af-, de-fleo*.

Compleo, complēvi, complētum, to fill. So the other compounds of *pleo* ; *de-, ex-, im-, adim-, op-, re-, sup-pleo*.

Dēleo,

Dēleo, dēlēvi, dēlētum, to destroy, to blot out.

ōleo, to smell, has *ōlui, ōlūtum*. So likewise its compounds which have a similar signification; *ob-, per-, red-, sub-ōleo*. But such of the compounds as have a different signification make *ēvi* and *ētum*; thus *exōleo, exōlēvi, exōlētum*, to fade. So *inōleo, -ēvi, -ētum*, or *-ītum*, to grow into use; *obsōleo, -ēvi, -ētum*, to grow out of use. *Abōleo*, to abolish, has *ābōlēvi, abōlūtum*; and *ādōleo*, to grow up, to burn, *adōlēvi, adultum*.

Exc. 5. Several verbs in *NEO, QUEO, REO*, and *SEO*.

Māneo, mansi, mansum, to stay. So *per-, rē-māneo*.

Neo, nēvi, nētum, to spin. So *per-neo*.

Tēneo, tēnui, tentum, to hold. So *con-, de-, dis-, ob-, re-, sus-tīneo*. But *attīneo, pertīneo*, are not used in the supine; and seldom *abstīneo*.

Torqueo, torxi, torium, to throw, to whirl, to twist. Thus, *con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, ob-, re-torqueo*.

Hæreo, hæsi, hæsum, to stick. Thus, *ad-, con-, in-, ob-, sub-hæreo*.

Torreo, torrui, tostum, to roast. So *extorreo*.

Censeo, censui, censum, to judge. So *ac-, per-, re-censeo*, to review; *succenseo*, to be angry.

Exc. 6. Verbs in *ŪEO* have *vi, tum*; as, *mōveo, mōvi, mōtum*, to move; *Fōveo, fōvi, fōtum*, to cherish. So *con-, rē-foveo*. So *vōveo*, to vow, or wish, and *dēvōveo*.

Fāveo, to favour; has *fāvi, fautum*; and *cāveo*, to be ware of; *cāvi, cautum*. So *præ-cāveo*.

Neuter verbs in *veo* want the supine; as, *pāveo, pāvi*, to be afraid.

Ferveo, to boil, to be hot, makes *ferbui*. So *de-, ef-, in-, per-, rē-ferveo*.

Connīveo, to wink, has *connīvi* and *connixi*.

Exc. 7. The following verbs want both preterite and supine: *Lacteo*, to suck milk, *liveo*, to be black and blue; *scāteo*, to abound; *renīdeo*, to shine; *mæreo*, to be sorrowful; *āveo*, to desire; *polleo*, to be able; *flāveo*, to be yellow; *denseo*, to grow thick; *glabreo*, to be smooth or bare. To these add *calveo*, to be bald; *cēveo*, to wag the tail, as dogs do when they fawn on one; *hēbeo*, to be dull; *ūveo*, to be moist; and some others.

Third Conjugation.

[Verbs of the third conjugation form their preterite and supine variously, according to the termination of the present.]

10.

1. *Facio, fēci, factum*, to do, to make. So the compounds which retain *a*: *lucrī-, magnī-, arē-, cālē-, mādē-, tēpē-, bēnē-, mālē-, sātis-facio*, &c. But those which change *a* into *i* have *ectum*; as, *afficio, affēci, affectum*. So, *con-, de-, ef-, in-, inter-, of-, per-, prae-, pro-, re-, sufficio*. Note; *FACIO*, compounded with a noun, verb, or adverb, retains *a*; but when compounded with a preposition, it changes *a* into *i*.

Some compounds of *facio* are of the first conjugation; as, *Amplifico, sacrifico, terrifico, magnifico; gratificor*, to gratify, or do a good turn, to give up; *lūdificor*, to mock.

Facio, jēci, jactum, to throw. So *ab-, ad-, circum-, con-, de-, dis-, e-, in-, inter-, ob-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, superin-, tra-jicio*; in the supine *-ectum*.

The compounds of *spēcio* and *lācio*, which themselves are not used, have *exi*, and *ectum*; as, *aspicio, aspexi, aspectum*, to behold. So *circum-, con-, de-, dis-, in-, intro-, per-, pro-, re-, retro-, sus-picio*.

Allicio, allexi, allectum, to allure. So *il-, pel-licio*; but *ēlicio*, to draw out, has *elīcui, elīctum*.

2. *Fodio, fōdi, fossum*, to dig, to delve. So *ad-, circum-, con-, ef-, in-, inter-, per-, prae-, re-, suf-, transfodio*.

Fugio, fūgi, fūgitum, to fly. So *au-, (for ab-,) con-, de-, dis-, ef-, per-, pro-, re-, suf-, subter-, transfugio*.

3. *Cāpio, cēpi, captum*, to take. So *ac-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, oc-, per-, prae-, re-, sus-cipio*, (in the supine *-ceptum*;) and *ante-cāpio*.

Rāpio, rāpui, raptum, to pull or snatch. So *ab-, ar-, cor-, de-, di-, e-, prae-, pro-, sur-rāpio-, -rāpui, -reptum*.

Sāpio, sāpui, — to savour, to be wise. So *consipio*, to be well in one's wits; *desipio*, to be foolish; *resipio*, to come to one's wits.

Cūpio, cupīvi, cupitum, to desire. So *con-, dis-, per-cūpio*.

4. *Pārio, pēpēri, paritum*, or *parium*, to bring forth a child, to get. Its compounds are of the fourth conjugation.

Quālio,

Quatio, quassi, quassum, to shake; but *quassi* is hardly used. Its compounds have *cussi, cussum*, as, *concutio, concussi concussum*. So *de-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, re-, reper-, suc-cutio*.

UO has *ui, ūtum*; as,

Arguo, argui, argūtum, to shew, to prove, or argue, to reprove. So *co-, red-arguo*, to confute.—So,

Acuo, Exācua, to sharpen.

Batua, vel battua, to beat, to fight, to fence with foils.

Indua, to put on cloaths.

Exua, to put off cloaths.

Imbua, to wet or imbrue, to season or instruct.

Mīnuo, to lessen: *Com-, de-, di-, im-minuo*.

Spua, to spit: *Con-, de-, ex-, in-spua*.

Statua, to set or place, to ordain.

Con-, de-, in-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-stītua.

Sternua, to squeeze.

Sua, to sew or stitch, to tack together: *As-, circum-, con-, dis-, in-, præ-, re-, suo*.

Tribua, to give, to divide: *At-, con-, dis-, re-tribua*.

Exc. 1. *Flua, fluxi, fluxum*, to flow. So *as-, circum-, con-, de-, dis-, ef-, in-, inter-, per-, præter-, pro-, re-, subter-, super-, trans-flua*.

Strua, struxi, structum, to put in order, to build. So *at-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, ob-, præ-, sub-, super-strua*.

Exc. 2. *Lua, lui, lūtum*, to pay, to wash away, to suffer punishment. Its compounds have *ūtum*; as, *ablua, -ui, -ūtum*, to wash away, to purify. So *al-, circum-, col-, de-, di-, e-, inter-, per-, pol-, pro-, sub-lua*.

Rua, rui, rūtum, to rush, to fall. Its compounds have *ūtum*; as *dirua, dirui, dirūtum*, to overthrow. So *ē-, ob-, prō-, sub-rua*. *Corrua*, and *irrua*, want the supine; as likewise do *metua*, to fear; *plua*, to rain; *ingrua*, to assail; *congrua*, to agree; *respua*, to reject, to slight; *annua*, to assent; and the other compounds of the obsolete verb *nuo*; *abnuo*, to refuse; *innua*, to nod or beckon with the head; *renua*, to deny: all which have *ui* in the preterite.

BO has *bi, bītum*; as,

Bībo, bībi, bibītum, to drink. So *ad-, com-, e-, in-, per-, præ-bībo*.

Exc. 1. *Scribo, scripsi, scriptum*, to write. So *ad-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, per-, post-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, supra-, trans-scribo*.

Nūbo,

Nūbo, nupsī, nuptum, to veil, to be married. So *de-, e-, in-, ob-nubo*. Instead of *nupsī*, we often find *nupta sum*.

Exc. 2. The compounds of *cūbo* in this conjugation insert an *m* before the last syllable; as, *accumbo, accūbui, accūbitum*, to recline at table. So *con-, de-, dis-, in-, oc-, pro-, re-, suc-, superin-cumbo, -cūbui, -cubitum*.

These two verbs want the supine; *scābo, scābi*, to scratch; *lambo, lambi*, to lick. So *ad-, circum-, dē-, prae-lambo*.

Glūbo and *deglūbo*, to strip, to flay, want both pret. & sup.
CO.

1. *Dīco, dixi, dictum*, to say. So *ab-, ad-, con-, contra-, a-, in-, inter-, prae-, pro-dīco*.

Dūco, duxi, ductum, to lead. So *ab-, ad-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, intro-, ob-, per-, prae-, pro-, re-, se-, sub-, tra-, or trans-dūco*.

2. *Vinco, vīci, victum*, to overcome. So *con-, de-, e-, per-, rē-vinco*.

Parco, pēperci, parsum, seldom *parsi, parsitum*, to spare. So *comparco*, or *comperco*, which is seldom used.

Ico, īci, ictum, to strike.

SCO has *vi, tum*; as,

Nosco, nōvi, nōtum, to know; fut. part. *nosciturus*. So *Dignosco, to distinguish*; *ignosco, to pardon*; also *inter-, per-, prae-nosco*. *Quiesco, -ēvi, -ētum*, to rest: *Ac-, con-, inter-, rē-quiesco*.

Cresco, -ēvi, -ētum, to grow: *Conde-, ex-, re-, and without the supine, ac-, in-, per-, pro-, suc-, super-cresco*.

Scisco, -īvi, -itum, to ordain; *ad-, or ascisco, to take, to associate*; *concisco, to vote, to commit*; also *prae-, re-cisco*; *descisco, to revolt*.

Suesco, to be accustomed: *As-, conde-, in-suesco, -ēvi, -ētum*.

Exc. 1. *Agnosco, agnōvi, agnītum*, to own; *cognosco, cognōvi, cognītum*, to know. So *rēcognosco*, to review.

Pasco, pāvi, pastum, to feed. So *com-, dē-pasco*.

Exc. 2. The following verbs want the supine.

Disco, didīci, to learn. So *ad-, con-, de-, e-, per-, prae-disco, didīci*.

Posco, pōposci, to demand. So *ap-, dē-, ex-, rē-posco*.

Compesco, compescui, to stop, to restrain. So *dispesco, dispescui*, to separate.

Exc. 3. *Glisco*, to grow; *fatisco*, to be weary; and likewise

likewise inceptive verbs; want both preterite and supine; as *aresco*, to become dry. But these verbs borrow the preterite and supine from their primitives; as *ardescō*, to grow hot, *arſi*, *arſum*, from *ardeo*.

DO has *di*, *ſum*; as,

Scando, *ſcandi*, *ſcanſum*, to climb; *ēdō*, *ēdi*, *ēſum*, to eat. So,

<i>Aſcendo</i> , to mount.	<i>Cūdo</i> , to forge; to ſtamp	<i>Mando</i> , to ſend: Præ-
<i>Deſcendo</i> , to go down:	or coin: Ex-, in-,	re-mando.
Con-, e-, ex-, in-,	per-, pro-, re-cūdo.	<i>Prehendo</i> , to take hold
tranſcendo.	<i>Deſendiō</i> , to defend.	of: Ap-, com-, de-
<i>Accendo</i> , to kindle:	<i>Offendo</i> , to ſtrike a-	prehendo.
In-, ſuc-cendo:	gainſt, to offend, to ſind.	

Exc. 1. *Divīdo*, *divīſi*, *divīſum*, to divide.

Rādo, *rāſi*, *rāſum*, to ſhave. So ab-, circum-, cor-, ē-, e-, inter-, præ, ſub-rādo.

Claudo, *clauſi*, *clauſum*, to cloſe. So circum-, con-, diſ-, ex-, in-, inter-, præ, re-, ſe-clūdo.

Plaudo, *plauſi*, *plauſum*, to clap hands for joy. So ap-, circum-plaudo: alſo com-, diſ-, ex-, ſup-plōdo, -ploſi, -ploſum.

Lūdo, *lūſi*, *lūſum*, to play. So ab-, at-, col-, de-, e-, il-, inter-, ob-, præ-, pro-, re-lūdo.

Trūdo, *trūſi*, *trūſum*, to thruſt. So abſ-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, ob-, pro-, re-trūdo.

Lædo, *læſi*, *læſum*, to hurt. So at-, col-, e-, il-līdo, -liſi, -liſum.

Rōdo, *roſi*, *roſum*, to gnaw. So ab-, ar-, circum-, cor-, le-, e-, ob-, per-, præ-rodo.

Vādo, to go, wants both preterite and ſupine: but its compounds have *ſi*, *ſum*; as *invādo*, *invāſi*, *invāſum*, to invade, or fall upon. So circum-, ē-, ſuper-vādo.

Cēdo, *ceſſi*, *ceſſum*, to yield. So abſ-, ac-, antē-, con-, de-, liſ-, ex-, in-, inter-, præ-, pro-, rē-, retrō-, ſe-, ſuc-cēdo.

Exc. 2. *Pando*, *pandi*, *paſſum*, and ſometimes *panſum*, to open, to ſpread. So diſ-, ex-, op-, præ-, rē-pando.

Cōmēdo, *comēdi*, *comēſum*, or *comēſum*, to eat. But do itſelf and the reſt of its compounds have always *ēſum*; ſ, ad-, amb-, ex-, per-, ſub-, ſuper-ēdo-, -ēdi, -ēſum.

Fundo, *fūdi*, *fūſum*, to pour forth. So aſ-, circum-, on-, de-, diſ-, eſ-, in-, inter-, of-, per-, pro-, re-, ſuf-, ſuper-, ſuperin-, tranſ-fundo.

Scindo,

Scindo, scīdi, scissum, to cut. So *af-, circum-, con-, ex-, inter-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, tran-scindo.*

Findo, fīdi, fissum, to cleave. So *con-, dis-, in-findo.*

Exc. 3. *Tundo, tūtūdi, tunsum, and sometimes tūsum, to beat.* The compounds have *tūdi, tūsum*; as, *contundo, contūdi, contūsum, to bruise.* So *ex-, ob-, per-, re-tundo.*

Cado, cēcīdi, cāsum, to fall. The compounds want the supine; as, *ac-, con-, de-, ex-, inter-, pro-, suc-cido, -cīdi, -----*: except, *incido, incīdi, incāsum, to fall in*; *recido, recīdi, recāsum, to fall back*; and *occido, occīdi, occāsum, to fall down.*

Cedo, cēcīdi, cāsum, to cut, to kill. The compounds change *e* into *i* long; as, *accido, accīdi, accīsum, to cut about.* So *abs-, con-, circum-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, oc-, per-, præ-, rē-, suc-cido.*

Tendo, tētēdi, tensum, or tentum, to stretch out. So *at-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, ob-, præ-, pro-tendo, -tēdi, -tensum or -tentum.* But the compounds have rather *tentum*, except *ostendo, to shew*; which has commonly *ostensum*.

Pedo, pēpēdi, pedītum, to break wind backwards. So *op-pēdo.*

Pendo, pēpēdi, pensum, to weigh. So *ap-, de-, dis-, ex-, im-, per-, re-, sus-pendo, -pendi, -pensum.*

Exc. 4. The compounds of *do* have *dīdi*, and *dītum*; as, *abdo, abdīdi, abdītum, to hide.* So *ad-, con-, dē-, dī-, ē-, ob-, per-, pro-, red-, sub-,trado*: also *decon-, recon-do*: and *coad-, supperad-do*; and *deper-, disper-do.* To these add *crēdo, crēdīdi, crēdītum, to believe*; *vendo, vendīdi, vendītum, to sell.* *Abscundo, to hide, has abscondīdi, abscondītum, rarely abscondīdi.*

Exc. 5. These three want the supine: *strīdo, strīdi, to creak*; *rūdo, rūdi, to bray like an ass*; and *sīdo, sīdi, to sink down.* The compounds of *sīdo* borrow the preterite and supine from *sēdeo*; as, *consīdo, consēdi, confēssum, to sit down.* So *af-, circum-, de-, in-, ob-, per-, rē-, sub-sīdo.*

Note, Several compounds of verbs in *do* and *deo*, in some respects resemble one another, and therefore should be carefully distinguished; as, *concīdo, concēdo, concīdo*; *consīdo* and *consīdeo*; *conscīdo, conscendo, &c.*

GO, GUO, has *xi, ctum ; æ,*

Rēgo, rexi, rectum, to rule, to govern ; *dīrigo, -exi, -ectum*, to direct ; *arrigo, & ērigo, -exi, -ectum*, to raise up : *corrigo*, to correct ; *porrigo*, to stretch out ; *subrigo*, to raise up. So

Cingo, cinxi, cinctum, to gird, to surround : *Ac-, dis-, circum-, in-, præ-, re-, suc-cingo*.

Fligo, to dash or beat upon : *Af-, con-, in-fligo* : also *profligo, to rout*, of the first conj.

Jungo, to join ; *abjungo, to separate* : *Ad-, con-, de-, dis-, in-, inter-, se-, sub-jungo*.

Lingo, to lick : *de-, ē-lingo* ; & *pollingo, to anoint a dead body*.

Mungo, to wipe or clean the nose.

Emungo, to wipe, to cheat.

Plango, to beat, to lament.

Stingo, or Stinguo, to dash out, to extinguish : *Di-, ex-, in-, inter-, præ-, re-stinguo*.

Tēgo, to cover : *Circum-, con-, de-, in-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-tēgo*.

Tingo, or Tinguo, to dip or dye : *Can-, in-tingo*.

Ungo, or Unguo, to anoint : *ex-, in-, per-, super-ungo*.

Exc. 1. *Surgo, to rise*, has *surrexi, surrectum*. So *af-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, re-surgo*.

Pergo, perrexī, perrectum, to go forward.

Stringo, strinxi, stridum, to bind, to strain, to lop. So *ad-, con-, de-, dis-, ob-, per-, præ-, re-, sub-stringo*.

Fingo, finxi, fictum, to feign. So *af-, con-, ef-, re-fingo*.

Pingo, pinxi, pictum, to paint. So *ap-, de-pingo*.

Exc. 2. *Frango, frēgi, fractum*, to break. So *con-, de-, dis-, ef-, in-, per-, præ-, re-, sus-fringo, -frēgi, -fractum*.

Āgo, ēgi, actum, to do, to drive. So *ab-, ad-, ex-, red-, sub-, trans-, transad-igo* ; and *circum-, per-āgo* : *cōgo*, for *coāgo, coēgi, coactum*, to bring together, to force.

These three compounds of *āgo* want the supine : *ſātāgo, ſatēgi*, to be busy about a thing ; *prōdigo, prodēgi*, to lavish, or spend riotously ; *dēgo*, for *deāgo* ; *dēgi*, to live or dwell. *Ambigo, to doubt, to dispute*, also wants the preterite.

Lēgo, lēgi, lectum, to gather, to read. So *al-, per-, præ-, re-, sub-lēgo* : also *col-, de-, e-, recol-, se-ligo*, which change *e* into *i*.

Dīligo, to love, has *dilexi, dilectum*. So *neglīgo, to neglect* ; and *intelligo, to understand* ; but, *negligo* has sometimes *neglēgi*, Sall. Jug. 40.

Exc. 3. *Tango, tēgi, tactum*, to touch. So *at-, con-, ob-, per-tingo* ; thus, *attingo, attigi, attactum, &c.*

Pango,

Pungo, pūpūgi, punctum, to prick or sting. The compounds have *punxi*; as, *compungo, compunxi, compunctum*. So *dis-, ex-, inter-pungo*: but *repungo* has *repunxi*, or *repūpūgi*.

Pango, panxi, pactum, to fix, to drive in, to compose: or *pēpīgi*, which comes from the obsolete verb *pāgo*, to bargain, for which we use *paciscor*. The compounds of *pango*, have *pēgi*; as, *compingo, compēgi, compactum*, to put together. So *im-, ob-, sup-pingo*.

Exc. 4. *Spargo, sparsi, sparsum*, to spread. So *ad-, circum-, con-, di-, in-, inter-, per-, pro-, re-spergo*.

Mergo, merxi, merxum, to dip, or plunge. So *de-, e-, im-, sub-mergo*.

Tergo, terxi, tersum, to wipe, or clean. So *abs-, de-, ex-, per-tergo*.

Figō, fixi, fixum, to fix or fasten. So *af-, con-, de-, in-, of-, per-, præ-, re-, suf-, transf-figo*.

Frīgo, frixi, frixum, or *frictum*, to fry.

Exc. 5. These three want the supine: *clangō, clanxi*, to sound a trumpet; *ningō*, or *ninguo, ninxi*, to snow; *angō, anxī*, to vex. *Vergo*, to incline, or lie towards, wants both preterite and supine. So *e-, de-, in-vergo*.

HO, JO.

1. *Trāho, traxi, tractum*, to draw. So *als-, at-, circum-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, per-, pro-, re-, sub-trāho*.

Veho, vexi, vectum, to carry. So *a-, ad-, circum-, con-, di-, e-, in-, per-, præ-, præter-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, transf-vēho*.

2. *Mejo, or mingo, minxi, mictum*, to make water. So *immejo*.

LO.

1. *Cōlo, cōlui, cultum*, to adorn, to inhabit, to honour, to till. So *ac-, circum-, ex-, in-, per-, præ-, re-cōlo*: and likewise *occūlo, occului, occultum*, to hide.

Consūlo, consului, consultum, to advise or consult.

Alō, ālui, alitum, or contracted *altum*, to nourish.

Mōlo, molui, molitum, to grind. So *com-, e-, per-mōlo*. The compounds of *cello*, which itself is not in use, want the supine; as, *ante-, ex-, præ-cello, -cellui*, to excel. *Per-cello*, to strike, to astonish, has *percūli, percūsum*.

Pello,

Pello, pēpūli, pūsum, to thrust. So ap-, af-, com-, de-, dis-, ex-, im-, per-, pro-, re-pello; appūli, appūsum, &c.

Fallo, fēfelli, falsum, to deceive. But rēfello, refelli, to confute, wants the supine.

3. *Vello, velli, or vūsi, vūsum, to pull or pinch. So a-, con-, e-, inter-, prae-, re-vello. But de-, di-, per-vello, have rather velli.*

Sallo, falli, falsum, to salt. Psallo, psalli, — to play on a musical instrument, wants the supine.

Tollo, to lift up, to take away, in a manner peculiar to itself, makes sustūli, and sublatum; Extollo, extūli, elātum; but attollo, to take up, has neither preterite nor supine.

MO has ui, itum; as,

Gēmo, gēmui, gēmītum, to groan. So ad-, or ag-, circum-, con-, in-, re-gēmo.

Frēmo, fremui, fremītum, to rage or roar, to make a great noise. So af-, circum-, con-, in-, per-frēmo.

Vōmo, ēvōmo, -ui, -itum, to vomit or spew, to cast up.

Exc. 1. *Dēmo, dempsi, demptum, to take away.*

Prōmo, prompsi, promptum, to bring out. So de-, ex-prōmo.

Sūmo, sumpsi, sumptum, to take. So ab-, af-, con-, de-, in-, prae-, re-, tran-sūmo.

Cōmo, compsi, comptum, to deck or dress.

These verbs are also used without the *p.*; as *dempsi, demtum; sumpsi, sumtum, &c.*

Exc. 2. *Ēmo, ēmi, emptum, or emtum to buy. So ad-, dir-, ex-, inter-, per-, red-īmo and co-ēmo, -emi, -emptum or -emtum.*

Prēmo, pressi, pressum, to press. So ap-, com-, de-, ex-, im-, op-, per-, re-, sup-prīmo.

Trēmo, trēmui, to tremble, to quake for fear, wants the supine. So at-, circum-, con-, in-trēmo.

NO.

1. *Pōno, pōsui, pōsitum, to put or place. So ap-, ante-, circum-, com-, de-, dis-, ex-, im-, inter-, ob-, post-, prae-, pro-, re-, se-, sup-, super-, superim-, trans-pōno.*

Gigno, gēnui, gēnītum, to beget. So con-, e-, in-, per-, pro-, re-gigno.

Cāno, cēcini, cantum, to sing. But the compounds have inui and centum; as, accīno, accīnui, accentum, to sing

in concert. So *con-*, *in-*, *præ-*, *suc-cīno*; *oc-cīno*, and *oc-cāno*; *re-cīno* and *re-cāno*. But *occanui*, *recanui*, are not in use.

Temno, to despise, wants both preterite and supine; but its compound *Contemno*, to despise, to scorn, has *contempsī*, *contemptum*; or without the *p*, *contemsi*, *contemtum*.

2. *Sperno*, *sprēvi*, *sprētum*, to disdain or slight. So *desperno*.

Sterno, *strāvi*, *strātum*, to lay flat, to strow. So *ad-*, *con-*, *in-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *sub-sterno*.

Sīno, *sīvi*, or *sii*, *sītum* to permit. So *desīno*, *desīvi*, oftener *desii*, *desītum*, to leave off.

Līno, *līvi*, or *lēvi*, *lītum*, to anoint or daub. So *al-*, *circum-*, *col-*, *de-*, *il-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *subter-*, *super-*, *superil-līno*.

Cerno, *crēvi*, seldom *crētum*, to see; to decree, to enter upon an inheritance. So *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *se-cerno*.

PO, QUO.

Verbs in *po* have *psi* and *ptum*; as, *Carpo*, *carpsi*, *carptum*, to pluck or pull, to crop, to blame.—So *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *præ-cerpo*, *-cerpsi*, *-cerptum*.

Clēpo, *-psi*, *-ptum*, to steal.

Scalpo, to scratch or engrave. So

Rēpo, to creep: *Ad-*, *v-*, *ar-*, *cor-*, *circum-*, *ex-scalpo*.

de-, *di-*, *e-*, *ir-*, *intro-*, *ob-*, *Sculpo*, to grave or carve. So *ex-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *sub-rēpo*, *-psi*, *in-sculpo*.

-ptum.

Serpo, to creep as a serpent.

Exc. 1. *Strēpo*, *strēpui*, *strēpitum*, to make a noise. So *ad-*, *circum-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *per-strēpo*.

Exc. 2. *Rumpo*, *rūpi*, *rūptum*, to break. So *ab-*, *cor-*, *di-*, *e-*, *inter-*, *intro-*, *ir-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *pro-rumpo*.

There are only two simple verbs ending in *QUO*, viz.

Cōquo, *coxi*, *coctum*, to boil. So *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *re-cōquo*.

Linguo, *liqui*, —, to leave. The compounds have *līctum*; as, *relinquo*, *reliqui*, *relictum*, to forsake. So *de-*, and *dēre-linguo*.

RO.

1. *Quæro* makes *quæsi*, *quæsitum*, to seek. So *ac-*, *an-*, *con-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *re-quæro*, *-quæsi*, *-quæsitum*.

Tæro, *trāvi*, *trītum*, to wear, to bruise. So *at-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *sub-tæro*.

Verro, *verri*, *versum*, to sweep, brush, or make clean. So *ā-*, *con-*, *dē-*, *ē-*, *præ-*, *rē-verro*.

Uro, uffi, ūstum, to burn. So *ad-, amb-, comb-, de-, ex-, in-, p̄r-, sub-ūro.*

Gero, gessi, gēstum, to carry. So *ag-, con-, dī-, in-, prō-, rē-, sug-gero.*

2. *Curro, cūcurri, cursum, to run.* So *ac-, con-, dē-, dis-, ex-, in-, ōc-, per-, prae-, prō-curro,* which sometimes double the first syllable, and sometimes not; as, *ac-curri,* or *accūcurri,* &c. *Circum-, rē-, suc-, trans-curro,* hardly ever redouble the first syllable.

3. *Sero, sēvi, sātum, to sow.* The compounds which signify *planting* or *sowing*, have *sēvi, sītum*; as, *consēro consēvi, consītum,* to plant together. So *as-, circum-, dē-, dis-, in-, inter-, ob-, pro-, rē-, sub-, tran-sēro.*

Sero, — to knit, had anciently *sēruī, sertum*, which its compounds still retain; as, *assēro, assēruī, assertum,* to claim. So *con-, circum-, dē-, dis-, ēdis-, ex-, in-, inter-sēro.*

Furo, — to be mad, wants both preterite and supine.

SO has *sīvi, sītum*; as,

Arcesso, arcessīvi, arcessītum, to call or send for. So *cā-presso, to take; facesso, to do, to go away; laceesso, to provoke.*

Exc. 1. *Vīso, vīsi, —* to go to see, to visit. So *in-, rē vīso. Incesso, incessi, —* to attack, to seize.

Exc. 2. *Depso, depsi, depsum, to knead.* So *con-, per-depso.*

Pīso, pīsi, or pīsi, pīsum, pīstum, or pīscītum, to bake.

TO.

1. *Flecto, has flexi, flexum, to bow.* So *circum-, de-, in-, rē-, ritrō-flecto.*

Plecto, plexi, and plexui, plexum, to plait. So *implecto.*

Necto, nexi, and nexui, nexum, to tie or knit. So *ad-, vel an-, con-, circum-, in-, sub-necto.*

Pecto, pexi, and pexui, pexum, to dress or comb. So *de-, ex-, re-pecto.*

2. *Meto, messui, messum, to reap, mow, or cut down.* So *de-, e-, prae-meto.*

3. *Peto, pētīvi, pētītum, to seek, to pursue.* So *ap-, com-, ex-, in-, op-, re-, sup-peto.*

Mitto, mīsi, missum, to send. So *a-, ad-, com-, circum-, dē-,*

dē-, dī-, ē-, im-, inter-, intro-, ō-, per-, prae-, prater-, prō-, rē-, sub-, super-, trans-mitto.

Verto, verti, versum, to turn. So *a-, ad-, animad-, ante-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, prae-, prater-, re-, sub-, trans-vertō.*

Sterto, stertui, — to snore. So *de-ster-to.*

4. *Sisto*, an active verb, to stop, has *steti, statum* : but *sisto*, a neuter verb, to stand still, has *steti, statum*, like *sto*. The compounds have *steti*, and *statum* : as, *assistō, assisti, astitum*, to stand by. So *ab-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, re-, sub-sisto*. But the compounds are seldom used in the supine.

VO, XO.

There are three verbs in *vo*, which are thus conjugated :

1. *Vivo, vixi, victum*, to live. So *ad-, cōn-, per-, prae-, re-, super-vivo*.

Solvo, solvi, solvūtum, to loose. So *absolvo*, to acquit, *dis-, ex-, per-, re-solvo*.

Volvo, volvi, volūtum, to roll. So *ad-, circum-, con-, dē-, ē-, in-, ob-, per-, prō-, rē-, sub-volvo*.

2. *Texo*, to weave, (the only verb of this conjugation ending in *xo*), has *texui, textum*. So *at-, circum-, con-, de-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, prae-, pro-, re-, sub-texo*.

Fourth Conjugation.

(Verbs of the fourth conjugation make the preterite in *ivi*, and the supine in *itum* ;) as,

Mūnio, mūnivi, mūnītum, to fortify. So,

Balbūtio, to stammer,
to lisp, to stutter.

Bullio, to boil or bubble.

Conodio, to season.

Crōcio, to croak.

Custōdio, to keep.

Dormio, to sleep.

Effūtio, to babble or
blab out.

Erūdīo, to instruct.

Expēdio, to disentangle,
to free.

Gannio, to yelp, or
whine.

Garrio, to prate.

Glūtio, to swallow.

Grunnio, to grunt.

Hinnio, to neigh.

Impēdio, to entangle,
to hinder.

Insāno, to be mad.

Irrētio, to ensnare.

Lascīvīo, to be wanton.

Lēnio, to ease or miti-
gate.

Līgūrio, to eat deli-
ciously, to slobber up.

Lippio, to be dim-
sighted.

Mollīo, to soften.

Mūgio, to bellop.

Mūtio, to mutter.

Nutrio, to nourish.

Obēdio, to obey.

Pāvīo, to beat.

Pīpio, to peep like a
chicken.

Pōlio, to polish.

Prūrio, to itch, to tickle.

Pūnio, to punish.

Rēdīmīo, to bind.

Rūgio, to roar like a
lion.

Sēvio, to rage.

Sāgio.

Sāgio, præsāgio, to	Servio, to serve.	Tinnio, to tinkle,
guess, to foresee.	Sitio, to thirst.	Tussio, to cough.
Sarrio, to weed, to rake.	Sōpio, to lull asleep.	Vāgio, to cry or squeal
Scio, to know.	Stābilio, to establish.	as a child.
Nescio, not to know.	Sūperbio, to be proud.	Vestio, to clothe.
Scātūrio, to gush out.	Suffio, to perfume.	

Exc. 1. Singultio, singultivi, singultum, to sob.

Sēpeliō, sēpeliui, sepultum, to bury.

Vēnio, vēni, ventum, to come. So ad-, ante-, circum-, con-, contra-, de-, e-, in-, inter-, intro-, ob-, per-, post-, præ-, re-, sub-, super-vēnio.

Vēneo, vēnii, ——— to be sold.

Sālio, sāluī, and sālii, saltum, to leap. The compounds have commonly silui, sometimes filii, or silivi, and sultum; as, transilio, transilui, transilii, and transilivi, transfultum, to leap over. So ab-, af-, circum-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, re-, sub-, super-silio.

Exc. 2. Amicio, has amīcui, amictum, seldom amixi, to cover or clothe.

Vincio, vixi, vincum, to tie. So circum-, de-, e-, re-vincio.

Sancio, sanxi, sanctum; and sancivi, sancitum, to establish or ratify.

Exc. 3. Cambio, campsi, campsum, to change money.

Sēpio, sepsti, septum, to hedge or inclose. So circum-, dis-, inter-, ob-, præ-sēpio.

Haurio, hausi, haustum, rarely haufum, to draw out, to empty, to drink. So de-, ex-haurio.

Sentio, sensi, sensum, to feel, to perceive, to think. So af-, con-, dis-, per-, præ-, sub-sentio.

Raucio, rausti, rausum, to be hoarse.

Exc. 4. Sarcio, sarsti, sartum, to mend or repair. So ex-, re-sarcio.

Farcio, farsti, fartum, to cram. So con-fercio, ef-fercio, or ef-farcio; in-fercio, or in-farcio; re-fercio.

Fulcio, fulsti, fultum, to prop or uphold. So con-, ef-, in-, per-, suf-fulcio.

Exc. 5. The compounds of pārīo, have pēruī, pērtum; as, apērio, apēruī, apertum, to open. So opērio, to shut, to cover. But compērio, has comperi, compertum, to know a thing for certain. Rēpērio, rēpēri, repertum, to find.

Exc. 6. The following verbs want the supine. *Cacutio, cacutivi*, to be dim-sighted. *Gestio, gestivi*, to shew one's joy by the gesture of his body. *Glacio, glaciui*, to cluck or keckle as a hen. *Dementio, dementivi*, to be mad. *Ineptio, ineptivi*, to play the fool. *Prorsilio, prosilui*, to leap forth. *Ferocio, feruciui*, to be fierce.

Ferio, to strike, wants both preterite and supine. So *referio*, to strike again.

(DEPONENT and COMMON VERBS.

(A deponent verb is that which, under a passive form, has an active or neuter signification; as, *Lōquor*, I speak; *mōrior*, I die.)

(A common verb, under a passive form, has either an active or passive signification; as, *Crīminor*, I accuse; or I am accused.)

(Most deponent verbs of old were the same with common verbs. They are called *Deponent*, because they have laid aside the passive sense.)

(Deponent and common verbs form the participle perfect in the same manner as if they had the active voice; thus, *Lator, latatus, latari*, to rejoice; *vēreor, veritus, vēreri*, to fear; *fungor, functus, fungi*, to discharge an office; *pōtior, pōtitus, pōtiri*, to enjoy, to be master of.)

The learner should be taught to go through all the parts of deponent and common verbs, by proper examples in the several conjugations; thus, *lator*, of the first conjugation, like *amor* :

Indicative Mode.

Pres. *Lator*, I rejoice; *latāris, vel -āre*, thou rejoicest, &c.

Imp. *Latabar*, I rejoiced, or did rejoice; *latabaris*, &c.

Perf. *Latatus sum vel fui*,* I have rejoiced, &c.

Plu-perf. *Latatus eram vel fueram*, I had rejoiced, &c.

Fut. *Labor*, I shall or will rejoice; *latabēris, or -abēre*, &c.

Lataturus sum, I am about to rejoice, or I am to rejoice, &c.

Subjunctive.

Pres. *Latet*, I may rejoice; *latēris, or -ēre*, &c.

Imp. *Latarer*, I might rejoice; *latārēris, or -rēre*, &c.

Perf. *Latatus sim vel fuērim*, I may have rejoiced, &c.

Plu-perf. *Latatus essem vel fuissē*, I might have rejoiced, &c.

Fut. *Latatus fuero*, I shall have rejoiced, &c.

Imperative.

* *Fui, fueram*, &c. are seldom joined to the participles of deponent verbs; and not so often to those of passive verbs as *sum, eram*, &c.

Imperative.
Pres. *Latare, vel -ātor*, rejoice thou; *latator*, let him rejoice, &c.

Infinitive.

Pres. *Latari*, to rejoice.

Perf. *Latatus esse vel fuisse*, to have rejoiced.

Fut. *Lataturus esse*, to be about to rejoice.

Lataturus fuisse, to have been about to rejoice.

Participles.

Pres. *Latans*, rejoicing.

Perf. *Latatus*, having rejoiced.

Fut. *Lataturus*, about to rejoice.

Latandus, to be rejoiced at.

In like manner conjugate, in the First Conjugation,

<i>Abominor</i> , to abhor.	<i>Commentor</i> , to meditate on, or write what one is to say.	<i>Inficior</i> , to deny.
<i>Adulor</i> , to flatter.	<i>Concionor</i> , to harangue.	<i>Insector</i> , to pursue, to inveigh against.
<i>Amulor</i> , to vie with, to envy.	<i>Confictor</i> , to struggle.	<i>Insidior</i> , to lie in wait.
<i>Altercor</i> , to dispute, to make a repartee.	<i>Conor</i> , to endeavour.	<i>Interpretor</i> , to explain.
<i>Apricor</i> , to bask in the sun.	<i>Conspicor</i> , to spy, to see.	<i>Jaculor</i> , to dart.
<i>Arbitror</i> , to think.	<i>Contemplor</i> , to view.	<i>Jocor</i> , to jest.
<i>Aspernor</i> , to despise.	<i>Convivor</i> , to feast.	<i>Lamentor</i> , to bewail.
<i>Aversor</i> , to dislike.	<i>Cornicor</i> , to chatter like a crow.	<i>Lucror</i> , to gain.
<i>Auctionor</i> , to sell by auction.	<i>Criminor</i> , to blame.	<i>Luctor</i> , to wrestle.
<i>Aucupor</i> , & -o, to hunt after.	<i>Cunctor</i> , to delay.	<i>Machinor</i> , to contrive.
<i>Auguror</i> , & -o, to forebode, or presage by augury.	<i>Detestor</i> , to abhor.	<i>Medicor</i> , to cure.
<i>Auspicor</i> , to take an omen, to begin.	<i>Domitor</i> , to rule.	<i>Meditor</i> , to muse or ponder.
<i>Auxilior</i> , to assist.	<i>Epulor</i> , to feast.	<i>Mercor</i> , to purchase.
<i>Bacchor</i> , to rage, to revel, to riot.	<i>Exsecror</i> , to curse.	<i>Metor</i> , to measure.
<i>Calumnior</i> , to accuse falsely.	<i>Famulor</i> , to serve.	<i>Minor</i> , to threaten.
<i>Cavillor</i> , to scoff.	<i>Ferior</i> , to keep holy-day.	<i>Miror</i> , to wonder.
<i>Cauponor</i> , to buckster, to retail.	<i>Frustror</i> , to disappoint.	<i>Miseror</i> , to pity.
<i>Causor</i> , to plead in excuse, to blame.	<i>Furor</i> , to steal.	<i>Modēror</i> , to rule.
<i>Circulor</i> , to meet in companies, to stroll, to talk.	<i>Glorior</i> , to boast.	<i>Modulor</i> , to play a tune.
<i>Comessor</i> , to revel.	<i>Gratulor</i> , to rejoice, to wish one joy.	<i>Morigēror</i> , to humour.
<i>Comitor</i> , to accompany.	<i>Gravor</i> , to grudge.	<i>Moror</i> , to delay.
	<i>Hariolor</i> , to conjecture.	<i>Muneror</i> , to present.
	<i>Helluo</i> , to guttle or gormandize, to waste.	<i>Mutuor</i> , to borrow.
	<i>Hortor</i> , to encourage.	<i>Nugor</i> , to trifle.
	<i>Hallucinor</i> , to speak at random, to err.	<i>Obtestor</i> , to beseech.
	<i>Imāginor</i> , to conceive.	<i>Odoror</i> , to smell.
	<i>Imitor</i> , to imitate.	<i>Operor</i> , to work.
	<i>Indignor</i> , to disdain.	<i>Opinor</i> , to think.
		<i>Opitulor</i> , to help.
		<i>Osculor</i> , to kiss.
		<i>Otiar</i> , to be at leisure.
		<i>Pālor</i> , to stroll or straggle.

Palpor,

Palpor, or -o, to stroke or soothe.	Præcor, to pray.	Stomāchor, to be angry.
Patrōcinor, to patro- nise.	Depræcor, to entreat, to pray against.	Salvior, to kiss.
Percontor, to inquire.	Præcor, to ask, to woo.	Suffragor, to vote for one, to favour.
Peregrinor, to go a- broad.	Rēcor, to remember.	Suspīcor, to suspect.
Périlitor, to be in danger.	Refrāgor, to be against.	Tergiverfor, to boggle, to put off.
Pignëror, to pledge.	Rīnor, to search.	Testor, to witness.
Piscor, to fish.	Rīxor, to field or brawl.	Tutor, to defend.
Popūlor, & -o, to lay waste.	Rustīcor, to dwell in the country.	Vādor, to give bail, to fortē to give bail.
Prædor, to plunder.	Scrūtor, to search.	Vāgor, to wander.
Prælior, to fight.	Solōr, to comfort.	Vaticinor, to prophesy.
Præstōlor, to wait for.	Spātor, to walk abroad.	Vēlitor, to skirmish.
Prævāricor, to go cross- ed, to scoff or pre- varicate.	Spēculor, to view, to spy.	Vēnëror, to worship.
	Stipūlor, to stipulate or agree.	Vēnor, to hunt.
		Verfor, to be employed.
		Vociferor, to bawl.

In the Second Conjugation,

Mēreor, mēritus, to deserve.	Pollicëor, pollicitus, to promise.
Tutor, tuitus, or tatus, to defend.	Liceor, licitus, to bid at an auction.

In the Third Conjugation,

Amplector, amplexus; and complector, complexus, to embrace.
Revertor, reversus, to return.

In the Fourth Conjugation,

Blandior, to soothe, to flatter.	Partior, to divide.
Mentior, to lie.	Sortior, to draw or cast lots.
Molior, to attempt something difficult.	Largior, to give liberally.
Part. perf. Elanditus, mentitus, molitus, partitus, sortitus, largitus.	

There are no exceptions in the First Conjugation.

EXCEPTIONS in the Second Conjugation.

Rëor, rätus, to think.

Misëreor, misertus, or not contracted miseritus, to pity.

Fäteor, fassus, to confess. The compounds of fäteor have fessus; as, pröfiteor, professus, to profess. So confiteor, to confess, to own or acknowledge.

EXCEPTIONS in the Third Conjugation.

Lābor, lapsus, to slide. So al-, col-, de-, di-, e-, il-, inter-, per-, præter-, pro-, re-, sub-, subter-, super-, trans-lābor.

Ulciscor, ultus, to revenge.

Utor, ūsus, to use. So ab-, de-utor.

Lōquor,

Lōquor, lōquūtus, or locūtus, to speak. So *al-, col-, circum-, e-, inter-, ob-, prae-, pro-lōquor.*

Sēquor, sēquūtus, or sēsūtus, to follow. So *af-, con-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-, sub-sēquor.*

Quēror, quēstus, to complain. So *con-, inter-, prae-quēror.*

Nitor, nīsus, or nixus, to endeavour, to lean upon. So *ad- vel an-, con-, e-, in-, ob-, re-, sub-nitor* : but the compounds have oftener *nixus*.

Pāciscor, pāctus, to bargain. So *de-peciscor.*

Grādior, grāssus, to go. So *ag-, ante-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, intro-, prae-, prater-, pro-, re-, retro-, sug-, super-, trans-gredior.*

Prōficiscor, profectus, to go a journey.

Nanciscor, nactus, to get.

Pātor, passus, to suffer. So *per-pētior.*

Apiscor, aptus, to get. So *adipiscor, adeptus, and indipiscor, indeptus.*

Commīniscor, commentus, to devise or invent.

Fruor, frūtus, or fructus, to enjoy. So *per-fruor.*

Oblīvīscor, oblītus, to forget.

Expergīscor, experrectus, to awake.

Mōrior, mortuus, to die. So *com-, de-, e-, in-, inter-, prae-mōrior.*

Nāscor, nātus, to be born. So *ad-, circum-, de-, e-, in-, inter-, re-, sub-nāscor.*

Ōrior, ortus, ōrīri, to rise. So *ab-, ad-, eo-, ex-, ob-, sub-ōrior.*

The three last form the future participle in *itūrus* ; thus *mōritūrus, nāscitūrus, ōritūrus.*

EXCEPTIONS in the Fourth Conjugation.

Mētor, mēsus, to measure. So *ad-, com-, di-, e-, prae-, re-mētor.*

Ordior, orsus, to begin. So *ex-, red-ordior.*

Expērior, expertus, to try.

Oppērior, oppertus, to wait or tarry for one.

The following verbs want the participle perfect :

Vēcor, vēsci, to feed. *Mēdeor, mederi, to heal.*

Līquor, liqui, to melt or be dissolved. *Rēmīniscor, reminisci, to remember.*

Irāscor, irāsci, to be angry.

Rīngor,

Ringor, ringi, to grin like a dog.

Prævertor, præverti, to get before,
to outrun.

Diffiteor, diffiteri, to deny.

Divertor, diverti, to turn aside, to
take lodging.

Dēfētiscor, defētisci, to be weary,
or faint.

The verbs which do not fall under any of the foregoing rules are called *Irregular*.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

The irregular verbs are commonly reckoned eight; *sum, eo, quæ, volo, nolo, mulo, fero, and fio*, with their compounds.

But properly there are only six; *nolo* and *mulo* being compounds of *volo*.

SUM has already been conjugated. After the same manner are formed its compounds, *ad-, ab-, de-, inter-, præ-, ob-, sub-, super-sum*, and *insum*, which wants the preterite; thus, *adsum, adfui, adfui*; &c.

PROSUM, to do good, has a *d* where *sum* begins with *e*; as, Ind. Pr. *Prō-sum, prōd-es, prōd-est; prō-sūmus*, &c.

Im. *Prōd-eram, prōd-eras, prōd-erat; prōd-eramus*, &c.

Sub. Im. *Prōd-essēm, prōd-essēs, prōd-esset; prōd-essēmus*, &c.

Imperat. *Prōd-esto, prōd-este.* Infinit. Pres. *Prōd-esse.*

In the other parts it is like *sum*: *Pro-sim, -fis, &c. Pro-fui, -fueram, &c.*

POSSUM is compounded of *pōtis*, able, and *sum*; and is thus conjugated:

Pōssum, pōtui, posse, To be able.

Indicative Mode.

Pr. *Pōssum, pōtes, pōtest; pōssūmus, pōtestis, possunt.*

Im. *Pot-eram, -eras, -erat; -eramus, -eratis, -erant.*

Per. *Pot-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt.*

-uere.

Plu. *Pot-uēram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.*

Fut. *Pot-ēro, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erunt.*

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. *Pos-sim, -sis, -sit; -sīmus, -sīs, -sint.*

Im. *Pos-sēm, -ses, -set; -sēm, -setis, -sent.*

Per. *Pot-uērim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.*

Plu. *Pot-uissēm, -uisses, -uisset; -uissēm, -uissetis, -uissent.*

Fut. *Pot-uēro, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.*

Infinitive.

Pres. Poss. Per. *Pōtuisse.*

The rest wanting.

EO, īvi, itum, ire, To go.

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Eo, is, it; īmus, itis, eunt.

Imp. Ibam, ības, ibat; ibamus, ibatis, ibant.

Per. Ivi, ivisti, ivit; ivimus, ivistis, iverunt, iverē.

Plu. Iveram, iveras, iverat; iveramus, iveratis, iverant.

Fut. Ibo, ibis, ibit; ibimus, ibitis, ibunt.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Eam, eas, eat; eamus, eatis, eant.

Im. Irem, īres, īret; iremus, iretis, irent.

Per. Iverim, iveris, iverit; iverimus, iveritis, iverint.

Plu. Ivissē, ivissēs, ivisset; ivissemus, ivissetis, ivissent.

Fut. Ivero, iveris, iverit; iverimus, iveritis, iverint.

Imperative.

Pres. { I, ito; } ite, eunto.

{ Ito, itote,

Infinitive.

Pres. Ire.

Perf. Ivisse.

Fut. Esse iturus, a, um.

Fuisse iturus.

Participles.

Pr. Iens, Gen. euntis.

Fut. Iturus, -a, -um.

Gerunds.

Eundum.

Eundi.

Eundo, &c. /

Supines.

1. Itum.

2. Itu. /

The compounds of *eo* are conjugated after the same manner; *ad-*, *ab-*, *ex-*, *ob-*, *red-*, *sub-*, *p̄er-*, *cō-*, *in-*, *p̄a-*, *ante-*, *p̄od-eo*: only in the perfect and the tenses formed from it, they are usually contracted; thus, *Adeo*, *adii*, seldom *adivi*, *aditum*, *adire*, to go to; perf. *Adii*, *adiisti* or *adisti*, &c. *adiēram*, *adiērim*, &c. So likewise *VENEO*, *venii*, — to be sold, (compounded of *venum* and *eo*.) But *AMBIO*, *īvi*, *itum*, *ire*, to surround, is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation.

Eo, like other neuter verbs, is often rendered in English under a passive form: thus, *it*, he is going; *ivit*, he is gone; *iverat*, he was gone; *iverit*, he may be gone, or shall be gone. So *venit*, he is coming; *venit*, he is come; *venērat*, he was come; &c. In the passive voice these verbs for the most part are only used impersonally; as, *itur ab illo*, he is going; *ventum est ab illis*, they are come. We find some of the compounds of *eo*, however, used personally: as, *p̄ricula adēntur*, are undergone. Cic. *Libri sibi illi aditi sunt*, were looked into. Liv. *Flumen pedibus transiri pot̄st*, &c. *Inimicitia subeantur*. Cic.

QUEO, I can, and *NEQUEO*, I cannot, are conjugated the same way as *eo*; only they want the imperative and the gerunds; and the participles are seldom used.

VOLO,

(VOLO, volui, velle, *To will, or to be willing.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Völ-o, vis, vult; volūmus, vultis, volunt.
Im. Vol-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamūs, -ebatis, -ebant.
Per. Vol-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, -uere.
Pl. Vol-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.
Fu. Vol-am, -es, -et; -emus, -etis, -ent.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Velim, velis, velit; velīmus, velitis, velint.
Im. Vellem, velles, vellet; vellēmus, velletis, vellent.
Per. Vol-uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.
Plu. Vol-uissēm, -uisses, -uisset; -uissēmūs, -uissetis, -uissent.
Fut. Vol-uerō, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

Infinitive.

Pres. Velle.

Perf. Voluisse.

Participle.

Pres. Volens.

The rest not used.

(NOLO, nolui, nolle, *To be unwilling.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Nōlo, non-vis, non-vult; nolūmus, non-vultis, nolunt.
Im. Nol-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamūs, -ebatis, -ebant.
Per. Nol-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, -uere.
Plu. Nol-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.
Fut. Nōlam, noles, nolet; nolemus, noletis, nolent.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Nolim, nolis, nolit; nolīmus, nolitis, nolint.
Im. Nōllem, nolles, nollet; nollemūs, nolletis, nolent.
Per. Nol-uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.
Plu. Nol-uissēm, -uisses, -uisset; uissēmūs, -uissetis, -uissent.
Fut. Nol-uerō, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

Imperative.

Infinitive.

Participle.

2. Sing. 2. Plur.

Pr. { Noli, vel } nolite, vel { *Pr.* Nolle. *Pr.* Nolens.
 { Nolito; } nolitote. *Per.* Noluisse. *The rest wanting.*

MALO

(MALO, malui, malle, *To be more willing.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Māl-o, mavis, mavult; malūmus, mavultis, malunt.

Im. Mal-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.

Per. Mal-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt.
-uere.

Plu. Mal-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.

Fut. Mal-am, -es, -et: &c. *This is scarcely in use.*

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Malim, malis, malit; malīmus, malitis, malint.

Im. Mallem, malles, mallet; mallemus, malletis, mallent.

Per. Mal-uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

Plu. Mal-uissē, -uisses, -uisset; -uissēmus, -uissetis, -uissent.

Fut. Mal-uero, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

Infinitive Mode.

Pres. Malle. *Perf.* Maluisse. *The rest not used.*

FERO, tūli, lātum, ferre, *To carry, to bring or suffer.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Fēro, fers, fert; ferīmus, fertis, ferunt.

Im. Fer-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.

Per. Tuli, tulisti, tulit; tulimus, tulistis, tulerunt, -ere

Plu. Tul-eram, -eras, -erat; -eramus, -eratis, -erant.

Fut. Feram, feres, feret; feremus, feretis, ferent.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Feram, feras, ferat; feramus, feratis, ferant.

Im. Ferrem, ferres, ferret; ferremus, ferretis, ferrent.

Per. Tul-erim, -eris, erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.

Plu. Tul-issē, -isses, -isset; -issēmus, -issetis, -issent.

Fut. Tul-ero, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.

Imperative.

Infinitive.

Pr. { Fer, fert: { ferte, ferunto.
{ Ferto, fertote,

Pr. Ferre.

Per. Tulisse.

Fut. Esse laturus, a, um.

Fuisse laturus, a, um.

Participles.

Gerunds.

Supines.

Pres. Fērens,

Ferendum.

1. Lātum.

Fut. Laturus, -a, -um.

Ferendi.

2. Latu.

Ferendo, &c.

PASSIVE VOICE.

(Fĕror, lātus, ferri, *To be brought.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Fĕror, ferris, fertur; ferimur, ferimini, feruntur.
vel ferre,

Im. Fer-ebar, -ebaris, -batur; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.
vel -ebare,

Perf. Latus sum, &c. latus fui, &c.

Plu. Latus eram, &c. latus fueram, &c.

Fut. Ferar, ferēris, feretur; feremur, feremini, ferentur.
vel ferēre,

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Ferar, feraris, feratur; feramur, feramini, ferantur.
vel ferare,

Im. Ferrer, fereris, ferretur; ferremur, ferremini, ferrentur.
vel ferrere,

Per. Latus sim, &c. latus fuerim, &c.

Plu. Latus essem, &c. latus fuissim, &c.

Fut. Latus fuero, &c.

Imperative Mode.

Pres. Ferre *vel* fertor, fertor; ferimini, feruntor.

*Infinitive.**Participles.*

Pres. Ferri.

Perf. Latus, -a, -um.

Perf. Esse *vel* fuisse latus, -a, -um.

Fut. Ferendus, -a, -um.

Fut. Latum iri.

In like manner are conjugated the compounds of *fĕro*; as, *affĕro*, *attŭli*, *allatum*; *auſĕro*, *abſtuli*, *ablatum*; *diſĕro*, *diſtuli*, *dilatam*; *conſĕro*, *contuli*, *collatum*; *inſĕro*, *intuli*, *illatum*; *offĕro*, *obtuli*, *oblatum*; *effĕro*, *extuli*, *clatum*. So *circŭ-*, *per-*, *trans-*, *de-*, *pro-*, *ante-*, *præ-* *fĕro*. In some writers we find *auſĕro*, *attŭli*, *allatum*; *conlatum*, *inlatum*; *obſĕro*, &c. for *affĕro*, &c.

Obs. 1. Most part of the above verbs are made irregular by contraction. Thus, *nolo* is contracted for *non volo*; *malo*, for *magis volo*; *fero*, *fers*, *fert*, &c. for *feris*, *ferit*, &c. *Feror*, *ferris*, v. *ferre*, *fertur*, for *ferēris*, &c.

Obs. 2. The imperatives of *dico*, *dūco*, and *facio* are contracted in the same manner with *fer*: thus we say, *dic*, *dūc*, *fac*, instead of *dice*, *dūce*, *face*. But these often occur likewise in the regular form.

(FIO, factus, fiĕri, *To be made or done, to become.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Fĭo, fis, fit; fimus, fĭtis, fiunt.

Im. Fiebam, fiebas, fiebat; fiebamus, fiebatis, fiebant.

Per. Factus sum, &c. factus fui, &c.

Plu. Factus eram, &c. factus fueram, &c.

Fut. Fiam, fies, fiet; fĭmĭtur, fĕtis, fĕnt.

Subjunctive

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Fiam, fias, fiat; fiamus, fiatis, fiant.
Im. Fiërem, fieres, fieret; fieremus, fieretis, fierent.
Per. Factus sim, &c. factus fuerim, &c.
Pl. Factus essem, &c. factus fuissëm, &c.
Fut. Factus fuero, &c.

Imperative.

Infinitive.

Pr. { Fi, fito : { fite, fiunto. *Pr.* Fieri.
 { Fito, fitote, { fitote, fiunto. *Per.* Esse vel fuisse factus, a, um.
Fut. Factum iri.

Participles.

Supine.

Per. Factus, -a, -um.
Fut. Faciendus, -a, -um.

Factu. /

The compounds of *făcio* which retain *a*, have also *fi* in the passive, and *fac* in the imperative active; as, *calefacio*, to warm, *calefio*, *calefac*: but those which change *a* into *i*, form the passive regularly, and have *fice* in the imperative; as, *conficio*, *confice*; *conficior*, *confectus*, *confici*. We find, however, *confit*, it is done, and *confiteri*; *desit*, it is wanting; *insit*, he begins.

To irregular verbs may properly be subjoined what are commonly called NEUTER PASSIVE Verbs, which, like *fi*, form the preterite tenses according to the passive voice, and the rest in the active. These are, *săleo*, *sălitas*, *sălere*, to use; *audéo*, *ausus*, *audere*, to dare; *gaudeo*, *gavisus*, *gaudere*, to rejoice; *fido*, *fusus*, *fidere*, to trust: So *confido*, to trust; and *diffido*, to distrust; which also have *confidi*, and *diffidi*. Some add *maereo*, *maesus*, *maerere*, to be sad; but *maesus* is generally reckoned an adjective. We likewise say *juratus sum* and *cănatus sum*, for *juravi* and *cănavi*, but these may also be taken in a passive sense.

To these may be referred verbs, wholly active in their termination, and passive in their signification; as, *văpulo*, -avi, -atum, to be beaten or whipped; *vendo*, to be sold; *exulo*, to be banished, &c.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Verbs are called *Defective*, which are not used in certain tenses, numbers, and persons. /

These three, *odi*, *căpi*, and *mămini*, are only used in the preterite tenses; and therefore are called *Preteritive Verbs*; though they have sometimes likewise a present signification: thus, /

Odi, I hate, or have hated, *oderam*, *oderim*, *odissem*, *odero*, *odisse*. Participles, *osus*, *osurus*: *exosus*, *perosus*. /

Căpi, I begin or have begun, *căperam*, -erim, -issem, -ero, -isse. Supine, *căptu*. Participles, *căptus*, *căpturus*. /

Mămini,

Mēmīni, I remember, or have remembered, *mēmīneram*, -*erim*, -*issem*, -*ero*, -*isſe* : Imperative, *memento*, *mementote*.)

Instead of *odi*, we sometimes ſay, *oſus ſum* ; and always *excuſus*, *percuſus ſum*, and not *exodi*, *perodi*. We ſay, *opus cæpit fieri*, or *cæptum eſt*.

To theſe ſome add *nōvi*, becauſe it frequently has the ſignification of the preſent. *I know*, as well as, *I have known*, though it comes from *neſco*, which is complete.

Fūro, to be mad, *dor*, to be given, and *for*, to ſpeak, as alſo, *der* and *fer*, are not uſed in the firſt perſon ſingular ; thus, we ſay, *daris*, *datur* ; but never *dor*.)

Of verbs which want many of their chief parts, the following moſt frequently occur : *Aio*, I ſay, *inquam*, I ſay, *forem*, I ſhould be ; *auſim*, contracted for *auſus ſim*, I dare ; *faxim*, I'll ſee to it, or I will do it ; *ave* and *ſalve*, ſave you, hail, good-morrow ; *cedo*, tell thou, or give me ; *quæſo*, I pray.)

Ind. Pr.	Aio,	ais,	ait :	_____	_____	aiunt.
Im.	Aiebam,	-ebas,	-ebat :	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
Per.	_____	aifti,	_____	_____	_____	_____
Sub. Per.	_____	aias,	aiat :	_____	aiatis,	aiant.)

Imperat.	Ai.					Particip. Pref. Aiens.
Ind. Pr.	Inquam,	-quis,	-quit :	-quimus,	-quitis,	-quiunt.
Im.	_____	_____	inquiebat :	_____	_____	inquiebant.
Per.	_____	inquifti,	_____	_____	_____	_____
Fut.	_____	inquies,	inquiet :	_____	_____	_____

Imperat. Inque, inquito. Particip. Pr. Inquiens.

Sub. Im. } Forem, fores, foret : foremus, foretis, forent.
Plu. }

Inf. Fore, to be hereafter, or to be about to be, the ſame with *eſſe futurus*.

Sub. Pr.	Auſim,	auſis,	auſit :	_____	_____	_____
Per.	Faxim,	faxis,	faxit :	_____	_____	faxint.
Fut.	Faxo,	faxis,	faxit :	_____	faxitis,	faxint.

Note. *Faxim* and *faxo* are uſed inſtead of *fecerim* and *fecero*.

Imper. Ave vel aveto ; plur. avēte vel avetote. Inf. avere.
_____ Salve v. ſalvēto ; — ſalvēte v. ſalvetote. — ſalvere.

Indic. Fut. _____ Salvebis.

Imperat. ſecond perſ. ſing. Cedo, plur. cedite.

Indic. Pref. firſt perſ. ſing. Quæſo, plur. quæſumus.)

Moſt of the other Defective verbs are but ſingle words, and rarely to be found, but among the poets ; as, *inſit*, he begins ; *deſit*, it is wanting. Some are compounded of a verb and the conjunction *ſi* ; as, *ſis*, for *ſi vis*, if thou wilt ; *ſultis*, for *ſi vultis* ; *ſodes*, for *ſi audeſ*, equivalent to *quæſo*, I pray ; *capſis*, for *cape ſi vis*.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

A verb is called *Impersonal*, which has only the terminations of the third person singular, but does not admit any *person* or nominative before it.

Impersonal verbs in English, have before them the neuter pronoun *it*, which is not considered as a person; thus, *dēlectat*, it delights; *dēcet*, it becomes; *contingit*, it happens; *ēvenit*, it happens:

	1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
Ind. <i>Pr.</i> Delectat,	Dēcet,	Contingit,	Evēnit,	
<i>Im.</i> Delectabat,	Decebat,	Contingebat,	Eveniebat,	
<i>Per.</i> Delectavit,	Decuit,	Contigit,	Evēnit,	
<i>Plu.</i> Delectaverat,	Decuerat,	Contigerat,	Evenerat,	
<i>Fut.</i> Delectabit.	Decebit.	Continget.	Eveniet.	
Sub. <i>Pr.</i> Dēlectet,	Dēceat,	Contingat,	Ēveniat,	
<i>Im.</i> Dēlectaret,	Decēret,	Contingēret,	Eveniret,	
<i>Per.</i> Delectaverit,	Decuerit,	Contigerit,	Evenerit,	
<i>Plu.</i> Delectavisset,	Decuisset,	Contigisset,	Evenisset,	
<i>Fut.</i> Delectaverit.	Decuerit.	Contigerit.	Evenerit.	
Inf. <i>Pr.</i> Delectāre,	Decēre,	Contingēre,	Evenīre,	
<i>Per.</i> Delectavisse.	Decuisse.	Contigisse.	Evenisse.	

Most Latin verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice, especially Neuter and Intransitive verbs which otherwise have no passive; as, *pugnātur*, *fāvētur*, *curritur*, *vēnītur*; from *pugno*, to fight; *faveo*, to favour; *curro*, to run; *venio*, to come:

Ind. <i>Pr.</i> Pugnātur,	Fāvētur,	Curritur,	Vēnītur,
<i>Im.</i> Pugnabatur,	Favebatur,	Currebatur,	Veniebatur,
<i>Per.</i> Pugnatum est,	Fautum est,	Cursum est,	Ventum est,
<i>Plu.</i> Pugnatum erat,	Fautum erat,	Cursum erat,	Ventum erat,
<i>Fut.</i> Pugnabitur.	Favebitur.	Curretur.	Venietur.
Sub. <i>Pr.</i> Pugnetur,	Faveatur,	Curratur,	Veniatur,
<i>Im.</i> Pugnaretur,	Faveretur,	Curreretur,	Veniretur,
<i>Per.</i> Pugnatum sit,	Fautum sit,	Cursum sit,	Ventum sit,
<i>Plu.</i> Pugnatum esset,	Fautum esset,	Cursum esset,	Ventum esset.
<i>Fut.</i> Pugnatum fuerit.	Fautum fuerit.	Cursum fuerit.	Ventum fuerit.
Inf. <i>Pr.</i> Pugnari,	Faveri,	Curri,	Venīri,
<i>Per.</i> Pugnatum esse,	Fautum esse,	Cursum esse,	Ventum esse,
<i>Fut.</i> Pugnatum iri.	Fautum iri.	Cursum iri.	Ventum iri.

Obs. I. Impersonal verbs are scarcely used in the imperative, but instead of it we take the subjunctive; as, *dēlectet*, let it delight, &c.; nor in the supines, participles, or gerunds, except a few; as, *pugnā-*

tens, -dam, -dus, &c. *Induci ad pudendum et pigendum, Cic.* In the preterite tenses of the passive voice, the participle perfect is always put in the neuter gender.

Obf. 2. Grammarians reckon only ten real impersonal verbs, and all in the second conjugation; *dēcet*, it becomes; *pœnitēt*, it repents; *oportet*, it behoves; *misēret*, it pities; *pīget*, it irketh; *pūdet*, it shameth; *licet*, it is lawful; *libet* or *lūbet*, it pleaseth; *tēdet*, it wearieeth; *liquet*, it appears. Of which the following have a double preterite; *miseret*, *miseruit*, or *miseritum est*; *piget*, *piguit*, or *pigitum est*; *pudet*, *puduit*, or *puditum est*; *licet*, *licuit*, or *licitum est*; *libet*, *libuit*, or *libitum est*; *tēdet*, *tēduit*, *tēsum est*, oftener *pertāsum est*. But many other verbs are used impersonally in all the conjugations:

In the first, *ſūvat*, *ſpēciat*, *vācat*, *ſtat*, *conſtat*, *præſtat*, *reſtat*, &c.

In the ſecond, *Appāret*, *attīnet*, *pertīnet*, *dēbet*, *dōlet*, *nōcet*, *lālet*, *liquet*, *pātet*, *plācet*, *diſplīcet*, *ſēdet*, *ſōlet*, &c.

In the third, *Accīdit*, *incīpit*, *deſīnit*, *ſuffīcit*, &c.

In the fourth, *Convēnit*, *expēdit*, &c.

Alſo Irregular verbs, *Eſt*, *obeſt*, *prōdeſt*, *pōteſt*, *intēreſt*, *ſupēreſt*; *ſit*, *prætērit*, *nequit*, and *nequītur*, *ſubit*, *conſert*, *rēfert*, &c.

Obf. 3. Under impersonal verbs may be comprehended thoſe which expreſs the operations or appearances of nature; as, *Fulgūrat*, *fulmīnat*, *tōnat*, *grandīnat*, *gēlat*, *pluit*, *ningit*, *luceſcit*, *adveſperāſcit*, &c.

Obf. 4. Impersonal verbs are applied to any perſon or number, by putting that which ſtands before other verbs, after the impersonals, in the caſes which they govern; as, *placet mihi*, *tibi*, *illi*, it pleaſes me, thee, him; or I pleaſe, thou pleaſeſt, &c. *pugnatur a me*, *a te*, *ab illo*, I fight, thou fighteſt, he fighteth, &c. So *Curritur*, *venitur a me*, *a te*, &c. I run, thou runneſt, &c. *Favetur tibi a me*, Thou art favoured by me, or I favour thee, &c.

Obf. 5. Verbs are uſed perſonally or impersonally, according to the particular meaning which they expreſs, or the different import of the words with which they are joined: Thus we can ſay, *ego placeo tibi*, I pleaſe you; but we cannot ſay, *ſi places audire*, if you pleaſe to hear, but *ſi placet tibi audire*. So, we can ſay, *multa homini contingunt*, many things happen to a man: but inſtead of *ego contigi eſſe domi*, we muſt either ſay, *me contigit eſſe domi*, or *mihi contigit eſſe domi*, I happened to be at home. The proper and elegant uſe of Impersonal verbs can only be acquired by practice.

REDUNDANT VERBS.

Thoſe are called *Redundant Verbs*, which have different forms to expreſs the ſame ſenſe: thus, *aſſentio* and *aſſentior*, to agree; *fabrīco* and *fabrīcor*, to frame; *mereo* and *mereor*, to deſerve, &c. Theſe verbs, however, under the paſſive form have likewise a paſſive ſignification.

Several verbs are uſed in different conjugations.

1. Some are uſually of the firſt conjugation, and rarely of the third; as, *lavo*, *lavas*, *lavāre*: and *lavo*, *lavis*, *lavāre*, to waſh.

2. Some are uſually of the ſecond, and rarely of the third; as, *Ferveo*, *ferves*, and *fervo*, *fervis*, to boil.

Fulgeo, *fulges*, and *fulgo*, *fulgis*, to ſhine.

Strideo,

Strideo, strides, and strido, stridis, to make a hissing noise, to creak.

Tueor, tuëris, and tuor, tuëris, to defend.

To these add *tergeo, terges*; and *terga, tergis*, to wipe, which are equally common.

3. Some are commonly of the third conjugation, and rarely of the fourth; as,

Fodio, fodis, fodere, and fodio, fodis, fodire, to dig.

Sallo, fallis, fallere, and fallio, fallis, fallire, to salt.

Arcesso, -is, arcessere, and arcesso, arcessire, to send for.

Morior, morëris, mori, and morior, moriris, moriri, to die.

So Orior, orëris, and orior, oriris, oriri, to rise.

Potior, potëris, and potior, potiris, potiri, to enjoy.

There is likewise a verb, which is usually of the second conjugation, and more rarely of the fourth, namely, *cio, cics, ciere*; and *cio, cis, cire*, to rouse; whence *accire* and *accitus*.

To these we may add the verb *EDO*, to eat, which though regularly formed, also agrees in several of its parts with *sum*; thus,

Ind. Pres. *Edo, edis* or *es*, *edit* or *est*; — *editis* or *estis* —

Sub. Imperf. *Ederem* or *essem*, *ederes* or *esses*, &c.

Imp. *Ede* or *es*, *edito* or *esta*; *edite* or *este*; *editote* or *estote*.

Inf. Pres. *Edare* or *esse*.

Passive Ind. Pres. *Editur* or *estur*.

It may not be improper here to subjoin a list of those verbs which resemble one another in some of their parts, though they differ in signification. Of these some agree in the present, some in the preterite, and others in the supine.

1. The following agree in the present, but are differently conjugated:

Aggëro, -as, to heap up.

Appello, -as, to call.

Compello, -as, to address.

Colligo, -as, to bind.

Consterno, -as, to astonish.

Effëro, -as, to enrage.

Fundo, -as, to found.

Mando, -as, to command.

Obsëro, -as, to lock.

Völo, -as, to fly.

Aggëro, -is, to bring together.

Appello, -is, to drive to, to arrive.

Compello, -is, to drive together.

Colligo, -is, to gather together.

Consterno, -is, to firew.

Effëro, -fers, to bring out.

Fundo, -is, to pour out.

Mando, -is, to cheer.

Obsëro, -is, to beset.

Völo, vis, to will.

Of this class some have a different quantity; as,

Cölo, -as, to strain.

Dico, -as, to dedicate.

Edüco, -as, to train up.

Lëgo, -as, to send on an embassy.

Vädo, -as, to trade.

Cölo, -is, to till.

Dico, -is, to say.

Edüco, -is, to lead forth.

Lëgo, -is, to read.

Vädo, -is, to go.

2. The

2. The following verbs agree in the preterite :

Acceō, acui, *to be sour.*

Cresco, crēvi, *to grow.*

Frigeo, frixi, *to be cold.*

Fulgeo, fulsi, *to shine.*

Lūceo, luxi, *to shine.*

Pāveo, pāvi, *to be afraid.*

Pendeo, pēpendi, *to hang.*

Acuo, acui, *to sharpen.*

Cerno, crēvi, *to see.*

Frigo, frixi, *to fry.*

Fulcio, fulsi, *to prop.*

Lūgeo, luxi, *to mourn.*

Pasco, pāvi, *to feed.*

Pendo, pēpendi, *to weigh.*

3. The following agree in the supine :

Cresco, crētum, *to grow.*

Māneo, mansum, *to stay.*

Sto, statum, *to stand.*

Succenseo, censum, *to be angry.*

Tēneo, tentum, *to hold.*

Verro, versum, *to sweep.*

Vineo, victum, *to overcome.*

Cerno, cretum, *to behold.*

Mando, mansum, *to chew.*

Sisto, statum, *to stop.*

Succendo, -censum, *to kindle.*

Tendo, tentum, *to stretch out.*

Verto, versum, *to turn.*

Vivo, victum, *to live.*

THE OBSOLETE CONJUGATION.

This chiefly occurs in old writers, and only in particular conjugations and tenses.

1. The ancient Latins made the imperfect of the indicative active of the fourth conjugation in *IBAM*, without the *e* ; as, *audībam*, *sciībam* ; for *audīebam*, *sciīebam*.

2. In the future of the indicative of the fourth conjugation, they used *IBO* in the active, and *īber* in the passive voice : as, *dormībo*, *dormīlor*, for *dormiam*, *dormior*.

3. The present of the subjunctive anciently ended in *IM* : as, *edim*, for *edam* ; *duim* for *dem*.

4. The perfect of the subjunctive active sometimes occurs in *SSIM*, and the future in *SSO* ; as, *levassim*, *levasso*, for *levaverim*, *levavero* ; *cepissim*, *cepisso*, for *ceperim* *cepero* : Hence the future of the infinitive was formed in *ASSERE* ; as, *levassere* for *levaturus esse*.

5. In the second person of the present of the imperative passive, we find *MINO* in the singular, and *minor* in the plural ; as *famīno*, for *fare* ; and *progrēdimīnor* for *progrēdimīni*.

6. The syllable *ER* was frequently added to the present of the infinitive passive ; as, *furiē*, for *fari* ; *diciē* for *dici*.

7. The participles of the future time active, and perfect passive, when joined with the verb *esse*, were sometimes used as indeclinable : thus, *credo inimicos dīcturum esse*, for *dīcturos*, Cic. *Cohortes ad me missum facias*, for *missas*, Cic. ad Attic. viii. 12.

DERIVATION AND COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

1. Verbs are derived either from nouns or from other verbs.

Verbs derived from nouns are called *Derominative* ; as, *Cano*, *to sap* ; *laudo*, *to praise* ; *fraudo*, *to defraud* ; *lapīdo*, *to throw stones* ; *operor*, *to work* ; *frumentor*, *to forage* ; *lignor*, *to gather fuel*, &c. from *cana*, *laus*, *fraus*, &c. But when they express imitation or resemblance,

semblance, they are called *Imitative*; as, *Patrissō, Græcor, būbulo, cornicor, &c.* I imitate or resemble my father, a Græcian, a crow, &c. from *pater, Græcus, cornix.*

Of those derived from other verbs, the following chiefly deserve attention; namely, *Frequentatives, Inceptives, and Desideratives.*

1. *FREQUENTATIVES* express frequency of action; and are all of the first conjugation. They are formed from the last supine, by changing *ātu* into *ito*, in verbs of the first conjugation; and by changing *u* into *o*, in verbs of the other three conjugations; as, *clamo*, to cry, *clamito*, to cry frequently; *terreo, territo*; *verto, verso*; *dormio, dormito*.

In like manner, Deponent verbs form Frequentatives in *or*; as, *minor*, to threaten; *minior*, to threaten frequently.

Some are formed in an irregular manner; as, *nato* from *no*; *noscito* from *nosco*; *scitor*, or rather *sciscitor*, from *scio*; *pavito*, from *paveo*; *scitor*, from *sequor, loquitor*, from *loquor*. So *querito, fundito, agito, fuito, &c.*

From Frequentative verbs are also formed other Frequentatives; as, *curro, curso, cursito*; *pello, pulso, pulsito*, or by contraction *pulto*; *capio, capto, captito*; *canto, canto, cantito*; *defendo, defenso, defensito*; *dico, dicto, dictito*; *gero, gesto, gestito*; *jacio, jacto, jactito*; *venio, ventito*; *mitto, misso, (for mitto) missito, &c.*

Verbs of this kind do not always express frequency of action. Many of them have much the same sense with their primitives, or express the meaning more strongly.

2. *INCEPTIVE Verbs* mark the beginning or continued increase of any thing. They are formed from the second person sing. of the present of the indicative, by adding *co*: as, *caleo*, to be hot, *cales, caleo*, to grow hot. So in the other conjugations, *labasco*, from *labo*; *tremisco*, from *tremo*; *obdormisco*, from *obdormio*. *Hisco*, from *hio*, is contracted for *hiesco*. Inceptives are likewise formed from substantives and adjectives; as, *puerasco*, from *puer*; *dulcesco*, from *dulcis*; *juvenesco*, from *juvenis*.

All Inceptives are Neuter verbs, and of the third conjugation. They want both the preterite and supine; unless very rarely, when they borrow them from their primitives.

3. *DESIDERATIVE Verbs* signify a desire or intention of doing a thing. They are formed from the latter supine, by adding *rio*, and shortening the *u*; as, *canāturio*, I desire to sup, from *canatu*. They are all of the fourth conjugation; and want both preterite and supine, except these three, *esurio, -ūvi, -itum*, to desire to eat; *parturio, -ūvi, —*, to be in travail; *nupturio, -ūvi, —*, to desire to be married.

There are a few verbs in *LLŌ*, which are called *Diminutive*; as, *santillo, forbillo, -are*, I sing, I sup a little: To these some add *albico* and *ceddico, -are*, to be or to grow whitish; also *nigrico, faldico*, and *callico*. Some verbs in *SSO* are called *Intensive*; as *Capesso, fassesso, petesso* or *petisso*, I take, I do, I seek earnestly.

Verbs are compounded with nouns, with other verbs, with adverbs, and chiefly with prepositions. Many of these simple verbs are not in use; as, *Fūto, fendo, specio, gruo, &c.* The component parts usually remain

remain entire. Sometimes a letter is added ; as *prodeo*, for *pro-co* : or taken away ; as, *asporto*, *omitto*, *trado*, *pejoro*, *pergo*, *debeo*, *præbeo*, &c. for *absporto*, *obmitto*, *transde*, *perjuro*, *perrego*, *debibeo*, *præhibeo*, &c. So *demo*, *præno*, *fumo*, of *de*, *pro*, *sub*, and *emo*, which anciently signified *to take*, or *to take away*. Often the vowel or diphthong of the simple verb, and the last consonant of the preposition, is changed : as, *damno*, *contemno* ; *calco*, *concilio* ; *lido*, *collido* ; *audio*, *obedio*, &c. *Affero*, *eufero*, *collaudo*, *implico*, &c. for *adfero*, *abfero*, *conlaudo*, *implico*, &c.

P A R T I C I P L E.

/ A Participle is a kind of adjective formed from a verb, which in its signification implies time. /

It is so called, because it partakes both of an adjective and of a verb, having in *Latin* gender and declension from the one, time and signification from the other, and number from both. Participles in *English*, like adjectives, admit of no variation.

Participles in *Latin* are declined like adjectives ; and their signification is various, according to the nature of the verbs from which they come ; only participles in *as* are always passive, and import not so much future time, as obligation or necessity.

/ *Latin* verbs have four Participles, the present and future active ; as, *Amans*, loving ; *amātūrus*, about to love ; and the perfect and future passive ; as, *amātus*, loved, *amandus*, to be loved. /

The *Latins* have not a participle perfect in the active, nor a participle present in the passive voice ; which defect must be supplied by a circumlocution. Thus, to express the perfect participle active in *English*, we use a conjunction, and the plu-perfect of the subjunctive in *Latin*, or some other tense, according to its connection with the other words of a sentence ; as, he having loved, *quam amavisset*, &c.

/ Neuter verbs have commonly but two Participles ; as, *sedans*, *sessurus* ; *stans*, *stātūrus*. /

From some Neuter Verbs are formed Participles of the perfect tense ; as, *Erratus*, *festinatus*, *juratus*, *laboratus*, *vigilatus*, *cessatus*, *sudatus*, *triumphatus*, *regnatus*, *decursus*, *desitus*, *emeritus*, *emersus*, *obitus*, *placitatus*, *foccussus*, *occussus*, &c. and also of the future in *us* ; as, *Jurandus*, *vigilandus*, *regnandus*, *carendus*, *dormiendus*, *crubescendus*, &c. Neuter passive verbs are equally various. *Veneo* has no participle : *Fido*, only *filens* and *sisus* ; *soleo*, *solens* and *solitus* ; *vapulo*, *vapulans* and *vapulaturus* ; *Gaudio*, *gaudens*, *gavisus*, and *gavisurus* ; *Audeo*, *audens*, *ausus*, *ausurus*, *audentus*. *Ausus* is used both in an active and passive sense ; as, *Ausi omnes immane nefas, ausique potiti*. Virg. *Æn.* vi. 624.

/ Deponent and Common verbs have commonly four Participles ; as,

Loquens,

Loquens, speaking ; *locuturus*, about to speak ; *locutus*, having spoken ; *loquendus*, to be spoken : *Dignans*, vouchsafing ; *dignaturus*, about to vouchsafe ; *dignatus*, having vouchsafed, being vouchsafed, or having been vouchsafed ; *dignandus*, to be vouchsafed. Many participles of the perfect tense from Deponent verbs have both an active and passive sense ; as, *Abominatus*, *conatus*, *confessus*, *adortus*, *amplexus*, *blanditus*, *largitus*, *mentitus*, *oblitus*, *testatus*, *veneratus*, &c.

There are several Participles compounded with *in* signifying *not*, the verbs of which do not admit of such composition : as, *Insciens*, *insperans*, *indicens*, *for*, *non dicens*, *inopinans*, and *necopinans*, *immerens* ; *Illasus*, *impransus*, *inconsultus*, *incustoditus*, *immetatus*, *impunitus*, *imparatus*, *incomitatus*, *incomptus*, *indeminatus*, *indotatus*, *incorruptus*, *interritus*, and *imperterritus*, *intestatus*, *inausus*, *inopinatus*, *inultus*, *incensus*, *for non census*, not registered ; *infectus*, *for non factus*, *invisus*, *for non visus*, *indictus*, *for non dictus*, &c. There is a different *incensus* from *incendo* ; *infectus*, from *inficio* ; *invisus* from *invideo* ; *indictus* from *indico*, &c.

(If from the signification of a Participle we take away *time*, it becomes an adjective, and admits the degrees of comparison ; as,

Amans, loving, *amantior*, *amantissimus* ; *doctus*, learned, *doctior*, *doctissimus* : or a substantive ; as, *Præfectus*, a commander or governor ; *consonans*, f. sc. *litera*, a consonant ; *continens*, f. sc. *terra*, a continent ; *confluens*, m. a place where two rivers run together ; *oriens*, m. sc. *sol*, the east ; *occidens*, m. the west ; *dictum*, a saying ; *scriptum*, &c.

There are many words in *ATUS*, *ITUS*, and *UTUS*, which although resembling participles are reckoned adjectives, because they come from nouns, and not from verbs ; as, *alatus*, *barbatus*, *cordatus*, *caudatus*, *crislatus*, *auratus*, *pellitus*, *turratus* ; *aslatus*, *cornitus*, *nasutus*, &c. winged, bearded, discreet, &c. But *auratus*, *aratus*, *argentatus*, *ferratus*, *plumbatus*, *gypsatus*, *calceatus*, *clypeatus*, *galeatus*, *tunicatus*, *larvatus*, *palliatu*, *lymphatus*, *purpuratus*, *prætextatus*, &c. covered with gold, brass, silver, &c. are accounted participles, because they are supposed to come from obsolete verbs. So perhaps *calamistratus*, frizzled, crisped or curled, *crinitus*, having long hair, *peritus*, skilled, &c.

There are a kind of Verbal adjectives in *BUNDUS*, formed from the imperfect of the indicative, which very much resemble Participles in their signification, but generally express the meaning of the verb more fully, or denote an abundance or great deal of the action ; as, *vitabundus*, the same with *valde vitans*, avoiding much ; *Sall. Jug. 60.* and *101.* ; *Liv. xxv. 13.* So *errabundus*, *ludibundus*, *populabundus*, *moribundus*, &c.

GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

(GERUNDS are participial words, which bear the signification of the verb from which they are formed ; and are declined like a neuter noun of the second declension, through all the cases of the singular number, except the vocative. /

There are, both in Latin and English, substantives derived from the

the verb, which so much resemble the Gerund in their signification, that frequently they may be substituted in its place. They are generally used, however, in a more undetermined sense than the Gerund, and in English have the article always prefixed to them. Thus, with the gerund, *Delector legendo Ciceronem*, I am delighted with reading Cicero. But with the substantive, *Delector lectione Ciceronis*, I am delighted with the reading of Cicero.

The Gerund and Future Participle of verbs in *io*, and some others, often take *u* instead of *e*; as, *faciundum*, *di*, *do*, *dus*; *experiundum*, *potiundum*, *gerundum*, *petundum*, *dicundum*, &c. for *faciendum*, &c.

| SUPINES have much the same signification with Gerunds; and may be indifferently applied to any person or number. They agree in termination with nouns of the fourth declension, having only the accusative and ablative cases. |

| The former Supine is commonly used in an active, and the latter in a passive sense, but sometimes the contrary; | as, *coctum non vapulatum*, *duum condactus fui*, i. e. *ut vapularem*, v. *verberarer*, to be beaten, Plaut.

A D V E R B.

| An adverb is an indeclinable part of speech, *added to a verb*, adjective, or other adverb, to express some circumstance, quality, or manner of their signification. |

| All adverbs may be divided into two classes, namely, those which denote *Circumstance*; and those which denote *Quality*, *Manner*, &c.

I. | Adverbs denoting CIRCUMSTANCE are chiefly those of *Place*, *Time*, and *Order*. |

1. | Adverbs of *Place*, are fivefold, namely, such as signify,

1. <i>Motion or rest in a place.</i>			
Ubi ?	Where ?	Huc,	Hither.
Hic,	Here.	Illuc,	} Thither.
Illic,	} There.	Isthuc,	
Isthic,		Intro,	In.
Ibi,		Foras,	Out.
Intus,	Within.	Eò,	To that place.
Foris,	Without.	Aliò,	To another place.
Ubique,	Every where.	Aliquò,	To some place.
Nusquam,	No where.	Eòdem,	To the same place.
Alìcubi,	Some where.	3. <i>Motion towards a place.</i>	
Alibi,	Else where.	Quorsum ?	Whitherward ?
Ubivis,	Any where.	Versus,	Towards.
Ibidem,	In the same place.	Horsum,	Hitherward.
		Illorsum,	Thitherward.
		Sursum,	Upward.
		Deorsum,	Downward.
Quo ?	Whither ?	Antrorsum,	Forward.
			Retrosum,

Retroſum,	Backward.	Sicunde,	If from any place.
Dextrorſum,	Towards the right.	Utrique,	On both ſides.
Siniftrorſum,	Towards the left.	Sūperne,	From above.
4. Motion from a place.		Inferne,	From below.
Unde ?	Whence ?	Cœlitus,	From heaven.
Hinc,	Hence.	Funditus,	From the ground.
Illinc,	} Thence.	5. Motion through or by a place.	
Iſthinc,		Quà ?	Which way ?
Inde,		Hæc,	This way.
Indidem,	From the ſame place.	Illac,	} That way.
Aliunde,	From elſe where.	Iſthac,	
Allicunde,	From ſome place.	Alià,	Another way.

2. Adverbs of Time are threefold, namely, ſuch as ſignify,

1. Some particular time, either preſent, paſt, future, or indefinite.

Nunc,	Now.
Hodie,	To day.
Tunc,	} Then.
Tum,	
Hieri,	Yeſterday.
Dūdum,	} Heretofore.
Prīdem,	
Prīdie,	The day before.
Nūdius tertius,	Three days ago.
Nūper,	Lately.
Jamjam,	} Preſently.
Mox,	
Stātim,	} By and by.
Prōtinus,	
Illico,	Straightway.
Cras,	To-morrow.
Poſtridie,	The day after.
Pērendie,	Two days hence.
Nondum,	Not yet.
Quando ?	When ?
Aliquando,	} Sometimes.
Nonnunquam,	
Interdum,	
Semper,	Ever, always.

Nunquam,	Never.
Intērim,	In the mean time.
Quōtidie,	Daily.

2. Continuance of time.

Dū,	Long.
Quamdū ?	How long ?
Tamdū,	So long.
Jamdū,	} Long ago.
Jamdūdum,	
Jamprīdem,	

3. Viciffitude or repetition of time.

Quōties ?	How often ?
Sæpe,	Often.
Rārò,	Seldom.
Tōties,	So often.
Aliquōties,	For ſeveral times.
Viciffim,	} By turns.
Alternātum,	
Rurſus,	} Again.
Itērum,	
Sūbinde,	} Ever and anon, now and then.
Identīdem,	
Sēm̄el,	Once.
Bis,	Twice.
Ter,	Thrice.
Quāter,	Four times, &c.

3. Adverbs of Order.

Inde,	Then.	Dēnīque,	Finally.
Deinde,	After that.	Poſtrēmò,	Laſtly.
Dehinc,	Henceforth.	Primò, -um,	Fiſt.
Porro,	Moreover.	Sēcundò, -um,	Secondly.
Deinceps,	So forth.	Tertiò, -um,	Thirdly.
Dēnuo,	Of new.	Quartò, -um,	Fourthly, &c.

II. Adverbs denoting **QUALITY, MANNER, &c.** are either *Absolute* or *Comparative*.

Those called *Absolute* denote,

1. **QUALITY**, simply ; as, *bene*, well ; *malè*, ill ; *fortiter*, bravely ; and innumerable others that come from adjective nouns or participles.

2. **CERTAINTY** ; as, *pröfessò*, *certè*, *sänè*, *plänè*, *nè*, *ütique*, *ita*, *etiam*, truly, verily, yes ; *quidni*, why not ? *omnino*, certainly.

3. **CONTINGENCE** ; as, *fortè*, *forfan*, *fortassis*, *fors*, haply, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.

4. **NEGATION** ; as, *non haud*, not ; *nequäquam*, not at all ; *neutiquam*, by no means ; *minime*, nothing less.

5. **PROHIBITION** ; as, *ne*, not.

6. **SWEARING** ; as, *bercle*, *pol*, *edèpol*, *mēcastor*, by Hercules, by Pollux, &c.

7. **EXPLAINING** ; as, *utpöte*, *videlicet*, *scilicet*, *nimīrum*, *nempe*, to wit, namely.

8. **SEPARATION** ; as, *scorsum*, apart ; *sēparatim*, separately ; *sīgillatim*, one by one ; *vīrilit̃*, man by man ; *oppidatim*, town by town, &c.

9. **JOINING TOGETHER** ; as, *sīmul*, *undè*, *pārīter*, together ; *gēneralīter*, generally ; *ūnīversalīter*, universally ; *plērumque*, for the most part.

10. **INDICATION or POINTING out** ; as, *en*, *ecce*, lo, behold.

11. **INTERROGATION** ; as, *cur*, *quāre*, *quamobrem*, why, wherefore ? *num*, *an*, whether ? *quōmōdo*, *quī*, how ? To which add, *Ubi*, *quò*, *quorsum*, *undè*, *quā*, *quando*, *quamdiu*, *quoties*.

Those Adverbs which are called *Comparative* denote,

1. **EXCESS** ; as, *Valde*, *maximè*, *magnopere*, *maximopere*, *summo pere*, *admodum*, *oppidò*, *perquam*, *longè*, greatly, very much, exceedingly ; *nimis*, *nimum*, too much ; *prorsus*, *penitus*, *omnino*, altogether, wholly ; *magis*, more ; *melius*, better ; *pejus*, worse ; *fortius*, more bravely ; and *optimè*, best ; *possimè*, worst ; *fortissimè*, most bravely ; and innumerable others of the comparative and superlative degrees.

2. **DEFECT** ; as, *Ferne*, *fērè*, *pröpemodum*, *pènè*, almost ; *pārum*, little ; *paulo*, *paululum*, very little.

3. **PREFERENCE** ; as, *pōtius*, *sātius*, rather ; *pētissimū*, *præcipuè*, *præsertim*, chiefly, especially ; *imo*, yes, nay, nay rather.

4. **LIKENESS or EQUALITY** ; as, *ita*, *sic*, *adeò*, *it̃* ; *ut*, *uti*, *sicut*, *sicuti*, *velut*, *veluti*, *ceu*, *tāquam*, *quasi*, as, as if ; *quādamodum*, even as ; *satis*, enough ; *it̃dem*, in like manner ; *iusta*, alike, equally.

5. **UNLIKENESS or UNEQUALITY** ; as, *alīter*, *secus*, otherwise ; *aliōqui* or *aliōquin*, else ; *nēdum*, much more or much less.

6. **ABATEMENT** ; as, *sensim*, *paulatim*, *pēdēlentim*, by degrees, piecemeal ; *vix*, scarcely ; *aggre*, hardly, with difficulty.

7. **EXCLUSION** ; as, *tantum*, *solum*, *modò*, *tantummodo*, *duntaxat*, *solum*, only.

DERIVATION,

DERIVATION, COMPARISON, and COMPOSITION of ADVERBS.

Adverbs are derived, 1. from Substantives, and end commonly in *TIM* or *TUS*; as, *Partim*, partly, by parts; *nominatim*, by name; *generatim*, by kinds, generally; *speciatim*, *vocatim*, *gregatim*; *radicatus*, from the root, &c. 2. From Adjectives: and these are by far the most numerous. Such as come from Adjectives of the first and second declension usually end in *E*; as, *liberè*, freely; *plene*, fully: Some in *O*, *UM*, and *TER*; as, *falsò*, *tantum*, *graviter*: A few in *A*, *ITUS*, and *IM*; as, *rectà*, *antiquitàs*, *privatim*. Some are used two or three ways, as, *primum*, v. -ò; *purè*, -iter; *certè*, -ò; *cautè*, -tim; *humanè*, -iter, -itus; *publicè*, *publicitùs*, &c. Adverbs from Adjectives of the third declension commonly end in *TER*, seldom in *E*; as, *turpiter*, *feliciter*, *acriter*; *pariter*; *facilè*, *repente*: one in *O*, *omnino*. The neuter of Adjectives is sometimes taken Adverbially; as, *recens natus*, for *recenter*; *perfidum ridens*, for *perfidè*, Hor. *multa reluctans*, for *multum* or *valde*, Virg. So in English we say, *to speak loud, high*, &c. for *loudly, highly*, &c. In many cases a Substantive is understood; as, *primò*, sc. *loco*, *optatò advenis*, sc. *tempore*; *bac*, sc. *viâ*, &c.

3. From each of the pronominal adjectives, *ille*, *ist*, *hic*, *is*, *idem*, &c. are formed adverbs, which express all the circumstances of place; as from *ille*, *illic*, *illuc*, *illorsum*, *illinc*, and *illac*. So from *quis*, *ubi*, *quo*, *quorsum*, *unde*, and *quâ*. Also of time: thus, *quando*, *quamdiu*, &c.

4. From verbs and participles; as, *caesim*, with the edge: *punctim*, with the point; *strictim*, closely; from *cedo*, *pungo*, *stringo*: *amanter*; *properanter*, *dubitanter*; *distinctè*, *emendatè*; *meritò*, *inopinato*, &c. But these last are thought to be in the ablative, having *ex* understood, which is also sometimes expressed.

5. From prepositions; as, *intus*, *intro*, from *in*; *clanculum*, from *clam*; *subtus*, from *sub*, &c.

[Adverbs derived from adjectives are commonly compared like their primitives. The *positive* generally ends in *e*, or *ter*; as, *durè*, *facilè*, *acriter*: The *comparative*, in *ius*; as, *durius*, *facilius*, *acrius*: The *superlative*, in *ime*; as, *durissimè*, *facillimè*, *acerrimè*.]

If the comparison of the adjective be irregular or defective, the comparison of the adverb is so too: as, *benè*, *melius*, *optimè*; *malè*, *pejus*, *pejssimè*; *parum*, *minus*, *minimè*, & -um; *multum*, *plus*, *plurimum*; *propè*, *propius*, *proximè*; *ocysus*, *ocysime*; *prius*, *primò*, -um; *nuper*, *nuperrimè*; *novè*, & *noviter*, *novissimè*; *meritò*, *meritissimò*; &c. Those adverbs also are compared whose primitives are obsolete; as, *sapè*, *sapius*, *sapissimè*; *penitus*, *penitius*, *penitissimè*; *satis*, *setius*; *secus*, *secius*; &c. *Magis*, *maxime*; and *potius*, *potissimum*, want the positive.

Adverbs in English are not varied by comparison, except some few of them, particularly irregulars; as, *often*, *oftener*, *oftenest*; *well*, *better*, *best*; *much*, *more*, *most*, &c.

Adverbs are variously compounded with all the different parts of speech; thus, *postridie*, *magnopere*, *maximopere*, *summopere*, *tantopere*, *multimodis*,

multimodis, omnimodis, quomodo, quare ; of *postero die* ; *magno opere*, &c. *Illicet, scilicet, videlicet*, of *ire, scire, videre, licet* ; *illico*, of *in loco* : *quorsum*, of *quo versum* ; *communis*, hand to hand, of *cum* or *con* and *manus* ; *eminus*, at a distance, of *e* and *manus* ; *quorsum*, of *quo versum* ; *denuo*, anew, of *de novo* ; *quin*, why not, but, of *qui ne* ; *cur*, of *cui rei* ; *pedetentim*, step by step, as it were *pedem tendendo* ; *perendie*, for *perempto die* ; *nimirum*, of *ne*, i. e. *non* and *mirum* ; *antea, postea, præterea*, &c. of *ante* and *ea*, &c. *Ubi vis, quovis, undelibet, quousque, sicut, sicuti, velut, veluti, desuper, insuper, quomobrem*, &c. of *ubi*, and *vis*, &c. *nudiustertius*, of *nunc dies tertius* : *identidem*, of *idem et idem* ; *impresensiarum*, i. e. *in tempore rerum præsentium*, &c.

Obs. 1. The Adverb is not an essential part of speech. It only serves to express shortly, in one word, what must otherwise have required two or more ; as, *sapienter*, wisely, for *cum sapientia* ; *hic*, for *in hoc loco* ; *semper*, for *in omni tempore* ; *semel*, for *unâ vice* ; *bis*, for *duabus vicibus* ; *Mehercule*, for *Hercules me juvet*, &c.

Obs. 2. Some adverbs of time, place, and order, are frequently used the one for the other : as, *ubi*, where or when ; *inde*, from that place, from that time, after that, next ; *hactenus*, hitherto, thus far, with respect to place, time, or order, &c.

Obs. 3. Some adverbs of time are either *past, present* or *future* ; as, *jam*, already, now, by and by ; *olim*, long ago, some time, hereafter. Some adverbs of place are equally various ; thus, *esse peregrè*, to be abroad ; *ire peregrè*, to go abroad ; *redire peregrè*, to return from abroad.

Obs. 4. Interrogative adverbs of time and place doubled, or compounded with *cunque*, answer to the English adjection *so ever* ; as, *ubi-ubi*, or *ubicunque*, wheresoever ; *quoquò, quocunque*, whithersoever, &c. The same holds also in other interrogative words ; as, *quotquot*, or *quotcunque*, how many soever ; *quantusquantus*, or *quantuscunque*, how great soever ; *utut* or *utcunque*, however or howsoever, &c. In English, the adverbs *here, there, and where*, when joined to certain participles or prepositions, as, *to, of, by, with, in*, &c. have the signification of pronouns ; as, *hereof*, the same with *of this* ; *thereof*, the same with *of that* ; *whereof, of which*, &c.

PREPOSITION.

A Preposition is an indeclinable word which shews the relation of one thing to another.

There are twenty-eight Prepositions in Latin, which govern the accusative ; that is, have an accusative after them.)

Ad,	To.	Cis,	} On this side.
Apud,	At.	Citra,	
Ante,	Before.	Circa,	} About.
Adversus,	} Against, towards.	Circum,	
Adversum,		Erga,	Towards.
Contra,	Against.	Extra,	Without.

Inter,

Inter,	<i>Between, among.</i>	Pēnes,	<i>In the power of.</i>
Intra,	<i>Within.</i>	Post,	<i>After.</i>
Infra,	<i>Beneath.</i>	Pōne,	<i>Behind.</i>
Juxta,	<i>Nigh to.</i>	Sēcus,	<i>By, along.</i>
Ob,	<i>For.</i>	Sēcundum,	<i>According to.</i>
Propter,	<i>For, hard by.</i>	Supra,	<i>Above.</i>
Per,	<i>By, through.</i>	Trans,	<i>On the farther side.</i>
Præter,	<i>Besides, except.</i>	Ultra,	<i>Beyond.</i>

/ The Prepositions which govern the ablative are fifteen ; namely,

A,	}		De,	}	<i>Of, concerning.</i>
Ab,		<i>From, or by.</i>	E,		<i>Of, out of.</i>
Abs,	}		Ex,	}	
Absque,		<i>Without.</i>	Pro,		<i>For.</i>
Cum,		<i>With.</i>	Præ,		<i>Before.</i>
Clam,	{	<i>Without the know-</i>	Pālam,		<i>With the knowledge of.</i>
	{	<i>ledge of.</i>	Sine,		<i>Without.</i>
Cōram,	{	<i>Before, in the pre-</i>	Tēnus,		<i>Up to, as far as.</i>
	{	<i>sence of.</i>			

/ These four govern sometimes the accusative, and sometimes the ablative :

In, *In, into*. Sub, *Under*. Sūper, *Above*. Subter, *Beneath*.

Obs. 1. Prepositions are so called, because they are generally placed before the word with which they are joined. Some, however, are put after ; as, *cum*, when joined with *me*, *te*, *se*, and sometimes with *quo*, *qui*, and *quibus* : thus, *mecum*, *tecum*, &c. *Tenus* is always placed after ; as, *mento*, *tenus*, up to the chin. So likewise are *versus* and *usque* ; and *toward*, in English ; as, *toward*, *eastward*, &c.

Obs. 2. Prepositions, both in English and Latin, are often compounded with other parts of speech, particularly with verbs ; as, *subire*, to undergo. In English they are frequently put after verbs ; as, *to go in*, *to go out*, *to look to*, &c.

Prepositions are also sometimes compounded together ; as, *Ex adversus eum locum*, Cic. *Ex adversum Athenas*, C. Nep. *In ante diem quartum Kalendarum Decembris disulit*, i. e. *usque in eum diem*, Cic. *Supplicatio indicta est ex ante diem quintum idus Octob.* i. e. *ab eo die*, Liv. *Ex ante pridie Idus Septembris*, Plin. But prepositions compounded together commonly become adverbs or conjunctions ; as, *propālam*, *protinus*, *insuper*, &c.

Obs. 3. Prepositions in composition usually retain their primitive signification : as, *adeo*, to go to : *præpono*, to place before. But from this there are several exceptions. 1. IN joined with adjectives generally denotes privation ; as, *infidus*, unfaithful : but when joined with verbs, increases their signification ; as, *indūro*, to harden greatly. In some words *in* has two contrary senses ; as, *invocātus*, called upon, or not called upon. So *infrēnātus*, *immutātus*, *insuetus*, *impensus*, *inbumatus*, *intentatus*, &c. 2. PLA commonly increases the signification ;

signification ; as, *Percārus, percēler, percōmis, percuriōsus, perdificilis, perelegans, pergrātus, pergrāvis, perhospitālis, perillustis, perletus, &c.* very dear, very swift, &c. 3. *Præ* sometimes increases ; as, *Præclārus, prædīvis, prædulcis, prædūrus, præpinguis, prævalidus ; prævāleo, præpolleo* ; and also *Ex* ; as, *Exclāmo, exaggēro, exaugeo, excalefacio, extenuo, exhilaro* ; but *ex* sometimes denotes privation, as, *Exsanguis*, bloodless, pale : *excors, exanimis, -mo, &c.* 4. *Sub* often diminishes ; as, *Subalbidus, subabsurdus, subamārus, subdulcis, subgrandis, subgrāvis, subniger* ; &c. a little white or whitish, &c. *De* often signifies downward ; as, *Decīdo, decurro, degrāvo, despicio, delābor* : sometimes increases ; as, *Deāmo, demīror* ; and sometimes expresses privation ; as, *Demens, decolor, deformis, &c.*

Obs. 4. There are five or six syllables, namely, *am, di* or *dis, re, se, con*, which are commonly called, *Inseparable Prepositions*, because they are only to be found in compound words : however they generally add something to the signification of the words with which they are compounded ; thus,

Am,	<i>round about.</i>	} as,	Ambio,	<i>to surround.</i>
Di,	} <i>asunder.</i>		Divello,	<i>to pull asunder.</i>
Dis,			Distrāho,	<i>to draw asunder.</i>
Re,	<i>again.</i>		Rēlēgo,	<i>to read again.</i>
Se,	<i>aside or apart.</i>		Sēpōno,	<i>to lay aside.</i>
Con,	<i>together.</i>		Concreasco,	<i>to grow together.</i>

INTERJECTION.

/ An Interjection is an indeclinable word thrown in between the parts of a sentence, to express some passion or emotion of the mind. /

Some Interjections are natural sounds, and common to all languages ; as, *Oh ! Ab !*

Interjections express in one word a whole sentence, and thus fitly represent the quickness of the passions.

The different passions have commonly different words to express them ; thus,

1. JOY ; as, *evax, hey, brave, io !*
2. GRIEF ; as, *ab, lei, heu, eheu ! ah, alas, woes me !*
3. WONDER ; as, *papæ ! O strange ! vab ! hah !*
4. PRAISE ; as, *euge ! well done !*
5. AVERSION ; as, *apāge ! away, begone, avaunt, off, fy, tush !*
6. EXCLAIMING ; as, *Ob, prob ! O !*
7. SURPRISE or FEAR ; as, *atat ! ha, aha !*
8. IMPRECATION ; as, *væ ! wo, pox on't !*
9. LAUGHTER ; as, *ba, ba, be !*
10. SILENCING ; as, *au, 'st, pax ! silence, hush, 'st !*
11. CALLING ; as, *cho, chōdum, io, ho ! so, ho, ho, O !*

12. DERISION; as, *bui!* away with!

13. ATTENTION; as, *hem!* ha!

Some interjections denote several different passions: thus, *Vob* is used to express joy, and sorrow, and wonder; &c.

Adjectives of the neuter gender are sometimes used for interjections; as, *Malum!* with a mischief! *Infandum!* O shame! fy, fy! *Misèram,* O wretched! *Nefas!* O the villany!

CONJUNCTION.

/ A conjunction is an indeclinable word, which serves to join sentences together. /

Thus, *You and I, and the boy, read Virgil,* is one sentence made up of these three, by the conjunction *and* twice employed; *I read Virgil; You read Virgil; The boy reads Virgil.* In like manner, "*You and I read Virgil, but the boy reads Ovid,*" is one sentence, made up of three, by the conjunctions *and* and *but*.

Conjunctions, according to their different meanings, are divided into the following classes:

1. COPULATIVE; as, *et, ac, atque, que,* and; *etiam, quæque, item,* also; *cum, tum,* both, and. Also their contraries, *nec, neque, neu, neve,* neither, nor.

2. DISJUNCTIVE; as, *aut, ve, vel, seu, sive,* either, or.

3. CONCESSIVE; as, *etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, licet, quanquam, quamvis,* though, although, albeit.

4. ADVERSATIVE; as, *sed, verum, autem, at, ast, atqui,* but; *tamen, attamen, veruntamen, verumēnīmvēro,* yet, notwithstanding, nevertheless.

5. CAUSAL; as, *nam, namque, enim,* for; *quia, quippe, quoniam,* because; *quòd,* that, because.

6. ILLATIVE or RATIONAL; as, *ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque,* therefore; *quapropter, quocirca,* wherefore; *proinde,* therefore; *cum, quum,* seeing, since; *quandoquidem,* forasmuch as.

7. FINAL or PERFECTIVE; as, *ut, uti,* that, to the end that.

8. CONDITIONAL; as, *si, sin, if; dum, modo, dummodo,* provided, upon condition that; *siquidem,* if indeed.

9. EXCEPTIVE or RESTRICTIVE; as, *ni, nisi,* unless, except.

10. DIMINUTIVE; as, *sullem, certe,* at least.

11. SUSPENSIVE or DUBITATIVE; as, *an, anne, num,* whether; *ne, annon,* whether, not; *necne,* or, not.

12. EXPLETIVE; as, *autem, vero,* now, truly; *quidem, equidem,* indeed.

13. ORDINATIVE; as, *deinde,* thereafter; *denique,* finally; *insuper,* moreover; *ceterum,* moreover, but, however.

14. DECLARATIVE; as, *videlicet, scilicet, nempe, nimirum,* &c. to wit, namely.

Obs. 1. The same words, as they are taken in different views, are both *adverbs* and *conjunctions*. Thus, *an, anne,* &c. are either *interrogative*

ative adverbs : as, *An scribit ? Does he write ?* or, *suspensive conjunctions* ; as, *Nescio an scribat, I know not if he writes.*

Obs. 2. Some conjunctions, according to their natural order, stand first in a sentence ; as, *Ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, siue, at, sed, verum, nam, quandoquidem, quocirca, quare, fin, siquidem, præterquam, &c.* : some stand in the second-place ; as, *Aulem, vero, quoque, quidem, enim* : and some may indifferently be put either first or second ; as *Etiam, equidem, licet, quamvis, quanquam, tamen, attamen, namque, quod, quia, quoniam, quippe, utpote, ut, uti, ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque, proinde, propterea, si, ni, nisi, &c.* Hence arose the division of them into *Prepositive, Subjunctive, and Common.* To the subjunctive may be added these three, *que, ve, ne*, which are always joined to some other word ; and are called *Enclitics*, because, when put after long syllables, they make the accent incline to the foregoing syllable ; as in the following verse,

Indoculusque pilæ, discive, trachive, quiescit. Horat.

But when these enclitic conjunctions come after a short vowel, they do not affect its pronunciation ; thus,

Arbutos fetus montanæque fraga legebant. Ovid.

SENTENCES.

S E N T E N C E S.

A SENTENCE is any thought of the mind expressed by two or more words put together ; as, *I read.* *The boy reads Virgil.*

That part of grammar which teaches to put words rightly together in sentences, is called *Syntax* or *Construction*.

Words in sentences have a twofold relation to one another ; namely, that of *Concord* or *Agreement* ; and that of *Government* or *Influence*.

Concord, is when one word agrees with another in some accidents ; as, in gender, number, person, or case.

Government, is when one word requires another to be put in a certain case, or mode.

General Principles of SYNTAX.

1. In every sentence there must be a verb and a nominative expressed or understood.
2. Every adjective must have a substantive expressed or understood.
3. All the cases of Latin nouns, except the nominative and vocative, must be governed by some other word.
4. The genitive is governed by a substantive noun expressed or understood.
5. The dative is governed by adjectives and verbs.
6. The accusative is governed by an active verb, or by a preposition ; or is placed before the infinitive.
7. The vocative stands by itself, or has an interjection joined with it.
8. The ablative is governed by a preposition expressed or understood.
9. The infinitive is governed by some verb or adjective.
10. The genitive or possessive case in English always depends on some noun ; and the objective or accusative case is put after a verb active or a preposition.

All

All Sentences are either SIMPLE or COMPOUND.

Syntax therefore may be divided into two parts, according to the general division of sentences.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

A Simple Sentence is that which has but one nominative; and one finite verb, *that is*, a verb in the indicative, subjunctive, or imperative mode.

In a simple sentence, there is only one *Subject* and one *Attribute*.

The *SUBJECT* is the word which marks the person or thing spoken of.

The *ATTRIBUTE* expresses what we affirm concerning the subject, as,

The boy reads his lesson : Here, "the boy," is the *Subject* of discourse, or the person spoken of; "reads his lesson," is the *Attribute*, or what we affirm concerning the subject. *The diligent boy reads his lesson carefully at home*. Here we have still the same subject, "the boy," marked by the character of "diligent," added to it; and the same attribute, "reads his lesson," with the circumstances of manner and place subjoined, "carefully," "at home."

C O N C O R D.

The following words agree together in sentences, 1. A substantive with a substantive. 2. An adjective with a substantive. 3. A verb with a nominative.

1. *Agreement of one Substantive with another.*

RULE I. / Substantives signifying the same thing, agree in case; | as,

Cicero orator, Cicero the Orator; *Ciceronis oratoris*, Of Cicero the Orator.
Urbs Athēnæ, The city Athens; *Urbis Athēnārum*, Of the city Athens.

2. *Agreement of an Adjective with a Substantive.*

II. / An Adjective agrees with a Substantive, in gender, number, and case; | as,

<i>Bonus vir</i> , a good man;	<i>Boni viri</i> , good men.
<i>Famina casta</i> , a chaste woman;	<i>Famine castæ</i> , chaste women.
<i>Dulce pomum</i> , a sweet apple;	<i>Dulcia poma</i> , sweet apples.

And so through all the cases and degrees of comparison.

This.

This rule applies also to Adjective pronouns and participles ; as *Meus liber*, my book ; *ager colendus*, a field to be tilled : Plur. *Mei libri*, *agri*, *colendi*, &c.

Obs. 1. (The substantive is frequently understood, or its place supplied by an infinitive ; and then the adjective is put in the neuter gender ;) as, *triste*, sc. *negotium*, a sad thing, Virg. ; *Tuum scire*, the same with *tua scientia*, thy knowledge, Perf. We sometimes however find the substantive understood in the feminine ; as, *Non posteriores feram*, sup. *partes*, Ter.

Obs. 2. An adjective often supplies the place of a substantive ; as, *Certus amicus*, a sure friend : *Bona ferina*, Good venison ; *Summum bonum*, The chief good : *Homo* being understood to *amicus*, *caro* to *ferina*, and *negotium* to *bonum*. A substantive is sometimes used as an adjective ; as, *incola turba vocant*, the inhabitants, Ovid *Fast.* 3. 582.

Obs. 3. These adjectives, *primus*, *medius*, *ultimus*, *extremus*, *infimus*, *imus*, *summus*, *supremus*, *reliquus*, *catera*, usually signify the first part, the middle part, &c. of any thing ; as, *Media nox*, the middle part of the night ; *Summa arbor*, the highest part of a tree.

Obs. 4. In English, the adjective generally goes before the noun ; as, a wise man, a good horse ; unless something depend upon the adjective ; as, food convenient for me ; or the adjective be emphatical ; as, Alexander the Great. And the article goes before the Adjective : except the adjectives *all*, *such*, and *many*, and others subjoined to the adverbs *so*, *as*, and *how* ; as, all the men ; many a man, so good a man ; as good a man ; how beautiful a prospect ! or when there are two or more adjectives joined to the noun ; as, a man learned and religious.

Obs. 5. Whether the adjective or substantive ought to be placed first in Latin, no certain rule can be given. Only if the substantive be a monosyllable, and the adjective a polysyllable, the substantive is elegantly put first ; as, *vir clarissimus*, *res præstantissima*, &c.

Obs. 6. A substantive in English, sometimes supplies the place of an adjective ; as, sea-water, land-forest, forest-trees, a stone-arch, &c. and even when no hyphen is marked ; as, the London Chronicle, the Edinburgh Magazine.

Obs. 7. Nouns of measure, number, and weight, are sometimes joined in the singular with Numeral Adjectives plural ; as, fifty foot ; six score ; ten thousand fathom ; a hundred head ; an hundred weight. We say, by this means, by that means ; for, by these means, by those means ; or, by this mean, by that mean, as it was used anciently : So, This forty

ty years, for *these*; *these* and *these kind of things*, for *this* and *that*. *Each*, *every*, *either*, are always joined with the singular number, unless the plural noun convey a collective idea; as, *every twelve years*.

3. Agreement of a Verb with a Nominative.

III. / A Verb agrees with its Nominative in number and person ;| as,

Ego lego, I read;

Nos legimus, We read.

Tu scribis, Thou writest or you write; *Vos scribitis*, Ye or you write;

Præceptor docet, the master teaches; *Præceptores docent*, Masters teach.

And so through all the modes, tenses, and numbers.

Obs. 1. *Ego* and *nos* are of the first person; *tu* and *vos* of the second person; *ille* and all other words, of the third. The nominative of the first and second person in Latin is seldom expressed, unless for the sake of emphasis or distinction; as, *Tu es patronus*, *tu pater*, Ter. *Tu legis*, *ego scribo*.

Obs. 2. / An infinitive, or some part of a sentence, often supplies the place of a nominative;| as, *Mentiri est turpe*, to lie is base; *Diu non perlitatum tenuit dictatorem*; The sacrifice not being attended with favourable omens detained the dictator for a long time, Liv. 7. 8. Sometimes the neuter pronoun *id* or *illud* is added, to express the meaning more strongly; as, *Facere quæ libet*, *id est esse regem*, Sallust.

Obs. 3. The infinitive mode often supplies the place of the third person of the imperfect of the indicative; as, *Milites fugere*, the soldiers fled, for *fugiebant* or *fugere ceperunt*. *Invidere omnes mihi*, for *invidebant*.

Obs. 4. / A collective noun may be joined with a verb either of the singular or of the plural number; as, *Multitudo stat*, or *stant*;| The multitude stands, or stand.

A collective noun, when joined with a verb singular, expresses many considered as one whole; but when joined with a verb plural, signifies many separately, or as individuals. Hence, if an adjective or participle be subjoined to the verb, when of the singular number, they will agree both in gender and number with the collective noun; but if the verb be plural, the adjective or participle will be plural also, and of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed; as, *Pars erant casti*; *Pars obnixæ trudent*, sc. *formicæ*, Virg. Æn. iv. 406. *Magna pars raptæ*, sc. *virginæ*, Liv. i. 9.

Sometimes,

Sometimes, however, though more rarely, the adjective is thus used in the singular ; as, *Pars arduus*, Virg. *Æn.* vii. 624.

Obs. 5. The neuter pronoun *it* in English, is often the nominative to the verb when we speak either of persons or things ; as, *It is I ; it is he ; it was they ; it appears* ; in Latin, *Ego sum, ille est, &c.* *It* is sometimes understood ; as, *may be*, for, *it may be* ; *as follows*, for, *as it follows* ; *as is thought*, for, *as it is thought*.

Obs. 6. We often say in English, *You was*, instead of *You were* ; which is a great inaccuracy in grammar ; but so frequently used, particularly in common conversation, that it seems to be in a manner established by custom. So *there's two or three of us*, for *there are* ; *There was more Sophists*, for *were* ; *great pains has been taken*, for *have*, &c.

Accusative before the Infinitive.

¶ IV. The infinitive mode has an accusative before it ; as,

Gaudeo te valere,

I am glad that you are well.

Obs. 1. The participle *that* in English, is the sign of the accusative before the infinitive in Latin, when it comes between two verbs, without expressing intention or design. Sometimes the participle is omitted ; as, *Aiunt regem adventare*, They say the king is coming, *that* being understood.

Obs. 2. The accusative before the infinitive always depends upon some other verb, commonly on a neuter or substantive verb ; but seldom on a verb taken in an active sense.

Obs. 3. The infinitive, with the accusative before it, seems sometimes to supply the place of a nominative ; as, *Turpe est militem fugere*, That a soldier should fly is a shameful thing.

Obs. 4. The infinitive *esse* or *fuisse*, must frequently be supplied, especially after participles ; as, *Hostium exercitum cæsum fasumque cognovi*, Cic. Sometimes both the accusative and infinitive are understood ; as, *Pollicitus suscepturum*, scil. *me esse*, Ter.

Obs. 5. The infinitive may frequently be otherwise rendered by the conjunctions, *quod*, *ut*, *ne*, or *quin* ; as, *Gaudeo te valere*, i. e. *quod valeas*, or *propter tuam bonam valetudinem* : *Jubeo vos bene sperare*, or *ut bene speretis* ; *Prohibeo eum exire*, or *ne exeat* : *non dubito eum fecisse*, or much better, *quin fecerit*. *Scio quod filius amet*, Plaut. for *filium amare*. *Miror, si potuit*, for *eum potuisse*, Cic. *Nemo dubitat, ut populus Romanus omnes virtute superârit*, for *populum Romanum superasse*, Nep. *Ex animi sententia juro, ut ego rempublicam non deferam*, for *me non deserturum esse*, Liv. xxii. 53.

The same Case after a Verb as before it.

¶ V. Any Verb may have the same case after it as before it ; *when both words refer to the same thing ;* as,

Ego sum discipulus,

I am a scholar.

Tu vocaris Joannes,

You are named John.

Illa incedit regina,

She walks as a queen.

Scio illum haberi sapientem,

I know that he is esteemed wise.

Scio vos esse discipulos,

I know that you are scholars.

So *Redeo iratus, jaceo supplex ; Evadent digni*, they will become worthy ; *Rempublicum defendi adolescens ; nolo esse longus*, I am unwilling to be tedious ; *Malim videri timidus, quam parum prudens*, Cic. *Non licet mihi esse negligenti*, Cic. *Natura dedit omnibus esse beatis*, Claud. *Cupio me esse clementem ; cupio non putari mendacem ; Vult esse medium*, sc. *se*, He wishes to be neuter, Cic. *Disce esse pater ; Hoc est esse patrem ?* sc. *eum*, Ter. *Id est, dominum, non imperatorem esse ;* Sallust.

Obs. 1. This rule implies nothing else but the agreement of an adjective with a substantive, or of one substantive with another ; for those words in a sentence which refer to the same object, must always agree together, how much soever disjoined.

Obs. 2. The verbs which most frequently have the same case after them as before them, are,

1. Substantive and neuter verbs ; as, *Sum, fio, forem*, and *existo ; eo, venio, sto, sedeo, evado, jaceo, fugio, &c.*

2. The passive of verbs of naming, judging, &c. as, *Dicor, appellor, vocor, nominor, nuncupor*, to which add, *videor, existimor, creor, constituor, salutor, designor, &c.*

These and other like verbs, admit after them only the nominative, accusative, or dative. When they have before them the genitive, they have after them an accusative ; as, *Interest omnium esse bonos*, scil. *se* ; It is the interest of all to be good. In some cases we can use either the nom. or acc. promiscuously ; as, *Cupio, dici doctus* or *doctum*, sc. *me dici ; Cupio esse clemens, non putari mendax ; vult esse medius*.

Obs. 3. When any of the above verbs are placed between two nominatives of different numbers, they commonly agree in number with the former ; as, *Dos est decem talenta*, Her dowry is ten talents, Ter. *Omnia pontus erant*, Ovid. But sometimes with the latter ; as, *Amantium iræ amoris integratio est*, The quarrels of lovers is a renewal of love, Ovid. So when an adjective is applied to two substantives of different genders, it commonly agrees in gender with that sub-

stantive

stantive which is most the subject of discourse; as, *Oppidum est appellatum Possidonia*, Plin. Sometimes, however, the adjective agrees with the nearer substantive; as, *Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*, Cic.

Obs. 4. When the infinitive of any verb, particularly the substantive verb *esse*, has the dative before it, governed by an Impersonal verb, or any other word, it may have after it either the dative or the accusative; as, *Licet mihi esse beato*, I may be happy; or *licet mihi esse beatum*, *me* being understood; thus, *licet mihi (me) esse beatum*. The dative before *esse* is often to be supplied; as, *Licet esse beatum*, One may be happy, *scil. alicui* or *homini*.

Obs. 5. The poets use certain forms of expression, which are not to be imitated in prose; as, *Reitulit Ajax Jovis esse pronepos*, for *Se esse pronepotem*, Ovid. Met. xii. 141. *Cum pateris sapiens emendatusque vocari*, for *te vocari sapientem*, &c. Horat. Ep. i. 16 30. *Acceptum refero versibus esse nocens*; Ovid. *Tutumque putavit jam bonus esse fover*; Lucan.

Obs. 6. The verb *to be* in English, has always a nominative case after it; as, *It was I*: unless it be of the infinitive mode; as, *I took it to be him*. We often use however this impropriety in common conversation, *It is me*, *It can't be me*, *It was him*; for, *It is I*, *It cannot be I*, *It was he*.

GOVERNMENT.

I. The GOVERNMENT of SUBSTANTIVES.

VI. / One Substantive governs another in the genitive, (*when the latter Substantive signifies a different thing from the former*) ; as,

Amor Dei, the love of God. *Lex naturæ*, The law of nature.

Domus Cæsaris, The house of Cæsar, or Cæsar's house.

Obs. 1. When one substantive is governed by another in the genitive, it expresses in general the relation of property or possession, and therefore is often elegantly turned into a possessive adjective; as, *Domus patris*, or *paterna*, a father's house; *Filius veri* or *verilis*, a master's son: and among the poets, *Labor Herculeus*, for *Herculis*; *Ensis Evandrius*, for *Evandri*.

Obs. 2. When the substantive noun in the genitive signifies a person, it may be taken either in an active or a passive sense; thus, *Amor Dei*, The love of God, either means the love of God towards us, or our love towards him: So *caritas patris*, signifies either, the affection of a father to his children, or theirs to him. But often the substantive can only be taken either in an active or in a passive sense; thus, *Timor Dei*, always implies *Deus timetur*; and *Providentia Dei*, *Deus providet*. So *Caritas ipsius soli*, affection to the very soil, Liv. ii. 1.

Obs. 3. Both the former and latter substantive are sometimes to be understood; as, *Hæctoris Andromache*, *scil. uxor*; *Ventum est ad Veste*, *scil. ædem* or *templum*; *Ventum est tria millia*, *scil. passuum*, three miles.

Obs. 4. We find the dative often used after a verb for the genitive, particularly

particularly among the poets ; as, *Ei corpus porrigitur*, His body is extended ; Virg. *Æn.* vi. 596.

Obs. 5. Some substantives are joined with certain prepositions ; as, *Amicitia*, *inimicitia*, *pax*, *cum aliquo* ; *Amor in*, vel *erga*, *aliquem* ; *Gaudium de re* ; *Cura de aliquo* ; *Mentio illius*, vel *de illo* ; *Quius ab armis* ; *Fumus ex incendiis* ; *Prædator ex sociis*, for *sociorum*, Sallust, &c.

Obs. 6. The genitive in Latin is often rendered in English by several other particles besides *of* ; as, *Descensus Averni*, the descent to *Ayernus* ; *Prudentia juris*, skill in the law.

SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS are governed in the genitive like substantive nouns ; as, *pars mei*, a part of me.

So also adjective pronouns when used as substantives, or having a noun understood ; as, *Liber ejus*, *illius*, *hujus*, &c. The book of him, or his book, sc. *hominis* : The book of her, or her book, sc. *feminæ*. *Libri eorum*, v. *earum*, their books ; *Cujus liber*, the book of whom, or whose book ; *Quorum libri*, whose books, &c. But we always say, *meus liber*, not *mei* ; *pater noster*, not *nostri* ; *suum jus*, not *sui*.

When a passive sense is expressed, we use *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostri*, *vestri*, *nostrum*, *vestrum* ; but we use their possessives, when an active sense is expressed ; as, *Amor mei*, The love of me, that is, The love wherewith I am loved : *Amor meus*, My love, that is, the love wherewith I love. We find however the possessives sometimes used passively, and their primitives taken actively ; as, *Odium tuum*, Hatred of thee, Ter. Phorm. v. 3. 27. *Labor mei*, My Labour, Plaut.

The possessives *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *oster*, *vester*, have sometimes nouns, pronouns, and participles after them in the genitive ; as, *Pectus tuum hominis simplicis*, Cic. Phil. ii. 43. *Noster duorum eventus*, Liv. *Tuum ipsius studium*, Cic. *Mea scripta timentis*, &c. Hor. *Solius meum peccatum corrigi non potest*, Cic. *Id maxime quemque decet, quod est cujusque suum maxime*. Id.

The reciprocals *SUI* and *SUUS* are used, when the action of the verb is reflected, as it were, upon its nominative : as, *Cato interfecit se*, *Miles defendit suam vitam* : *Dicit se scripturum esse*. We find however *is* or *ille* sometimes used in examples of this kind ; as, *Deum agnoscimus ex operibus ejus*, Cic. *Persuadent Rauracis, ut una cum iis proficiscantur*, for *una secum*, Cæsar.

VII. / If the latter Substantive have an Adjective of praise or dispraise joined with it, they may be put in the genitive or ablative ; | as,

Vir summæ prudentiæ, or *summâ prudentiâ*, A man of great wisdom.

Puer probæ indolis, or *probâ indole*, A boy of a good disposition.

Obs. 1. The ablative here is not properly governed by the foregoing substantive, but by some preposition understood ; as *cum*, *de*, *ex*, *in*, &c. Thus, *Vir summâ prudentiâ*, is the same with *vir cum summa prudentiâ*.

Obs.

Obs. 2. In some phrases the genitive is only used ; as, *Magni formica laboris*, The laborious ant ; *Vir imi subsellii*, homo minimi pretii, a person of the lowest rank. *Homo nullius stipendii*, a man of no experience in war ; Sallust. *Non multi cibi hospitem accipies, sed multi joci*, Cic. *Ager trium jugerum*. In others only the ablative ; as, *Es bono animo*, Be of good courage. *Mira sum alacritate ad litigandum*, Cic. *Capite aperto est*, His head is bare ; *obvoluto*, covered. *Capite et supercilio semper est rasis*, Id. *Mulier magno natu*, Liv. Sometimes both are used in the same sentence ; as, *Adolescens eximia spe, summæ virtutis*, Cic. The ablative more frequently occurs in prose than the genitive.

Obs. 3. Sometimes the adjective agrees in case with the former substantive, and then the latter substantive is put in the ablative : thus, we say, either, *Vir præstantis ingenii*, or *præstanti ingenio* ; or *Vir præstans ingenio*, and sometimes *præstans ingenii*. Among the poets the latter substantive is frequently put in the accusative by a Greek construction, *secundum*, or *quod ad* being understood by the figure commonly called *Synecdöche* ; as, *Miles fractus membra*, i. e. *fractus secundum* or *quod ad membra*, or *habens membra fracta*, Horat. *Os humerosque deo similis*, Virg.

Adjectives taken as Substantives.

VIII. / An Adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive governs the genitive ; as, *Multum pecuniæ*, Much money. *Quid rei est ?* What is the matter ?

Obs. 1. This manner of expression is more elegant than *Multa Pecunia*, and therefore is much used by the best writers ; as, *Plus eloquentiæ, minus sapientiæ, tantum fidei, id negotii ; quicquid erat patrum, reos diceres*, Liv. *Id loci ; Ad hoc ætatis*, Sallust.

Obs. 2. The adjectives which thus govern the genitive like substantives, generally signify quantity ; as, *multum, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum, minus, minimum, &c.* To which add, *hoc, illud, istud, id, quid, aliquid, quidvis, quiddam, &c.* *Plus* and *quid* almost always govern the genitive, and therefore by some are thought to be substantives.

Obs. 3. *Nihil*, and these neuter pronouns *quid, aliquid, &c.* elegantly govern neuter adjectives of the first and second declension in the genitive ; as, *nihil sinceri*, no sincerity ; but seldom govern in this manner adjectives of the third declension, particularly those which end in *is* and *e* ; as, *Nequid hostile timerent*, not *hostilis* : we find however *quicquid civilis*, Liv. v. 3.

Obs. 4. Plural adjectives of the neuter gender also govern the genitive, commonly the genitive plural ; as, *Angusta viarum, Opaca locorum, Telluris aperta, loca* being understood. So *Amara curarum, acuta belli*, sc. *negotia*, Horat. An adjective indeed of any gender may have a genitive after it, with a substantive understood ; as, *Amicus Cæsaris, Patria Ulysses, &c.*

Opus and Usus.

IX. *Opus* and *Usus*, signifying *need*, require the ablative ;/ as,

Est opus pecuniâ, There is need of money ; *Usus viribus*, Need of strength.

Obs. 1. *Opus* and *usus* are substantive nouns, and do not govern the ablative of themselves, but by some preposition, as *pro* or the like, understood. (They sometimes also, although more rarely, govern the genitive ;) as, *Lectionis opus est*, Quint. *Operæ usus est*, Liv.

Obs. 2. *Opus* is often construed like an indeclinable adjective ; as, *Dux rebis opus est*, We need a general, Cic. *Dices nummos mihi opus esse*, Id. *Nobis exempla opus sunt*, Id.

Obs. 3. *Opus* is elegantly joined with the perfect participle ; as, *Opus maturato*, Need of haste ; *Opus consulto*, Need of deliberation ; *Quid facto usus est ?* Ter. The participle has sometimes a substantive joined with it ; as, *Mihi opus fuit Hirtio convento*, It behoved me to meet with Hirtius, Cic.

Obs. 4. *Opus* is sometimes joined with the infinitive, or the subjunctive with *ut*, as, *Siquid forte sit, quod opus sit sciri*, Cic. *Nunc tibi opus est, ægram ut te adsimules*, Plaut. *Sive opus est imperitare equis*, Horat. It is often placed *absolutely*, i. e. without depending on any other word ; as, *sic opus est ; si opus sit*, &c.

II. GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

I. *Adjectives governing the Genitive.*

X. Verbal adjectives, or such as signify an affection of the mind, govern the genitive ;/ as,

Avidus gloriæ, Desirous of glory. *Ignarus fraudis*, Ignorant of fraud. *Memor beneficiorum*, Mindful of favours.

(To this rule belong, I. Verbal adjectives in AX ;) as, *capax*, *edax*, *ferax*, *tenax*, *pertinax*, &c. (and certain participial adjectives in NS and TUS ;) as, *amans*, *appetens*, *cupiens*, *insolens*, *sciens* ; *consultus*, *doctus*, *expertus*, *insuetus*, *insolitus*, &c. II. (Adjectives expressing various affections of the mind ;) I. (Desire ;) as, *avarus*, *cupidus*, *studiosus*, &c. 2. (Knowledge, ignorance and doubting) ; as, *callidus*, *certus*, *certior*, *consciens*, *gnarus*, *peritus*, *prudens*, &c. *Ignarus*, *incertus*, *insciens*, *imprudens*, *imperitus*, *immemor*, *rudis* ; *ambiguus*, *dubius*, *suspensus*, &c. 3. (Care and diligence, and the contrary ;) as, *anxius*, *curiosus*, *solicitus*, *providus*, *diligens* ; *incuriosus*, *securus*, *negligens*, &c. 4. (Fear and confidence ;) as, *formidolosus*, *pavidus*, *timidus*, *trepidus* ; *impavidus*, *interri-*
tus,

tus, intrepidus. 5. / Guilt and innocence ; / as, *noxius, reus, suspectus, compertus ; innoxius, innocens, insons.*

To these add many adjectives of various significations ; as, *ager animi ; ardens, audax, aversus, diversus, egregius, erectus, falsus, felix, fessus, furens, ingens, integer, latus, præstans animi ; modicus voti ; integer vitæ ; seri studiorum, Hor.* But we say *ager pedibus, ardens in cupiditatibus, præstans doctrinâ, modicus cultu ; Latus negotio, de re, or propter rem, &c.* and never *ager pedum, &c.*

Obs. 1. Verbals in NS are used both as adjectives and participles ; thus, *patiens, algoris*, able to bear cold ; and *patiens algorem*, actually bearing cold. So *amans virtutis*, and *amans virtutem* : *doctus grammaticæ*, skilled in grammar ; *doctus grammaticam*, one who has learned it.

Obs. 2. Many of these adjectives vary their construction, as, *avidus in pecuniis, Cic.* *Avidior ad rem, Ter.* *Fure consultus & peritus, or juris, Cic.* *Rudis literarum, in jure civili, Cic.* *Rudis arte, ad mala, Ovid.* *Doctus Latine, Latinis literis, Cic.* *Affuetus labore, in omnia, Liv.* *mensæ herili, Virg.* *Insuetus moribus Romanis, in the dat. Liv.* *Laboris, ad onera portanda, Cæsar.* *Desuetus bello, & triumphis, in the dat. or abl. rather the dat. Virg.* *Anxius, sollicitus, securus, de re aliqua ; diligens, in, ad, de, Cic.* *Negligens in aliquem, in or de re : Reus de vi, criminibus, Cic.* *Certior factus de re, rather than rei, Cic.*

Obs. 3. The genitive after these adjectives is thought to be governed by *causâ, in re, or in negotio*, or some such word understood ; as, *Cupidus laudis*, i. e. *causâ* or *in re laudis*, desirous of praise, that is, on account of, or in the matter of praise. But many of the adjectives themselves may be supposed to contain in their own signification the force of a substantive ; thus, *studiosus pecuniæ*, fond of money, is the same with *habens studium pecuniæ*, having a fondness for money.

XI. / Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural ; as,

Aliquis philosophorum,

Some one of the philosophers.

Senior fratrum,

The elder of the brothers.

Doctissimus Romanorum,

The most learned of the Romans.

Quis nostrum ?

Which of us ?

Una musarum,

One of the muses.

Octavus sapientum,

The eighth of the wise men.

/ Adjectives are called *Partitives*, or are said to be placed *partitively*, when they signify a part of any number of persons or things, having after them, in English, *of* or *among* ; as, *alius, nullus, solus, &c. quis* and *qui*, with their compounds : also Comparatives, Superlatives, and

some Numerals ; as, *unus, duo, tres ; primus, secundus, &c.* To these add *multi, pauci, plerique, medius.*

Obs. 1. Partitives, &c. agree in gender with the substantive which they have after them in the genitive ; but when there are two substantives of different genders, the partitive, &c. rather agrees with the former ; as, *Indus fluminum maximus*, Cic. Rarely with the latter ; as, *Delphinus animalium velocissimum*, Plin. The genitive here is governed by *ex numero*, or by the same substantive understood in the singular number ; as, *Nulla sororum*, scil. *soror*, or *ex numero sororum*.

Obs. 2. Partitives, &c. are often otherwise construed with the prepositions *de, e, ex*, or *in* ; as, *Unus de fratribus* ; or by the poets, with *ante* or *inter* ; as, *Pulcherrimus ante omnes, for omnium*, Virg. *Primus inter omnes*, Id.

Obs. 3. Partitives, &c. govern collective nouns in the genitive singular, and are of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed ; as, *Vir fortissimus nostræ civitatis*. Cic. *Maximus stirpis*, Liv. *Ultimos orbis Britannos*, Horat. od. i. 35. 29.

Obs. 4. Comparatives are used, when we speak of two ; Superlatives when we speak of more than two ; as, *Major Fratrum*, The elder of the brothers, meaning *two* ; *Maximus fratrum*, The eldest of the brothers, meaning *more than two*. In like manner, *uter, alter, neuter*, are applied with regard to two ; *quis, unus, alius, nullus*, with regard to three or more ; as, *Uter vestrum*, Whether or which of you *two* ; *Quis vestrum*, Which of you *three* : but these are sometimes taken promiscuously the one for the other.

2. Adjectives governing the Dative.

XII. Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, &c. govern the dative ; as,

Utilis bello,

Profitable for War.

Perniciosus reipublicæ,

Hurtful to the commonwealth.

Similis patri,

Like to his father.

Or thus, Any adjective may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs *TO* or *FOR* after it in English.

(To this rule belong)

1. Adjectives of profit or disprofit ; as, *Benignus bonus, commodus, felix, fructuosus, prosper, saluber*. — *Calamitosus, damnosus, dirus, exitiosus, funestus, incommodus, malus, noxius, perniciosus, pestifer*.

2. Of pleasure or pain ; as, *Acceptus, dulcis, gratus, gratiosus, jucundus, letus, suavis*. — *Acerbus, amarus, insuavis, injucundus, ingratus, molestus, tristis*.

3. Of friendship or hatred ; as, *Addictus, æquus, amicus, benevolus, blandus, carus, deditus, fidus, fidelis, lenis, mitis, propitius*. — *Adversus, æmulus, asper, crudelis, contrarius, infensus, infestus, infidus, immitis, inimicus, iniquus, invisus, invidus, iratus, odiosus, suspectus, trux*.

4. Of clearness or obscurity ; as, *Apertus, certus, compertus, conspicuus, manifestus,*

manifestus, notus, perspicuus.——*Ambiguus, dubius, ignotus, incertus, obscurus.*

5. Of nearness ; as, *Finitimus, propior, proximus, propinquus, socius, vicinus.*

6. Of fitness or unfitness ; as, *Aptus, appositus, accommodatus, habilis, idoneus, opportunus.*——*Ineptus, inhabilis, importunus, inconueniens.*

7. Of ease or difficulty ; as, *Facilis ; levis, obuius, peruius.*——*Difficilis, arduus, grauis, laboriosus, periculosus, inuius.* To these add such as signify propensity or readiness ; as, *Pronus, proclivis, propensus, promptus, paratus.*

8. Of equality or inequality ; as, *Æqualis, æquus, par, compar, suppar.*——*Inequalis, impar, dissar, discors.* [Also of likeness or unlikeness,] as, *Similis, amulus, geminus.*——*Dissimilis, alienus, alienus, diversus, discolor.*

9. Several adjectives compounded with CON / as, *Cognatus, concolor, concors, consatis, congruus, consanguineus, consentaneus, consonus, conueniens, contiguus, continuus, continens, contiguous ;* as, *Mari aër continens est,* Cic.

[To these add many other Adjectives of various significations ; as, *Obnoxius, subiectus, supplex, credulus, absurdus, decorus, deformis, presto, indecl. at hand, secundus, &c.*——particularly.

(Verbals in BILIS and DUS govern the dative ; as,

Amandus vel amabilis omnibus, To be loved by all men.

So *Mors est terribilis malis ; Optabilis omnibus pax ; Adhibenda est nobis diligentia,* Cic. *Semel omnibus calcanda est via lethi,* Hor. Also some participles of the perfect tense ; as, *Bella matribus detestata,* hated by, Hor.

Verbals in DUS are often construed with the prep. *a* ; as, *Deus est venerandus & colendus a nobis,* Cic. Perfect participles are usually so ; as, *Mors Crassi est a multis desleta,* rather than, *multis desleta,* Cic. *A te invitatus, rogatus, proditus, &c.* hardly ever *tibi.*

Obs. 1. The dative is properly not governed by adjectives, nor by any other part of speech ; but put after them, to express the object to which their signification refers.

The particle *to* in English is often to be supplied ; as, *Similis patri,* Like his father, *to* being understood.

Obs. 2. Substantives have likewise sometimes a dative after them ; as, *Ille est pater, dux, vel filius mihi,* He is father, leader, or son to me : so, *Præsidium reis, decus amicis, &c.* Hor. *Exilium pecori,* Virg. *Virtutibus hostis,* Cic.

Obs. 3. [The following adjectives have sometimes the dative after them, and sometimes the genitive ; *Affinis, similis, communis, par, proprius, finitimus, fidus, conterminus, supersies, conscius, æqualis, contrarius,* and *adversus ;*

versus ; as, *Similis tibi*, or *tui* ; *Superstes patri* or *patris* ; *Consciens facinori* or *facinoris*. *Consciens* and some others frequently govern both the genitive and dative ; as, *Mens sibi conscia recti*. We say, *Similes*, *dissimiles*, *pari*, *dispari*, *æquales*, *communes*, *inter se* : *Par & communis cum aliquo*. *Civitas secum ipsa discors* ; *discordes ad alia*. Liv.

Obs. 4. [Adjectives signifying usefulness, or fitness, and the contrary, have after them the dative or the accusative with a preposition ;] as,

Utilis, *inutilis*, *aptus*, *ineptus*, *accommodatus*, *idoneus*, *habilis*, *inhabilis*, *opportūnus*, *conveniens*, &c. *alicui rei*, or *ad aliquid*. Many other adjectives governing the dative are likewise construed with prepositions ; as, *Attentus quaesitis*, Hor. *Attentus ad rem*, Ter.

Obs. 5. Of adjectives which denote friendship or hatred, or any other affection of the mind towards any one. I. Some are usually construed with the dative only ; as, *Affabilis*, *arrogans*, *asper*, *carus*, *difficilis*, *fidelis*, *invisus*, *iratus*, *offensus*, *suspectus*, ALICUI. II. Some with the preposition IN and the accusative ; as, *Acerbus*, *animatus*, *beneficus*, *gratiosus*, *injuriōsus*, *liberalis*, *mendax*, *misericors*, *officiōsus*, *pius*, *impius*, *prolixus*, *severus*, *sordidus*, *torvus*, *vehemens*, IN ALIQUEM. III. Some either with the dative, or with the accus. and the preposition IN, ERGA, or ADVERSUS going before ; as, *Contumax*, *crimineus*, *durus*, *exitibilis*, *gravis*, *hospitalis*, *implacabilis*, (and perhaps also *inexorabilis* & *intolerabilis*,) *iniquus*, *sevus*, ALICUI OR IN ALIQUEM. *Benevolus*, *benignus*, *molestus*, ALICUI OR ERGA ALIQUEM. *Milis comis* ; IN, OR ERGA ALIQUEM, and ALICUI. *Pervicax* ADVERSUS ALIQUEM. *Cruclis* IN ALIQUEM ; seldom ALICUI. *Amicus*, *æmulus*, *insensus*, *infestus*, ALICUI, seldom IN ALIQUEM. *Gratus* ALICUI, OR IN, ERGA, ADVERSUS ALIQUEM. We say *alienus alicui* or *alicujus* ; but oftener *ab aliquo*, and sometimes *aliquo* without the preposition.

AUDIENS is construed with two datives ; as, *Regi dicto audiens erat*, he was obedient to the king ; not *regis* ; *Dicto audiens fuit jussis magistratuum*, Nep. *Nobis dicto audientes sunt*, not *dictis*, Cic.

Obs. 6. Adjectives signifying motion or tendency to a thing, have usually after them the accusative with the preposition *ad* or *in*, seldom the dative ; as,

Pronus, *propensus*, *proclivis*, *celer*, *tardus*, *piger*, &c. *ad iram*, or *in iram*.

Obs. 7. [*Propior* and *proximus*, in imitation of their primitive *prope*, often govern the accusative] as, *Propior montem*, scil. *ad*, Sall. *Proximus finem*, Liv.

Obs. 8. IDEM sometimes has the dative, chiefly in the poets ; as, *Invitum qui servat, idem facit occidenti*, Hor. *Jupiter omnis idem*, Virg.

Eadem

Eadem illis censemus, Cic. But in prose we commonly find, *idem qui*, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, and also *ut*, *cum*; as, *Peripatetici quondam iidem erant qui Academici*, Cic. *Est animus erga te, idem ac fuit*, Ter. *Dianam & Lunam eandem esse putant*, Cic. *Idem faciunt, ut*, &c. *In eodem loco mecum*, Cic. But it would be improper to say of the same person or thing under different names, *idem cum*; as, *Luna eadem est cum Diana*.

We likewise say, *alius ac*, *atque* or *et*; and so sometimes *similis* & *par*.

3. Adjectives governing the Ablative.

XIII. (These adjectives, *dignus*, *indignus*, *contentus*, *præditus*, *captus*, and *fretus*; also *natus*, *satus*, *ortus*, *editus*, and the like, govern the ablative;) as,

Dignus honore, Worthy of honour. *Captus oculis*, Blind. [strength. *Contentus parvo*, Content with little. *Fretus viribus*, Trusting to his *Præditus virtute*, Endued with virtue. *Ortus regibus*, Descended of kings.

So *generatus*, *creatus*, *cretus*, *prognatus*, *oriundus*, *procreatus regibus*.

Obs. 1. The ablative after these adjectives is governed by some preposition understood; as, *Contentus parvo*, scil. *cum*; *Fretus viribus*, scil. *in*, &c. Sometimes the preposition is expressed; as, *Ortus ex concubina*, Sallust. *Editus de nympba*, Ovid.

Obs. 2. (*Dignus*, *indignus*, and *contentus*, have sometimes the genitive after them;) as, *dignus avorum*, Virg. So *Maeste esto*, or *maesti estote virtutis* or *virtute*, Increase in virtue, or Go on and prosper; *Suberem maeste virtute esse*, sc. *te*, Liv. ii. 12. In the last example *maeste* seems to be used adverbially.

4. Adjectives governing the Genitive or Ablative.

XIV. (Adjectives of plenty or want govern the genitive or ablative;) as,

Plenus iræ or *iræ*, Full of anger. *Inops rationis* or *ratione*, Void of reason.

So *Non inopes temporis, sed prodigi sumus*, Sen. *Lentulus non verbis inops*, Cic. *Dei plena sunt omnia*, Cic. *Maxima quæque domus servis est plena superbis*, Juv. *Res est solliciti plena timoris amor*, Ovid. *Axor & melle & felle est fecundissimus*, Plaut. *Fecunda virorum paupertas fugitur*, Lucan. *Omnium consiliorum ejus particeps*, Curt. *Homo ratione particeps*, Cic. *Nihil insidiis vacuum*, Id. *Vacuas cædis habete manus*, Ovid.

Some of these adjectives are construed, 1. with the genitive only; as, *Benignus, exsors, impos, impotens, irritus, liberalis, munificus, prælargus*.

2. With the ablative only: *Beatus, differtus, frugifer, mutilus, tentus, discentus, tumidus, turgidus*.

3. With the genitive more frequently: *Compos, consors, egenus, exbares, expers, fertilis, indigus, parvus, pauper, prodigus, sterilis*.

4. With

4. With the ablative more frequently : *Abundans, cassus, extorris, fetus, frequens, gravis, gravidus, jejunos, liber, locuples, nudus, oneratus, onustus, orbus, pollens, solutus, truncus, viduus, and captus.*

5. With both promiscuously : *Copiosus, dives, fecundus, ferax, immunis, inanis, inops, largus, modicus, immodicus, nimis, opulentus, plenus, potens, refertus, satur, vacuus, uber.*

6. With a preposition ; as, *Copiosus, firmus, paratus, imparatus, inops, instructus, à re aliqua* ; for *quod ad rem aliquam attinet*, in, or with respect to any thing. *Extorris ab solo patria*, banished ; *Orba ab optimatibus concio*, Liv. So *pauper, tenuis, facundus, modicus, parcus in re aliqua*. *Immunis, inanis, liber, nudus, solutus, vacuus a re aliqua*. *Potens ad rem, & in re.*

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

§ 1. VERBS governing only one Case.

1. Verbs which govern the Genitive.

XV. *Sum*, when it signifies possession, property, or duty, governs the genitive ; as,

Est regis, It belongs to the king ; It is the part or property of a king.

So *Insapientis est dicere, non putarum*, It is the part or property of a fool, &c. *Militum est suo duci parere*, It is the part or duty of soldiers, &c. *Laudare se vani ; vituperare stulti est*, Sen. *Hominis est errare ; Arrogantis est negligere quid de se quisque sentiat*, Cic. *Pecus est Melibai*, Virg. *Hæc sunt hominis* ; Ter. *Pauperis est numerare pecus*, Ovid. *Temeritas est florentis ætatis, prudentia senectutis*, Cic.

¶ *Meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum*, are excepted ; as, *Tuum est*, It is your duty. *Scio tuum esse*, I know that it is your duty.

Obs. 1. These possessive pronouns are used in the neuter gender instead of their substantives, *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*. Other possessives are also construed in this manner ; as, *Est regium, est humanum*, the same with *est regis, est hominis*. *Et facere et parti fortia, Romanum est*. Liv. ii. 12.

Obs. 2. Here some substantive must be understood ; as, *officium, munus, res, negotium, opus, &c.* which are sometimes expressed ; as, *Minus est principum ; Tuum est hoc munus*, Cic. *Neulquam officium liberi esse hominis puto*, Ter. In some cases the preceding substantive may be repeated ; as, *Hic liber est (liber) fratris*. In like manner, some substantive must be supplied in such expressions as these ; *Ea sunt modo gloriosa, neque patranda belli*, scil. *causa* or *facta*, Sall. *Nihil tam æquandæ libertatis est*, for *ad æquandam libertatem pertinet*, Liv.

Obf. 3. We fay, *Hoc est tuum munus*, or *tui muneris* : So *mos est vel fuit*, or *moris*, or *in more*, Cic.

XVI. *Miserere*, *miserescō*, and *satago*, govern the genitive ; as,

Miserere civium tuorum,

Pity your countrymen.

Satagit rerum suarum,

{ He has his hands full at home, or has
enough to do about his own affairs.

Obf. 1. Several other verbs among the poets govern the genitive by a Greek construction, particularly such as signify some affection of the mind ; as, *Ango*, *decipior*, *desipio*, *discrucior*, *excrucio*, *fallo* & *fallor*, *fusilio*, *invideo*, *lutor*, *miror*, *pendeo*, *spudeo*, *vereor* ; as, *Ne angas te animi*, Plaut. *Laborum decipitur*, Hor. *Discrucior animi*, Ter. *Pendet mihi animus*, *pendeo animi vel animo* ; but we always say, *Pendemus animis*, not *animorum*, are in suspence, Cic. *Iustitiæ prius mirer*, Virg. In like manner, *Abstineo*, *desino*, *desisto*, *quiesco*, *regno* : likewise, *adipiscor*, *condico*, *credo*, *frustror*, *furo*, *laudo*, *libero*, *levo*, *participo*, *prohibeo* : as, *Abstineto irarum* ; *Desine querelarum* ; *Regnavit populorum*, Hor. *Desistere pugnae*, Virg. *Quarum rerum condixit*, Liv.

But all these verbs are for the most part differently construed ; thus, *Angor*, *desipio*, *discrucior*, *fallor*, *animo*. *Hoc animum meum excruciat*. *Fusilio*, *miror*, *vereor*, *aliquem vel aliquid*. *Lutor aliquā re*. Some of them are joined with the infinitive ; or with *quod*, *ut*, *ne*, and the subjunctive.

In like manner we usually say, *Desino aliquid*, & *ab aliquo*, to give over ; *Desisto incepto*, *de negotio*, *ab illa mente* ; *Quiesco a labore* ; *Regnare in equitibus*, *oppidis*, sc. *in*, Cic. *Per urbes*, Virg. *Adipisci id* ; *Frustari in re* ; *Furere de aliquo*, Cic.

Obf. 2. The genitive after verbs, in the same manner as after adjectives, is governed by some substantive understood. This substantive is different according to the different meaning of the verbs : thus, *Miserere fratris*, scil. *causâ*, *Angor animi*, scil. *dolore*, or *anxietate*.

2. VERBS governing the Dative.

XVII. Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English ; as,

Finis venit imperio, An end is come to the empire, Liv.

Animus redit hostibus, Courage returns to the enemy, Id.

Tibi seris, tibi metis, You sow for yourself, you reap for yourself, Plaut.

So, *Non nobis solum nati sumus*, Cic. *Multa malè eveniunt bonis*, Id.

Sol lucet etiam sceleratis, Sen. *Hæret lateri lethalis arundo*, Virg.

But as the dative after verbs in Latin is not always rendered in English

English by *to* or *for* ; nor are these particles always the sign of the dative in Latin, it will be necessary to be more particular.

I. *Sum*, and its compounds govern the dative ; (except *possum*) ; as,

Præfuit exercitui,

He commanded the army.

Adfuit precibus,

He was present at prayers.

¶ *EST* taken for *Habeo*, *to have*, governs the dative of a person ; as,

Est mihi liber,

A book is to me, that is, I have a book.

Sunt mihi libri,

Books are to me, i. e. I have books.

Dico libros esse mihi,

I say that I have books.

This is more frequently used than *habeo librum* ; *habeo libros*. In like manner *DEEST* instead of *careo* ; as, *Liber deest mihi*, I want a book ; *Libri defunt mihi* ; *Scio libros deesse mihi*, &c.

II. Verbs compounded with *SATIS*, *BENE*, and *MALE*, govern the dative ; as,

Satisfacio, satisflo, benefacio, benedico, benevolo, malefacio, maledico, tibi, &c.

III. Many verbs compounded with these nine prepositions, *AD*, *ANTE*, *CON*, *IN*, *INTER*, *OB*, *PRÆ*, *SUB*, and *SUPER*, govern the dative ; as,

1. *Accedo, accresco, accumbo, acquiesco, adæo, adnato, adequito, adhæreo, adlo, adspulor, advolver, affilgeo, allaber, allabero, annuo, appareo, applaudo, appropinquo, arrideo, aspiro, assentior, assideo, assisto, assuesco, assurgo.*

2. *Antecello, anteco, anteflo, anteverto.*

3. *Collulo, concino, consino, convivio.*

4. *Incumbo, indormio, indubit, inbio, ingemisco, inherco, infideo, infidior, insto, inflo, infido, insulto, invigilo, illacryno, illudo, imminco, inmerior, immeror, impendo.*

5. *Intervenio, internico, intercelo, intercido, interjaceo.*

6. *Obrepro, oblaetor, obtrecto, obrepro, obmurmuro, occumbo, occurro, occurso, obsto, obfisto, obvenio.*

7. *Præcedo, præcurro, præco, præfideo, præluco, præmitto, præsto, prævaleo, præverto.*

8. *Succedo, succubo, sufficio, suffragor, suberesco, suboleo, subjaceo, subrepro.*

9. *Supervenio supercurro, superflo.* But most verbs compounded with *SUPER* govern the accusative.

IV. Verbs govern the dative, which signify,)

1. To profit or hurt ; as,

Proficis,

Proficio, presum, placeo, commodo, prospicio, caveo, metuo, timeo, consulo, for *prespicio*. Likewise, *Noceo, officio, incommodo, displiceo, insidior*.

2. To favour or assist, and the contrary } as,

Faveo, gratulor, gratificor, grator, ignesco, indulgeo, parco, aduler, plaudo, blandior, lenocinor, palpor, assentor, subparasitor. Likewise, *Auxilior, ad-minicular, subvenio, succurro, patrocinor, meator, medicor, opitulator*. Likewise, *Derego, detrabo, invideo, amuler*.

3. To command and obey, to serve and resist } as,

Impero, præcipio, mando, moderor, for modum, adhibeo. Likewise *Pa-ree, ausculto, obedio, obsequor, obtempero, moremgero, morigeror, obsecundo*. Likewise, *Famulor, servio, inservio, ministro, ancillor*. Likewise, *Repugno, elsto, relictor, renitor, resisto, refragor, adverfor*.

4. To threaten and to be angry } as,

Minor, comminor, interminor, irascor, succenso.

5. To trust ; } as, *Fido, confido, credo, diffido*.

To these add *Nubo, excollo, habeo, supplico, cedo, despiro, operor, præstator, prevaricor, recipio, to promise ; renuncio ; respondeo, to answer or satisfy ; tempero, studeo, vaco, to apply ; convicior*.

Exc. *Jubeo, juvo, lædo, and offendo*, govern the accu-sative.

Obs. 1. Verbs governing the dative only are either neu-ter verbs, or of a neuter signification. Active verbs govern-ing the dative have also an accusative expressed or under-stood.

Obs. 2. Most verbs governing the dative only, have been enume-rated, because there are a great many verbs compounded with prep-ositions, which do not govern the dative, but are otherwise con-structed ; and still more signifying advantage or disadvantage, &c. which govern the accusative ; as, *Levo, erigo, alo, nutrio, amo, diligo, vexo, crucio, averfor, &c. aliquem, not alicui*.

Obs. 3. Many of these verbs are variously construed ; particularly such as are compounded with a preposition ; as,

Anteire, antecedere, antecellere, præcedere, præcurrere, præire, &c.

alicui, or aliquem, to go before, to excel.

Acquiescere, rei, re, v. in re. Adequitare portæ ; Syracusas.

Adjacere, mari, v. mare, to lie near.

Adnare navibus, naves, ad naves, to swim to.

Adversari ei, rarely eum, to oppose.

Advolvi genibus, genua, ad genua, to fall at one's knees.

Advolare ei, ad eum ; rostra, to fly up to.

Adflare rei v. homini ; rem v. hominem ; aliquid alicui, to breathe upon.

Adulari ei, v. eum, to flatter. Allabi oris ; aures ejus, Virg ad exta, Liv. Apparere

Apparere consuli, *to attend*; ad solium Jovis; Res apparet mihi, *appears*.
 Appropinquare Britanniae, portam, ad portam, *to approach*.
 Dominari cunctis oris, Virg. in cætera animalia, *to rule over*, Ovid.
 Congruere alicui, cum re aliqua, inter se, *to agree*.
 Fidere, confidere alicui rei, aliqua re, in re, *to trust to or in*.
 Ignoscere mihi, culpæ meæ, mihi culpam, *to pardon me or my fault*.
 Impendēre alicui, aliquem, in aliquem, *to hang over*.
 Incessit cura, cupido, timor ei, eum, v. in eum, *seized*.
 Incumbere toro; gladium, in gladium, *to fall upon*; labori, ad laudem,
 ad studia, in studium, curam, cogitationem, &c. *to apply to*.
 Indulgere alicui, id ei; nimio, vestitu, *to indulge in*. Ter.
 Inhiare auro, bona ejus, *to gaze after*. Innasci agris, in agris, *to grow in*.
 Inniti rei, re, in re; in aliquem, *to depend on*.
 Insultare rei & homini, v. hominem; fores; patientiam ejus, in mi-
 seriam ejus; bonos, *to insult over*.
 Latet res mihi, v. me, *is unknown to me*. Mederi ei; cupiditates, *to cure*.
 Ministrare ei, *to serve*; arma ei, *to furnish*.
 Moderari animo, gentibus; navim, omnia, *to rule*.
 Nocere ei, *rarely* eum, *to hurt*, Plaut.
 Nubere alicui; in familiam; nupta ei & cum eo, *to marry*, Cic.
 Obrepere ei & eum, *to creep upon*; in animos; ad honores.
 Obstrepere auribus & aures. Obtrectare ei laudibus, ejus, *to detract from*.
 Obumbrat sibi vinca; solem nubes, *shades*. Palpari alicui & aliquem.
 Pascisci alicui, cum aliquo; vitam ab eo, Sall. vitam pro laude, Virg.
 Præstolari alicui & aliquem, *to wait upon*.
 Precumbere terræ; genibus ejus, Ovid. ad genna, Liv. ad pedes, *to fall*.

To these may be added verbs, which, chiefly among the poets, gov-
 ern the dative, but in prose are usually construed with a preposition;
 as, 1. *Contendo, certo, bello, pugno, concuro, socio, alicui*, for *cum aliquo*;
 2. *Discre, dissentire, discrepare, dissidere, dissimulare rei alicui*, for *a re aliqua*.
 We also say, *Contendant, pugnant, distant*, &c. *inter se*; and *contendere,*
pugnare contra & adversus aliquem.

Obs. 4. Many verbs vary both their signification and construction;
 as, *Timeo, metuo, formido, horreo tibi, de te, & pro te*, I am afraid for
 you, or for your safety; but *timeo, horreo te, v. a te*, I fear or dread
 you as an enemy: So *Consulo, prospicio, caveo tibi*, I consult or provide
 for your safety; but *consulo te*, I ask your advice; *prospicio hoc*, I foresee
 this: *Studere aliquid*, to desire; *alicui*, to favour; *alicui rei, rem, &*
in re, to apply to a thing. So, *Æmulor tibi*, I envy; *te*, I imitate;
Auscullo tibi, I obey or listen to; *te*, I hear; *Cupio tibi*, I favour, *rem,*
 I desire; *Fencro, & -or tibi*, I lend you on interest; *abs te*, I borrow;
Metuisti, ne non tibi illic feneraret, should not return with interest,
 or bring usury, Ter. And thus many other verbs, which will be
 afterwards explained.

Obs. 5. Verbs signifying *Motion* or *Tendency* to a thing
 are construed with the preposition *ad*; as,

Eo, vado, curro, propicio, festino, pergo, fugio, tendo, vergo, inclino, &c. ad locum, rem, v. hominem. (Sometimes however in the poets they are construed with the dative; as, *It clamor caelo*, for *ad caelum*, Virg.

3. Verbs governing the Accusative.

XVIII. A Verb signifying actively governs the accusative; as,

Ama Deum, Love God. *Reverere parentes*, Reverence your parents.

Obs. 1. Neuter verbs also govern the accusative, when the noun after them has a signification similar to their own; as,

Ire iter or *viam*; *Pugnare pugnam* or *prælium*; *Currere cursum*; *Canere cantinellam*; *Vivere vitam*; *Ludere lulum*; *Sequi sectam*; *Somniare somnium*, &c. or when they are taken in a metaphorical sense; as, *Cordeus ardebat Alexin*, scil. *propter*, i. e. *vehementer amabat*, Virg. *Currimus æquor*, scil. *per*, Id. So, *Comptos arsit adulteri crines*, Hor. *Saltare Cyclopa*; *olet hircum*; *Sulcos et vineta crepat mera*, Hor. *Vox hominem sonat*; *Sudare mella*, Virg. *Si Xerxes Hellesponto juncto, et Albone perfosso, maria ambulavisset, terramque navigasset*, sc. *per*, Cic. Or when they have a kind of active sense; as, *Clamare aliquem nomine*, Virg. *Callere jura*; *Marere mortem*; *Horret iratum mare*, Hor.

Sometimes instead of the accusative neuter verbs have an ablative; as, *Ire itinere*; *dolere dolore*, *vicem ejus*; *gaudere gaudio*; *mori* v. *obire morte*; *vivere vitâ*; *ardet virgine*, Horat. *Ludere eleam*, v. *â*; *manare, plueret, rorare, stillare, sudare, aliquid vel aliquo*. *Erubescere jura*, Virg. *origine*, Tacit. *equo vehi*, Curt.

Obs. 2. Several verbs are used both in an active and neuter sense; as,

Abhorrere famam, to dread infamy, Liv. *a litibus*; *ab uxore ducenda*, to be averse from: Id. *a meis moribus abhorret*, is inconsistent with, Cic.

Abolere monumenta viri, to abolish, Virg. *Iis Cladis Caudinæ nondum memoria aboleverat*, was not effaced from, they had not forgotten, Liv.

Adolere penates, to burn, to sacrifice to, Virg.

Ætas adolevit; *adolevit ad ætatem*, Plaut.

Declinare ictum, to avoid; *loco*; *agmen aliquo*, to remove.

Degenerare animos, to weaken; *patri*, to degenerate from; *a virtute majorum*.

Durare adolescentes labore, to harden; *Res durat ad breve tempus*, endures; *In ædibus durare nequeo*, stay or remain, Plaut.

Inclinare culpam in aliquem, to lay; *Hos ut sequar inclinat animus*, inclines; *acies inclinat*, vel *inclinatur*, gives away.

Laborare arma, to forge; *morbo*, a dolore, e renibus, to be ill; *de re aliqua*, to be concerned.

Morari iter, to stop; *in urbe*, to stay;

stay; Hoc nihil moror, *I do not mind.* Suppeditare copiam dicendi, *to furnish*; Sumptus illi, *vel illi* sumptibus, *Terent.* suppeditat ei ratio, *is afforded*; Manubiæ in fundamenta vix suppeditarunt, *were sufficient*, Liv.

Obs. 3. These accusatives, *hoc, id, quid, aliquid, quicquid, nihil, idem, illud, tantum, quantum, multa, pauca, &c.* are often joined with neuter verbs, having the prepositions *circa* or *propter* understood; as, *Id lacrimat, Id succenset*, Ter.

Obs. 4. The accusative is often understood. *Tum proa avertit*, sc. *se*, Virg. *Flumina precipitant*, sc. *se*, Id. *Quocunque intenderat*, sc. *se*, turned or directed himself, Sallust. *Oblit*, sc. *mortem*, Ter. *Cum faciam vitulâ*, sc. *sacrâ*, Virg. Or its place supplied by an infinitive or part of a sentence; as, *Reddes dulce loqui, reddes ridere decorum*; for *dulcem sermonem, decoram risum*, Hor.

XIX. *Recordor, meminî, reminiscor, and obliviscor*, govern the accusative or genitive; as,

<i>Recordor lectionis</i> or <i>lectionem</i> ,	I remember the lesson.
<i>Oliviscor injuriæ</i> or <i>injuriam</i> ,	I forget an injury.

Obs. 1. These verbs are often construed with the infinitive or some part of a sentence; as, *Memini videre virginem*, Ter. *Oblitus est, quid paulo ante perisisset*, Cic.

Obs. 2. *Memini*, when it signifies to *make mention*, is joined with the genitive, or the ablative with the preposition *de*; as, *Memini aliqujus*, *vel de aliquo*. So *recordor*, when it signifies to *recollect*; as, *Velim scire equid de te recordere*, Cic.

4. VERBS governing the Ablative.

XX. Verbs of plenty and scarceness for the most part govern the ablative; as

<i>Abundat divitiis</i> ,	He abounds in riches.
<i>Caret omni culpa</i> ,	He has no fault.

Verbs of plenty are, *Abundo, affluo, exubero, redundo, suppedite, scateo, &c.*; of want, *Careo, egeo, indigeo, vaco, deficio, destitutor, &c.*

Obs. 1. *Egeo* and *indigeo* frequently govern the genitive; as, *Eget æne*, He needs money, Hor. *Non tam artis indigent, quam laboris*, Cic.

Obs. 2. The ablative after these verbs is governed by some preposition understood; and sometimes we find it expressed; as, *Vacat a culpa*, he is free from fault, Liv.

XXI. | *Uter, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor*, govern the ablative ; as,

Utitur fraude, He uses deceit. *Abutitur libris*, He abuses books.

To these add, *gaudeo, creor, nascor, fido, vivo, victito, consto, labōro*, for *male me habeo*, to be ill ; *pascor, epulor, nitor*, &c.

Obs. 1. | *Potior* often governs the genitive ; as, *Potiri urbis*, Sall. And we always say *Potiri rerum*, to possess the chief command ; never *rebus, imperio* being understood.

Obs. 2. *Potior, fungor, vescor, epular, and pascor*, sometimes have an accusative ; as, *Potiri urbem*, Cic. *Officia fungi*, Ter. *Munera fungi*, Tacit. *Pascuntur silvas*, Virg. And in ancient writers *utor, abutor*, and *fruor* ; as, *Uti consilium*, Plaut. *Operam abutitur*, Ter. *Depasco* and *depascor* always take an accusative ; as, *Depascitur artus*. Virg.

§ 2. VERBS governing two Cases.

1. Verbs governing two Datives.

XXII. | *Sum* taken for *affero* (to bring) governs two datives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing ; as,

Est mihi voluptati, It is, or brings a pleasure to me,

Two datives are also put after *habeo, do, verto, relinquo, tribuo, fore, duco*, and some others ; as,

Ducitur honori tibi, It is reckoned an honour to you. *Id vertitur mihi vitio*, I am blamed for that. So, *Misit mihi muneri* ; *Dedit mihi dono* ; *Habet sibi laudi* ; *Venire, occurrere auxilio alicui*, Liv.

Obs. 1. Instead of the dative, we often use the nominative, or the accusative ; as, *Est exitium pesori*, for *exitio* ; *Dare aliquid alicui donum*, or *dono* ; *Dare filiam ei nuptam*, or *nuptui*. When *dare* and other active verbs have two datives after them, they likewise govern an accusative either expressed or understood ; as, *Dare crimini* &c. *sc. id*.

Obs. 2. The dative of the person is often to be supplied ; as, *Est exemplo, indicio, presidio, usui*, &c. *scil. mihi, alicui, hominibus*, or some such word. So, *ponere, opponere pignori, sc. alicui*, to pledge. *Canere receptui, sc. suis militibus*, to sound a retreat ; *Habere curam, questui, odio, voluptati, religioni, studio, ludibrio, despicatui*, &c. *sc. sibi*.

Obs. 3. | To this rule belong forms of naming ; as, *Est mihi nomen Alexandro*, my name is Alexander ; or with the nominative, *Est mihi nomen Alexander* ; or more rarely with the genitive, *Est mihi nomen Alexandri*.

2. VERBS governing the Accusative and the Genitive.

XXIII. Verbs of accusing, condemning, acquitting, and admonishing, govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing ; as,

Arguit me furti,

He accuses me of theft.

Meipsum inertiae conderino,

I condemn myself of laziness.

Illum homicidii absolvant,

They acquit him of manslaughter.

Monet me officii,

He admonishes me of my duty.

Verbs of accusing are, *Accuso, ago, appello, arcesso, antiquo, arguo, defero, insimulo, postulo, alligo, astringo*; of condemning, *Damno, condemno, infamo, noto*; of acquitting, *Absolvo, libero, purgo*; of admonishing, *Monco, admoneo, commonefacio*.

Obs. 1. Verbs of accusing and admonishing, instead of the genitive, frequently have after them an ablative, with the preposition *de*; as, *Monere aliquem officii*, or *de officio*; *Accusare aliquem furti*, or *de furto*. *De vi condemnati sunt*, Cic.

Obs. 2. *Crimen* and *caput* are put either in the genitive or ablative; but in the ablative usually without a preposition; as, *Damnare, postulare, alsiuere eum criminis*, v. *capitis*; & *crimine*, v. *capite*; also *Absolvero me peccato*, Liv. And we always say, *Plectere, punire aliquem capite*, and not *capitis*, to punish one capitally, or with death.

Obs. 3. Many verbs of accusing, &c. are not construed with the acc. of a person, and the gen. of a thing, but the contrary; thus we say, *Culpo, reprehendo, taxo, traduco, vituperò, calumnior, criminor, excuso*, &c. *avaritiam alicujus*, and not *aliquem avaritiæ*. We sometimes also find *accuso, incuso*, &c. construed in this manner; as, *Accusare inertiam adolescentium*, for *adolescentes inertiae*, Cic. *Culpam arguo*, Liv. We say, *Agere cum aliquo furti*, rather than *aliquem*, to accuse one of theft, Cic.

Obs. 4. Verbs of accusing and admonishing sometimes govern two accusatives, when joined with *hoc, illud, istud, id, unum, multa*, &c. as *Monco, accuso te illud*. We seldom however find, *Errorem te monco*, but *erroris*, or *de errore*; except in old writers; as, Plautus.

XXIV. Verbs of valuing, with the accusative, govern such genitives as these, *magni, parvi, nihili*; as,

Æstimo te magni,

I value you much.

Verbs of valuing are, *Æstimo, existimo, duco, facio, habeo, pendo, puto, taxo*. They govern several other genitives;

as, *tanti, quanti, pluris, majoris, minoris, minimi, plurimi, maximi, nauci, pili, assis, nihili, teruncii, hujus.*

Obs. 1. (*Æstimo* sometimes governs the ablative; as, *Æstimo te magno, permagno, parvo*, scil. *pretio*: and also *nibilo*.) We likewise say, *Pro nibilo habeo, puto, dico.*

Obs. 2. (*Æqui* and *boni* are put in the genitive after *facio* and *consulo*; as, *Hoc consulo boni, æqui* & *bonique facio*, I take this in good part.

Obs. 3. The genitive after all these verbs is governed by some substantive understood; as, *Arguere aliquem furti*, scil. *de crimine furti*; *Æstimo rem magni*, scil. *pretii*, or *pro re magni pretii*; *Consulo boni*, i. e. *statuo* or *censco esse factum*, or *maius boni viri*, or *animi*; *Monere aliquem officii*, i. e. *officii causâ*, or *de re* or *negotio officii*.

3. VERBS governing the Accusative and the Dative.

XXV. Verbs of comparing, giving, declaring, and taking away, govern the accusative and dative; as,

Comparo Virgilium Homero,
Sum cuique tribuito,
Narras fabulam surdo,
Eripuit me morti,

I compare Virgil to Homer.
Give every one his own.
You tell a story to a deaf man.
He rescued me from death.

Or rather,—ANY ACTIVE VERB MAY GOVERN THE ACCUSATIVE AND THE DATIVE, (when together with the object of the action, we express the person or thing with relation to which it is exerted); as,

Legam lectionem tili, I will read the lesson to you. *Emi librum mihi*, He bought a book for me. *Sic vos non vobis fecitis aratra boves*, Virg. *Paupertas sæpe suadet mala hominibus*, advises men to do bad things, Plaut. *Imperare pecuniam, frumentum, navis, arma aliquibus*, to order them to furnish, Cæs.

Obs. 1. Verbs of comparing and taking away, together with some others, are often construed with a preposition; as, *Comparare unam rem cum alia*, & *ad aliam*, or *comparare res inter se*: *Eripuit me morti*, *morte*, a or *ex morte*: *Mittere epistolam alicui*, or *ad aliquem*: *Intendere telum alicui*, or *in aliquem*: *Incidere æri*, in *as*, or *in are*: and so in many others.

Obs. 2. Several verbs governing the dative and accusative, are construed differently; as,

Circumdare mœnia oppido, or *oppidum manibus*, to surround a city with walls.

Intercludere comœatum alicui, or *aliquem comœatu*, to intercept one's provisions.

Donare, prohibere rem alicui, or *aliquem re*, to give one a present, to hinder one from a thing.

Maclare hostiam Deo, or *Deum hostiâ*, to sacrifice.

Impertire

Impertire salutem alicui, or aliquem salute, to salute one.

Interdixit Galliam Romanis, or Romanos Galliam, he debarred the Romans from Gaul.

Induere, cauere vestem sibi, or se veste, to put on, to put off one's cloaths.

Leuare dolorem alicui; dolorem alicujus; aliquem dolore, to ease one's distress.

Minari aliquid alicui, or sometimes alicui aliquo, Cic. to threaten one with any thing; Casari gladio, Sall.

Gratulor tibi haec res, haec re, in, pro, & de hac re, I congratulate you on this. Mitis Tullo devictos hostes gratulatur, Liv.

Resistere alicui sanitatem, or aliquem sanitati, to restore to health.

Aspergere labem alicui or aliquem lobe, to put an affront on one; aram sanguine. Litare Deum facris, & sacra Deo, to sacrifice.

Excusare se alicui & apud aliquem, de re; valetudinem ei.

Exprobrare vitium ei v. in eo, to upbraid.

Occupare pecuniam alicui, & apud aliquem, i. e. pecuniam fanori locare, to place at interest, Cic.

Opponere se morti, & ad mortem. Renunciare id ei, & ad eum, to tell.

Obs. 3. Verbs signifying motion or tendency to a thing, instead of the dative, have an accusative after them, with the preposition *ad*; as,

Porto, fero, lego, as, praecipito, tollo, traho, duco, verto, incito, suscito; also hortor, and invito, vco, provocho, animo, stimulo, conseruo, luceo; thus, Ad laudem milites hortatur; Ad praetorem hominem trahit, Cic. But after several of these verbs, we also find the dative; as, Inferre Deus Latiae, for in Latiam, Virg. Invitare aliquem hospitio, or in hospitium, Cic.

Obs. 4. The accusative is sometimes understood; as, *Nubere alicui, scil. se; Cedere alicui, scil. locum; Detrahere alicui, scil. laudem; Ignoscere alicui, scil. culpam.* And in English the particle *to* is often omitted; as, *Dedit mihi librum, He gave me a book, for to me.*

4. VERBS governing two Accusatives.

XXVI. Verbs of asking and teaching govern two accusatives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

Poscimus te pacem,

We beg peace of thee.

Docuit me grammaticam,

He taught me grammar.

1. Verbs of asking which govern two accusatives are, *Rogo, oro, exoro, obsecro, precor, posco, repesco, flagito, &c.* Of teaching, *Doceo, edoceo, dedoceo, erudio.*

Obs. 1. *Celo* likewise governs two accusatives; as, *Celestis*

celavit me hanc rem, He concealed this matter from me ; or otherwise, *celavit hanc rem mihi*, or *celavit me de hac re*.

Obs. 2. Verbs of asking and teaching are often construed with a preposition ; as, *Regare rem ab aliquo* ; *Docere aliquem de re*, to inform ; but we do not say, *docere aliquem de grammatica*, but *grammaticam*, to teach. And we always say, with a preposition, *Peto, exigo a v. abs te* ; *Percontor, scitor, sciscitor, ex or a te*, or *te* without the preposition ; *Interrogo, consulto te de re* ; *Ut facias te discro* ; *Exoret pacem diuinam*, for *diuos*, Virg. *Instruo, instituo, formo, informo aliquem artibus*, in the abl. without a prep. *Imbuo cum artibus*, in v. *ab artibus*. Also *instruo ad rem*, v. *in re*, *ignorantiam alicujus*. *Erudite aliquem artes*, de v. *in re*, *ad rem*. *Formare ad studium, mentem studiis, stultitia ejus*.

Obs. 3. The accusative of the thing is not properly governed by the verb, but by *quod ad* or *secundum* understood.

5. VERES governing the Accusative and the Ablative.

XXVII. Verbs of loading, binding, cloathing, depriving, and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative ; as,

Onerat naves auro, He loads the ships with gold.

Verbs of loading are, *Onero, cumulo, premo, opprimo, obruo* : Of unloading, *leuo, exonero*, &c. Of binding, *astringo, ligo, alligo, devincio, impedio, irradio, illaqueo*, &c. Of loosing, *soluo, exsolvo, libero, laxo, expedio*, &c. Of depriving, *privo, nudo, orbo, spolio, fraudo, emungo* : Of cloathing, *vestio, amicio, induo, cingo, tego, velo, corſino*, & *calceo* : Of uncloathing, *exuo, discingo*, &c.

Obs. 1. The preposition, by which the ablative is governed after these verbs, is sometimes expressed ; as, *Salvare aliquem ex catenis*, Cic. Sometimes the ablative is to be supplied ; as, *Complet naves*, sc. *viris*, mans the ships, Virg.

Obs. 2. Several of these verbs likewise govern the genitive ; as, *Adoleſcentem ſue temeritatis implet*, Liv. And also vary their construction ; as, *Induit, exuit ſe veſtibus*, or *veſtes ſibi*.

The CONSTRUCTION of PASSIVE VERBS.

XXVIII. When a verb in the active voice governs two caſes, in the paſſive it retains the latter caſe ; as,

<i>Accuſar furti</i> ,	I am accuſed of theft.
<i>Virgilius comparatur Homero</i> ,	Virgil is compared to Homer.
<i>Docer grammatice</i> ,	I am taught grammar.
<i>Navis oneratur auro</i> ,	The ſhip is loaded with gold.

So *Scio homines accuſatum iri furti* ; — *Eos exemptum iri morti*, morte, &c.

vel ex morte ; — *pueros doctum iri grammaticam ; — rem celatum iri mihi vel me ; me celatum iri de re, &c.*

Sometimes the active has three cases, and then the passive has the two last cases ; as, *Habetur ludibrio iis.*

Obs. 1. Passive verbs are commonly construed with the ablative and the preposition *a* ; as,

Tu laudaris a me, which is equivalent to, *Ego laudo te.* *Virtus diligitur a nobis ; Nos diligimus virtutem.* *Guadeo meum factum probari a te, or te probare meum factum.* And so almost all active verbs. Neuter and deponent verbs also admit this preposition ; as, *Mare a sole colluct,* Cic. *Phalaris non a paucis interiit,* Id. So *Cadere ab hoste ; Cessare a preliis ; Mori ab ense ; Pati, furari, aliquid ab aliquo, &c.* Also *Venire ab hostibus*, to be sold ; *Vapulare ab aliquo, Exulare ab urbe.* Thus likewise many active verbs ; as, *Sumere, petere, tollere, pellere, expectare, emere, &c. ab aliquo.*

The prep. is sometimes understood after passive verbs ; as, *Deseror conjuge*, Ovid. *Desertus suis*, sc. *a*, Tacit. *Tabulâ distinguitur undâ, qui navigat*, sc. *ab unda*, is kept from the water by a plank, *Juvenal.*

The preposition PER is also used in the same sense with A ; as, *Per me defensa est respublica*, or *a me* ; *Per me restitutus ; Per me v. a me factum est*, Cic. But PER commonly marks the instrument, and A the principal efficient cause ; as, *Res agitur per creditores a rege*, sc. *a rege vel a legato ejus*, Cic. Fam. i. i.

Obs. 2. (Passive verbs sometimes govern the dative, especially among the poets ;) as,

Neque cernitur ulli, for *ab ullo*, Virg. *Vix audior ulli*, Ovid. *Scriberis Vario*, for *a vario*, Hor. *Honesta bonis viris queruntur*, for *a viris*, Cic. VIDEOR, to seem, always governs the dative ; as, *Videris mihi*, You seem to me : But we commonly say, *Videris a me*, You are seen by me ; although not always ; as, *Nulla tuarum audita mihi, neque visa sororum*, for *a me*, Virg.

Obs. 3. *Induor, amicio, cingor, accingor*, also *exuor* and *discingor*, are often construed with the accusative, particularly among the poets, though we do not find them governing two accusatives in the active voice ; as, *Induitur vestem*, or *veste*.

Obs. 4. Neuter verbs are for the most part only used impersonally in the passive voice ; unless when they are joined with a noun of a similar signification to their own ; as, *Pugna pugnata est*, Cic. *Bellum militabitur*, Horat. Passive impersonal verbs are most commonly applied either to a multitude, or to an individual taken indefinitely ; as, *Statur, fletur, curritur, vivitur, venitur, &c. a nobis, ab illis, &c.* We are standing, weeping, &c. *Bene potest vivi a me, vel ab aliquo* ; I or any person may live well. *Provisum est nobis optime a Deo ; Reclamatum est ab omnibus*, all cried out against it, Cic.

They also govern the same cases, as when used personally ; as, *Ut majoribus natu assurgatur, ut supplicium misereatur*, Cic. Except the accusative : For in these phrases, *Itur Athenas, pugnatum est biduum, dormitur totam noctem*, the accusative is not governed by the verb, but by the

the prepositions *ad* and *per* understood. We find, however, *Tota mihi dormitur hyems*, *Noctes vigilantur amarae*; *Oceanus raris ab orbe nostro navibus aditur*, Tacit.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

XXIX. /An impersonal verb governs the dative ;/as,

Expedit reipublicæ, / It is profitable for the state.

Verbs which in the active voice govern only the dative, are used impersonally in the passive, and likewise govern the dative ; as,

Favetur mihi, I am favoured, and not *Ego faveor*. So *Nocetur mihi*, *imperatur mihi*, &c. We find however, *Hæc ego procurare imperor*; *Ego cur invideor*, for *imperatur*, *invidetur mihi*, Hor.

Obs. 1. These verbs, *Potest*, *cæpit*, *incipit*, *desinit*, *debet*, and *solet*, are used impersonally, when joined with impersonal verbs ; as,

Non potest credi tibi, You cannot be believed ; *Mihi non potest noceri*, I cannot be hurt ; *Negat jucundè posse vivi sine virtute*, Cic. *Per virtutem potest iri ad astra*. *Alio, um laudi* & *gloriæ invideri solet*, The praise and glory of others use to be envied, Id. *Neque a fortissimis infirmissimo generi resisti posse*, Sallust.

Obs. 2. Various verbs are used both personally and impersonally ; as, *Venit in mentem mihi hæc res*, vel *de hac re*, vel *hujus rei*, scil. *memoria* ; This thing came into my mind. *Est curæ mihi hæc res vel de hac re*. *Doleo vel dolet mihi*, id *factum esse*.

Obs. 3. The neuter pronoun *it* is always joined with impersonal verbs in English ; as, *It rains*, *it shines*, &c. And in Latin an infinitive is commonly subjoined to impersonal verbs, or the subjunctive with *ut*, forming a part of a sentence which may be supposed to supply the place of a nominative ; as, *Nobis non licet peccare*, the same with *peccatum* ; *Omnibus bonis expedit rempublicam esse salvam*, i. e. *Salus reipublicæ expedit omnibus bonis*, Cic. *Accidit, evenit, contigit, ut ibi essemus*. These nominatives, *hoc*, *illud*, *id*, *idem*, *quod*, &c. are sometimes joined to impersonal verbs ; as, *idem mihi licet*, Cic. *Eadem licent*, Catull.

Obs. 4. The dative is often understood ; as, *Faciat quod libet*, sc. *sibi*, Ter. *Stat casus renovare omnes*, sc. *mihi*, I am resolved, Virg.

EXC. I. /REFERT and INTEREST require the genitive ;/as,

Refert patris, It concerns my father. *Interest omnium*, It is the interest of all.

¶ But *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, *nostra*, *vestra*, are put in the accusative plural neuter ; as,

Non mea refert, It does not concern me.

R

Obs.

Obs. 1. Some think *mea, tua, sua, &c.* to be in the ablat. sing. fem. We say either *cujus interest*, and *quorum interest*; or *cujus interest*, from *cujus, -a, -um*.

Obs. 2. *Refert* and *interest* are often joined with these nominatives, *Id, hoc, illud, quid, quod, nihil, &c.* also with common nouns; and with these genitives, *Tanti, quanti, magni, permagni, parvi, pluris*; as, *Hoc parvi refert*; *Illud mea magni interest*, Cic. *Usque adeo magni refert studium*, Lucret. *Incessus in gravida refert*, Plin.

They are frequently contrived with these adverbs, *Tantum, quantum, multum, plus, plurimum, infinitum, parum, maximè, vehementer, minimè, &c.* as, *Faciam, quod maximè reipublicæ interesse judicabo*, Cic. Sometimes instead of the genit. they take the accusative with the prep. *ad*; as, *Quid id ad me, aut ad meam rem refert, Persæ quid rerum gerant?* Of what importance is it, &c. Plaut. *Magni ad honorem nostrum interest*, Cic. rarely the dative; as, *Dic quid referat intra naturæ fines viventi, &c.* Hor. Sometimes they are placed absolutely; as, *Magnopere interest opprimi Dolobellam*, it is of great importance, Cic. *Permulum interest, qualis primus aditus sit*, Id. *Adeone est fundata leviter fides, ut ubi sim, quam qui sim, magis referat*, Liv. *Plurimum enim interit, quibus artibus, aut quibus hunc tu moribus instituas*, Juv.

Obs. 3. The genitive after *refert* and *interest* is governed by some substantive understood, with which the possessives *mea, tua, sua, &c.* likewise agree; as, *Interest Ciceronis, i. e. est inter negotia Ciceronis: Refert patris, i. e. refert se hoc res ad negotia patris*; So *interest mea, est inter negotia mea*.

EXC. II. (These five, *MISERET, POENITET, PUDET, TÆDET*, and *PIGET*, govern the accusative of a person, with the genitive of a thing;) as,

Miseret me tui, I pity you.

Tædet me vitæ, I am weary of life.

Pœnitet me peccati, I repent of my sin.

Pudet me culpæ, I am ashamed of my fault.

Obs. 1. The genitive here is properly governed either by *negotium* understood, or by some other substantive of a signification similar to that of the verb with which it is joined; as, *Miseret me tui*, that is, *negotium* or *miseratio tui miseret me*.

Obs. 2. An infinitive or some part of a sentence may supply the place of the genitive; as, *Pœnitet me peccasse*, or *quod peccaverim*. The accusative is frequently understood; as, *Scelerum si bene pœnitet*, scilicet, Horat.

Obs. 3. *Miseret, pœnitet, &c.* are sometimes used personally, especially when joined with these nominatives, *hoc, id, quod, &c.* as, *Ipse sui miseret*, Lucr.; *Nonne hæc te pudet*, Ter. *Nihil, quod pœnitere possit, facias*, for *cujus te pœnitere possit*, Cic.

We sometimes find *miseret* joined with two accusatives; as, *Menedem vicem miseret me*, scilicet, *secundum* or *quod ad*, Ter.

Obs. 4. The preterites of *miseret, pudet, tædet*, and *piget*, when used in

in the passive form, govern the same cases with the active ; as, *Miseritum est me tuarum fortunarum*, Ter. We likewise find *miserescit* and *miseretur* used impersonally ; as, *Miserescit me tui*, Ter. ; *Miseretur te fratrum* ; *Neque me tui, neque tuorum liberorum misereri potest*, Cic.

EXC. III. / *DECET, DELECTAT, JUVAT*, and *OPORTET*, govern the accusative of a person, with the infinitive ; as,

Delectat me studere,

It delights me to study.

Non decet te rixari,

It does not become you to scold.

Obs. 1. These verbs are sometimes used personally ; as, *Parvum parva decet*, Hor. *Est aliquid, quod non oporteat, etiamsi liceat*, Cic. *Hæc facta ab illo oportebant*, Ter.

Obs. 2. *Decet* is sometimes construed with the dative ; as, *Ita nobis decet*, Ter.

Obs. 3. / *Oportet* is elegantly joined with the subjunctive mode, *ut* being understood ; as,

Sibi quisque consulit oportet, Cic. Or with the perfect participle, *esse* or *fuisse* being understood ; as, *Communicatum oportuit* ; *mansum oportuit* ; *Adolescenti morem gestum oportuit*, The young man should have been humoured, Ter.

Obs. 4. *Fallit, fugit, præterit, latet*, when used impersonally, also govern the accusative with the infinitive ; as, *In lege nullâ esse ejusmodi caput, non te fallit* ; *De Dionysio fugit me ad te antea scribere*, Cic.

NOTE, *Attinet, pertinet, & spectat*, are construed with *ad* ; *Ad rem publicam pertinet, me conservari*, Cic. And so personally, *Ille ad me attinet*, belongs, Ter. *Res ad arma spectat*, looks, points, Cic.

The CONSTRUCTION of the INFINITIVE.

XXX. / One verb governs another in the infinitive ; as,

Cupio discere,

I desire to learn.

Obs. 1. / The infinitive is often governed by adjectives ; as, *Horatius est dignus legi*, Quintil. (And sometimes depends on a substantive ;) as, *Tempus equum fumantiaolvere colla*, Virg.

Obs. 2. The word governing the infinitive is sometimes understood ; as, *Mene incepto desistere victam*, scil. *decet*, or *par est*, Virg. *Videre est*, one may see. *Dicere non est*, scil. *copia*, or *facultas*, Horat. And sometimes the infinitive itself is to be supplied ; as, *Socratem fidibus docuit*, scil. *canere*, Cic. So *Discere, scire fidibus*.

Obs. 3. The infinitive was not improperly called by the ancients *Nomen verbi*, The name or noun of the verb ; because it is both joined with an adjective like a substantive ; as, *Velle suum cuique est*, Every one has a will of his own ; and likewise supplies the place of a noun,

not only in the nominative, but also in all the oblique cases; as, 1. In the nominative, *Lutrocinari, fraudare, turpe est*, Cic. *Didicisse fideliter artes emollit mores*, Ovid. 2. In the genitive, *Peritus cantare*, for *cantandi*, or *cantus*, Virg. In the dative, *Paratus servire*, for *servituti*, Sall. 4. In the accusative, *Da mihi fallere*, for *artem fallendi*, Horat. *Quod faciam superest, præter amare, nihil*, Ovid. 5. In the vocative, *O vivere nostrum; ut non sentientibus effluat!* for *vita nostra*. 6. In the ablative, *Dignus amari*, for *amore*, or *qui ametur*, Virg.

Obs. 4. Instead of the infinitive, a different construction is often used after verbs of doubting, willing, ordering, fearing, hoping; in short, after any verb which has a relation to futurity; as, *Dubit ita facere*, or more frequently, *an num, or utrum ita facturus sit*; *Dubitavit an faceret necne*; *Non dubito quin fecerit*. *Vis me facere*, or *ut faciam*. *Metuit tangi*, or *ne tangatur*. *Spero te venturum esse*, or *fore ut venias*. *Nunquam putavi fore ut ad te supplicem venirem*, Cic. *Existimabant futurum fuisse ut oppidum amitteretur*, Cæsar.

Obs. 5. *To*, which in English is the sign of the infinitive, is omitted after *bid, dare, need, make, see, hear, feel*, and some others; as, *I bid him do it*: and in Latin may often be rendered otherwise than by the infinitive; as, *I am sent to complain*, *Mitter querelam*, or *ut querar*, &c. *Ready to hear*, *Promptus ad audiendum*; *Time to read*, *Tempus legendi*; *Fit to swim*, *Aptus natando*; *Easy to say*, *Facile dictu*; *I am to write*, *Scripturus sum*; *A house to let, or more properly, to be let*, *Domus locanda*; *He was left to guard the city*, *Relictus est ut tueretur urbem*.

To in English is often taken absolutely; as, *To confess the truth*; *To proceed*; *To conclude*; that is, *That I may confess the truth*, &c.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, and SUPINES.

XXXI. / Participles, Gerunds, and Supines, govern the case of their own verbs; as,

Amans virtutem, Loving virtue. *Carens fraude*, Wanting guile.

Obs. 1. Passive participles often govern the dative, particularly when they are used as adjectives; as,

Suspectus mihi, Suspected by me; *Suspectiores regibus*, Sall. *Invisus mihi*; hated by me, or hateful to me; *Indies invisior*, Suet. *Occulta, et miris non invisa solum, sed etiam inaudita sacra*, unseen, Cic.

EXOSUS, PEROSUS, and often also **PERTÆSUS**, govern the accusative; as, *Tædus exosi jugales*, Ovid. *Plebs consulum nomen haud secus quam regum perosa erat*, Liv. *Pertæsus ignoviam suam*; semet ipse, displeased with, Suet. *vitam*, weary of, Justin. *levitatis*, Cic.

Verbals in BUNDUS govern the case of their own verbs; as, *Gratulabundus patriæ*, Just. *Vitabundus castra hostium*, Liv. So sometimes also nouns; as, *Justitia est obtemperatio scriptis legibus*, Cic. *Insuper consuli*,

consulit, Sall. *Domum reditionis spe sublata*, Cæf. *Speclatio ludæ*, Plaut.

Obf. 2. These verbs, *do*, *reddo*, *volo*, *curo*, *facio*, *habeo*, *comperio*, with the perfect participle, form a periphrasis similar to what we use in English; as, *Compertum habeo*, for *comperi*, I have found, Sall. *Effectum dabo*, for *efficiam*; *Inventum tibi curabo*, et *adductum tuum Parrphilum*, i. e. *inveniam et adducam*, Ter. Sometimes the gerund is used with *ad*; as, *Tradere ei gentes diripiendas*, or *ad diripdiendum*, Cic. *Rogo, accipio, do aliquid utendum*; or *ad utendum*; *Misit mihi librum legendum*, or *ad legendum*, &c.

Obf. 3. These verbs, *curo*, *habeo*, *mando*, *loco*, *conduco*, *do*, *tribuo*, *mitto*, &c. are elegantly construed with the participle in *us* instead of the infinitive; as, *Funus faciendum curavi*, for *feri*, or *ut fieret*: *Columnas edificandas locavit*, Cic.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF GERUNDS.

XXXII. Gerunds are construed like substantive nouns; as,

Studendum est mihi, I must study. *Aptus studendo*, Fit for studying.
Tempus studendi, Time of study. *Scio studendum esse mihi*, I know that
 I must study.

But more particularly;

I. The Gerund in DUM with the verb *est* governs the dative; as,

Legendum est mihi, I must read. *Moriendum est omnibus*, All must die.
 So *Scio legendum esse mihi*; *moriendum esse omnibus*, &c.

Obf. 1. This gerund always imports obligation or necessity; and may be resolved into *oportet*, *necesse est*, or the like, and the infinitive or the subjunctive, with the conjunction *ut*; as, *Omnibus est moriendum*, or *Omnibus necesse est mori*, or *ut moriantur*; or, *Necesse est ut omnes moriantur*. *Consulendum est tibi a me*, I must consult for your good; for *Oportet ut consulam tibi*, Cic.

Obf. 2. The dative is often understood; as, *Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano*, sc. *tibi*, Juv. *Hic vincendum, aut moriendum, - lites, est*, sc. *vobis*, Liv. *Deliberandum est diu, quod statuendum est semel* sc. *tibi vel alicui*, P. Syr.

II. The gerund in DI is governed by substantives or adjectives; as,

Tempus legendi, Time of reading. *Cupidus discendi*, Desirous of learning.

Obf. This gerund is sometimes construed with the genitive plural; as, *Facultas agrorum condonandi*, for *agros*, Cic. *Cepja spectandi comediarum*, for *comedias*, Ter. But chiefly with pronouns; as, *In castra venerunt sui purgandi causa*, Cæf. *Vestri advertendi causa*, Liv. *Ejus videndi cupidus*, sc. *femine*, Ter. The gerund here is supposed to govern the genitive like a substantive noun.

III. / The gerund in *DO* of the dative case is governed by adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness ; / as,

Charta utilis scribendo,

Paper useful for writing.

Obs. 1. Sometimes the adjective is understood ; as, *Non est solvendo*, scil. *par*, or *habilis*, He is not able to pay. *Is finis censendo factus est*. Liv.

Obs. 2. This gerund is sometimes governed also by verbs ; as, *Adesse scribendo*, Cic. *Aptat habendo enssem*, for wearing ; Virg.

IV. / The gerund in *DUM* of the accusative case is governed by the prepositions *ad* or *inter* / as,

Promptus ad audiendum,

Ready to hear.

Attentus inter docendum,

Attentive in time of teaching.

Obs. This gerund is also governed by some other prepositions ; as, *Ante domandum*, Virg. *Ob absolvendum*, Cic. *Circa moriendum*, Quintil. Or it depends on some verb going before, and then with the verb *esse* governs the dative case ; as, *Scio moriendum esse omnibus*, I know that all must die. *Esse* is often understood.

V. / The gerund in *DO* of the ablative case is governed by the prepositions, *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in* ;) as,

Pœna a peccando aliterret,

Punishment frightens from sinning.

* / Or without a preposition, as the ablative of manner or cause ;) as,

Memoria excolendo augetur, The memory is improved by exercising it.
Deseffus sum ambulando, I am wearied with walking.

Obs. The gerund in its nature very much resembles the infinitive. Hence the one is frequently put for the other ; as, *Est tempus legendi*, or *legere* : only the gerund is never joined with an adjective, and is sometimes taken in a passive sense ; as, *Cum Tifidium vocaretur ad imperandum*, i. e. *ut ipsi imperaretur*, to receive orders, Sall. *Nunc ades ad imperandum, vel ad parendum potius*, *Sic enim antiqui loquebantur*, Cic. i. e. *ut tibi imperetur*. *Urit videndo*, i. e. *dum videtur*. Virg.

The gerund in English becomes a substantive, by prefixing the article to it, and then it is always to be construed with the preposition *of* ; as, *He is employed in writing letters*, or, *in the writing of letters* : but it is improper to say, *in the writing letters*, or *in writing of letters*.

Gerunds turned into participles in dus.

XXXVI. Gerunds governing the accusative are elegantly turned into participles in *dus*, which, like adjectives, agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case ;) as,

By the Gerund.

By the Participle or Gerundive.

Petendum est mihi pacem,
Tempus petendi pacem,
Ad petendum pacem,
A petendo pacem,

} or more frequently

{ *Pax est petenda mihi.*
Tempus petendæ pacis.
Ad petendam pacem.
A petenda pace.

Obs. 1. In changing gerunds into participles in *dus*, the participle and the substantive are always to be put in the same case in which the gerund was ;) as,

Genitive ; *Inita sunt consilia urbis delendæ, civium trucidandorum, nominis Romani extinguendi, Cic.*

Dat. *Perpetiundo labori idoneus, Colum. Capeßendæ reipublicæ habilis, Tac. Area firma templis ac porticibus sustinendis, Liv. Oneri ferendo est, sc. aptus v. habilis, Ovid. Natus miseris ferendis, Ter. Literis lundis vigilare, Cic. Locum oppido condendo capere, Liv.*

Acc. and abl. *Ad defendendam Romam ab oppugnanda Capuâ duces Romanos abstrahere, Liv. Orationem Latinam legendis nostris efficies plenior, Cic.*

Obs. 2. The gerunds of verbs which do not govern the accusative, are never changed into the participle, except those of *medor*, *utor*, *abutor*, *frutor*, *fungor*, and *potior* ; as, *Spes potiundi urbe*, or *potiundæ urbis* : but we always say, *Cupidus subveniendi, tibi*, and never *tui*.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF SUPINES.

1. The Supine in *um*.

XXXVII. The supine in *um* is put after a verb of motion ;) as,

Abiit deambulatum,

He hath gone to walk.

So, *Ducere cohortes prædatum, Liv. Nunc venis irrisum dominum? Quod in rem tuam optimum factu arbitror, te id admonitum venio, Plaut.*

Obs. 1. The supine in *um* is elegantly joined with the verb *eo*, to express the signification of any verb more strongly ; as, *It se perditum*, the same with *id agit*, or *operam dat, ut se perdat*, He is bent on his own

own destruction, Ter. This supine with *iri* taken impersonally, supplies the place of the infinitive passive; as, *An credebis illam sine tuâ operâ iri deductum domum?* Which may be thus resolved, *An credebis iri* (a te, vel ab aliquo) *deductum* (i. e. ad deducendum) *illam domum*, Ter.

Obs. 2. The supine in *um* is put after other verbs besides verbs of motion; as, *Dedit filiam nuptum*; *Cantatum provocemus*, Ter. *Revocatus defensum patriam*; *Divisit copias biematum*, Nep.

Obs. 3. The meaning of this supine may be expressed by several other parts of the verb; as, *Venit oratum opem*: or, 1. *Venit opem orandi causâ*, or *opis orande*. 2. *Venit ad orandum opem*, or *ad orandam opem*. 3. *Venit opi orande*. 4. *Venit opem oraturus*. 5. *Venit qui*, or *ut opem oret*. 6. *Venit opem orare*. But the third and the last of these are seldom used.

2. The supine in *u*.

XXXVIII. | The supine in *u* is put after an adjective noun; as,

Facile dictu, Easy to tell, or to be told.

So *Nihil dictu factum*, *visuque hæc limina tangat*; *intra quæ puer est*, Juv. *Difficilis res est inventu verus amicus*; *Fas v. nefas est dictu*; *Opus est scitu*, Cic.

Obs. 1. The supine in *u*, being used in a passive sense, hardly ever governs any case. It is sometimes, especially in old writers, put after verbs of motion; as, *Nunc obsecratu redeo*, from getting provisions, Plaut. *Primus cubitu surgat* (villicus,) from bed, *postremus cubitum cat*, Cato.

Obs. 2. This supine may be rendered by the infinitive or gerund with the preposition *ad*; as, *Difficile cognitu*, *cognosci*, or *ad cognoscendum*; *Res facilis ad credendum*, Cic.

Obs. 3. The supines being nothing else but verbal nouns of the fourth declension, used only in the accusative and ablative singular, are governed in these cases by prepositions understood; the supine in *um* by the preposition *ad*, and the supine in *u* by the preposition *in*.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF INDECLINABLE WORDS.

1. The CONSTRUCTION of ADVERBS.

XXXIX. | Adverbs are joined to Verbs and Participles, to adjectives, and to other adverbs; as,

Bene scribit, He writes well.
Servus egregiè fidelis, A slave remarkably faithful.

Fortiter pugnans, Fighting bravely.
Satis bene, Well enough.

Obs.

Obs. 1. Adverbs are sometimes likewise joined to substantives ; as,

Homerus planè orator ; planè noster, verè Metellus, Cic. So, Hodie mane ; cras mane, heri mane ; hodie vespere, &c. tam mane, tam vespere.

Obs. 2. The adverb for the most part in Latin, and always in English, is placed near to the word which it modifies or affects.

Obs. 3. Two negatives, both in Latin and English, are equivalent to an affirmative ; as,

Nec non senserunt, Nor did they not perceive, i. e. Et senserunt, And they did perceive ; Non poteram non exanimari metu, Cic. Examples however of the contrary of this sometimes occur in good authors, both English and Latin. Thus two or three negative participles are placed before the subjunctive mode to express a stronger negation. Neque tu haud dicas tibi non prædictum, And do not say that you were not forewarned, Ter.

But what chiefly deserves attention in Adverbs, is the degree of comparison and the mode with which they are joined. 1. *Apprimè admodum, vehementer, maximè, perquam, valdè oppidò, &c.* and *per* in composition, are usually joined to the positive ; as, *Utrique nostrum gratum admodum feceris, You will do what is very agreeable to both of us, Cic. perquam puerile, very childish ; oppidò pauci, very few ; perfacile est, &c.* In like manner, *Parum, multum, nimium, tantum, quantum, aliquantum ;* as, *In rebus apertissimis nimium longi sumus ; parum firmus, multum bonus, Cic. Adverbs in um are sometimes also joined to comparatives ; as, Forma viri aliquantum amplior humanâ, Liv.*

QUAM is joined to the positive or superlative in different senses ; as, *Quam difficile est ! How difficult it is ! Quam crudelis, or Ut crudelis est ! How cruel he is ! Plens quam familiariter, very familiarly, Ter. So quam severè, very severely, Cic. Quam latè, very widely, Cas. Tam multa, quam, &c. as many things as, &c. Quam maximus potest copias armat, as great as possible, Sall. Quam maximas gratias agit, quam primum, quam sepiissime, Cic. Quam quisque pessimè fecit, tam maximè tutus est, Sall.*

FACILE, for *haud dubiè*, undoubtedly, clearly, is joined to superlatives or words of a similar meaning ; as, *Facilè doctissimus, facilè princeps, v. præcipuus. LONGE, to comparatives or superlatives, rarely to the positive ; as, Longè eloquentissimus Plato, Cic. Pedibus longe melior Lycus, Virg.*

2. CUM, when, is construed with the indicative or subjunctive, oftener with the latter ; DUM, whilst, or how long, with the indicative ; as, *Dum hac aguntur ; Ægroto, dum anima est, spes esse dicitur, Cic. Donec eris felix. multos numerabis amicos, Ovid. DUM and DONEC, for usque, until, sometimes with the indicative and sometimes with the subjunctive ; as, Operior, dum ista cognosco, Cic. Haud desinam, donec*

donec perfecero, Ter. So QUOAD, for *quamdiu*, *quantum*, *quatenus*, as long, as much, as far as; thus, *Quoad Catilina fuit in urbe*; *Quoad tibi æquum videbitur*; *quoad possem & liceret*; *quoad progredi potuerit amen-tia*, Cic. But QUOAD, until, oftener with the subjunctive; as, *Tibi salonicæ esse statueram, quoad aliquid ad me scriberes*, Cic. but not always; *Non faciam finem regandi, quoad nunciatum erit te fecisse*, Cic. The pronoun *ejus*, with *facere* or *fieri* is elegantly added to *quoad*; as, *Quoad ejus facere poteris*; *Quoad ejus fieri possit*, Cic. *Ejus* is thought to be here governed by *aliquid* or some such word understood. *Quoad corpus*, *quoad animam*, for *secundum*, or *quod attinet ad corpus vel animam*, as to the body or soul, is esteemed by the best grammarians not to be good Latin.

3. POSTQUAM or POSTEAQUAM, after, is usually joined with the Indic. ANTEQUAM, PRIUSQUAM, before; SIMUL, SIMULAC, SIMUL, ATQUE, SIMUL UT, as soon as; UBI, when, sometimes with the Ind. and sometimes with the Subj. as, *Antequam dico* or *dicam*, Cic. *Simulac persensit*, Virg. *Simul ut videro Curionem*, Cic. *Hæc ubi dista dedit*, Liv. *Ubi semel quis pejeraverit, ei credi postea non oportet*, Cic. So NE, truly; as, *Ne ego homo sum infelix*, Ter. *Ne tu, si id fecisses, melius famæ consulisses*, Cic. But NE, not, with the Imperative, or more elegantly with the subjunctive; as, *Ne jura*, Plaut. *Ne post conferas culpam in me*, Ter. *Ne tot annorum felicitatem in unius horæ dederis discrimen*, Liv.

4. QUASI, CEU, TANQUAM, PERINDE, when they denote resemblance, are joined with the Indicative; *Fuit alim, quasi ego sum, senex*, Plaut. *Adversæ rupto ceu quondam turbine venti configunt*, Virg. *Hæc omnia perinde sunt, ut aguntur*. But when used ironically, they have the subjunctive; as, *Quasi de verbo, non de re laboretur*, Cic.

5. UTINAM, O SI, UT for *utinam*, I wish, take the Subjunctive; as, *Utinam ea res ei voluptati sit*, Cic. *O mihi præteritos referat si Jupiter annos*, Virg. *Ut illum dii deæque perdant*, Ter.

6. UT, when or after, takes the indicative; as, *Ut discessit, venit*, &c. ¶ Also for *quam* or *quomodo*, how! as, *Ut valet!* *Ut falsus animi est!* *Ut sæpe summa ingenia in occulto latent!* Plaut. ¶ Or when it simply denotes resemblance; as, *Ut tute es, ita omnes censes esse*, Plaut. ¶ In this sense it sometimes has the subjunctive; as, *Ut sementem feceris, ita metes*, Cic.

7. QUIN for CUR NON, takes the Indic. as, *Quin continetis vocem indicem sultitiæ vestræ?* Cic. ¶ For IMO, nay or but, the Indic. or Imperat. as, *Quin est paratum argentum*; *quin tu hæc audi*, Ter. ¶ For UT NON, QUI, QUÆ, QUOD NON, or QUO MINUS, the Subjunctive; as, *Nulla tam facilis, res, quin difficilis fiet quam invitatus facies*, Ter. *Nemo est, quin nolit*; *Facere non possum, quin ad te mittam*, I cannot help sending; *Nihil abest, quin sim miserrimus*, Cic.

The GOVERNMENT OF ADVERBS.

XL./ Some Adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive ; / as,

<i>Pridie ejus diēi,</i>	The day before that day.
<i>Ubique gentium,</i>	Every where.
<i>Satis est verborum,</i>	There is enough of words.

1. Adverbs of time governing the genit. are, *Interea, postea, inde, tunc* ; as, *Interea loci*, in the mean time ; *Postea loci*, afterwards ; *inde, loci*, then ; *tunc temporis*, at that time. 2. Of place, *Ubi* and *quo*, with their compounds, *ubique, ubicunque, ubivis, ubiubi*, &c. Also *Eo, luc, euczine, unde, usquam, nusquam, longe, ibidem* : as, *Ubi, quo, quovis*, &c. Also *usquam, nusquam, unde, terrarum, vel gentium ; longè gentium ; ibidem loci, eo audacia, recordia, miseriarum*, &c. to that pitch of boldness, madness, misery, &c. 3. Of quantity, *Abunde, affatim, largiter, nimis, satis, parum, minimè* ; as, *Abundè gloriæ, affatim divitiarum, largiter auri, satis loquentiæ, sapientiæ parum est illi vel habet*, He has enough of glory, riches, &c. *Minimè gentium*, by no means.

Some add *ergo* and *instar* ; as, *Ergo virtutis*, for the sake of virtue, Cic. *Instar montis*, like a mountain, Virg. : But these are properly nouns

Obs. 1. These adverbs are thought to govern the genitive, because they imply in themselves the force of a substantive ; as, *Potentia gloriæ, et abundè adeptus*, the same with *abundantiam gloriæ* : or *res, locus, negotium* and a preposition, may be understood ; as, *Interea loci*, i. e. *inter ea negotia loci* ; *Ubi terrarum*, for *in quo loco terrarum*.

Obs. 2. We usually say, *pridie, postridie ejus diēi*, seldom *diem* ; but *pridie, postridie Kalendas, Nexas, Idus, ludos Apollinares, natalem ejus, absolutionem ejus*, &c. rarely *Kalendarum*, &c.

Obs. 3. *En* and *ecce* are construed either with the nominative or accusative ; / as,

En hostis, or *hostem* ; *Ecce miserum hominem*, Cic. Sometimes a dative is added ; as, *Ecce tibi Strato*, Ter. *Ecce duas* (scil. aras.) *tibi Daphni*, Virg. In like manner is construed *hem* put for *ecce* ; as, *Hem tibi Darum*, Ter. But in all these examples some verb must be understood.

XLI./ Some derivative adverbs govern the case of their primitives ; / as,

<i>Omnium optimè loquitur,</i>	He speaks the best of all.
<i>Convenienter natura,</i>	Agreeably to nature.
<i>Venit obviam ei,</i>	He came to meet him.
<i>Proximè castris or castra,</i>	Next the camp.

/The CONSTRUCTION OF PREPOSITIONS.

1. PREPOSITIONS governing the Accusative.)

Ad astra, *to the stars*; religari ad asserem, *to be bound to a plank*; ad diem veniam, solvam, &c. *at or on*; ad portam, ostium, fores, *at, before*; ad urbem, Tiberim, *near, at*; ad templa supplicatio, *in*; ad summum, *at most, or to the top*; ad summam, *on the whole*; Cic.; ad ultimum, extremum, *at last, finally*; ad v. in speciem, *to appearance*; mentis ad omnia capacitas; annus fatalis ad interitum; lenius ad severitatem, *for, with respect to*, Cic.; ad vivum, *sc. corpus, to the quick*; ad judicem agere, *before*; nihil ad Casarem, *in comparison of*; numero ad duodecim, *to the number of*; omnes ad unum, *to a man*; ad hoc, *besides*; ad vulgi opinionem, *according to*; homo ad unguem factus, *an accomplished man*; herbæ ad lunam messæ, *by the light of*, Virg. ad tempus venit, *at*; Ira brevis est & ad tempus, *for*; ad tempus consilium capiam, *according to*; Cic.; ad decem annos *after*; annos ad quinquaginta natus, *about*; Cic. nebula erat ad multum diei, *for a great part of the day*; Liv.; ad pedes jacere, proculvi, procumbere, & ad genua; ad manus esse, *at*; ad manus venire, *to come to a close engagement*; ad libellam deberi, *to a farthing, no more and no less*; ad amissim, *exactly*; ad hæc visa auditaque, *upon seeing and hearing these things*, Liv.

Ad seems sometimes to be taken adverbially; as, Ad duo milia cæsa sunt; ad mille hominum amissum est; ad ducenti perierunt, *about*, Liv.

APUD forum, *at*; apud me cœnabis, *at my house*; apud senatum, judices, v. aliquem dicere, *before*; apud majores nostros, *among*; apud Xenophontem, *in the look of*; Est mihi fides, *vel valeo*, apud illum, *I have credit with him*; facio te apud illum deum, Ter.

ANTE diem, focum, &c. *before*.

ADVERSUS, v. -um; CONTRA hostes, *against*; adversus infimos justitia est servanda, *towards*; adversum hunc loqui, *to*, Ter. Lerina adversum Antipolim, *over against*, Plin.

CIS vel CITRA flumen, *on this side*; citra necessitatem, *without*; Ede citra cruditatem, hibe citra ebrietatem, Senec.

CIRCUM & CIRCA regem, *about*; Varia circa hæc opinio, Plin.

ERGA amicos, *towards*. EXTRA muros; Extra jocum, periculum noxiam, sortem, *without*; nemo extra te, *besides*; extra conjurationem, *not concerned in*, Sall.

INFRA tectum, *below the roof*.

INTER fratres, *among*; inter & super cœnam, *during in the time of*; inter hæc parata, *during these preparations*; Sall. Inter tot annos, *in*; Cic. Inter diem, *whence*, interdia, *in the day time*; inter se amant, *they love one another*; Quasi non norimus nos inter nos, Ter.

INTRA privatos parietes, intra paucos annos, *within*; intra famam est, *less than report*. Quin&.

JUXTA macellum, *near the stables*.

OB lucrum, *for gain*; ob oculos, *before*; ob industriam *for de industria, on purpose*, Plaut.

PENES quem, *or quem penes,*

in the power of ; Penes te es ?

Are you in your senses ? Hor.

PER agros, *through* ; per vim, per scelus, *by* ; per anni tempus, per ætatem licet, *for, by reason of*.

PONE caput, *behind*.

POST hoc tempus, *after* ; post tergum, *behind* ; post homines natos, post hominum memoriam, *since the world began*.

PRÆTER te nemo, *no body besides, or except* ; præter casam fugere, *beyond* ; præter legem, morem, æquum & bonum, spem, opinionem, &c. *contrary to, against, beyond* ; præter cæteros excellere, lamentari, *above* ; præter ripam ire, *along, near* ; præter oculos, *before*, Cic.

PROPTER virtutem, *for, on account of* ; propter aquæ rivum, *near, hard by*, Virg.

SECUNDUM facta & virtutes tuas, *according to* ; Ter. secundum litus, secundum aurem vulnera-

tus est, *near to* ; in actione secundum vocem, vultus plurimum valet ; secundum patrem tu es proximus, *after, next to* ; Prætor secundum me decrevit, sententiam dedit. *for, in my favour*, Cic.

SECUS viam, *by, along*.

SUPRA terram, *above*.

TRANS mare, *over, beyond*.

ULTRA oceanum, *beyond*.

To prepositions governing the accusative are commonly added CIRCITER, PROPE, USQUE & VERSUS ; as Circiter meridiem, *about mid-day* ; prope muros, *near the walls* ; usque Puteolos, Tharsum usque, *as far as* ; Orientem versus, *towards the east*. But in these *ad* is understood ; which we find sometimes expressed ; as, Prope ad annum, Nep. Ab ovo usque ad mala, Hor. Ad oceanum versus, Cæf. In Italiam versus, Cic.

PREPOSITIONS governing the Ablative.)

A patre,) ab omnibus, abs te, *by or from* ; a puero, *vel* pueris, a pueritia, incunabulis, teneris unguibus, &c. *from a child, ever since childhood* ; ab ovo usque ad mala, *from the beginning to the end of supper* ; a manu, *sc. servus, an amanuensis or clerk* ; ad manum, *a waiting man* ; a pedibus, *a footman* ; a latere principis, *an attendant*. So a secretis, rationibus, consiliis, cyathis, &c. *a secretary, accountant, &c.* ; fores a nobis, *for nostræ*. Injuria ab illo, *for illius*, Ter. a cœna, *after* ; Secundus, tertius a Romulo ; ictus ab latere, *on or in* ; a senatu stare. *for, in defence of* ; ab oculis doleo, Plaut. ab ingenio impiebus, a pecunia & militibus imparatus, *as to,*

with respect to, Cic. Est calor a sole ; omissiores ab re, *too careless about money* ; a villa mercenarium vidi, Ter.

ABSQUE causa, *without* ; absque te esset, recte ego mihi vidissem, *i. e. si tu non esses, nisi tu esses, but for you, had it not been for you*, Ter. Absque is chiefly used by comic writers ; sine, by orators.

CLAM patre & patrem, *without the knowledge of*.

CORAM omnibus, *before, in presence of*.

CUM exercitu, *with* ; testis mecum est annulus, *in my possession*, Ter. cum prima luce, *at break of day* ; cum imperio esse, *in* ; cum primis, in primis, *in the first place* ; cum metu dicere, cum lætitia vivere, cum cura, &c. Cic.

Cic. *We say*, mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum ; rarely cum me, cum te, &c. and quocum or cum quo, quibuscum or cum quibus.

DE lana caprina rixantur, *about, concerning* ; De tanto patrimonio nihil relictum est, *of* ; de loco superiore, *from* ; de die, *by day* ; de nocte, *by night* ; de integro, *anew, afresh* ; de v. ex improviso, *unexpectedly* ; de v. ex industria, *on purpose* ; de meo, *at my expense* ; Id de lucro putato esse, *clear gain* ; Ter. de v. ex pacto agere, *by agreement* ; de transverso, *cross-wise, atwart* ; de v. ex ejus sententia, consilio, *according to* ; qua v. hac de causa, *for* ; homo de plebe ; templum de marmore, *of* ; de scripto dicere, *to read a speech* ; de Filio emit, *from*, Cic. De servis fidelissimus ; de ipsius exercitu non amplius hominum mille cecidit, Nep. Robur de exercitu, Liv. Adolescens de summo loco, Plaut. De procul aspicere, Id.

E foro, Ex ædibus, *from, out of* ; e contrario, v. contraria parte, *on the contrary* ; e regione, *over against* ; e republica, e re alicujus, *for the good of* ; statim e somno, ex fuga, ex tanta prosperantia, aliud ex alio malum, *from, after* ; e vestigio, *out of hand, immediately* ; poculum ex auro ; ex equo pugnare, *on horseback* ; facere pugnam ex commodo, *on advantageous ground*, Sall. diem ex die expectare, *from day to day, day after day* ; ex ordine, *in order* ; magna ex parte, *for the most part* ; ex supervacuo, *superfluously* ; ex tua dignitate v. virtute, ex decreto senatus, e natura, *according to* ; so vulgus ex veritate pauca, ex opinione multa æstimat ; ex v. de mo-

re, ad v. in morem alicujus : Ex animo, *from the heart* ; Insolentia ex prosperis rebus, e via languere, ex doctrina nobilis, *on account of* ; ex usu est tibi, *of advantage* ; ex eo die, *since*, ex amicis certis certissimus, *of or among* ; ex pedibus laborare, *to be ill of the gout*, Cic. E re nata, *as the matter stands*, Ter. Commenta mater est, esse ex alio viro, nescioquo, puerum natum, *by*, Id.

Pro gloria certare, *for* ; Rati noctem pro se, *favourable to them* ; Sall. Hoc est pro me, Cic. pro templo, tribunali, concione, rostris, castris, foribus, *before* ; pro sua dignitate, sapientia, &c. pro potestate cogere, pro tempore, re, loco, suo jure, *according to* ; est pro prætore, pro te molam, comes facundus pro vehiculo est, *for, instead of* ; pro viribus, pro parte virili, pro sua quisque parte v. facultate, *to one's ability or power* ; Parum tibi pro eo, quod a te habeo, reddidi, *in comparison of, considering*, Cic. pro ut, pro eo ac, pro eo ut mereor, *as I deserve* ; pro se quisque, uterque, &c. *for his own part* ; pro rata parte, pro portione, *in proportion* ; pro cive se gerit ; agere pro victoribus ; pro suo uti ; pro rupto sædus habet, *for, as* ; so pro certo, infecto, comperto, nihilo, concessio, &c. habeo, duco. Pro occiso, relictus est, Cic.

PRÆ se pugionem tulit, *before* ; speciem præ se boni viri fert, *pretends to be*, Ter. præ lacrymis non possum scribere, *for, because of* ; illum præ me contempni, *in comparison of* : So the adv. præut ; as, præut hujus rabies quæ dabit, Ter.

PALAM populo, omnibus, *before, with the knowledge of*.

SINE labore, *without* ; sine ulla causa, pompa, molestia, querela, impensa, &c. ; homo sine re-fide, spe, fortunis, sede, &c. Cic.

Capulo TENUS, *up to the hilt*.
Tenus is construed with the genitive plural, when the word wants the sing. ; as, *Cumarum tenus*, as far as *Cumæ* : or when we speak of things, of which we have by nature only two ;) as, *Oculorum, aurium, narium, la-*

brorum, lumborum, crurum tenus, up to. We also find *Corcy-ræ tenus*, & *ostiis tenus*, Liv. *Colchis tenus*, Flor. *Pectoribus tenus*, Ovid.

To prepositions governing the abl. is commonly added *PROCUL* ; as, *Procul domo*, far from home ; but here *a* is understood, which is also often expressed ; as, *Procul a patria*, Virg. *Procul ab ostentatione*. Quint. *Culpa est procul a me*, Ter.

3. PREPOSITIONS governing the Accus. and Abl.)

XLIV. The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified ; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative ; *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative. |

IN when it signifies *into*, governs the accusative ; when it signifies *in* or *among*, it governs the ablative ;) as,

IN urbem ire, into ; *amor in patriam, in te benignus, towards* ; *in lucem, until day* ; *in eam sententiam, to that purpose, on that head* ; *in rem tuam est, for your advantage* ; *in utramque partem disputare, on both sides, for and against* ; *litura in nomen, on*, Cic. *potestas in filium, over* ; *in aliquem dicere, against* ; *mirum in modum, after* ; *in pedes stare, in aurem dormire, on* ; *in os laudare, to, before* ; *in v. inter patres lectus, into the number of* ; *in vulgus probari, spargere, &c. among* ; *crescit in dies in singulos dies, omnes in dies, every day* ; *in diem posterum, proximum, decimum, against* ; *in diem vivere, to live from hand to mouth, not to think of to-morrow* ; *Est in diem, will*

happen some time after, Ter. *Induciæ in duos menses datæ, in hunc diem, annum, &c. for* ; *Ternis assibus in pedem, v. in singulos pedes, transegit, Hebar-gained for three shillings a foot, or for every foot* ; *So in jugerum, militem, capita, naves, &c.* *In medimna singula, H. S. quinos denos dedisti*, Cic.

IN portu navigo, in tempore, in ; *esse in potestate, v. in potestatem, honore vel honorem, mente v. mentem* : *in manu v. manibus esse* ; *habere, tenere, in one's power, on hand* ; *in amicis, among* ; *in oculis, before* : *Occisus est in provinciam, for in provincia*, Sall. *In pueritia, adolescentia, senectute, absentia, for puer or pueri, when a*
 boy

boy or boys, &c. Hoc in tempore, Nep. In loco fratris diligere, for ut fratrem, Ter.

SUB terras ibit imagno, sub aspectum cadit, under; sub ipsum funus, near, just before. Hor. sub lucem, ortum lucis, noctem, vesperam, brumam, i. e. incipiente luce, &c. at the dawn of day, &c.; sub idem tempus, about; sub eas literas recitatae sunt tuae, sub festos dies, after, Cic.

SUB muro, rege, pedibus, &c. un-

der; sub urbe, near, Ter. sub ea conditione, v. -em on or with.

SUPER Numidiam, above, beyond; super ripas, upon; super hæc; super morbum etiam fames affixit, besides, Liv. super arbore, fronde super viridi, upon; super hac re scribere, his accensa super, concerning; alii super alios trucidantur, Liv. Super cœnam, super vinum & epulas, for inter, during, Curt. Nec super ipse suâ molitur laude laborem, for, Virg.

SUBTER terram vel terra, under.

Obs. 1. Prepositions in English have always after them the accusative or objective case. And when prepositions in English or Latin do not govern a case, they are reckoned adverbs.

Such are *Ante, circa, clam, coram, contra, infra, intra, juxta, palam, pone, post, propter, secus, subter, super, supra, ultra*. But in most of these the case seems to be implied in the sense; as, *Longo post tempore venit*, sc. *post id tempus*. *Adversus, juxta, propter, secus, secundum, & clam*, are by some thought to be always adverbs, having a preposition understood when they govern a case. So other adverbs also are construed with the acc. or abl. as, *Intus cellam*, for *intra*, Liv. *Intus templo divum*, sc. *in*, Virg. *Simul hic*, sc. *cum*, Hor.

Obs. 2. A and e are only put before consonants; AB and ex, usually before vowels, and sometimes also before consonants; as,

A patre, e regione: *ab initio, ab rege*; *ex urbe, ex parte*: *abs* before *q* and *t*; as, *abs te, abs quovis homine*, Ter. Some phrases are used only with *e*; as, *e longinquo, e regione, e vestigio, e re mea est*, &c. Some only with *ex*; as, *Ex compacto, ex tempore, magna ex parte*, &c.

Obs. 3. Prepositions are often understood; as, *Devenere locos*, scil. *ad*; *It portis*, sc. *ex*, Virg. *Nunc id prodeo*, scil. *ob* vel *propter*, Ter. *Maria aspera juro*, scil. *per*, Virg. *Ut se loco movere non possent*, scil. *e* vel *de*, Cæs. *Vina promens dolio*, scil. *ex*, Hor. *Quid illi facias?* *Quid me fiet*, sc. *de*, Ter. And so in English, *Show me the book*; *Get me some paper*, that is, *to me, for me*. We sometimes find the word to which the preposition refers, suppressed; as, *Circum Concordiæ*, sc. *ad eam*, Sall. *Round St. Paul's*, namely, *church*; *Campum Stellatæm divisit extra sortem ad viginti millibus civium*, i. e. *civium millibus ad viginti millia*, Suet. But this is most frequently the case after prepositions in composition; thus, *Emittere servum*, scil. *manu*, Plaut. *Evomere virus*, scil. *ore*, Cic. *Educere copias*, scil. *castris*, Cæs.

XLV. A preposition in composition often governs the same case, as when it stands by itself ; as,

Adeamus scholam,

Let us go to the school.

Exeamus scholâ,

Let us go out of the school.

Obs. 1. The preposition with which the verb is compounded, is often repeated ; as, *Adire ad scholam ; Exire e schola ; Adgredi aliquid, & ad aliquid ; ingredi orationem vel in orationem ; inducere animum, & in animum ; evadere undis & ex undis ; decedere de suo jure, decedere viâ vel de via ; expellere, ejicere, exterminare, extrudere, exturbare urbe, & ex urbe.* Some do not repeat the preposition ; as, *Affari, alloqui, alatrare aliquem, not ad aliquem.* So *Alluere urbem ; accollere flumen ; circumvenire aliquem ; præterire injuriam ; abdicare se magistratu, (also abdicare magistratum) ; transducere exercitum fluvium, &c.* Others are only construed with the preposition ; as, *Accurrere ad aliquem, adhortari ad aliquid, incidere in morbum, avocare a studiis, avertere ab incepto, &c.*

Some admit other prepositions ; as, *Abire, demigrare loco ; & a, de, ex loco ; abstrahere aliquem a, de, vel e conspectu ; Desistere sententiâ, a vel de sententia, Excidere manibus, de vel e manibus, &c.*

Obs. 2. Some verbs compounded with *e* or *ex* govern either the ablative or accusative ; as,

Egredi urbe or urbem, sc. extra ; egredi extra vallum, Nep. Evadere insidiis or insidias. Patrios excedere muros, Lucan. Sceleratâ excedere terrâ, Virg. Elabi ex manibus ; pugnam, vincula, Tac.

Obs. 3. This rule does not take place, unless when the preposition may be disjoined from the verb, and put before the noun by itself ; as, *Alloquor patrem, or loquor ad patrem.*

3. THE CONSTRUCTION OF INTERJECTIONS.

XLVI. The interjections *O, heu,* and *proh,* are construed with the nominative, accusative, or vocative ; as,

O vir bonus or bone ! O good man ! Heu me miserum ! Ah wretched me !

So, *O vir fortis atque amicus ! Ter. Heu vanitas humana ! Plin. Heu miserande puer ! Virg. O præclarum custodem ovium (ut aiunt) lupum ! Cic.*

XLVII. *Hei* and *væ* govern the dative ; as,

Hæi mihi ! Ah me !

Væ vobis ! Wo to you !

Obs. 1. *Heus* and *ohé* are joined only with the vocative ; as, *Heus Syre, Ter. Ohé libelle ! Martial. Proh or pro, ah, vab, hem,* have generally either the accusative or vocative ; as, *Proh hominum fidem ! Ter. Proh Sancte Jupiter ! Cic. Hem astutias ! Ter.*

Obs. 2. Interjections cannot properly have either concord or government. They are only mere sounds excited by passion, and have no just connection with any other part of a sentence. Whatever case

therefore is joined with them, must depend on some other word understood, except the vocative, which is always placed absolutely : thus, *Heu me miserum !* stands for *Heu ! quam me miserum sentio !* *Hei mihi !* for *Hei ! malum est mihi !* *Proh dolor !* for *Proh ! quantus est dolor !* and so in other examples.

X The CONSTRUCTION OF CIRCUMSTANCES.

The circumstances, which in Latin are expressed in different cases, are, 1. The *Price of a thing*. 2. The *Cause, Manner, and Instrument*. 3. *Place*. 4. *Measure and Distance*. 5. *Time*.

I. PRICE.

XLVIII. The price of a thing is put in the ablative ; as,

Emi librum duobus assibus,
Constitit talento,

I bought a book for two shillings.
It cost a talent.

So *Asses carum est ; vile viginti minis ; auro venale, &c.* *Nocet empti dolore voluptas,* Hor. *Spem pretio non emam,* Ter. *Plurimi auro veneunt benores,* Ovid.

¶ These genitives *tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris,* are excepted ; as,

Quanti constitit, How much cost it ? *Asses et pluris,* A shilling and more.

Obs. 1. When the substantive is added, they are put in the ablative ; as, *parvo pretio, impenso pretio vendere,* Cic.

Obs. 2. *Magno, permagno, parvo, paululo, minimo, plurimo,* are often used without the substantive ; as, *Permagno constitit,* scil. *pretio,* Cic. *Heu quanto regnis nox fletit una tuis ?* Ovid. Fast. ii. 812. We also say, *Emi carè, carius, carissimè ; bene, melius, optimè ; malè, pejùs, vilius, vilissimè ; Valde carè aestimas : Emit domum prope dimidio carius, quam aestimabat,* Cic.

Obs. 3. The ablative of price is properly governed by the preposition *pro* understood, which is likewise sometimes expressed ; as, *Dum pro argenteis decem aureus unus valeret,* Liv.

2. MANNER and CAUSE.

XLIX. The cause, manner, and instrument are put in the ablative ; as,

Palleo metu,
Fecit suo more,
Scribo calamo,

I am pale for fear.
He did it after his own way.
I write with a pen.

So *Ardet dolore ; pallescere culpâ ; astuare dubitatione ; gestire voluptate vel secundis rebus : Confectus morbo ; affectus beneficiis ; gravissimo supplicio ; insignis pietate ; deterior licentiâ : Pietate filius, consiliis pater, amore frater ;* hence *Rex Dei gratiâ. Paritur pax bello, Nep. Procedere lente gradu ; Acceptus regia apparatu : Nullo sono convertitur annus, Juv. Jam veniet tacito curva senectâ pede, Ovid. Percutere securi, defendere saxis, configere sagittis, &c.*

Obs. 1. The ablative is here governed by some preposition understood. Before the manner and cause, the preposition is sometimes expressed ; as, *De more matrum locuta est, Virg. Magno cum metu ; Hæc de causa : Præ maxore, formidine, &c.* But hardly ever before the instrument ; as, *Vulnerare aliquem gladio, not cum gladio ;* unless among the poets, who sometimes add *a* or *ab* ; as, *Trajectus ab ense, Ovid.*

Obs. 2. When any thing is said to be in company with another, it is called the ablative of CONCOMITANCY, and has the preposition *cum* usually added ; as, *Obsedit curiam cum gladiis : Ingressus est cum gladio, Cic.*

Obs. 3. Under this rule are comprehended several other circumstances, as the matter of which any thing is made, and what is called by grammarians the ADJUNCT, that is, a noun in the ablative joined to a verb or adjective, to express the character or quality of the person or thing spoken of ; as, *Capitolium saxo quadrato constructum, Liv. Floruit acuminis ingenii, Cic. Pallet opibus, valet armis, viget memoriâ famâ nobilis, &c. Æger pedibus.* When we express the matter of which any thing is made, the preposition is usually added ; as, *Templum de marmore, seldom marmoris ; Peculum ex aëre factum, Cic.*

3. PLACE.

✚ The circumstances of place may be reduced to four particulars. 1. The place *where*, or *in which*. 2. The place *whither*, or *to which*. 3. The place *whence*, or *from which*. 4. The place *by* or *through which*. ✚

✚ *AT* or *IN* a place is put in the genitive ; unless the noun be of the third declension, or of the plural number, and then it is expressed in the ablative. ✚

✚ *TO* a place is put in the accusative ; *FROM* or *BY* a place, in the ablative. ✚

✚ But these cases will be more exactly ascertained by reducing the circumstances of place to particular questions. ✚

1. The Place WHERE.

L. ✚ When the question is made by *Ubi ? Where ?* the name of a town is put in the genitive ; as,)

Vixit Romæ,
Mertuus est Londini,

He lived at Rome.
He died at London.

¶ But if the name of a town be of the third declension or plural number, it is expressed in the ablative ; as,

Habitat Carthagine,
Studit Parisiis,

He dwells at Carthage.
He studied at Paris.

Obs. 1. When a thing is said to be done, not in the place itself, but in its neighbourhood or near it; we always use the preposition *ad* or *apud*; as, *Ad* or *apud Trojam*, At or near Troy.

Obs. 2. The name of a town, when put in the ablative, is here governed by the preposition *in* understood; but if it be in the genitive, we must supply *in urbe*, or *in oppido*. Hence, when the name of a town is joined with an adjective or common noun, the preposition is generally expressed: thus, we do not say, *Natus est Romæ urbis celebris*: but either *Romæ in celebri urbe*, or *in Romæ celebri urbe*, or *in Roma celebri urbe*, or sometimes *Romæ celebri urbe*. In like manner, we usually say, *Habitat in urbe Carthagine*, with the preposition. We likewise find, *Habitat Carthagini*, which is sometimes the termination of the ablative, when the question is made by *ubi*?

2. The Place WHITHER.

LI. When the question is made by *Quo*? Whither? the name of a town is put in the accusative; as,

Venit Romam,
Profectus est Athenas,

He came to Rome.
He went to Athens.

Obs. 1. We find the dative also used among the poets, but more seldom; as, *Carthagini nuncios mittam*, Horat.

Obs. 2. Names of towns are sometimes put in the accusative, after verbs of telling and giving, where motion to a place is implied; as, *Romam erat nunciatum*, The report was carried to Rome, Liv. *Hæc nunciant domum Albani*, Id. *Messanam literas dedit*, Cic.

3. The Place WHENCE.

LII. When the question is made by *Unde*? Whence? or *Qua*? By or through what place? the name of a town is put in the ablative; as,

Discessit

*Discessit Corintho,
Laodiceâ iter faciebat,*

He departed from Corinth.
He went through Laodicea.

When motion *by* or *through* a place is signified, the preposition *per* is commonly used ; as, *Per Thebas iter fecit, Nep.*

Domus and *Rus*.

LIII. | *Domus* and *rus* are construed the same way as names of towns ; | as,

<i>Manet domi,</i>	He stays at home.
<i>Domum reuertitur,</i>	He returns home.
<i>Domo arcessitus sum,</i>	I am called from home.
<i>Vivit rure, or more frequently ruri,</i>	He lives in the country.
<i>Rediit rure,</i>	He is returned from the country.
<i>Abiit rus,</i>	He is gone to the country.

Obs. 1. | *Humi, militiæ, and belli,* are likewise construed in the genitive, as names of towns ; | thus,

Domi et militiæ, or belli, At home and abroad. Jacet humi, He lies on the ground.

Obs. 2. When *Domus* is joined with an adjective, we commonly use a preposition ; as, *In domo paterna, not domi paternæ ; So, Ad domum paternam : Ex domo paternâ.* Unless when it is joined with these possessives, *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, regius, and alienus ;* as, *Domi meæ vixit, Cic. Regiam domum comportant, Sall.*

Obs. 3. When *domus* has another substantive in the genitive after it, the preposition is sometimes used and sometimes not ; as, *Deprehensus est domi, domo, or in domo Caesaris.*

LIV. | To names of countries, provinces, and all other places, except towns, the preposition is commonly added ; | as,

When the question is made by

Ubi ? Natus in Italia, in Latio, in urbe, &c.

Quo ? Abiit in Italiam, in Latium, in, or ad urbem, &c.

Unde ? Rediit ex Italia, e Latio, ex urbe, &c.

Qua ? Transiit per Italiam, per Latium, per urbem, &c.

Obs. 1. A preposition is often added to names of towns ; as, *In Roma for Romæ ; ad Romam, ex Roma, &c.*

Peto always governs the accusative as an active verb, without

without a preposition ; as, *Petivit Egyptum*, He went to Egypt.

Obs. 2. Names of countries, provinces, &c. are sometimes construed without the preposition like names of towns ; as, *Pompeius Cypri visus est*, Cæf. *Cretæ jussit confidere Apollo*, Virg. *Non Lybiæ*, for *in Lybia* ; *non antè Tyro*, for *Tyri*. Id. *Æn.* iv. 36. *Venit Sardiniam*, Cic. *Roma*, *Numidiæque facinoræ ejus memorat*, Sall.

4. MEASURE and DISTANCE.

LV. Measure or distance is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative ; as,

Murus est decem pedes altus,
Urbs distat triginta milia, or tri-
ginta millibus passuum,
Iter, or itinere unius dici,

The wall is ten feet high.

The city is thirty miles distant ;

One day's journey.

Obs. 1. The accusative or ablative of measure is put after adjectives and verbs of dimension ; as, *Longus, latus, crassus, profundus*, and *altus* : *Patet, porrigitur, eminet, &c.* The names of measure are *pes, cubitus, ulna, passus, digitus*, an inch ; *palmus*, a span, an hand-breadth, &c. The accusative or ablative of distance is used only after verbs which express motion or distance ; as, *Eo, curro, absum, dislo, &c.* The accusative is governed by *ad* or *per* understood, and the ablative by *a* or *ab*.

Obs. 2. When we express the measure of more things than one, we commonly use the distributive number ; as, *Muri sunt denos pedes alti*, and sometimes *denum pedum*, for *denorum*, in the genitive, *ad mensuram* being understood. But the genitive is only used to express the measure of things in the plural number.

Obs. 3. When we express the distance of a place where any thing is done, we commonly use the ablative ; or the accusative with the preposition *ad* ; as, *Sex millibus passuum ab urbe confedit*, or *ad sex milia passuum*, Cæf. *Ad quintum milliarium v. milliare confedit*, Cic. *Ad quintum lapidem*, Nep.

Obs. 4. The excess or difference of measure and distance is put in the ablative ; as,

Hoc lignum excedit illud digito. Toto vertice supra est, Virg. *Britannia longitudo ejus latitudinem ducentis quadraginta milliariis superat.*

5. TIME.

LVI. When the question is made by *Quando*? When? time is put in the ablative; as,

Venit horâ tertiâ,

He came at three o'clock.

¶ When the question is made by *Quamdiu*? How long? time is put in the accusative or ablative, but oftener in the accusative; as,

Mansit paucos dies,

He staid a few days.

Sex mensibus absuit,

He was away six months.

* Or thus, Time *when* is put in the ablative, time *how long* is put in the accusative.)

Obs. 1. When we speak of any precise time, it is put in the ablative; but when continuance of time is expressed, it is put for the most part in the accusative.

Obs. 2. All the circumstances of time are often expressed with a preposition; as, *In præsentia*, or *in præsentia*, scil. *tempore*; in vel *ad præsens*; *Per decem annos*; *Surgunt de nocte*; *ad horam destinatam*; *Intra annum*; *Per idem tempus*, *ad Kalendas soluturos ait*, Suet. The preposition *ad* or *circa* is sometimes suppressed, as in these expressions, *hoc, illud, id, isthuc, ætatis, temperis, horæ, &c.* for *hac ætate, hoc tempore, &c.* And *ante* or some other word; as, *Annos natus unum & viginti*, sc. *ante*. *Siculi quotannis tributa conserunt*, sc. *tot annis, quot vel quotquot sunt*, Cic. *Prope diem*, sc. *ad soon*; *Oppidum paucis diebus, quibus è ventum est, expugnatum*, sc. *post eos dies*, Cæsar. *Ante diem tertium Kalendas Maias accepi tuas literas*, for *die tertio ante*, Cic. *Qui dies futurus esset inante diem octavum Kalendas Novembris*, Id. *Exante diem quintum Kal. Octob.* Liv. *Lacedæmonii septingentos jam annos amplius unis moribus et nunquam mutatis legibus vivunt*, sc. *quam per*, Cic. We find, *Primum stipendium meruit annorum decem septemque*, sc. *Atticus*; for *septemdecim annos natus*, seventeen years old, Nep.

Obs. 3. The adverb *ABHINC*, which is commonly used with respect to past time, is joined with the accusative or ablative without a preposition; as, *factum est abhinc biennio* or *biennium*, It was done two years ago. So likewise are *post* and *ante*; as, *Paucos post annos*: but here, *ea* or *id* may be understood.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

A compound sentence is that which has more than one nominative, or one finite verb.

A compound sentence is made up of two or more simple sentences or *phrases*, and is commonly called a *Period*.

The

The parts of which a compound sentence consists, are called *Members* or *Clauses*.

In every compound sentence there are either several subjects, and one attribute, or several attributes, and one subject, or both several subjects and several attributes : That is, there are either several nominatives applied to the same verb, or several verbs applied to the same nominative, or both.

Every verb marks a judgment or attribute, and every attribute must have a subject. There must therefore be in every sentence or period as many prepositions, as there are verbs of a finite mode.

Sentences are compounded by means of relatives and conjunctions ; *as,*

Happy is the man who loveth religion and practiseth virtue.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF RELATIVES.

LVII. **The relative** *Qui, Quæ, Quod*, agrees with the antecedent in gender, number, and person ; and is construed through all the cases, as the antecedent would be in its place ; *as,*

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Vir qui,</i>	The man who.	<i>Viri qui.</i>
<i>Femina quæ,</i>	The woman who.	<i>Feminae quæ.</i>
<i>Negotium quod,</i>	The thing which.	<i>Negotia quæ.</i>
<i>Ego qui scribo,</i>	I who write.	<i>Nos qui scribimus.</i>
<i>Tu qui scribis,</i>	Thou who writest.	<i>Vos qui scribitis.</i>
<i>Vir qui scribit,</i>	The man who writes.	<i>Viri qui scribunt.</i>
<i>Mulier quæ scribit,</i>	The woman who writes.	<i>Mulieres quæ scribunt.</i>
<i>Animal quod currit,</i>	The animal which runs.	<i>Animalia quæ currunt.</i>
<i>Vir quem vidi,</i>	The man whom I saw.	<i>Viri quos vidi.</i>
<i>Mulier quam vidi,</i>	The woman whom I saw.	<i>Mulieres quas vidi.</i>
<i>Animal quod vidi,</i>	The animal which I saw.	<i>Animalia quæ vidi.</i>
<i>Vir cui paret,</i>	The man whom he obeys.	<i>Viri quibus paret.</i>
<i>Vir cui est similis,</i>	The man to whom he is like.	<i>Viri quibus est similis.</i>
<i>Vir a quo,</i>	The man by whom.	<i>Viri a quibus.</i>
<i>Mulier ad quam,</i>	The woman to whom.	<i>Mulieres ad quas.</i>
<i>Vir cujus opus est,</i>	The man whose work it is.	<i>Viri quorum opus est.</i>
<i>Vir quem misëror,</i>	} The man whom I pity.	
<i>cujus misereor vel miseresco,</i>		
<i>cujus me misëret,</i>		
<i>cujus vel cuja interest, &c.</i>		whose interest it is, &c.

If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be the nominative to the verb. **]**

But

But if a nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be of that case, which the verb or noun following, or the preposition going before, use to govern.

Thus the construction of the relative requires an acquaintance with most of the foregoing rules of syntax, and may serve as an exercise on all of them

Obs. 1. The relative must always have an antecedent expressed or understood, and therefore may be considered as an adjective placed between two cases of the same substantive, of which the one is always expressed, generally the former ; as,

Vir qui (vir) legit ; vir, quem (virum) amo : Sometimes the latter ; as, *Quam quisque nōrit artem, in hac (arte) se exerceat,* Cic. *Eunuchum, quem dedisti nobis, quas turbus dedit,* Ter. sc. *Eunuchus.* Sometimes both cases are expressed ; as, *Erant omnino duo itinera, quibus itineribus domo exire possent,* Cæsar. Sometimes, though more rarely, both cases are omitted ; as, *Sunt, quos hoc genus minime juvat,* for *sunt homines, quos homines,* &c. Hor.

Obs. 2. When the relative is placed between two substantives of different genders, it may agree in gender with either of them, though most commonly with the former ; as,

Vultus quem dixere chaos, Ovid. *Est locus in carcere, quod Tullianum appellatur,* Sall. *Animal, quem vocamus hominem,* Cic. *Cogito id quod res est,* Ter. If a part of a sentence be the antecedent, the relative is always put in the neuter gender ; as, *Pompeius se afflixit, quod mihi est summo doli,* scil. *Pompeium se affligere,* Cic. Sometimes the relative does not agree in gender with the antecedent, but with some synonymous word supplied ; as, *Scelus qui* for *sceleratus,* Ter. *Abundantia earum rerum, quæ mortales prima putant,* scil. *negotia,* Sall. *Vel virtus tua me vel vicinitas, quod ego in aliqua parte amicitie puto, facit ut te moneam,* scil. *negotium,* Ter. *In omni Africa, qui agebant ;* for *in omnibus Afris,* Sallust. Jug. 89. *Non dissidentia futuri, quæ imperavisset,* for *quod,* lb. 100.

Obs. 3. When the relative comes after two words of different persons, it agrees with the first or second person rather than the third ; as, *Ego sum vir, qui facio,* scarcely *facit.* In English it sometimes agrees with either ; as, *I am the man, who make, or maketh.* But when once the person of the relative is fixed, it ought to be continued through the rest of the sentence ; thus it is proper to say,

T

“ I am

“ I am the man, who takes care of your interest,” but if I add, “ at the expense of my own,” it would be improper. It ought either to be, “ his own,” or “ who take.” In like manner, we may say, “ I thank you, who gave, who did love,” &c. But it is improper to say, “ I thank thee, who gave, who did love :” it should be, “ who gavest, who didst love.” In no part of English syntax are inaccuracies committed more frequently than in this. Beginners are particularly apt to fall into them, in turning Latin into English. The reason of it seems to be our applying *thou* or *you*, *thy* or *your*, promiscuously, to express the second person singular, whereas the Latins almost always expressed it by *tu* and *tuus*.

Obs. 4. The antecedent is often implied in a possessive adjective ; as,

Omnes laudare fortunas meas, qui haberem gnatum tali ingenio præditum, Ter. Sometimes the antecedent must be drawn from the sense of the foregoing words ; as, *Carne pluit, quem imbrem aves rapuisse feruntur ;* i. e. *pluit imbrem carne, quem imbrem,* &c. Liv. *Si tempus est ullum fœre hominis necandi, quæ multa sunt, scil. tempora,* Cic.

Obs. 5. The relative is sometimes entirely omitted ; as, *Urbs anti-qua fuit : Tyrii tenere coloni,* scil. *quam* or *eam,* Virg. Or if once expressed, is afterwards omitted, so that it must be supplied in a different case ; as, *Bocchus cum peditibus, quos filius ejus adduxerat, neque in priore pugna adfuerant, Romanos invadunt ;* for *quique in priore pugna non adfuerant,* Sall. In English the relative is often omitted, where in Latin it must be expressed ; as, *The letter I wrote,* for *the letter which I wrote ; The man I love,* to wit, *whom.* But this omission of the relative is generally improper, particularly in serious discourse.

Obs. 6. The case of the relative sometimes seems to depend on that of the antecedent ; as, *Cum aliquid agas eorum, quorum consuevisti,* for *quæ consuevisti agere,* or *quorum aliquid agere consuevisti,* Cic. *Restitue in quem me accepisti locum,* for *in locum, in quo,* Ter. And. iv. i. 58. But such examples rarely occur.

Obs. 7. The adjective pronouns *ille, ipse, iste, hic, is,* and *idem,* in their construction, resemble that of the relative *qui* ; as, *Liber eius,* His or her book ; *Vita eorum,* Their life, when applied to men ; *Vita earum,* Their life, when applied to women. By the improper use of these pronouns in English, the meaning of sentences is often rendered obscure.

Obs. 8. The interrogative or indefinite adjectives, *qualis, quantum, quævis, &c.* are also sometimes construed like relatives ; as, *Facies ejus, qualem deest esse sororum,* Ovid. But these have commonly other adjectives either expressed or understood, which answer to them ; as, *Tanta est multitudo, quantum vix capere potest :* and are often applied to different substantives ; as, *Quales sunt cives, talis est civitas,* Cic.

Obs.

Obs. 9. The relative *who* in English is applied only to persons, and *which* to things and irrational animals; but formerly *which* was likewise applied to persons; as, *Our Father which art in heaven*: and *whose*, the genitive of *who*, is also used sometimes, though perhaps improperly, for *of which*. *That* is used indifferently for persons and things. *What*, when not joined with a substantive, is only applied to things, and includes both the antecedent and the relative, being the same with *that which*, or *the thing which*; as, *This is what he wanted*; that is, *the thing which he wanted*.

Obs. 10. The Latin relative often cannot be translated literally into English, on account of the different idioms of the two languages; as, *Quod cum ita esset*, When that was so; not, Which when it was so, because then there would be two nominatives to the verb *was*, which is improper. Sometimes the accusative of the relative in Latin must be rendered by the nominative in English; as, *Quem dicunt me esse*? Who do they say that I am? not whom. *Quem dicunt adventare*? Who do they say is coming?

Obs. 11. As the relative is always connected with a different verb from the antecedent, it is usually construed with the subjunctive mode, unless when the meaning of the verb is expressed positively; as, *Audire cupio, quæ legeris*, I want to hear, what you have read; that is, what perhaps or probably you may have read: *Audire cupio, quæ legisti*, I want to hear, what you (actually or in fact) have read.

To the construction of the Relative may be subjoined that of the ANSWER TO A QUESTION.

The answer is commonly put in the same case with the question; as,

Qui vocare? Geta, sc. *vocor*. *Quid quaris?* Librum, sc. *quæro*. *Quotâ horâ venisti?* Sextâ. Sometimes the construction is varied; as, *Cujus est liber?* Meus, not *mei*. *Quanti emptus es?* Decem assilus. *Damnatusne es furti?* Imo alio crimine. Often the answer is made by other parts of speech than nouns; as, *Quid agitur?* Statur, sc. *a me, a nobis*. *Quis fecit?* Nescio: *Aliunt Petrum fecisse*. *Quomodo vales?* Bene, malè. *Scripsisti?* Scripsi, ita, etiam, immo, &c. *An vidisti?* Non vidi, non, minime, &c. *Charea tuam vestem detraxit tibi?* Factum. *Et cû es indutus?* Factum. Ter. Most of the Rules of Syntax may thus be exemplified in the form of questions and answers.

The CONSTRUCTION of CONJUNCTIONS.

LVIII. The conjunctions *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *neque*, *aut*, *vel*, and some others, couple like cases and modes; as,

*Honora patrem et matrem,
Nec legit nec scribit,*

Honour father and mother.
He neither reads nor writes.

Obs.

Obs. 1. To this rule belong particularly the copulative and disjunctive conjunctions ; as likewise, *quam, nisi, præterquam, an* ; and also adverbs of likeness, as, *ceu, tanquam, quasi, ut, &c.* as,

Nullum præmium a vobis posulo, præterquam hujus diei memoriam, Cic. Gloria virtutem tanquam umbra sequitur. Id.

Obs. 2. These conjunctions properly connect the different members of a sentence together, and are hardly ever applied to single words, unless when some other word is understood. Hence if the construction of the sentence be varied, different cases and modes may be coupled together ; as,

Interest mea et reipublicæ ; Constitit assè et pluris ; Sive es Romæ, sive in Epiro ; Decius cum se devoveret, et in mediam aciem irruebat, Cic. Vir magni ingenii summæque industriæ ; Neque per vim, neque insidiis, Sall. Tecum habita, & nôris, quam sit tibi curta supellex, Pers.

Obs. 3. When *et, aut, vel, sive, or nec*, are joined to different members of the same sentence, without connecting it particularly to any former sentence, the first *et* is rendered in English by *both* or *likewise* ; *aut* or *vel*, by *either* ; the first *sive*, by *whether* ; and the first *nec*, by *neither* ; as,

Et legit, et scribit : sive tum legit, tum scribit ; or cum legit, tum scribit, He both reads and writes ; Sive legit, sive scribit, Whether he reads or writes : Facere quâ vere, quâ falsa ; Increpare quâ consules ipsos, quâ exercitum, to upbraid both the consuls and the army, Liv.

LIX. Two or more substantives singular coupled by a conjunction, (*as, et, ac, atque, &c.*) have an adjective, verb, or relative plural ;) as, *Petrus et Joannes, qui sunt docti, Peter and John, who are learned.*

Obs. 1. If the substantives be of different persons, the verb plural must agree with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third. As, *Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus,* If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well, *Cic.* In English the person speaking usually puts himself last : thus, *You and I read ; Cicero and I are well* : but in Latin the person who speaks is generally put first : thus, *Ego et tu legimus.*

Obs.

Obs. 2. If the substantives are of different genders, the adjective or relative plural must agree with the masculine rather than the feminine or neuter ; as, *Pater et mater, qui sunt mortui* : but this is only applicable to beings which may have life. The person is sometimes implied ; as, *Athenarum et Cratippi, ad quos, &c. Propter summam doctoris auctoritatem et urbis, quorum alter, &c. Cic.* Where *Athenæ & urbs* are put for the learned men of Athens. So in substantives ; as, *Ad Ptoleum Cleopatraque reges legati missi*, i. e. the king and queen, Liv.

Obs. 3. If the substantives signify things without life, the adjective or relative plural must be put in the neuter gender ; as, *Divitiæ, decus, gloria, in oculis sita sunt*, Sall.

The same holds, if any of the substantives signify a thing without life ; because when we apply a quality or join an adjective to several substantives of different genders, we must reduce the substantives to some certain class, under which they may all be comprehended, that is, to what is called their *Genus*. Now the *Genus* or class which comprehends under it both persons and things, is that of substances or beings in general, which are neither masculine nor feminine. To express this the Latin grammarians use the word *Negotia*.

Obs. 4. The adjective or verb frequently agrees with the nearest substantive or nominative, and is understood to the rest ; as,

Et ego et Cicero meus flagitabit, Cic. Sociis et rege recepto, Virg. Et ego in culpa sum, et tu, Both I am in the fault, and you ; or, *Et ego et tu es in culpa*, Both I and you are in the fault. *Nihil hic nisi carmina, desunt* ; or *nihil hic deest nisi carmina. Omnia, quibus turbari solita eras civitas, demi discordia, foris bellum exortum* ; *Duo millia et quadringenti cæsi*, Liv. This construction is most usual, when the different substantives resemble one another in sense ; as, *Mens, ratio, et consilium, in senibus est*, Understanding, reason, and prudence is in old men. *Quibus ipse meique ante Laræ proprium vescor*, for *vescimur*, Horat.

Obs. 5. The plural is sometimes used after the preposition *cum* put for *et* ; as,

Remo cum fratre Quirinus jura dabunt, Virg. The conjunction is frequently understood ; as, *Dum ætas, metus, magister prohibebant, Ter. Frons, oculi, vultus sæpe mentiuntur, Cic.*

The different examples comprehended under this rule are commonly referred to the figure *Syllepsis*.

LX. The conjunctions *ut, quo, licet, ne, utinam*, and *dummodo*, are for the most part joined to the subjunctive mode ; as,

*Lego ut discam,
Utinam sapieres,*

I read that I may learn.
I wish you were wise.

Obs. 1. All interrogatives, when placed indefinitely, have after them the subjunctive mode.

Whether they be adjectives; as, *Quantus, qualis, quântus, quotuplex, uter*; Pronouns, as, *quis & cujus*; Adverbs, as, *Ubi, quo, unde, qua, quorsum, quamdiu, quamdudum, quampridem, quoties, cur, quare, quamobrem, num, utrum, quomodo, quâ, ut, quam, quantopere*; or Conjunctions, as, *ne, an, anne, annon*: Thus, *Quis est?* Who is it? *Nescio quis sit*; I do not know who it is. *An venturus est?* *Nescio, dubito, an venturus sit.* *Viden' ut alta stet nive candidum Socrate?* Hor. But these words are sometimes joined with the indicative; as, *Scio quid ego,* Plaut. *Haud scio an amat,* Ter. *Vide avaritia quid facit,* Id. *Vides quam turpe est,* Cic.

¶ In like manner the relative *QUI* in a continued discourse; as, *Nil est quod Deus efficere non possit. Quis est, qui utilia fugiat?* Cic. Or when joined with *QUIPPE* or *UTPOTE*; *Neque Antonius procul aberat; utpote qui sequeretur,* &c. Sall. But these are sometimes, although more rarely, joined with the Indicative. So *Est qui, sunt qui, est quando v, ubi,* &c. are joined with the indicative or subjunctive.

NOTE, *Haud scio an recte dixerim,* is the same with *dico, affirmo,* Cic.

So in English, *if, though, unless, except, whatever, whether, or*; also *so, before, ere, till,* &c. have after them the subjunctive mode; as, *If thou let this man go; If thou be the Son of God; Although my house be not so; Though he slay me; Though he fall,* &c. *Unless he wash his feet; I will not let thee go except thou bless me; Except it were given from above; Whether it were I or they; Whosoever he be; Whatever be our fate,* &c. So likewise *that*, expressing the motive or end; *lest*, and *that* annexed to a command preceding; and *if* with *but* following it; as, *Let him that standeth take heed lest he fall; Beware that thou bring not my son thither; If he do but touch the hills, they shall smoke.*

The nominative case following the verb sometimes supplies the place of *if, or though*; as, "Had he done this, he had escaped," i. e. if he had done this: "Charm he never so wisely," or rather, ever so wisely, i. e. how wisely soever, for, *tho' he charm,* &c.

Obs. 2. When any thing doubtful or contingent is signified, conjunctions and indefinites are usually construed with the subjunctive; but when a more absolute or determinate

minate sense is expressed, with the indicative mode ; as, *If he is to do it ; Although he was rich, &c.*

Obs. 3. ETSI, TAMETSI, and TAMENETSI QUANQUAM, in the beginning of a sentence, have the indicative ; but elsewhere, they also take the subjunctive ; ETIAMSI and QUAMVIS commonly have the subjunctive, and UT, although, always has it ; as, *Ut quæras, non reperiens, Cic.* QUONIAM, QUANDO, QUANDOQUIDEM, are usually construed with the indicative ; SI, SIN, NE, NISI, SIQUIDEM ; QUOD, and QUIA, sometimes with the indicative, and sometimes with the subjunctive. DUM, for *dummodo*, provided, has always the subjunctive ; as, *Oderint dum metuant, Cic.* And QUIPPE, for *nam*, always the indic. ; as, *Quippe veter satis.*

Obs. 4. Some conjunctions have their correspondent conjunctions belonging to them ; so that, in the following member of the sentence, the latter answers to the former : thus, when *etsi, tametsi, or quamvis*, although, are used in the former member of a sentence, *tamen*, yet, or nevertheless, generally answers to them in the latter. In like manner, *Tam—quam ; Adeo or ita,—ut* : in English, *As,—as or so ; as, Eisi sit liberalis, tamen non est profusus,* Although he be liberal, yet he is not profuse. So *prius or ante,—quam*. In some of these, however, we find the latter conjunction sometimes omitted, particularly in English.

Obs. 5. The conjunction *ut* is elegantly omitted after these verbs, *Volo, nolo, malo, rogo, precor censeo, suadeo, licet, oportet, necesse est*, and the like ; and likewise after these imperatives, *Sine, fac, or facito* ; as, *Ducas volo hodie uxorem ; Nolo mentiare ; Fac cogites, Ter.* In like manner *ne* is commonly omitted after *cave* ; as, *Cave facias, Cic.* *Post* is also sometimes understood ; thus, *Die octavo, quam creatus erat, Liv. iv. 47. scil. post.* And so in English, *See you do it ; I beg you would come to me, sc. that.*

Obs. 6. *Ut* and *Quod* are thus distinguished : *ut* denotes the final cause, and is commonly used with regard to something future ; *quod* marks the efficient or impulsive cause, and is generally used concerning the event or thing done ; as, *Lego ut discam*, I read that I may learn ; *Gaudeo quod legi*, I am glad that or because I have read. *Ut* is likewise used after these intensive words, as they are called, *Adeò, ita, sic, tam, talis, tantus, tot, &c.*

Obs. 7. After the verbs *timeo, vereor*, and the like, *ut* is taken in a negative sense for *ne non*, and *ne* in an affirmative sense ; as,

Timeo ne faciat, I fear he will do it ; *Timeo ut faciat*, I fear he will not

not do it. *Id paves nè ducas tu illam, tu autem ut ducas*, Ter. *Ut fructus vitalis, metuo*, Hor. *Timeo ut frater vivat*, will not; — *ne frater mori iter*, will. But in some few examples they seem to have a contrary meaning.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF COMPARATIVES.

LXI. The comparative degree governs the ablative; as,

Dulcior melle, sweeter than honey. *Præstantior auro*, better than gold.

Obs. 1. The sign of the ablative in English is *than*. The positive with the adverb *magis*, likewise governs the ablative; as, *Magis dilecta luce*, Virg.

The ablative is here governed by the preposition *præ* understood, which is sometimes expressed; as, *Fortior præ cæteris*. We find the comparative also construed with other prepositions; as, *Immanior ante omnes*, Virg.

Obs. 2. The comparative degree may likewise be construed with the conjunction *quam*, and then, instead of the ablative, the noun is to be put in whatever case the sense requires; as,

Dulcior quam mel, scil. *est*. *Amo te magis quam illum*, I love you more than him, that is, *quam amo illum*, than I love him. *Amo te magis quam ille*, I love you more than he, i. e. *quam ille amat*, than he loves. *Plus datur a me quam illo*, sc. *ab*.

Obs. 3. The conjunction *quam* is often elegantly suppressed after *amplius* and *plus*; as,

Vulnerantur amplius sexcenti, Cæf. scil. *quam*. *Plus quingentos colaphos infregit mihi*, He has laid on me more than five hundred blows, Ter. *Cæsira ab urbe baud plus quinque millia passuum locant*, sc. *quam*, Liv.

Quam is sometimes elegantly placed between two comparatives; as,

Triumphus clarior quam gratior, Liv. Or the prep. *pro* is added; as, *Prælium atrocius, quam pro numero pugnantium editur*, Liv.

The comparative is sometimes joined with these ablatives, *opinione*, *spe*, *æquo*, *justo*, *dicto*; as,

Credibili, opinione major, Cic. *Credibili fortior*, Ovid. Fast. iii. 618. *Gravius æquo*, Sall. *Dicto citius*, Virg. *Majora credibili tulimus*, Liv. They are often understood; as, *Liberius vivebat*, sc. *justo*, too freely, Nepos.

Nihil is sometimes elegantly used for *nemo* or *nulli*; as,

Nihil vidi quicquam atius, for *neminem*, Ter. *Crasso nihil perfectius*, Cic. *Asperius nihil est humili, cum surgit in altum*. So *quid nobis laboris*, scil. *est*.

superius, for *quis*, &c. Cic. We say, *inferior patre nulla re, or quam patre*. The comparative is sometimes repeated or joined with an adverb; as, *Magis magisque, plus plusque, minus minusque, carior cariorque; Quotidie plus, indies magis, semper candidior candidiorque, &c.*

Obs. 4. In English, the relative *who* after *than* is always put in the accusative case; as, He is a man, *than whom* there is none better: but here if we substitute a pronoun in place of the relative, the pronoun must be put in the nominative; as, there is none better than *he*, not, than *him*. In like manner, it is improper to say, He is better than *me*, than *us*, than *her*, than *them*, &c. It should be, He is better than *I*, than *we*, than *she*, than *they*, &c. the auxiliary verb being understood to each of them.

Obs. 5. The relation of equality or sameness is likewise expressed in English by conjunctions; as, *Est tam doctus quam ego*, He is as learned as I. *Animus erga te idem est ac fuit*. *Ac* and *atque* are sometimes, though more rarely, used after comparatives; as, *Nihil est magis verum atque hoc*, Ter.

Obs. 6. The excess or defect of measure is put in the ablative after comparatives; and the sign in English is *by*, expressed or understood; (or more shortly, the difference of measure is put in the ablative); as,

Est decem digitis altior quam frater, He is ten inches taller than his brother, or by ten inches. *Altero tanto major est fratre*, i. e. *duplo major*, a foot and a half less; *Altero tanto, aut sesquimajor*, as big again, or a half bigger, Cic. *Ter tanto pejor est; Bis tanto amici sunt inter se, quam prius*, Plaut. *Quinques tanto amplius, quam quantum licitum sit civitatibus imperavit*, five times more, Cic. To this may be added many other ablatives, which are joined with the comparative, to increase its force; as, *Tanto, quanto, quo, eo, hoc, multo, paulo, nimio, &c.* thus, *Quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt*, The more they have, the more they desire. *Quanto melior, tanto felicior*, The better, the happier. *Quoque minor spes est, hoc magis ille cupit*, Ovid. Fast. ii. 766. We frequently find *multo, tanto, quanto*, also joined with superlatives; *Multo pulcherrimam eam haberemus*, Sall. *Multoque id maximum fuit*, Liv.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

LXII. A Substantive and a participle are put in the ablative, when their case depends on no other word; as,

Sole

<i>Sole oriente, fugiunt tenebrae,</i>	{ The sun rising, or while the sun riseth,
	{ darkness flies away.
<i>Opere perfecto, ludemus,</i>	{ Our work being finished, or when our
	{ work is finished, we will play.

So, *Dominante libidine, temperantiae nullus est locus; Nihil anxietatē praefabilius est, exceptā virtute; Oppressā libertate patriae, nihil est quod speremus amplius; Nobilium vitā viduque mutato, mores mutari civitatum puto,* Cic. *Parumper silentium et quies fuit, nec Etruscis, nisi cogerentur, pugnam inituris, et dictatorem artem Romanam respectante, at ab auguribus, simul aves rite admisissent, ex compositis telluris signum,* Liv. *Bellicae, depositis clypeo paulisper et hastā, Mars edis,* Ovid. Fast. iii. 1.

Obs. 1. / This ablative is called *Absolute*, because it does not depend upon any other word in the sentence. /

For if the substantive with which the participle is joined, be either the nominative to some following verb, or be governed by any word going before, then this rule does not take place: the ablative absolute is never used, unless when different persons or things are spoken of; as, *Militis, hostibus victis, redierunt.* The soldiers, having conquered the enemy, returned. *Hostibus victus,* may be rendered in English several different ways, according to the meaning of the sentence with which it is joined; thus, 1. *The enemy conquered, or being conquered;* 2. *When or after the enemy is or was conquered;* 3. *By conquering the enemy;* 4. *Upon the defeat of the enemy, &c.*

Obs. 2. / The perfect participles of deponent verbs are not used in the ablative absolute; as, *Cicero locutus haec confedit,* never *his locutis.* The participles of common verbs may either agree in case with the substantive before them, like the participles of deponent verbs, or may be put in the ablative absolute, like the participles of passive verbs; as, *Romani adepti libertatem floruerunt;* or *Romani, libertate adepti, floruerunt.* But as the participles of common verbs are seldom taken in a passive sense, we therefore find them rarely used in the ablative absolute.

Obs. 3. / The participle *existente* or *existentibus* is frequently understood; as, *Cæsare duce, scil. existente.* *His consulibus, scil. existentibus.* *Invitā Minervā, sc. existente,* against the grain; *Crassā Minervā,* without learning, Hor. *Magistrū ac duce naturā; vivis fratribus; te hortatore; Cæsare impulsore, &c.* Sometimes the substantive must be supplied; as, *Nondum comperto, quam regionem hostes petissent, i. e. cum nondum compertum esset,* Liv. *Tum de-*
nium

munus palam factum, sc. *negotio*, Id. *Excepto quod non simul esses, cetera letus*, Hor. *Parto quod avebas*, Id. In such examples *negotio* must be understood, or the rest of the sentence considered as the substantive, which perhaps is more proper. Thus we find a verb supply the place of a substantive; as, *Vale dicto*, having said farewell, Ovid.

Obs. 4. We sometimes find a Substantive plural joined with a participle singular; as, *Nobis presentæ*, Plaut. *Abfente nobis*, Ter. We also find the ablative absolute, when it refers to the same person with the nominative to the verb; as, *me duce ad hunc voti finem, me milite, veni*, Ovid. Amor. ii. 12. 12. *Laetos fecit se consule fastos*, Lucan. v. 384. *Populo spectante fieri credam, quicquid me conscio faciam*, Senec. de Vit. Beat. c. 20. But examples of this construction rarely occur.

Obs. 5. The ablative called *absolute* is governed by some preposition understood; as, *a, ab, cum, sub, or in*. We find the preposition sometimes expressed; as, *Cum diis juvantibus*, Liv. The nominative likewise seems sometimes to be used absolutely; as, *Perniciosa libidine paulisper usus, infirmitas naturæ accusatur*, Sallust. Jug. 1.

Obs. 6. The ablative absolute may be rendered several different ways; thus, *Superbo regnante*, is the same with *cum, dum, or quando Superbus regnabat*. *Opere peracto*, is the same with *Post opus peractum, or Cum opus est peractum*. The present participle, when used in the ablative absolute, commonly ends in *e*.

Obs. 7. When a substantive is joined with a participle in English independently on the rest of the sentence, it is expressed in the nominative; as, *Illo descendente*, He descending. But this manner of speech is seldom used except in poetry.

APPENDIX

APPENDIX to SYNTAX.

I. Various Signification and Construction of VERBS.

[The verbs are here placed in the same order as in Etymology.]

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ASPIRARE ad gloriam & laudem, *to aim at*; in curiam, *to desire to be admitted*, Cic.; equis achillis, *to wish for*; labori ejus, *to favour*; amorem dictis, *sc. ei, to infuse*, Virg.

DESPERARE sibi, de se; salutem, salutem, de salute, *to despair of*.

LEGARE aliquem ad alium, *to send us an ambassador*; aliquem sibi, *to make his lieutenant*; pecuniam alicui, *i. e. testamento relinquere*. *N. B.* Publice legantur homines; qui inde legati dicuntur: privatim allegantur; unde allegati.

DELEGARE æs alienum fratri, *to leave him to pay*; laborem alteri, *to lay upon*; aliquid ad aliquem, *i. e. in eum transferre*, Cic.

LEVARE metum ejus & ei, eum metu, *to ease*.

MUTARE locum, solum, *to be banished*; aliquid aliqua re; bellum pro pace, *to exchange*; vestem, *i. e. sordidam togam induere*. Liv. vestem cum aliquo, *Ter. fidem, to break*.

OBNUNCIARE comitiis vel concilio, *i. e. comitia auspiciis impedire, to hinder, by telling bad omens, and repeating these words* ALIO DIE; Consuli v. magistratur; *i. e. prohibere ne cum populo agat*, Cic.

PRONUNCIARE pecuniam pro reo, *to promise*; aliquid edicto, *to order*; sententias, *to sum up the opinions of the senators*, Cic.

RENUNCIARE aliquid, de re, alicui, ad aliquem, *to tell*; consulem, *to declare, to name*; vitæ, amicitiam ei, *to give up*; muneri, hospitio, *to refuse*; repudium ei, *to divorce*.

OCCUPARE aliquem, *to seize*; se in aliquo negotio, *to be employed*; se ad negotium, *Plaut.* pecunium alicui v. apud aliquem grandi fœnore, *to give at interest*, Cic. occupat facere bellum, *transire in agrum hostium; begins first, anticipates*, Liv.

PRÆOCCUPARE saltum, portas Ciliciæ, *to seize beforehand*, Nep.

PRÆJUDICARE aliquem, *to condemn one from the precedent of a former sentence or trial*, Cic.

ROGARE aliquem id, & de ea re; id ab eo; salutem, & pro salute, Cic. legem, *to propose*; hence, UTI ROGAS, dicere, *to pass it*; militem sacramento, *to administer the military oath*; Roget quis? *if any one should ask*. Comitia rogandis consulibus, *for electing*, Liv.

ABROGARE legem, *seldom legi, to disannul a law, to repeal, or to change in part*; multum, *to take off a fine*; imperium ei, *to take from*.

ABROGARE id sibi, *to claim*.

DEROGARE aliquid legi, v. de lege, *to repeal or take away some clause of a law*; lex derogatur, Cic. fidem ei, v. de fide ejus, *to hurt one's credit*; ex æquitate; sibi, alicui, *to derogate or take from*.

ERO-

EROGARE pecuniam in classem, in vestes, *to lay out money on.*

IRROGARE multam ei, *to impose.*

OBROGARE legi, *to enact a new law contrary to an old.*

PROROGARE imperium, provinciam alicui, *to prolong*; diem ei ad solvendum, *to put off.*

SUBROGARE aliquem in locum alterius, *to substitute*; legi, *to add a new clause, or to put one in place of another.*

SPECTARE orientem, ad orientem, *to look towards*; aliquem ex censu, animum alicujus ex suo, *to judge of.*

SUPERARE hostes, *to overcome*; montes, *to pass*; superat pars capti, *sc. operis, remains*; Captæ superavimus urbi, *survived*, Virg.

TEMPERARE iras, ventos, *to moderate*; orbem, *to rule*; mihi sibi, *to restrain, to forbear*; alicui, *to spare*; cædibus, a lacrymis, *to abstain from.*

VACARE curâ, culpâ, morbo, munere militiæ, &c. a labore, *to be free from*; animo, *sc. in, to be at ease*; philosophiæ, in v. ad rem, *to apply to*; vacat locus, *is empty*; si vacas, v. vacat tibi, *if you are at leisure.*

VINDICARE mortem ejus, *to revenge*; ab interitu, exercitum fame, *to free*; id sibi, & ad se, *to claim*; libertatem ejus, *to defend*; se in libertatem, *to set at liberty.*

DARE animam, *to die*; animos, *to encourage*; manus, *to yield*; manum ei, *to shake hands*; Plaut. jura, *to prescribe laws*; literas alicui ad aliquem, *to give one a letter to carry to another*; terga, fugam, v. se in fugam, in pedes, *to fly*; hostes in fugam, *to put to flight*; operam, *to endeavour*; operam philosophiæ, literis, palæstræ, *to apply to*; operam honoribus, *to seek*, Nep. veniam ei, *to grant his request*, Ter.

gemitus, lacrymas. amplexus, cantus, ruinam, fidem, jusjurandum, &c. *to groan, weep, embrace, sing, fall, &c.* cognitores honestos, *to give good vouchers for one's character*, Cic. aliquid mutuum, v. utendum, *to lend*; pecuniam fœnori, & collocare, *to place at interest*; se alicui ad docendum, Cic. multum suo ingenio, *to think much of*; se ad aliquid, *to apply to*; se auctoritati senatûs, *to yield*; fabulam, scripta foras, *to publish*; Cic. effectum, *to perform*; senatum, *to give a hearing of the senate*; actionem, *to grant leave to prosecute*; præcipitum, *to tumble headlong*; aliquid paternum, *to act like one's father*; lectos faciendos, *to bespeak*; Ter. litem secundum aliquem, *to determine a law-suit in favour of one*; aliquem exitio, morti, neci, letho, rarely lethum alicui, *to kill*; aliquid alicui dono, v. muneri, *to make a present*; crimini, vitio, laudi, *to accuse, blame, praise*; pœnas, *to suffer*; nomen militiæ, v. in militiam, *to list one's self to be a soldier*; se alicui, *to be familiar with*, Ter. Da te mihi hodie, *be directed by me*, Id. aures, *to listen*; oblivioni, *to forget*; civitatem ei, *to make one free of the city*; dicta, *to speak*, verba alicui, *to impose on, to cheat*; se in viam, *to enter on a journey*; viam ei, *to give place*; jus gratiæ, *to sacrifice justice to interest*; se turpiter, *to make a shabby appearance*; fundum vel domum alicui, mancipio, *to convey the property of, to warrant the title to*; Vitaque mancipio nulli datur, omnibus usu, Lucr. servos in quæstionem, *to give up slaves to be tortured*; primas, secundas, &c. (*sc. partes*) actioni, *to ascribe every thing to delivery*; Cic. Dat ei bibere, Ter. comas diffundere ventis, *to let them flow loose*, Virg. Da mihi v. nobis,

tell us, Cic. Ut res dant se, as matters go; solertem dabp, I'll warrant him expert, Ter.

SATISDARE judicatum solvi, to give security that what the judge has determined shall be paid, Cic.

STARE contra aliquem; ab, cum, v. pro aliquo, to side with, to be of the same party; iudicio ejus, to follow; in sententia; pacto, conditionibus, conventis, to stand to, to make good an agreement; re judicatâ, to keep to what has been determined; stare, v. constare animo, to be in his senses: Non stat per me quo minus pecunia solvatur, It is not owing to me that, &c. multorum sanguine ea Pænis victoria stetit, cost, Liv. Mihi stat flere morbum definere, I am resolved, Nep.

ADSTARE mentæ, to stand by; ad mensam, in conspectu.

CONSTARE ex multis rebus, animo et corpore, to consist of; secum, to be consistent with, Cic. liber constitit v. stetit mihi duobus assibus, cost me; non constat ei color, his colour comes and goes; auri ratio constat, the sum is right. Constat, imperf. It is evident, certain, or agreed on; mihi, inter omnes, de hac re.

EXTARE aquis, to be above, Ovid. ad memoriam posteritatis, to remain, Cic. sepulchra extant, Liv.

INSTARE victis, to press on the vanquished; rectam viam, to be in

the right way; currum Marti, to make speedily, Virg.; instat factum, insists that it was done, Ter.

OESTARE ei, to hinder.

PRESTARE multa, to perform; alicui, v. aliquem virtute, to excel; silentium ei, to give; auxilium, to grant, Juv. impensas, to defray; iter tutum, to procure; se incolumem, to preserve; se vitium, i. e. præbere, exhibere; amorem, v. benevolentiam alicui, to shew; culpam, v. damnum, i. e. in se transferre, to take on one's self; præstabo de me; eum facturum, I will be answerable. In iis rebus repetendis, quæ mancipi sunt, is periculum iudicii præstare debet, qui se nexu obligavit, In recovering, or in an action to recover those things which are transferable, the seller ought to take upon himself the hazard of a trial, Cic. N. B. Those things were called, Res mancipi, (contracted for mancipii, i. e. quas emptor manu caperet,) the property of which might be transferred from one Roman citizen to another; as houses, lands, slaves, &c.

Præstat, imperf. i. e. it is better; Præsto esse alicui, adv. to be present, to assist; Libri prostant venales, the books are exposed to sale.

ACCUBARE alicui in convivio, to recline near; apud aliquem, Incubare ovis & ova, to sit upon; stratis & super strata.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Verbs in B E O.

HABERE spem, febrim, finem, bonum exitum, tempus, consuetudinem, voluntatem nocendi, opus in manibus, v. inter manus, to have; gratiam & gratum, to have a grateful sense of a favour; iudicium, to hold a trial; honorem ei, to honour; in oculis, to be fond of, Ter: fidem alicui, to trust or be-

lieve; curam de v. pro eo; rationem alicujus, to pay regard to, to allow one to stand confident for an office; rationem, v. rem cum aliquo, to have business with; satis, to be satisfied; orationem, concionem ad populum, to make a speech; aliquem odio, in odium, to hate; ludibrio, to mock; id religioni, to

have a scruple about it : So, habere aliquid questui, honori, prædæ, voluptati, &c. *sc. sibi* ; se bene v. graviter, *to be well or ill* ; se parcè & duriter, *to live*, Ter. aliquid compertum, cognitum, perspectum, exploratum, certum v. pro certo, *to know for certain* ; aliquem contemptui, despiciendi, -um, v. in despiciatum, *to despise* ; excusatum, *to excuse* ; fusque deque, *to scorn, to slight* ; Ut res se habet, *stands, is* ; rebus ita se habentibus, *in this state of affairs* ; Hæc habeo, v. habui dicere de, &c. Non habeo necesse scribere, quid sim facturus, Cic. Habe tibi tuas res, *a form of divorce*.

ADHIBERE diligentiam ; celeritatem, vim, severitatem in aliquem, *to use* ; in convivium v. consilium, *to admit* ; remedium vulneri, curationem morbo, *to apply* ; vinum ægrotis, *to give* ; aures verbis, *to bear with taste* ; cultum & preces diis, *to offer*, Cic. Exhibere molestiam alicui, *to cause trouble*.

MIRARI legem, *to admire for, to praise* ; regem, *to chuse* ; aliquem salvere, *to wish one health* ; esse bono animo, &c. Uxorem suas res sibi habere jussit, *divorced*, Cic.

DOCEO te hanc rem, & de hac re. Doctus, *adj. utriusque linguæ* ; Latinis & Græcis literis ; Latinè & Græcè ; ad militiam.

MISCERE aliquid alicui, cum aliquo, ad aliquid ; vinum aquâ, Plin. cuncta sanguine, Tacit. sacra profanis, Hor. humana divinis, Liv.

VIDERE rem v. de re ; sibi, de isthoc, *to take care of*, Ter. plus, *to be more wise*, Cic. De hoc tu videris, *consider, be answerable for*, Cic. Videor videre, *methinks I see* ; visus sum audire, *methought I heard* ; mihi visus est dicere, *he seemed* ; Quid tibi videtur ? *What*

think you ? Si tibi videtur, *if you please* ; videtur fecisse, *guilty, &c.*

INVIDERE honorem ei, v. honori ejus ; ei vel eum, *to envy*.

PROVIDERE & prospicere id, *to foresee* ; ei, *to provide for* ; in posterum ; rei frumentariæ, rem v. de re.

SEDERE ad dextram ejus ; in equo, *to ride* ; toga bene sedet, *sits* ; Sedet hoc animo, *is fixed*, Virg.

ASSIDERE ei ; Adherbalem, *to sit by*, Sal. Assidet infans, *is near or like to*, Hor.

DISSIDERE cum aliquo, *to disagree*.

INSIDERE equo ; & in equo, *to sit upon* ; locum, Liv. in animo, memoriâ, *to be fixed*.

PRÆSIDERE urbi, imperio, *to command*, Cic. exercitum, Italian, Tacit.

SUPERSEDERE labore, litibus ; pugnæ, loqui, *to forbear, to give over*.

PENDERE promissis, ab v. ex aliquo, *to depend* ; de, ex, ab & in arbore ; Opera pendent interrupta, Virg.

IMPENDET malum nobis, nos, v. in nos, *threatens*.

SPONDERE & despondere filiam alicui, *to betroth*.

DESPONDERE domum alicujus sibi, *to be sure of*, Cic. animo & -is, *to promise, to hope* ; animum & -os, *to despair* ; Liv.

RESPONDERE ei, literis ejus, his, ad hæc, ad nomen, *to answer* ; votis ejus, *to satisfy his wishes* ; ad spem.

SUADERE ei pacem, v. de pace ; legem, *to speak in favour of*.

DOLERE casum ejus ; de, ab, ex, in, pro re ; dolet mihi cor, v. hoc dolet cordi meo ; caput dolet a sole.

VALERE gratiâ apud aliquem, *to be in favour with one*, lex valet, *is in force* ; quid verbum valet, non

non video, *signifies*; valet decem talenta, *o' offerer talentis, is worth*; vale vel valeas, *farewell*; or ironically, *away with you*.

EMINERE aliqua re vel in aliqua re, inter omnes; super cætera, Liv. super utrumque. Hor. *to be eminent, to excel*; ex aqua, v. aquam, super undas, *to be above*. Imminere alicui, *to hang over, to threaten*; in occasionem, exitio alicujus, *to seek, to watch for*.

TENERE promissum; se domi, oppido, castris, *sc. in, to keep*; modum, ordinem, *to observe*; rem, dicta, lectionem, *to understand, to remember*; linguam, *but not suam*, silentium, *se in silentio, to be silent*; ora, *to keep the countenance fixed*; secundum locum imperii, *to hold*, Nep. jura civium, *to enjoy* Cic. causam, *to gain*; mare, *to be in the open sea, to hold, to be master of*; terram, portum, metam, montes, *to reach*; risum, lachrymas, *to restrain*; se ab accusando, quin accuset, Cic. Ventus tenet, *blows*; teneri legibus jurejurando, &c. *to be bound by*; leges tenent eum, *bind*; teneri in manifesto furto, *to be seized*; tenet fama, *prevails*.

ABSTINERE maledictis, v. a, *to abstain*; publico, *to live retired*, Tacit. animum a scelere, ægrum a cibo, *to keep from*; jus belli ab aliquo, *not to treat rigorously*, Liv. Id ad me, ad religionem, &c. pertinet, *concerns me*; crimen ad te pertinet, Cic. But it is not proper to say, Liber ad me, ad fratrem pertinet, *for meus, fratris est, belongs to*; venæ ad vel in omnes corporis partes pertinent, *reach*.

SUSTINERE personam judicis, nomen consulatûs, *to bear the character*; assensionem, v. se ab assensu, *to withhold assent*; rem in noctem, *to defer*.

MANERE apud aliquem; in castris; ad urbem; in urbe; proposito, sententiâ, in sententiâ, statu suo, &c. adventum hostium, *to expect*, Liv. promissis, *to stand to, to keep*, Virg. Omnes una manet nox, *awaits*, Horat. Manent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat studium & industria, Cic. Munera vobis certa manent, Virg.

MERERE laudem; bene, male de aliquo; stipendia, equo, pedibus, *to serve as a soldier*; fustuarium, *to be beaten to death*.

HÆRERE lateri; tergis v. in terga hostium, Liv. curru, Virg. alicui in visceribus, Cic. Hæret mihi aqua, *I am in doubt*; Vide, ne hæreas, *lest you be at a loss*, Cic.

ADHÆRERE & adhærescere justitiæ; ad turrin; in me. Inhærere rei, & in re.

MOVERE castra, *to decamp*; bella, *to raise*; aliquem tribu, *to remove a Roman citizen from a more honorable to a less honorable tribe*; e senatu, *to degrade a senator*; risum vel jocum alicui, *to cause laughter*; stomachum ei, *to trouble*, Cic.

FAVETE ore, vel linguis, *sc. mihi, attend in silence, or abstain from words of a bad omen*.

Cavere aliquid, aliquem, vel ab aliquo, *to guard against, to avoid*; alicui, *to provide for, to advise as a lawyer does his client*; aliquid alicui, Cic. sibi ab aliquo vel per aliquem de re aliqua, *to get security on*; mihi prædibus & chirographo cautum est, *I have got security by bail and bond*; veteranis cautum esse volumus, Cic. Cave facias, *sc. ne, see you don't do it*; mihi cavendum, vel mea cautio est, *I must take care*.

CONNIVERE ad fulgura, Suet. *to wink*; in hominum sceleribus, *to take no notice of*, Cic.

THIRD

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Verbs in IO.

FACERE initium, finem, paup-
 sam, finem vitæ; pacem, amicitiam;
 testamentum, nomen, fossam, pontem in flumine, in Tiberim, *to make*; divortium cum uxore, Cic. bellum regi, Nep. se hilarem, *to show*; Ter. se divitem, miserum, pauperem, *to pretend*, Cic. æs alienum, *v. contrahere*, conflare, *to contract debt*; animos, *to encourage*; damnum, detrimentum, jacturam, *to lose*; naufragium, *to suffer*; sumptum, *to spend*; gratum alicui, *to oblige*; gratiam delicti, *to pardon a fault*; gratiam legis, *to dispense with*; justa vel funus alicui, *to perform one's funeral rites*; rem, *to make an estate*; pecuniam, divitias ex metallis; fœdus, *v. inire*, icere, ferire, percutere, jungere, sancire, firmare, &c. *to make a league*; moram alicui, *to delay*; verba, *to speak*; audientiam sibi, Cic. negotium, et facessere, *to trouble*; aliquid missum, *to pass over*; aliquem missum, *to dismiss or excuse*; ad aliquid, rarely alicui, *to be fit or useful*; ratum, *to ratify*; planum, *to explain*; palam suis, *to make known*; Nep. stipendium pedibus, *v. equo*, & merere, *to serve in the army*; sacra, sacrificium, *v. rem divinam*, *to sacrifice*; reum, *to impeach*; fabulam, carmen, versus, &c. *to write a play*, &c. copiam consilii ei, *to offer advice*; copiam vel potestatem dicendi legatis, *to grant leave*; fidem, *to procure or give credit*; periculum, *to make trial*; potestatem sui, *to expose himself*, Nep. aliquem loquentem, *v. loqui*, *to suppose or represent*, Cic. piraticam, *sc. rem*, *to be a pirate*; argentariam, medicinam, mercaturam, &c. *to be an*

usurer, a physician, &c. versuram, *to contract a new debt to discharge an old one*, *to borrow money at great interest*, Cic. cum *v. ab aliquo*, *to side with*; contra *v. adversus*, *to oppose*; nomen *v. nomina*, *to borrow money*, and also, *to settle accounts*, i. e. rationes acceptarum, *sc. pecuniarum & expensarum inter se conferre*; nomen in litura, *to write it where something was before*, Cic. pedem, *v. pedes*, *to trim the sails*, Virg. Fac ita esse, *suppose it is so*; obvius fieri alicui, *to meet*; ne longum, *v. longa faciam*, *ut breve faciam*, *not to be tedious*; equus non facit, *will not move*, Cic. Fac velle, *sc. me*, *suppose me to be willing*, Virg. Æn. iv. 540.

AFFICERE aliquem laude, honore, præmio, & ignominiâ, pœnâ, morte, leto, &c. *to praise, honour*, &c. *to disgrace, punish*, &c. Affectus ætate, morbo, *weakened*.

CONFICERE bellum, *to finish*; orationes, *to compose*, Nep. cibum, *to chew*; argentum, *to raise*, *to get*: also *to spend*, Cic.; cum aliquo de re, *to conclude a bargain*; exercitus hostium, *to destroy*; alterum Curiatium, *to kill*, Liv. Qui stipendiis confectis erant; i. e. emeriti, *had served out their time*, Cic.

DEFICERE animo, *to faint*; ab aliquo, *to revolt*; tempus deficit mihi vel me, *fails*: Defici viribus, ratione, &c. *to be deprived of*.

INFICERE se vitro, *to stain*: Infectus, part. *stained*; infectus, adj. *not done*. Inficior, -atus, -ari, *to deny*.

OFFICERE alicui, *to hinder or hurt*; Diogeni apricanti, *to stand betwixt him and the sun*; auribus, visui, *to stop or obstruct*; Umbra terræ soli officiens noctem efficit, Cic.

PRÆFICERE aliquem exercitui, *to set over*. Proficere alicui, *to profit, to do good*; in philosophia, & progressus facere, *to make progress*.

REFICERE muros, templa, ædes, rates, res, *to repair*; animum, vires, saucios, se, jumenta, *to refresh, to recover*.

SUFFICERE laboribus, ictibus, *to be able to bear*; arma v. vires alicui, *to afford*; Valerius in locum Collatini suffectus est, *was substituted*, Liv. Filius patri suffectus, Tacit. Oculos suffecti sanguine & igne, sc. secundum, *having their eyes red and inflamed*, Virg.

SATISFACERE alicui, in v. de aliqua re, *to satisfy*; fidei, promisso, *to perform*.

JACERE aliquem in præceps; contumelias in eum, *to throw*; fundamenta, & ponere, *to lay*; talos, *to play at dice*; anchoram, *to cast*.

ADJICERE, *to add*; oculos alicui rei, *to covet*; animum studiis, *to apply*; sacerdotibus creandis, Liv.

CONJICERE se in pedes, v. fugam, *to fly*; cætera, *to conjecture*.

INJICERE manus ei, *to lay on*; spem, ardorem, suspicionem, pavorem, alicui, *to inspire*; admirationem sui cuivis ipso aspectu, Nep.

OBJICERE se hostibus, in v. ad omnes casus, *to oppose or expose*; crimen ei, *to lay to one's charge*.

REJICERE tela in hostes, *to throw back*; judices, mala, *to reject*; rem ad senatum, Romam, *to refer*; rem ad Idus Febr. *to delay*, Cic.

SUBJICERE ova gallinæ, *to set an hen*; se imperio alicujus, *to submit*; testamenta, *to forge*; testes, *to suborn*; partes v. species generibus, ex quibus emanant, *to put or class under*; aliquid ei, *to suggest*; libellum ei, i. e. in manus

dare: odio civium, *to expose*: bona Pomperii v. fortunas hastæ vel voci & sub voce præconis, *to expose to public sale*, Cic. sub hasta venire, *to be sold*, Liv.

TRAJICERE copias v. exercitum, fluvium, Hellespontum, vel trans fluvium, *to transport*: Marius cum parva navicula in Africam trajectus est, *passed or sailed over*. Trajectus ferro, *pierced*.

CAPERE conjecturam, consilium, dolorem, fugam, specimen, spem, sedem, &c. *to guess, consult, grieve, fly, essay, hope, sit, &c.* augurium, v. auspicium, & agere, *to take an omen*: exemplum de aliquo: locum castris: terram, *to alight*: insulam, summa, sc. loca, *to reach*: spolia ex nobilitate, *to gain*, Sall. de republica nihil præter gloriam, Nep. magistratum, *to receive or enjoy*: virginem Vestalem, *to chuse*: amentium, spiritus, superbiam alicujus, *to bear, to contain*: aliquem, consilio, perfidia, *to catch*: nec te Troja capit, Virg. Ædes vix nos capiunt, *the house hardly contains us*: Altero oculo capitur, *blind of one eye*: capitur locus, *he is delighted with*, Virg.

ACCIPERE pecuniam, vulnus, cladem, injuriam ab aliquo, *to receive*: Orbis terrarum divitias accipere nolo pro patriæ caritate, Nep. binas literas eodem exemplo, *two copies of the same letter*, Cic. clamorem, de Socrate, *to hear*: id in bonam partem, *to take in good part, to understand in a good sense*: omnia ad contumeliam, aliter, aliorum ac, atque, Ter. rudem, v. rude donari, *to be discharged as a gladiator*; aliquem bene v. male, *to treat*: eum male acceptum in Mediam hiematum coegit redire, *roughly handled*, Nep. rogationem, *to approve the bill*;

bill; nomen, i. e. ad petendum admittere, *to allow to stand candidate*; omen, *to esteem good*; satisfactionem v. excusationem, Cæs. Accep-
tus plebi, apud plebem, *popular*.

CONCIPERE verba juramenti, *to prescribe the form of an oath*; conceptis verbis jurare: inimicitias cum aliquo, *to bear enmity to one*; aquam, *to gather, to form the head of an aqueduct*, Frontinus.

EXCIPERE cum hospitio, *to entertain*; fugientes, *to catch*; extremum spiritum cognatorum; sanguinem paterâ, *to keep or gather*; notis, & scribere, *to write in short hand*; motus futuros, *to perceive*; Hos homines excipio, *I except*; virtutem excipit immortalitas; turbulentior annus excepit, *succeeded*; sic exce-
pit regia Juno, *replied*, Virg.

INCIPERE, occipere, *to begin*. Percipere fructus, *to reap*.

PRÆCIPERE futura, *to foresee*; gaudia, spem victoriæ, *to anticipate*; pecuniam mutuat, *to take before the time*, Cæs. lac, *to dry up*, Virg. alicui id, v. de ea re, *to order*; artem ei, *to teach*.

RECIPERE aliquid, *to receive*; urbem, *to recover*; eum tectis, *to entertain*; se v. pedem, *to retreat*; se domum, *to return*; se, mentem, animum, *to come to one's self again, to recover spirits*; in se, *to take charge*; alicui, *to promise*; se ad frugem, *to amend*; senem sessum, *to give a seat to*, Cic.

RAPERERE vel trahere in pejorem partem, *to take a thing in the worst sense*; in jus, *to bring before a judge*; partes inter se, *to spare*, Liv. Sub divum, *to reveal*, Horat.

U O.

EXUERE vestes sibi, se velibus; jugum sibi, se jugo, *to cast off*; fidem, sacramentum, *to break*; mentem, *to change*, Virg. hostem castris, *to beat from*.

RUERE ad interitum, in fer-
rum: cæteros, Ter. spumas, *to drive or toss*, Virg.

LUERE pœnas capitis, *to suffer*; æs alienum, *to pay*, Curt. culpam suam vel alterius, morte, sanguine, *to expiate, to atone or suffer for*.

FLUERE amicitias remissione usûs, *to drop gradually*, Cic.

STATUERE stipendium iis de publico, *to appoint*; exemplum in hominem, vel -ne, *to make one a public example*; aliquem capite in terram, *to set or place*, Ter.

CONSTITUERE coloniam, *to settle*; agmen paulisper, *to make to stop or halt*, Sall. in digitis, *to count on one's fingers*, Cic. urbem, *to build*, Ovid. Is hodie venturum ad me constituit domum, *appointed, resolved*, Ter. Si utilitas amicitiam constituit, tollet eadem, *makes, constitutes*, Cic. Corpus bene constitutum, *a good constitution*, Id.

DESTITUERE aliquem, *to forsake*; spem, *to deceive*; propositum, *to give over*, Ovid. deos pactâ mercede, *to defraud*, Hor.

INSTITUERE aliquem secundum heredem filio, *to appoint*, Cic. collegium fabrorum, sacra, *to institute, to found*, Plin. aliquem doctrinâ, Græcis literis, *to instruct*; naves, *to build*, Cæs. sermonem, *to enter upon*, Id. animum ad cogitandum, *to settle*; antequam pro Mucœna dicere instituo, *I begin*, Cic.

PRÆSTITUERE petitorî, qua actione illum uti oporteat, *to prescribe to the prosecutor what form of process he should use*, Cic. tempus ei, *to determine*.

RESTITUERE exules; virginem suis, *to restore*; oppida vicisque, *to repair*; aciem inclinatam, *to rally*; prælium, *to renew*, Liv.

SUBSTITUERE aliquem in locum ejus, pro altero, *to substitute or put in the place of*, Cic.

STRUERE

STRUERE epulas, *to prepare*; insidias, mendacium, *to contrive*; odium, crimen alicui, *vel in aliquem, to raise against*.

B O.

SCRIBERE sua manu, bene, velociter, epistolam alicui, *v. ad aliquem*; bellum, *v. de bello*; milites, *to enlist*; supplementum militibus, *to recruit them*; hæredem, *to make one his heir*; dicam ei, *to raise an action against one*; nummos, *to give a bill of exchange*; de rebus suis scribi cupivit, Cic. Decemviri legibus scribendis, Liv.

ASCRIBERE aliquem civitati, in civitatem, *v. -e, to make free*.

DESCRIBERE aliquem, *to describe and not to name*; partes Italiæ, pecuniam, populum ordinibus, *to distribute, to divide*; vectigal civitatibus, *i. e. imperare*; jura, *i. e. dare v. constituere*; censores binos in singulas civitates, *i. e. facere*, Cic.

INSCRIBERE literas alicui, *to direct a letter*; librum, *to entitle or name*; ædes mercede, *to put a ticket on one's house to let*, Ter.

PROSCRIBERE bona alicujus, ædes suas, auctionem, *to publish to be sold, to set to sale*; aliquem, *to banish, to outlaw*.

RESCRIBERE alicujus literis *v. ad literas*, alicui ad aliquid, *to write an answer*; pecuniam, *to pay money by bill*; legionem ad equum, *to set foot soldiers on horseback*, Cæf.

SUBSCRIBERE exemplum literarum, *to write below*; causæ, *to join or take part in an accusation*; Casaris iræ, *to favour*, Ovid.

C O.

DICERE aliquid, *v. de aliqua re, ex aliquo loco*, alicui, *ad v. apud aliquem*; in aliquem, *against*; ad aliquid, *in answer to*; sententiam, *to give an opinion*; jus, *to ad-*

minister justice, to pronounce sentence; mulctam ei, *to amerce or fine*; diem ei, *to appoint a day for his trial before the people*; prodicere, *to put it off*; causam, *to plead*; testimonium, *to give evidence*; non idem loqui est ac dicere, *to harangue*, Cic. sacramento; *seldom sacramentum, to take the military oath*.

ADDICERE aliquid ei, *to call out at an auction, to sell*; servituti, *v. in servitutem, to sentence or adjudge to bondage*; bona, *to give up the goods of the debtor to the creditor*; se alicui, *to devote himself to one's service*: aves non addixerunt, *v. abdixerunt, the birds did not give a favourable omen*; pretio addictam habere fidem, *to be corrupt*, Cic.

CONDICERE operam alicui, *to promise assistance*; cœnam alicui, *v. ad cœnam, to propose supping with one without invitation*.

EDICERE alicui, *to order*; delectum, *to appoint a levy*; prædam militibus, *to promise by an edict*; justitium, diem comitiis, *vel comitia consulibus creandis, to appoint*.

INDICERE bellum, justitium, *to proclaim war*; legem sibi, *to appoint*, Cic. cœtus in domos tribunorum, *to summon*, Liv. indicare, *to swear*; Indictus, *an adj. not said*; causâ indictâ, *v. non cognitâ condemnari, to be condemned without being heard*; me indicente, hæc non fiunt, *not telling*, Ter.

INTERDICERE alicui, aliquid *v. aliqua re*; sceminis usum purpuræ, *to forbid or debar from*; ei aquâ & igne, *v. aquam et ignem, to banish*; malè rem gerentibus bonis paternis interdici solet, Cic. interdici non poterat socero gener, *discharged the company of*, Nep.

PRÆDICERE alicui aliquid, *de aliqua re, id in hac re, to foretell, to forewarn*.

DUCERE

DUCERE in carcerem *v.* vincula, *to lead*; exercitum, *to command*; spiritum, animam, vitam, *to breathe, to live*; fossam, murum, fulcum, *to make or draw*; bellum, *to prolong, also to carry on*, Virg. ætatem, diem, *to spend*; uxorem, *to take a wife*; in jus, *to summon before a judge*; aliquem, & vultum alicujus, ære, ex ære, de auro, marmore, &c. *to make a statue*; genus, nomen ab *v.* ex aliquo, *to derive*; omnia pro nihilo, infra se; id ei laudi, laudem, *v.* in laudem, *oftener the first, to reckon it a praise to him*; in conscientiam, *to impute to a consciousness of guilt*; in gloria, Plin. in crimen, Tacit. centesimas, *sc.* usuras, *vel* fœnus centesimis, *to compute interest at one for the hundred a month; or at 12 per cent. per annum*; binis centesimis fœnerari, *to take 24 per cent. per annum*; Cic. ducere longas voces in fletum, *to draw out*, Virg. ordines, *to be a centurion*, Liv. ilia, *to pant like a broken winded horse*, Hor.

ADDUCERE aliquem in judicium, ad arbitrium meum, *to bring to a trial*; in suspicionem regi, Nep. arcum, *to draw in*; habenas, *to straiten the reins*.

CONDOCERE aliquem ex loco, *to convey*; navem, domum, coquos, *to hire*; columnam faciendam, *to engage to make at a certain price*: Conducit hoc tux laudi, in *v.* ad rem, *is of advantage*.

DEDUCERE naves, *to launch*; classem in prælium, *to bring*, Nep. equites, *to make to alight*, Liv. eum domum, *to accompany, to carry home*; de sententia, Cic. coloniam, *to transplant*; lacum, *to drain*.

EDUCERE gladium e vagina, *to draw*; florem Italiæ, *to lead out*; copias in aciem, Cic. filium, *to educate, oftener educare*; in astra, *to extol*, Hor. cælo, Virg.

INDUCERE tenebras clarissimis rebus, *to bring on*, Cic. animum, *v.* in animum, *to persuade himself*; scuta pellibus, *to cover*, Cæs. soleas pedibus, *v.* in pedes, *to put on*; colorem picturæ, *to varnish*, Plin. nomina, *to cancel or raise, to rub out*.

OBDOCERE exercitum, *to lead against*; callum dolori, *to blunt it*; sepulchrum sentibus, *to cover*.

REDUCERE aliquem in memoriam alicujus, *vel* alicui aliquid in memoriam, *to bring back to one's remembrance*; in gratiam cum aliquo, *to reconcile*; Vallis reducta, *retired or low*.

PRODUCERE testes, *to bring out*; funus, *to attend*; Armonem in noctem, *to prolong, to continue*; rem in hiemem, *to defer*; servos vendendos, *to bring to market*.

SUBDOCERE se a custodibus, *to steal away*; naves, *to draw up on shore*; cibum ei & deducere, *to take from*; summam, rationes, *to reckon, to cast up accounts*.

PARCERE sibi, labore, *to spare*, &c. a cædibus, *to forbear*; aurum natis, Virg.

ASSUESCERE rei alicui, *v.* re aliqua, in *v.* ad hoc, *to be accustomed*; mentem pluribus & assuefacere, Hor. Annis bella, Virg. *to accustom*. So insuesco rei *v.* re; insuevit hoc me pater, Hor.

SCISCERE legem, *to vote, to decree*: hence plebiscitum.

ASCISCERE regium nomen, *to assume*; socios sibi, ad societatem sceleris, *to affiliate*; ritus peregrinos, *to adopt*.

CONSCISCERE mortem *v.* necem sibi, *to kill one's self*; fugam sibi, *to flee*, Liv.

DISCERE aliquid ab aliquo, *v.* apud aliquem, ex aliqua re, or without ex: Dediscere, *to forget what he hath learned*; Ediscere, *to get by heart*.

DESCENDERE

DESCENDERE de palatio, praesidio, adibus; in forum, curiam, campum; ad accusandum, ad omnia, ad extrema, *to have recourse to*, Cic.

D O.

LUDERE aleâ, v. -am, *to play at dice*; par impar, *at even and odd*; operam, *to use one's labour*.

ALLUDERE alicui, ad aliquem: Colludere ei, cum eo: illudere ei, eum, in eum, in eo; id, *to mock*.

EVADERE insidias, -is, vel ex, *to escape*; in muro, *to mount*: Hac quorsum evadant, nescio, *to what they will turn out*: Clarus evasit, *became*.

CEDERE multa multis de suo jure, Cic. Bona creditoribus, *to yield*, ubi cesso bonorum; alicui loco, de, a, ex loco, v. locum, *to give place*; vitâ, e vita decedere, *to die*; foro, *to turn bankrupt*; Haereditas cedit mihi, *falls to*; Cedit in proverbium, *becomes*.

ACCEDERE oppidum, -do, ad v. in oppidum, *to approach*; ad conditiones, *to agree to*; Ciceroni, sententiæ, v. ad sententiam ejus, *to agree with*; ad Ciceronem, *to go to*; ad rempublicam, *to bear the questorship, or the first public office*; ad amicitiam Philippi, *to gain the friendship of*, Nep. Ad hæc mala hoc mihi accedit etiam, *added*, Ter. Robur accessit ætati, Cic. Animi accessere hosti, Liv. Ad corporis firmitatem plura animi bona accefferant, Nep. Accedit plurimum pretio; huc, eò, accedit quod, *is added*.

ANTECEDERE alicui rei; aliquem, *rarely alicui, to excel*.

CONCEDERE ei aliquid & de aliquo; paullum de suo jure; tempus ad rem, *to grant*; ab oculis, ad dextram, in exilium, in hiberna, *to retire, to go*; fato, naturæ, vitâ, *to die*; in sententiam ejus, *to come*

into one's measures; in conditiones, *to agree to*, Liv.

DISCEDERE transversum, & latum unguem, v. digitum a re, *to depart in the least*.

INTERCEDERE legi, *to give a negative against, to oppose a law*; pecuniam pro aliquo, *to become surety*: Intercedit mihi tecum amicitia vel inter nos, *there is, &c.*

SUCCEDERE ei, in locum ejus, *to succeed*; muro, v. murum; ad urbem; sub primam aciem; in pugnam, *to come up to*.

CADERE altè, ab alto, in terram, *to fall*; causâ, formulâ, in judicio, & litem perdere, *to lose one's cause, to be cast*; in v. sub sensum, oculos, potestatem, &c. in morbum, & incidere, Cic. Non cadit in virum bonum mentiri, *is incapable of*, Cic. Homini lachrymæ cadunt, quasi puero, gaudio, Ter.

ACCIDERE genibus, v. ad genua, *to fall at*; auribus v. ad aures, *to come to*; alicui, casu, præter opinionem, *to happen*; accidit in te istud verbum, *applies*, Ter.

TENDERE vela, *to stretch*; insidias, retia, plagas, &c. *to lay snares*; arcum, *to bend*; iter, cursum, *to direct*; ad altiora, in cœlum, *to aim at*; extra vallum, sc. tabernaculum, *to pitch a tent*: Manibus tendit divellere nodos, *tries*, Virg.

ATTENDO te, Cic. tibi, Plin. de hac re, ad hanc rem, *to take heed*; animum ad rem; res hostium, Sall.

CONTENDERE nervos, omnibus nervis, *to exert one's self*; aliquid ab aliquo, *to ask earnestly*; inter se: amori, poet. for cum amore, *to strive*: causas, sc. inter se, *to compare*, Cic. Aliquid ad aliquid, cum aliquo, & alicui.

COMPREHENDERE naturam rerum, *to understand*: rem pluribus &

& *luculentioribus verbis, to express; aliquem, humanitate, amicitia, to gain; rem fictam, to discover.*

INTENDERE animum rei, ad v. in rem, *to apply*: Intendi animo in rem, Liv. Vocem, nervos, *to exert*; arcum, *to bend*; actionem v. litem alicui vel in aliquem, *also impingere, to raise a law-suit against one*; telum ei, v. in eum, *to shoot at*; manum v. digitum in aliquid, *to point at*: aliquo, sc. ire, *to go to*; officia, *to overdo, to do more than is required*, Sall.

OBTENDERE velum rei, v. rem velo, *to cover, to veil.*

PENDERE pecuniam, *to pay*; pœnas, *to suffer*; id parvi, *to value it little.*

SUSPENDERE aliquem arbori, de, in, v. ex arbore, *to hang*; expectatione, vel suspensum detinere, *to keep in suspense*; ædificium, *to arch a house*; naso adunco, *to sneer at*, Horat.

ABDLRE se literis, in literas, *to hide or shut up one's self among books*, se domum, rus, &c. domo, Virg. in silvas, tenebras; &c.

CONDERE urbem, *to build*; fructus, *to lay up*; in carcerem, *to imprison*; carmen, *to compose*; lumina, *to close*, Ovid. Jura, *to establish*; terrâ, sepulchro, in sepulchro, *to bury.*

DEDERE se alicui, in ditionem alicujus, ad aliquem, *to surrender*; Deditus præceptor, & studiis, *fond of*; vino epulisque, *engaged in*, Nep. deditâ operâ, *or purpose.*

EDERE librum, & in lucem, *publish*; ovum, *to lay*; sonos, cantus, risus, gemitus, questus, hinnitum, pugnam, stragem, *to sound, sing, &c. manus gladiatorum, to exhibit a show of gladiators*; nomen, *to mention*; scetus, *to bring forth*; extremum spiritum, *to die*; exempla cruciatûs in aliquem, *to inflict exemplary torture.*

OBDERE pœsulum foribus, *to bolt the door.*

PRODERE arcem hostibus, *to betray*; aliquid posteris, v. memoriæ, *to hand down*; genus ab aliquo, *to derive*; flaminem, interregem, *to appoint*; aliquot dies nuptiis, *to put off*, Ter. exemplum, *to give to posterity*, Liv.

REDDERE animum, se sibi, *to revive*; animam v. vitam, *to die*; Latinè, verbum verbo, *to translate*; matrem, i. e. referre, *to resemble*; epistolam alicui, *to deliver.*

SUBDERE calcar equo, *to spur*; spiritus alicui, *to encourage.*

CREDERE rem; homini, *to believe*; aliquid alicui, *to trust*; pecuniam ei per syngrapham, *to lend on bond or bill*; rumoribus credi non oportet: Itaque credo, si, &c. *I suppose*, Cic.

FUNDERE aquam, *to pour out*; hostes, *to rout.*

EFFUNDERE fruges, copiam oratorum, *to produce*; ærarium, *to spend*; odium, i. e. dimittere, *to drop*, gratiam collectam, i. e. perdere: omnia, quæ tacuerat, *to tell.*

G O.

JUNGERE se cum aliquo, alicui, & ad aliquem, dextram dextræ: equos currui: annem ponte, *to make a bridge.*

ADJUNGERE accessionem ædibus, *to build an addition to one's house*: animum ad studia, *to apply.*

STRINGERE cultrum, gladium, ensen, *to draw*: frondes, *to lop off*: glandes, baccas *to beat down*: rem, *to waste one's fortune*, Hor. littus, *to touch, to brise or graze upon*, Virg.

TANGERE rem acu, *to hit the nail on the head.*

ATTINGERE Britanniam navibus, *to reach*: reges, res summas, *to mention*, Nep. Aliquem cognatione,

cognatione, affinitate, *to be related to* : forum, *to reach manhood*, Cic. Res non te attingit, *concerns*.

FINGERE orationem, *to polish* : oratorem, *to form* : se ad arbitrium alterius, *to adapt* : Vultus a mente fingitur, lingua fingit vocem, Cic. Sui cuique mores fingunt fortunam, Nep.

FRANGERE nuce[m] *to break* ; navem, *to suffer shipwreck* : fœdus, fidem, *to violate* : sententiam ejus, *to refute*, Cic. hostem, *to subdue*.

AGERE gratias *to give thanks* : vitam, *to live* : prædas, *to plunder* : fabulam, *to act a play* : triumphum de aliquo, ex aliqua re, *to triumph* : nugas, *to trifle* : ambages, *to beat about the bush* : stationem, custodiam urbis, *to be on guard* : rimas, *to chink, to leak, to be rent* : causam, *to plead* : de re, *to speak* : radices, *to take root* : cuniculos, *to undermine* : undam, *to raise a steam* : animam, *to be at the last gasp* : alias res, *to be inattentive* : festum diem, natalem, ferias, &c. *to keep, to observe* : actum, v. rem actam, *to labour in vain* : censum, & habere, *to make a review of the people, their estates, &c.* forum, *to hold a court to try causes* : lege in aliquem, & cum aliquo, *to go to law with one* : hence actor, a plaintiff : in hereditatem, *to claim* : cum populo, *to treat with, to lay before* : decimum agit annum, *he is ten years old* : id agitur, *that is the question* : Libertas agitur, v. de libertate, *is at stake* : actum est de libertate, *is lost* : actum est, ilicet, *all is over* : actum est de pace, *was treated about* : cum illo bene actum est, *he has been lucky or well used* : hoc age, *mind what you are about*. Civitas læta agere, *for erat*, Sallust.

ADIGERE milites sacramento, ad v. in iusjurandum, in sua verba, per iusjurandum, *to force to*

enlist : arbitrum, i. e. agere v. cogere aliquem ad arbitrum, *to force to submit to an arbitration*, Cic.

COGERE copias, *to bring together* : ad militiam, *to force to enlist* : senatum, *to assemble* : in senatum, sc. minis, pignoribus captis, &c. *to force to attend* : agmen, *to rally, to bring up* : lac, *to curd'e* : jus civile diffusum & dissipatum, in certa genera cogere, *to digest, to arrange*.

EXIGERE foras, *to drive out, to divorce* : aliquid ab aliquo, *to require* : facta tecta, sc. et, i. e. facta et tecta, ut sint bene reparata, *to require that the public works be kept in good reparation*, Cic. supplicium, de aliquo, *to inflict* : sua nomina, *to demand or call in one's debts* : ævum, vitam, annos, *to spend* : aliquid ad normam, *to try or examine* : columnam ad perpendiculum, *to apply the plummet, to see if it be straight* : monumentum, *to finish*. Hor. tempus & modum, *to settle* Virg. comœdiam, *to disapprove, to hiss off*, Ter.

REDIGERE aliquid in memoriam alicujus, *to bring back* : pecuniam ex bonis venditis, *to raise money* : hostes sub imperium, *to reduce*.

LEGERE oram, littus, *to coast along* : vela, *to furl the sails* : halitum, *to catch one's breath* : milites, *to enlist* : aliquem in senatum, in Patres, *to chuse* : sacra, *to steal, to commit sacrilege* : Hor.

H O.

TRAHERE obsidionem, bellum, *to prolong* : purpuras, *to spin* : aliquid in religionem, *to scruple* : navem remulco, *to tow*.

DETRAHERE aliquem, *to draw down* : alicui, v. de aliquo, de fama, *to detract from, to lessen one's fame* : aliquid alicui, *to take by force* : laudem, v. de laudibus :

novem

novem partes multæ, *to take from the fine*, Nep.

EXTRAHERE diem, *to spin out, to spend*; certamen, bellum; judicium, *to prolong*.

VEHERE, vehens, invehens, invehens curru, quadrigis, &c. *riding in a chariot*; invehit in portum ex alto, *to enter*; in aliquem, *to inveigh against*; provehi longius, *to proceed too far*.

LO.

CONSULERE rem v. de re, *to consult about*; eum, *to ask his advice*; ei, *to consult for his good*; de salute sua; gravius in aliquem, *to pass a severe sentence against*; in commune, publicum, medium, *to provide for the common good*; verba boni, *to take in good part*; ego consulor, *my advice is asked*; mihi consultitur, *my good is consulted*; mihi consultum ac provisum est, *for a me, I have taken care*, Cic.

APPELLERE classe in Italiam, vel classem, *to land on*; se aliquò, Ter. *ad villam nostram navis appelletur*, Cic. *animum ad philosophiam, to apply*.

ANTECELLERE ei, *rarely eum*: excellere aliis, super, inter, præter alios aliqua re, v. in re, *to excel*.

TOLLERE animos suos, *to take courage*; animos alicui, *to encourage*; aliquem laudibus, & laudes ejus in astra, *to extol*; inducias, *to break a truce*; clamores, *to cry*; filium, *to educate*; de vel e medio, *to kill*.

MO.

ADIMERE claves uxori, *to divorce*; annulum v. equum equiti, *to take away from a knight the ring or horse given him by the public, to degrade*.

DIRIMERE litem, controversiam, *to determine*.

EXIMERE aliquem servitio, noxæ, e vinculis, a culpa, de nu-

mero proscriptorum, obsidione, *to free*; de dolio, *to draw out*; diem dicendo, *to waste in speaking*.

INTERIMERE se, *to kill*.

REDIMERE captivos, *to ransom*; pecuaria de censoribus, *to take or farm the public pastures*.

SUMERE in manus; diem, tempus ad deliberandum; exemplum ex v. de eo, *to take*; pœnas, supplicium de aliquo, *to punish*; pecunias mutuas, *to borrow*; togam virilem, *to put on the dress of a man*; sibi inimicitias, *to get ill-will*; operam in re, vel in rem infumere, *to bestow pains*; fumo tantum, vel hoc mihi, *I take this upon me*.

PREMERE caseum, *to make cheese*; vocem, *to be silent*; dolorem corde, *to conceal*; vestigia ejus, *to follow*; littus, *to come near*; pollicem, *to save a gladiator*; librum in nonum annum, *to delay publishing*, Hor.

EXPRIMERE succum, *to press out*; risum alicui; pecuniam ab aliquo, *to force from*; effigiem, *to draw to the life*; verbum verbo, de verbo, e verbo, ad verbum, de Græcis, &c. *to translate word for word*.

IMPRIMERE aliquid animo, in animo, v. in animum, *to imprint*.

REPRIMERE se, & reprehendere v. retinere, *to check*.

NO.

PONERE spem in homine v. re, & habere; castra, *to pitch*; vitem, *to plant*; vitam, *to die*; ova, *to lay*; insidias alicui; panem convivis, *not ante*; personam amici, *to lay aside the character of a friend*; præmia, *to propose*; pocula, *to stake or lay*; studium, tempus, multum operæ in aliqua re, *to employ, to bestow*; aliquid in laude, in vitiis, in loco beneficii, *to reckon*; ferocia corda, *to lay aside*; aliquem

aliquem in gratiam v. gratia, i. e. efficere gratiosum apud alterum, Cic. : ventos, *to calm* : hominem coloribus, *faxo, to paint, engrave*, Hor. - pecuniam in scœnore, *to lay out at interest* : templa, *to build*, Virg. Venti posuere, *are husb'd*, Virg. Pone esse victum eum, Ter. Positum sit, *suppose, grant*, Cic.

COMPONERE carmen, literas, &c. *to compose* : lites, *to settle* : bellum, *to finish by treaty* : parva magnis, dicta cum factis, *to compare* : manus manibus, *to join*, Virg.

DEPONERE v. ponere togam prætextam, *to lay aside the dress of a boy* : imperium & demittere, *to lay down a command*.

EXPONERE rem, *to set forth or explain* : frumentum, *to expose to sale*, Cic. pueros, scetus, *to leave to perish*, Liv. exercitum, sc. in terram, *to land*.

IMPONERE onus alicui v. in aliquem : aliquem in equum, *to set upon* : personam v. partes duriores ei, *to lay a task or duty on one* : alicui, *to impose on, to deceive*, Nep. honorem ei, *to confer* : vadimonium ei, *to force to give bail* : Nep. manum summam v. extremam rei alicui, *in aliqua re, to finish* : pontem flumini, *to make a bridge*, Curt. Hoc loco libet interponere, *to insert*, Nep.

OPPONERE se periculis, & ad pericula, *to expose* : pignori, *to pledge* : manum fronti, ante oculos, *to put*, Ovid.

PROPONERE aliquid sibi facere, exempla ei ad imitandum, *to propose, to set before* : edicta, legem in publicum, i. e. publicè legenda affigere : congiarium, *to promise a largess, a gift of corn or money*.

SUPPONERE ova gallinæ, *to set a hen* : testamentum, v. subjicere, *to forge*.

CANERE aliquem, *to praise* :

signa, classicum, bellicum, i. e. ad arma conclamare, *to sound an alarm, to give the signal for battle* : receptui, rarely -um, *to sound a retreat* : tibiā, *to play on the pipe* : ad tibiā, *to sing to it* : palinodiam, *to utter a recantation*.

STERNERE lectos, *to spread or cover the couches* : equos, *to harness* : viam, *to pave* : æquora, *to calm*, Virg.

PO.

CARPERE agmen, *to cut off the rear* : somnos, quietem, *to sleep* : viam, iter, *to go*, Virg. opera alterius, *to censure* : labores, virtutes, *to diminish or obscure*, Hor.

RUMPERE fidem, scœdus, amicitiam, *to violate* : vocem v. silentium, *to speak*, Virg.

ERUMPERE ex tenebris, castris, &c. se portis, *to break out* : stomachum in aliquem, *to vent passions* : nubem, *to break*, Virg.

RO.

QUÆRERE bonam gratiam sibi, *to seek or gain*, Cic. sermonem, *to beat about for conversation*, Ter. rem mercaturis faciendis, *to make a fortune by merchandise* : ex aliquo, & in aliquem, *de re aliqua per tormenta, to put to the rack* : in dominum de servo quæri noluerunt Romani, Cic.

ANQUIRERE aliquid, *to search after* : aliquem capitis, v. -te, *to accuse or try for a capital crime*.

GERERE res, *to perform* : negotium malè, *to manage* : consilium, *to bear, to manage* : se bene vel malè, *to behave* : exercitum, *to conduct*, Sallust. morem ei, *vel morigerari, to humour* : civem, se pro cive, personam alicujus, *to pass for, to bear the character of* : inimicitias vel similitudinem cum aliquo, *to be at enmity or variance with*.

INGERERE

INGERERE convicia ei, in eum, *to inveigh against.*

SUGGERERE aliquid, ei, *to suggest, to hint*; sumptus his rebus, *to supply or afford*: Horatium Bruto, *to chuse in place of, to put after*, Liv.

SERERE crimina in eum, *to raise, to spread accusations.*

CONSERERE manus, manti, certamen, pugnam, cum hostibus, inter se, *to engage.*

ASSERERE aliquid, *to affirm*; aliquem manu, ab injuria, in libertatem, *to free*; in servitutem, *to reduce*; divinam majestatem, *to claim.*

TO:

PETERE aliquid alicui; id ab eo, *rarely cum*; in beneficii gratiaque loco, Cic. *to ask*; urbem Romanam miram, montes, *to go to, to make for*; aliquem sagittâ, lapide, *to aim at*; consulatum, pœnas ab aliquo, & repetere, *to punish.*

COMPETERE animo, *to be in one's senses*; in eum competit actio, *an action lies against him*, Cic.

REPETERE res, *to demand restitution*; bona lege, v. profèqui lite, *to recover by law*; castra, oppidum, huc, *to return to*; aliquid memoriâ, *to call to mind*; altè, *to trace from the beginning*. Mihi nihil suppetit, multa suppetunt, *I have*; si vita suppetet, *if life shall remain*, Cic.

MITTERE alicui, v. ad aliquem; in suffragia, *to send the people to vote*; aulæum, mappam, *to drop the curtain*; talos, *to throw the dice*; senatum, *to dismiss*; timorem, *to lay aside*: in acta, *to register, to record*; sanguinem, vel emittere, *to let blood*; noxam, *to forgive*; signa timoris, *to shew*; vocem, *to utter, to speak*; habenas, v. remittere, *to slacken*; manu et emittere, *to free a slave*; filium emancipare, *to free a son from the power of his father*; sub jugum, *to make to pass under the yoke*; inferias

manibus diis, *to sacrifice to the infernal gods*; rem, v. de re, *to admit*; mitto rem, *I say nothing of fortune*, Ter. in possessionem bonorum, *to give the possession of the debtor's effects*; misit orare, ut venirem; i. e. aliquem ad erandum, Ter.

AMITTERE litem, v. causam; vitam, fidem, lumina, aspectum, *to lose*, Cic.

ADMITTERE in cubiculum, *to admit*; equam immittere, & permittere, *to gallop*; delictum in se, *to commit a fault*; aves non admiserunt, *have not given a favourable omen*, Liv.

COMMITTERE facinus, *to commit*; se alicui, or in fidem alicujus, *to entrust*; prœlium, *to engage*; exercitum pugna, rem in casum accipitis eventus prœlii, *to risk a battle*, Liv. iv. 27. aliquem cum aliquo, homines inter se, *to sit at variance, or by the ears*; rem eo, *to bring to that pass*; gladiatores, pugiles, Græcos cum Latinis, *to match or pair*; committere; ut, *to chuse*; incommoda sua legibus & judiciis, *to seek redress by law.*

COMPROMITTERE. Candidati compromiserant, H. S. quingenis in singulos apud M. Catonem depositis, petere ejus arbitrato, ut qui contra fecisset, ab eo condemnaretur, *made a compromise or agreement, &c.*

DIMITTERE exercitum, *to disband*; uxorem, & repudiare, nuntium v. repudium ad eam remittere, *to divorce.*

PROMITTERE id ei, *to promise*; capillum, barbam, *to let grow*, Liv.

PERMITTERE alicui, *to allow*; divis cœtera, *to leave*, Horat. se in fidem v. fidei ejus; vela ventis; equum in hostem; rem suffragiis populi, *to let the people decide*; tribunatum vexandis consulibus, *to give up, to employ*, Liv.

REMITTERE

REMITTERE animum, *to ease*; calces, tela, *to throw back*; ex pecunia, de supplicio, tributo, &c. *to abate*; debitum, iras alicui, *to give up, to forgive*; iusticiam, *to discontinue*; pugnam, *to slacken*; remittit explorare, *neglects*, Sallust.

SUBMITTERE fasces populo, *to lower*; se v. animum, *to submit, to humble*; percussores alicui, *to suborn assassins*.

TRANSMITTERE in Africam, *neut. to pass over*.

VERTERE in fugam, *to put to flight*; terga, *to fly*; ab imo, *to overthrow*; solum, *to go into banishment*; id ei vitio, v. crimini, & in crimen, *to blame*; in superbiam, *to impute*; Platonem, Latine Græca, Græca vel ex Græcis in Latinum, *to translate*; pollicem, *to doom a gladiator to death by turning up the thumb*; terram, *to plough*; crateram, *to empty*, Virg. Stilum, *to correct*, Horat. Salus vel causa in eo vertitur, *depends*; fortuna verterat, Liv. Annus vertens, *a whole year*, Nep. Res bene vertat, Di bene vertant, *prosper*.

ANIMADVERTERE id, *to observe*; in eum verberibus, morte, &c. *to punish*.

ADVERTERE agmen urbi, *to bring up to*, Virg. oras, *to arrive at*; aures, mentes, animum, v. animo ad aliquid, monitis, *to attend to*; in aliquem, ostener animadvertere, *to punish*.

ANTEVERTERE ei, *to come before*; damnationem veneno, *to prevent*; rem rei, *to prefer*, Plant.

INTERVERTERE pecuniam alicujus, & aliquem pecuniâ, *to embattle, to cheat*; candelabrum, *to steal, to pilfer*; promissum & receptum, jç. Dolobellæ consulatum, intervertit, ad seque transtulit, *treacherously withheld*, Cic.

PRÆVERTERE, & -ti, dep. ventos cursu, *to outstrip*; desiderium plebis, *to prevent*; metum supplicii morte voluntariâ, Liv. Aliquid alicui rei, *to put before*, Id.

SISTERE vadimonium; se in judicio, *to appear in court at one's trial*; nec fisti posse, *nor could the state be saved*, Liv.

ASSISTERE ei, *to stand by*; ad fores; contra, super eum.

CONSISTERE in digitos, *to stand on tiptoe*; in anchoris, ad anchoram, *to ride at anchor*; frigore, *to be frozen*; Ovid. Spes in velis consistebat, *depended on*; virtus in actione consistit, Cic.

INSISTERE jacentibus, *to stand upon*; vestigiis ejus; viam, v. viâ; in re aliqua, in rem, v. rei; in doles, negotium, Plant. *to insist upon, to urge*.

OBSISTERE ei, *to stop, to oppose*.

RESISTERE ei, *to resist*.

SUBSISTERE, *to stand still*; sumptui, *to bear*.

VO.

SOLVERE pecuniam ei, *to pay*; versurâ, *to pay debt by borrowing from another*, Ter. Fidem, *to break a promise, or according to others, to perform*, Ter. And. IV. I. 19. litem æstimatam, *to pay the fine imposed on him*, Nep. Votum, *to discharge*; obsidionem urbis, v. urbem obsidione, *to raise a siege*; navem, e portu, *to set sail*; epistolam, v. resignare, *to break open*; aliquem legibus, legum vinculis, *to free from*; solvitur in somnos, Virg. Oratio soluta, i. e. libera, numeris non astricta & devincta, *prose*; solve metus, *dismiss*, Virg.

DISSOLVERE societatem, *to break*.

RESOLVERE vocem, v. ora, *to break silence*, Virg. jura, *to violate*; vectigal, *to take off taxes*, Tacit. In pulverem, *to reduce to*.

FOURTH

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

AUDIRE aliquem, aliquid ex
v ab aliquo, *to hear from one*; de
 aliquo, *about one, also from one, as,*
sæpe hoc audiui de patre, for ex
patre, Cic. Audire bene v. malè
apud socios, ab omnibus, to be well
spoken of, to have a good character;
rexque paterque audisti, have been
called, Hor. Antigonus credit de
suo adventu esse auditum, Nep.

VENIRE ad finem, aures, pac-
 tionem, certamen, manus, nihil-
 um, &c. in suspicionem, odium,
 gratiam, &c. in jus, *to go to law,*
 Liv. in circulum, *into a company,*
 Nep. Hereditas ei venit, *he has*
succeeded to an estate; ei usu venit,
happened, Nep. Quod in buccam
venerit, scribito, occurs, Cic.

ADVENIRE & adventare ei, ur-
 bem, ad urbem, *to come to.*

ANTEVENIRE aliquem, & ante-
 vertere, Sall. rei, Plaut. tempus,
 consilia & itinera.

CONVENIRE in colloquium;
 fratrem, *to meet with, to speak to;*
 ego et frater conveniemus, copiz
 convenient, *will meet together;* con-

venit mihi cum fratre de hac re,
 inter me et fratrem, inter nos;
 hæc fratri mecum conveniunt. *I*
and my brother are agreed; sævis
 inter se convenit urbis, Juv. Ipse se-
 cum non convenit, *vel ipse, he is in-*
consistent; pax convenit, *vel con-*
venta est, is agreed upon; rem con-
 venturam putamus, Cic. conditio-
 nes non convenerunt; mores con-
 veniunt, *agree;* calcei pedibus *v.* ad
 pedes conveniunt, *fit, fuit;* hoc in
 illum convenit: Catilinam inter-
 fectum esse convenit, *ought to have*
been slain, Cic. Convenire in ma-
num, the usual form of marriage,
named Coempto, whereby women
were called matresfamilias.

SENTIRE sonorem, colorem,
 &c. *to perceive;* cum aliquo, *to be*
of one's opinion; bene *vel* malè de
 eo, *to think well or ill of him.*

CONSENTIRE tibi, tecum, inter
 se; alicui rei, de *v.* in aliqua re;
 ad aliquid peragendum, *to agree;*
 So dissentire; et ab aliquo, *to dis-*
agree; nè vita orationi dissentiat.
 Senec.

DEPONENT VERBS.

PROFITERI philosophiam, *to*
profess, to teach publicly; se can-
 didatum, *to declare himself a candi-*
date for an office; pecunias, agros,
 nomina, &c. apud cenforem, *to*
give an account of, to declare how
much one has; indicium, *to promise*
to make a discovery.

LOQUI cum aliquo, inter se;
 sometimes alicui, ad *v.* apud ali-
 quem; aliquid, de aliqua re.

SEQUI feras; sectam Cæsaris,
to be of his party, Cic. Assequi,
consequi, to overtake; gloriam, *to*

attain. Consequi hereditatem, to
get, Cic.

PROSEQUI aliquem amore, lau-
 dibus, &c. *to love, praise, &c.*

NITI hastâ; in cubitum, *to lean;*
 ejus consilio, in eo, *to depend on;*
 ad gloriam, ad *v.* in summa, *to*
aim at; in vetitum, in adversum,
 contra aliquem, pro aliquo, *to*
strive; gradibus, *to ascend.*

UTI eo familiariter, *to be famil-*
iar with one; ventis adversis, *to*
have cross winds; honore usus, *one*
who has enjoyed a post of honour.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

ESSE magni roboris, *v. -no, -re*; ejus opinionis, *v. ea opinione*; in maxima spe: in timore, luctu, opinione, itinere, &c. cum telo, in *vel* cum imperio; magno periculo, *v. in periculo*; in tuto; apud se, in *his sensibus*; fui juris, *v. mancipii, fui potens, v. in sua potestate*; *to be at his own disposal*: Res est in vado, *is safe*, Ter. Est animus, *sc. mihi, I have a mind*, Virg. Est ut, cur, quamobrem, quod, quin, &c. *There is cause*; bene, male est mihi, *with me*; nihil est mihi tecum, *I have nothing to do with you*: Quid est tibi, *sc. rei, What is the matter with you?* Ter. Cernere erat, *one might see*; religio est mihi id facere, *I scruple to do it*; si est, ut facere velit, ut facturus sit, ut admiserit, &c. *for si velit, &c. Ter. Est ut viro vir latins ordinet arbuta fulcis, it happens, Hor. Certum est facere, sc. mihi, I am resolved, Ter. Non certum est, quid faciam, I am uncertain, Id. Cassius querere solebat, Cui Bono fuerit: Omnibus bono fuit, it was of advantage, Cic.*

ADESSE pugnae, in pugna, ad exercitum, ad tempus, in tempore, cum aliquo, *to be present*; alicui, *to favour, to assist*; scribendo, *v. esse ad scribendum, to subscribe one's name to a decree of the senate, Cic. consilio utrique, to be a counsellor to, Nep.*

ABESSE domo, urbe, a domo, ab ignis, *to be absent*; alicui, *v. deesse, to be wanting, not to assist*; a sole, *to stand out of the sun*; sumptus funeri defuit, *he had not money to bury him, Liv. abesse a persona principis, to be inconsistent with the character, Nep. Paulum v. parum abfuit quin urbem caperent, quin occideretur,*

&c. *they were near taking, &c. Tantum abest ne enervetur oratio, ut, &c. is so far from being, &c. Cic. Tantum abfuit a cupiditate pecuniae, a societate sceleris, &c. Nep.*

INTERESSE convivio, *v. in convivio, to be at a feast*; anni decem interfuerunt, *intervened*; stulto intelligens quid interest, Ter. Hoc dominus & pater interest, Id. Inter hominem & belluam hoc interest, Cic. *differ in this, this is the difference*; multum interest, utrum, *it is of great importance. Pons inter eos interest, is between, Cic.*

PRÆSSE exercitui, *to command*; comitiis, judicio, quaestioni, *to preside in or at.*

OBSSE ei, *to hurt, to hinder.*

SUPERESSE, *to be over and above*; alicui, *to survive*; modo vita superest, *sc. mihi, if I live*; superest, ut, *it remains, that.*

IRE ad arma, ad saga, *to go to war*; in jus, *to go to law*; pedibus in sententiam alicujus, *to agree with*; viam *v. viâ*; res bene eunt Cic. Tempus, dies, mensis it, *passes.*

ABIRE magistratu, *to lay down an office*; a conspectu, *to retire from company*; in ora hominum, *to be in every body's mouth*; ab emptione, *to retract his bargain*; decem menses abierunt, *have past, Ter. Non hoc tibi sic abibit, i. e. non seres hoc impune, Ter. Abi in malam rem, a form of imprecation.*

ADIRE periculum capitis, *to run the hazard of one's life.*

EXIRE vitâ, e, *v. de vita, to die*; ære alieno, Cic. Verbum exit ex ore, Id. tela, *to avoid, Virg. Tempus induciarum cum Veienti populo exierat, had expired, Liv.*

INIRE magistratum; suffragium,

gium, rationem, consilium, pugnam, viam, &c. *to enter upon; to begin*; gratiam ejus, apud eum, cum vel ab eo; *to gain his favour*: Incunte ætate, vere, anno, &c. *in the beginning of*; but we seldom say, Incunte die, nocte, &c. Ab ineunte ætate, *from our early years*.

OBIRE diem edicti, vel auctoris, judicium, vadimonium, *to be present at*; provinciam, domos nostras, *to visit; to go through*, Cic. negotia, res, munus, officium, legationem, sacra, *to perform*; pugnas, Virg. mortem, vel morte; diem supremum, v. diem, *to die*.

PRÆIRE alicui, *to go before*; verba, carmen, vel sacramentum alicui, *to repeat or read over before*; alicui voce, quid judicet, *to prescribe or direct by crying*, Cic.

PRODIRE in publicum, *to go abroad*; non præterit te, *you are not ignorant*, Cic. Dies induciarum præteriit, *is past*, Nep.

REDIRE in gratiam cum aliquo, *to become friends again*; ad se, *to come to himself, to recover his senses*.

SUBIRE murum, vel -o, ad montes, *to come up to*; laborem vel -i, onus, pœnam, periculum, crimen, *to undergo*; spes, timor subiit animum, *came into*.

VELLE aliquem, sc. alloqui vel conventum, *to desire to speak with*; alicui, ejus causâ, *to wish one's good*; tibi consultum volo; nihil tibi negatum volo, *I wish to deny*, Liv. Quid sibi vult? *What does he mean?* Volo te hoc facere, hoc a te fieri; si quid recte curatum velis; illos monitos etiam atque etiam volo, sc. esse, *I will admonish them again and again*, Cic. nollem factum, *I am sorry it was done*; nollem huc exitum, sc. esse a me, *I wish I had not come out here*, Ter.

FERRE legem, *to propose or*

make; privilegium de aliquo, *to propose or pass an act of impeachment against one*, Cic. rogationem ad populum, *to bring in a bill*; conditiones-ei, *to offer terms*; suffragium, *to vote*; sententiam, *to give an opinion*; centuriam, tribum, *to gain the vote of*; perdere, *to lose it*; victoriam ex eo; omne punctum, omnia suffragia, *to gain all the votes*; repulsam, *to be rejected*; fructum hoc fructi, *to reap*, Ter. lætitiâ de re, *to rejoice*; præ se, *to pretend or declare openly*; alienam personam, *to disguise one's self*; in oculis, *to be fond of*, Ter. manus in prælia, *to engage*, Virg. acceptum et expensum, *to mark down as received and spent or lent, as Dr and Cr*, Cic. animus, opinio fert, *inclines*; tempus, res, causa fert, *allows, requires*.

CONFERRE benevolentiam alicui, in vel erga aliquem, *to shew*; beneficia, culpam in eum, *to confer, to lay*; operam, tempus, studium ad vel in rem, & impendere, *to apply*; capita inter se, consilia sua, *to lay their heads together, to consult*; signa, arma, manus, *to engage*; omne bellum circa Corinthum, Nep. pedem, *to set foot to foot*; rationes, *to cast up accounts*; castra castris, *to encamp over against one another*; se in, vel ad urbem, *to go to*; tributa, *to pay*; se alicui, vel cum aliquo, *to compare*; neminem cum illo conferendum pietate puto, Cic. Hæc conferunt ad aliquid; oratori futuro, *serve, are useful to*, Quint.

DEFERRE titulam vel sitellam, *to bring the ballot-box*; aliquid ad aliquem, *to carry word, to tell*; rarely alicui; causam ad patronos; honorem ei; gubernacula reipublicæ in eum; summam rerum ad eum, *to confer*; in beneficiis ad ærarium, *to recommend for a public service*, Cic. aliquem ambitus, de ambitu,

ambitu, nomen alicujus ad præ-
torem, apud magistratum, *to ac-*
cuse of bribery; primas, *sc. partes*
ei, to give him the preference, Cic.

DIFFERRE *vel transferre rem in*
annum; post bellum, diem so-
lutionis, *to put off*; rumores, *to*
spread; ab aliquo, alicui, inter se;
moribus, *to differ in character*; a-
more, cupiditate, doloribus, dif-
ferri, *to be distracted or torn asunder*,
Cic. & Ter.

EFFERRE fruges, *to produce*; ver-
ba, *to utter*; verbum de verbo ex-
pressum, *to translate*, Ter. pedem
domo, *to go out*; corpus amplo fu-
nere, & cum funere, *to bury*; ad
honorem, ad cælum laudibus, *to*
raise, to extol; foras peccatum, *to*
divulge.

INFERRE bellum patriæ; vim,
manus, necem alicui, *to bring upon*;
signa, *sc. pedem, to advance*; litem,
vel periculum capitis alicui, vel in
aliquem, to bring one to a trial for
his life.

OFFERRE se morti, ad mortem,
in discrimen, *to expose, to present*.

PREFERRE legem, *to carry*
through, to pass it.

PRÆFERRE faciem ei, *to carry*
before; salutem reipublicæ suis
commodis, & anteferre, antepo-
nere, *to prefer*. Prælatuſ equo,
riding before.

PROFERRE imperium, pomæri-

um, terminos, *to enlarge*; in me-
dium, in apertum, in lucem, *to pub-*
lish; nuptias, diem, *to delay*; diem
Illo, *to defer the distraction of*, Hor.

REFERRE alicui, *to answer*; se,
gradum *v. pedem, to retreat*; gra-
tiam alicui, *to make a requital*; par
pari, Ter. victoriam ab, *vel ex ali-*
quo, et reportare, to gain; insti-
tutum, *to renew*; judicia ad eque-
strem ordinem, *to restore to the E-*
quites the right of judging; aliquid,
de aliqua re, ad senatum, ad con-
siliuſ, ad sapientes, ad populuſ,
to lay before; aliquid in tabulam,
codicem, album, commentarium,
&c. *to mark down*; aliquid accep-
tum alicui, & in acceptum, *to ac-*
knowledge one's self indebted; pecu-
nias acceptas & expensas, nomina
vel summas in codicem accepti et
expensi, to mark down accounts;
alienos mores ad suos, *to judge of*
by; in *v. inter ærarios, to reduce*
to the lowest class; in numerum
deorum, in *vel inter deos, & re-*
ponere, to rank among; pugnas,
res gestas, *to relate*; patrem ore,
to resemble; amissos colores, *to re-*
gain, Horat.

TRANSFERRE rationes in tabu-
las, *to post one's books, to state accounts*;
in Latinam linguam, *to translate*;
verba, *to use metaphorically*; cul-
pam in eum & rejicere, *to lay the*
blame on him.

II. FIGURES of SYNTAX.

A *Figure* is a manner of speaking different from the ordinary and plain way, used for the sake of beauty or force.

The figures of *Syntax* or *Construction* may be reduced to these three, *Ellipsis*, *Pleonasm*, and *Hyperbaton*.

The two first respect the constituent parts of a sentence; the last respects only the arrangement of the words.

I. ELLIPSIS.

ELLIPSIS is when one or more words are wanting to complete the sense, as, *Aiant, ferunt, dicunt, perhibent*, scil. *homines* : *Dic mihi, Damata, cujum pecus* ; that is, *Dic (tu) mihi, Damata, (eum hominem) cujum pecus (est hoc pecus)*. *Aberant bidui*, sc. *iter vel itinere*. *Decies sester-tium*, sc. *centena millia*. *Quid multa?* sc. *dicam*. *Antiquum obtines*, sc. *morem, v. institutum*, Plaut. — *Hodie in ludum oc-cæpi ire literarium, ternas jam scio*, sc. *litteras*, i. e. *AMO*, Id. *Triduo abs te nullas acceperam*, sc. *litteras*, i. e. *epistolam*, Cic. *Brevi dicam*, sc. *sermone* : So *Complecti, respondere, &c. brevi*. *Dii meliora*, sc. *faciant* : *Rhodum volo, inde Athenas*, sc. *ire*, Id. *Bellicum, v. classicum canere*, sc. *signum*, Liv. *Civica donatus*, sc. *coronâ* ; So *obsidionalem, muralem adeptus, &c.* Id. *Epistola librarii manu est*, sc. *scripta*, Cic. So in English; “The twelve,” i. e. apostles ; “the elect,” i. e. persons.

When a conjunction is to be supplied, it is called *ASYNDÆTON* ; as, *Deus optimus maximus*, sc. *et* ; *Sartum tectum conservare*, i. e. *sartum et tectum* ; So *Abiit, excessit, evasit, erupit*, Cic. *Eerte citi flammæ, date vela, impelite remos*, Virg. *Velis nolis*, sc. *scu*.

To this figure may be reduced most of those irregularities in *Syntax*, as they are called, which are variously classed by grammarians, under the names of *ENALLAGE*, i. e. the changing of words and their accidents, or the putting of one word for another ; *ANTIPTŌSIS*, i. e. the putting of one case for another ; *HELLENISM OR GRÆCISM*, i. e. imitating the construction of the Greeks ; *SYNÆSIS*, i. e. referring the construction, not to the gender or number of the word, but to the sense, &c. thus, *Sannitium duo millia caesi*, is, *Duo millia (hominum) Sannitium (fuerunt homines)*;

homines). *cesti*, Liv. So *Servitia immemores*, Liv. *Monstrumque*, scil. mulier, Hor. *Scelus qui*, sc. homo, Ter. *Omnia Mercurio similis*, scil. secundum, Virg. *Missi magnis de rebus uterque, legati*; i. e. *Missi legati* (et) *uterque* (legatus missus) *de magnis rebus*, Horat. *Servitia repudiabat, cujus*, scil. servitii, Sall. Cat. 51. *Familia nostra, quorum*, &c. sc. hominum, Sall. *Concussus populi, mirantium*, Liv. *Illum ut vivet optant*, for *ut ille vivat*, Ter. *Populum late regem*; for *regnantem*, Virg. *Expediti militum*, for *milites*; *Classis stabat Rhegii* for *ad Rhegium*; Liv. *Latium Capuaque agro multati*, sc. homines, Id. *Utraque formosae*, sc. mulieres, Ovid. *Aperite aliquis ostium*, Ter. *Sensit delapsus*, for *delatus*; sc. *se esse*, Virg.

When a writer frequently uses the Ellipsis, his style is said to be elliptical or concise.

2. PLEONASM.

PLEONASM is when a word more is added than is absolutely necessary to express the sense; as, *Vidéo oculis*, I see with my eyes; *Sic ere locuta est*; *adeſt praesens*; *Nusquam gentium*; *vivere vitam*; *ſervire ſervitutem*; *Quid mihi Celsus agit?* *Fac me ut ſciam*, &c. *Suo ſibi gladio hunc jugulo*, Ter. *Suo ſibi ſucco vivant*, Plaut.

When a conjunction is used apparently redundant, it is called POLYSYNDETON; as, *Una Eurusque Notusque ruant*, Virg.

When that which is in reality one, is so expressed as if there were two, it is called HENDIADYS; as, *Pateris libamus et auro*, for *aureis pateris*, Virg.

When several words are used to express one thing, it is called PERIPHRAISIS; as, *Urbs Troja*, for *Troja*, Virg. *Res voluptatum*, for *voluptates*, Plaut. *Uſus purpurarum*, for *purpura*; *Genus piſcium*, for *piſces*; *Flores roſarum*, for *roſae*, Hor.

3. HYPERBATON.

HYPERBATON is the transgression of that order or arrangement of words which is commonly used in any language. It is chiefly to be met with among the poets. The various sorts into which it is divided, are, *Ana-*
ſtrophe,

Bröphe, Hystëron protëron, Hypalläge, Synchësis, Tmesis, and Parenthësis.

1. ANASTRÖPHE is the inversion of words, or the placing of that word last which should be first ; as, *Italiam contra ; His accusa super ; Spemque metumque inter dubii ;* for *contra Italiam, super his, inter spem ;* &c. Virg. *Terram sol facit are,* for *arefacit,* Lucret.

2. HYSTËRON PROTËRON is when that is put in the former part of the sentence, which, according to the sense, should be in the latter ; as, *Valet atque vivit,* for *vivit atque valet,* Ter.

3. HYPALLÄGE is the exchanging of cases ; as, *Dare classibus austros,* for *dare classes austris,* Virg.

4. SYNCHËSIS is a confused and intricate arrangement of words ; as, *Saxa vocant Itali mediis quæ in fluctibus aras ;* for *Quæ saxa in mediis fluctibus Itali vocant aras,* Virg. This occurs particularly in violent passion ; as, *Per tibi ego hunc juro fortem castumque cruorem,* Ovid. Fast. ii. 841. *Per vos liberos atque parentes,* sc. *oro vos per liberos,* &c. Sallust. Jug. 14.

5. TMESIS is the division of a compound word and the interposing of other words betwixt its parts ; as, *Septem subjecta trioni gens,* for *Septentrioni,* Virg. *Quæ meo cunque animo libitum est facere,* for *quæcunque,* Ter. *Quem fors dierum cunque dabit, lucro Appone,* Horat.

6. PARENTHËSIS is the inserting of a member into the body of a sentence, which is neither necessary to the sense, nor at all affects the construction ; as, *Tityre, dum redeo, (brevis est via), pasce capellas,* Virg.

III. ANALYSIS and TRANSLATION.

The difficulty of translating either from English into Latin, or from Latin into English, arises in a great measure from the different arrangement of words which takes place in the two languages.

In Latin the various terminations of nouns, and the inflection of adjectives and verbs, point out the relation of one word to another, in whatever order they are placed. But in English the agreement and government of words

can only be determined from the particular part of the sentence in which they stand. Thus, in Latin, we can either say, *Alexander vicit Darium*, or *Darium vicit Alexander*, or *Alexander Darium vicit*, or *Darium Alexander vicit*; and in each of these the sense is equally obvious: but in English we can only say, *Alexander conquered Darius*. This variety of arrangement in Latin gives it a great advantage over the English, not only in point of energy and vivacity of expression, but also in point of harmony. We sometimes indeed, for the sake of variety and force, imitate in English the inversion of words which takes place in Latin; as, *Him the Eternal burl'd*, Milton. *Whom ye ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you*. But this is chiefly to be used in poetry.

With regard to the proper order of words to be observed in translating from English into Latin, the only certain rule which can be given, is to imitate the CLASSICS.

The order of words in sentences is said to be either *simple* or *artificial*; or, as it is otherwise expressed, either *natural* or *oratorical*.

The *Simple* or *Natural* order is, when the words of a sentence are placed one after another according to the natural order of syntax.

Artificial or *Oratorical* order is, when words are so arranged, as to render them most striking, or most agreeable to the ear.

All Latin writers use an arrangement of words, which appears to us more or less artificial, because different from our own, although to them it was as natural as ours is to us. In order therefore to render any Latin author into English, we must first reduce the words in Latin to the order of English, which is called the *Analysis* or *Resolution* of sentences. It is only practice that can teach one to do this with readiness. However, to be a beginner, the observation of the following rule may be of advantage.

Take *first* the words which serve to introduce the sentence, or show its dependence on what went before; *next*, the nominative, together with the words which it agrees with or governs; *then*, the verb and adverbs joined with

it ; and *lastly*, the cases which the verb governs, together with the circumstances subjoined, to the end of the sentence ; supplying through the whole the words which are understood.

If the sentence is compound, it must be resolved into the several sentences of which it is made up ; as,

Vale igitur, mi Cicero, tibi que persuade esse te quidem mihi carissimum ; sed multo fore cariorem, si talibus monumentis præceptisque lætabere, Cic. Off. lib. 3. fin.

Farewell then, my Cicero, and assure yourself that you are indeed very dear to me ; but shall be much dearer, if you shall take delight in such writings and instructions.

This compound sentence may be resolved into these five simple sentences ; 1. *Igitur, mi (fili) Cicero, (tu) vale*, 2. *et (tu) persuade tibi (ipſi) te esse quidem (filium) carissimum mihi* : 3. *sed (tu persuade tibi ipſi te) fore (filium) cariorem (mihi in) multo (negotio,)* 4. *si (tu) lætabere talibus monumentis*, 5. *et (si tu lætabere talibus) præceptis*.

1. Fare (you) well then, my (son) Cicero, 2. and assure (you) yourself that you are indeed (a son) very dear to me : 3. but (assure you yourself that you) shall be (a son) much dearer (to me,) 4. if you shall take delight in such writings, 5. and (if you shall take delight in such) instructions.

It may not be improper here to exemplify *Analogical Analysis* as it is called, or the analysis of words, from the foregoing sentence *Vale igitur, &c.* thus,

Vale, scil. *tu* ; Fare (thou) well : Second person singular of the imperative mode, active voice, from the neuter verb, *Valeo, valui, valitum, valere*, to be in health, of the second conjugation, not used in the passive. *Vale* agrees in the second person singular with the nominative *tu*, by the third rule of syntax.

Igitur, then, therefore, a conjunction, importing some inference drawn from what went before.

Mi, Voc. sing. masc. of the adjective pronoun, *meus, -a, -um*, my ; derived from the substantive pronoun *Ego*, agreeing with *Cicero*, by Rule 2. *Cicero*, voc. sing. from the nominative *Cicero, -onis*, a proper noun of the third declension.

Et, and, a copulative conjunction, which connects the verb *persuade* with the verb *vale*, by Rule 60. We turn *que* into *et*, because, *que* never stands by itself.

Persuade, scil. *tu*, persuade thou, second person singular of the imperative active, from the verb *persuadeo, si, sum, dēre*, to persuade ; compounded of the preposition *per*, and *suadeo, -si, isum*, to advise : used impersonally in the passive ; thus, *Persuadetur mihi*, I am persuaded ; seldom or never *Ego persuadeor*. We say however in the third person, *Hoc persuadetur mihi*, I am persuaded of this.

Tibi,

Tibi, dat. sing. of the personal pronoun *tu*, thou; governed by *persuade*, according to Rule 17. *Te*, accusative sing. of *tu*, put before *esse*, according to Rule 4.

Esse, present of the infinitive, from the substantive verb *sum*, *fui* *esse*, to be.

Quidem, Indeed, an adverb, joined with *carissimum* or *esse*.

Carissimum, accusative sing. masc. from *carissimus*, -a, -um, very dear, dearest, superlative degree of the adjective *carus*, -a, -um, dear: Comparative degree *carior*, *carior*, *carius*, dearer, more dear: agreeing with *te* or *filium* understood, by Rule 2. and put in the accusative by Rule 5.

Mibi, to me, dat. sing. of the substantive pronoun *Ego*, I: governed by *carissimum*, by Rule 12.

Sed, but, an adversative conjunction, joining *esse* and *fore*.

Fore, the same with *esse futurum*, to be, or, to be about to be, infinitive of the defective verb *forem*, -res, -ret, &c. governed in the same manner with the foregoing *esse*, thus, *te fore*, Rule 4. or thus, *esse sed fore*. See Rule 60.

Multo scil. *negotio*, ablat. sing. neut. of the adjective *multus*, -a, -um, much, put in the ablative, according to observation 6. Rule 61. But *multo* here may be taken adverbially in the same manner with *much* in English.

Cariorem, accus. sing. masc. from *carior*, -or, -us, the comparative of *carus*, as before: agreeing with *te* or *filium* understood. Rule 2. or Rule 5.

Si, If, a conditional conjunction, joined either with the indicative mode, or with the subjunctive, according to the sense, but oftener with the latter. See Rule 60. obs. 2.

Lætābĕre, Thou shalt rejoice, second person singular of the future of the indicative, from the deponent verb *lætār*, *lætatus*, *lætārī*, to rejoice: Future, *læt-abor*, -abĕris or -ābĕre, ābitur, &c.

Talibus, ablat. plur. neut. of the adjective *talis*, *talis*, *talc*, such; agreeing with *monumentis*, the ablat. plur. of the substantive noun *monumentum*, -ti, neut. a monument or writing; of the second declension; derived from *moneo*, -ui, -itum, -ĕre, to admonish; here put in the ablative, according to Rule 49. *Et*, a copulative conjunction, as before.

Præceptis, a substantive noun in the ablative plural, from the nominative *præceptum*, -ti, neut. a precept, an instruction; derived from *præcipio*, -capi, -ceptum, -cipĕre, to instruct, to order, compounded of the preposition *præ*, before, and the verb *capiō*, *cēpi*, *captum*, *capĕre*, to take. The *q̄* of the simple is changed into *i* short; thus, *præcipis*, *præcipis*, &c.

The learner may in like manner be taught to analyze the words in English, and in doing so, to mark the different idioms of the two languages.

To this may be subjoined a *Praxis*, or Exercise on all the different parts of grammar, particularly with regard to the inflexion of nouns and verbs, in the form of questions, such as these, Of Cicero? *Cicerō-nis*. With Cicero? *Cicerō-ne*. A dear son? *Carus fili-us*. Of a dear son?

son? *Cari filii*. O my dear son? *Mi* or *meus* *care fili*. Of dearer sons? *Cariōrum filiōrum*, &c.

Of thee? or of you? *Tui*. With thee or you, *te*: Of you? *Vestrum* or *vestri*. With you? *Vobis*.

They shall persuade? *Persuadebunt*. I can persuade? *Persuadeam*, or much more frequently *possum persuadere*. They are persuaded? *Persuadeter*, or *persuasum est illis*, according to the time expressed. He is to persuade? *Est persuasurus*. He will be persuaded? *Persuadebitur*, or *persuasum erit illi*. He cannot be persuaded? *Non potest persuaderi illi*. I know that he cannot be persuaded? *Scio non posse persuaderi illi*; that he will be persuaded? *Ei persuasum iri*, &c.

When a learner first begins to translate from the Latin he should keep as strictly to the literal meaning of the words as the different idioms of the two languages will permit. But after he has made farther progress, something more will be requisite. He should then be accustomed, as much as possible, to transfuse the beauties of an author from the one language into the other. For this purpose it will be necessary that he be acquainted, not only with the idioms of the two languages, but also with the different kinds of style adapted to different sorts of composition, and to different subjects; together with the various turns of thought and expression which writers employ, or what are called the figures of words and of thought; or the *Figures of Rhetoric*.

IV. Different kinds of STYLE.

The kinds of Style (*genera dicendi*) are commonly reckoned three; the low, (*humile, submissum, tenue*); the middle, (*medium, temperatum, ornatum, floridum*); and the sublime, (*sublime, grande*.)

But besides these, there are various other characters of style; as, the *diffuse* and *concise*; the *feeble* and *nervous*; the *simple* and *affected*, &c.

There are different kinds of style adapted to different subjects and to different kinds of composition; the style of the Pulpit, of the Bar, and of Popular assemblies; the style of History, and of its various branches, Annals, Memoirs or Commentaries, and Lives; the style of Philosophy, of Dialogue or Colloquial discourse, of Epistles, and Romance, &c.

There

There is also a style peculiar to certain writers, called their *Manner* ; as, the *style* of Cicero, of Livy, of Sallust, &c.

But what deserves particular attention is the difference between the style of poetry and of prose. As the poets in a manner paint what they describe, they employ various epithets, repetitions, and turns of expression, which are not admitted in prose.

The first virtue of style (*virtus orationis*) is perspicuity, or that it be easily understood. This requires, in the choice of the words, 1. *Purity*, in opposition to barbarous, obsolete, or new coined words, and to errors in Syntax : 2. *Propriety*, or the selection of the best expressions, in opposition to vulgarisms or low expressions : 3. *Precision*, in opposition to superfluity of words or a *loose style*.

The things chiefly to be attended to in the structure of a sentence, or in the disposition of its parts, are, 1. *Clearness*, in opposition to *ambiguity* and *obscurity* : 2. *Unity* and *Strength*, in opposition to an *unconnected, intricate, and feeble* sentence : 3. *Harmony*, or a musical arrangement, in opposition to *harshness* of sound.

The most common defects of style (*vitia orationis*) are distinguished by various names ;

1. A BARBARISM is when a foreign or strange word is made use of ; as, *crostus*, for *agellus* ; *rigorofus*, for *rigidus* or *severus* ; *alterare*, for *mutare*, &c. Or when the rules of Orthography, Etymology, or Prosody are transgressed ; as, *charus*, for *carus* ; *stavi*, for *steti* ; *tibicen*, for *tibicen*.

2. A SOLECISM is when the rules of Syntax are transgressed ; as, *Dicit libros lectos iri*, for *lectum iri* : *We was walking* for *we were*. A barbarism may consist in one word, but a solecism requires several words.

3. An IDIOTISM is when the manner of expression peculiar to one language is used in another ; as an *Anglicism* in Latin, thus, I am to write, *Ego sum scribere*, for *ego sum scripturus* ; It is I, *Est ego*, for *Ego sum* : Or a *Latinism*, in English, thus, *Est sapientior me*, He is wiser than me, for *than I* ; *Quem dicunt me esse* ? Whom do they say that I am ? for *who*, &c.

4. TAUTOLOGY

4. **TAUTOLOGY** is when we either uselessly repeat the same words, or repeat the same sense in different words.

5. **BOMBAST** is when high sounding words are used without meaning, or upon a trifling occasion.

6. **AMPHIBOLOGY** is when by the ambiguity of the construction, the meaning may be taken in two different senses ; as in the answer of the oracle to Pyrrhus, *Aio te, Æacide, Romanos vincere posse*. But the English is not so liable to this as the Latin.

V. FIGURES of RHETORIC.

Certain modes of speech are termed *Figurative*, because they convey our meaning under a borrowed form, or in a particular dress.

Figures (*figuræ* or *schemata*) are of two kinds ; figures of words, (*figuræ verborum*,) and figures of thought, (*figuræ sententiarum*.) The former are properly called *Tropes* ; and if the word be changed the figure is lost.

I. TROPEs OR FIGURES OF WORDS.

A *Trope* (*conversio*,) is an elegant *turning* of a word from its proper signification.

Tropes take their rise partly from the barrenness of language, but more from the influence of the imagination and passions. They are founded on the relation which one object bears to another, chiefly that of resemblance or similitude.

The principal tropes are the *Metaphor*, *Metonymy*, *Synecdöche*, and *Irony*.

1. **METAPHOR** (*translatio*) is when a word is transferred from that to which it properly belongs, to express something to which it is only applied from similitude or resemblance ; as, a *hard* heart ; a *soft* temper ; he *bridles* his anger ; a *joyful* crop ; *ridet* ager, the field *smiles*, &c. A metaphor is nothing else but a short comparison.

We likewise call that a metaphor, when we substitute one object in the place of another, on account of the close resemblance between them ; as when, instead of *youth*, we

say, *the morning* or *'spring, time of life* ; or when, in speaking of a family connected with a common parent, we use the expressions which properly belong to a tree, whose trunk and branches are connected with a common root. When this allusion is carried on through several sentences, or through a whole discourse, and the principal subject kept out of view, so that it can only be discovered by its resemblance to the subject described, it is called an ALLEGORY. An example of this we have in Horace, book I. ode 14. where the republic is described under the allusion of a ship.

An ALLEGORY is only a continued metaphor. This figure is much the same with the *Parable*, which so often occurs in the sacred scriptures ; and with the *Fable*, such as those of Æsop. The *Ænigma* or *Riddle* is also considered as a species of the Allegory ; as likewise are many *Proverbs* (*Proverbia* v. *Adagia* ;) thus, *In sylvam ligna ferre*, Horat.

Metaphors are improper, when they are taken from low objects ; when they are forced or far fetched ; when they are mixed or too far pursued ; and when they have not a natural and sensible resemblance ; or are not adapted to the subject of discourse, or to the kind of composition, whether poetry or prose.

When a word is very much turned from its proper signification, it is called *Catachrēsis* (*abusio* ;) as, *a leaf of paper*, of gold, &c. *the empire* flourished ; *parricida*, for any murderer ; *Vir gregis ipse caper*, Virg. *Altum ædificant caput*, Juv. *Hunc vobis deridendum propino*, for *trado*, Ter. *Eurus per Siculas equitavit undas*, Hor.

When a word is taken in two senses in the same phrase, the one proper and the other metaphorical, it is called *Syllepsis* (*comprehenſio* ;) as *Galathæa thymo mihi dulcior Hyblæ*, Virg. *Ego Sardois videar tibi amarior herbis*, Id.

2. METONYMY (*mutatio nominis*) is the putting of one name for another. In which sense it includes all other tropes ; but it is commonly restricted to the following particulars ; 1. When the cause is put for the effect ; or the inventor, for the thing invented ; or the author, for

for his works ; as, *Bonum labores*, for corn ; *Mars*, for war ; thus, *Æquo Marte pugnatum est*, with equal advantage ; Liv. *Ceres*, for grain or bread ; *Bacchus*, for wine ; *Venus*, for love ; *Vulcanus*, for fire ; thus, *Sin, Cérère & Baccho friget Venus*, Ter. *Furit Vulcanus* Virg. So, a general is put for his army ; *Cicero*, *Virgil*, and *Horace*, for their works : *Moses* and the *Prophets*, for their books ; a beautiful *Raphaël*, *Titian*, *Guido Rheni*, *Rembrant*, *Rubens*, *Vandyke*, &c. for their pictures. 2. When the effect is put for the cause ; as, *Pallida mors*, *Pale* death, because it makes pale ; *atra cura*, &c. 3. The container, for what is contained, and sometimes the contrary ; as, *Hausit pateram*, for *vinum*, Virg. *He loves his bottle*, for drink : *Secundam mensam servis dispertiit*, i. e. *fercula in mensa*, Nep. So *Roma*, for *Romani* ; *Europe*, for the *Europeans* ; *Heaven*, for the *Supreme Being* ; *Secernit Europen ab Afro*, for *Africa* ; *In arduos tollor Sabinos*, for *in agrum Sabinum* ; *Incoluni Jove*, for *Capitolio* ; *Janus*, for the temple of *Janus*, Hor. *Proximus ardet Ucalëgon*, for *domus Ucalegontis*, Virg. So *Sergestus*, for his ship, Id. *Æn.* v. 272. 4. The sign, for the thing signified ; as, *The crown*, for *royal authority* ; *palma* or *laurus*, for *victory* ; *cedant arma togæ*, that is, as *Cicero* himself explains it, *bellum concedat paci*. *Ferri togæque consilia*, consultations about war and peace, Stat. Sylv. v. 1. 82. 5. An abstract, for the concrete ; as, *Scelus* for *scelestus*, Ter. *Audacia*, for *audax*, Cic. *Custodia*, for *custodes*, Virg. *Servitus*, for *servi* ; *nobilitas*, for *nobiles* ; *juventus*, for *juvenes* ; *vicinia*, for *vicini* ; *vires* for *strong men*, Hor. *Furta*, for *stolen oxen*, Ovid. Fast. i. 560. 6. The parts of the body, for certain passions or sentiments, which were supposed to reside in them ; thus, *cor*, for *wisdom* or *address* ; as, *habet cor*, *vir cordatus*, a man of sense, Plaut. But with us the heart is put for courage or affection, and the head for wisdom ; thus, *a stout heart* ; *a warm heart* ; *a sound head*, &c. So, *to have a well hung tongue*, for *to speak with ease*, &c.

When we put what follows, to express what goes before, or the contrary, it is called *Metalepsis*, (*transmutatio* ;) thus, *desiderari*, to be desired or regretted, for *to be dead*,
lost,

lost, or absent : So *Fuimus Troes, & ingens gloria Dardania*, i. e. are no more. *Virg. Æn. ii. 325.*

3. SYNECDOCHE (*Comprehensio* or *conceptio*) is a trope by which a word is made to signify more or less than in its proper sense ; as, 1. When a *genus* is put for a *species*, or a whole for a part and the contrary ; thus, *Mortales*, for *homines* ; *summa arbor*, for *summa pars arboris* ; *priusquam pabula gustassent Trojæ, Xanthumque bibissent*, for *partem pabuli, & fluminis Xanthi*, *Virg. Nat uncta carina*, for *navis* ; *centum puppes*, a hundred sail, or a hundred ships ; *tectum*, the roof, for the whole house ; *capita* or *animæ*, for *homines* ; *ungula*, for *equus* or *equi*, *Horat. Sat. i. 1. 114* ; the door or even the threshold, for the house or temple, *tum foribus divæ*, for *in templo divæ*, *Virg. Tempe*, for any beautiful vale, &c. 2. When a singular is put for a plural, and the contrary ; thus, *Hostis, miles, pedes, eques*, for *hostes, &c.* *It is written in the prophets*, for in a book of some one of the prophets ; *millies*, a thousand times, for many times. 3. When the materials are put for the things made of them ; as, *Æs* or *argentum*, for money ; *æra*, for vases of brass trumpets, arms, &c. *ferrum*, for a sword ; *taurus*, for a bull's hide, *Virg. Dust thou art*, i. e. made of dust, &c.

When a common name is put for a proper name, or the contrary, it is called *Antonomasia* (*pronominatio* ;) as, the *Philosopher*, for *Aristotle* ; the *Orator*, for *Demosthenes* or *Cicero* ; the *Poet*, for *Homer* or *Virgil* ; the *Wise man*, for *Solomon* ; *Astu*, for *Athens* ; *Urbs*, the city or town, for the capital of any country ; *Pænus*, for *Hannibal* ; a *Nero*, for a cruel prince ; *Mæcenas*, for a patron of learning ; as, *Sint Mæcenates non deerunt, Flacce, Marones*, i. e. *sint munifici patroni, non deerunt boni poetae*, *Martial. viii. 56. 5.*

An *Antonomasia* is often made by a *Periphrasis* ; as, *Pelopis parens*, for *Tantalus* ; *Anyti reus*, for *Socrates* ; *Trojani belli scriptor*, for *Homer* ; *Chironis alumnus*, for *Achilles* ; *Potor Rhodani*, for *Gallus* ; *Jubæ tellus*, for *Mauritania*, *Horat. &c.* or by a patronymic noun ; as *Anchisiades*, for *Æneas* ; *Tyndaris, -idis*, for *Helena*, &c. or by an epithet ; as, *Impius reliquit*, for *Æneas*, *Virg. some-*
times

times with the noun added ; as, *Fatālis et incestus iudex, famosus hospes*, for *Paris*, Hor.

4. IRONY is when one means the contrary of what is said ; as, when we say of a bad poet, *he is a Virgil* ; or of a profligate person, *Tertius e cælo cecidit Cato*.

When any thing is said by way of bitter railery, or in an insulting manner, it is called a SARCASM ; as, *Satiate sanguine, Cyré*, Justin. *Italiam metire jacens*, Virg.

When an affirmation is expressed in a negative form, it is called LITOTES ; as, *He is no fool*, for *he is a man of sense* ; *Non humilis mulier*, for *nobilis*, or *superba* ; *non indecoro pulvere*, for *decoro*, Horat. When a word has a meaning contrary to its original sense, it is called *Antiphrasis* ; as, *auri sacra fames*, for *exécrabilis*, Virg. *Pontus Euxini falso nomine dictus*, i. e. *hospitalis*, Ovid.

When any thing sad or offensive is expressed in more gentle terms, it is called EUPHEMISMUS ; as, *Vita functus*, for *mortuus* ; *conclamare suos*, to give up for lost, Liv. *Valeant*, for *abeant* ; *maclare* or *serire*, for *occidere* ; *Fecerunt id servi Milonis, quod suos quisque servos in tali re facere voluisset*, i. e. *Clodium interfecerunt*, Cic. This figure is often the same with the *Periphrasis*.

The PERIPHRAISIS, or *Circumlocution*, is when several words are employed to express what might be expressed in fewer. This is done either from necessity, as in translating from one language into another ; or to explain what is obscure, as in definitions ; or for the sake of ornament, particularly in poetry, as in the descriptions of evening and morning, &c.

When after explaining an obscure word or sentence by a periphrasis, one enlarges on the thought of the author, it is called a *Paraphrase*.

When a word imitates the sound of the thing signified, it is called *Onomatopœia*, (*nominis fictio* ;) as, the *whistling* of winds, *purling* of streams, *buz* and *hum* of insects, *hiss* of serpents, &c. But this figure is not properly a trope.

It is sometimes difficult to ascertain to which of the abovementioned tropes certain expressions ought to be referred. But in such cases minute exactness is needless. It is sufficient to know in general that the expression is figurative.

There

There are a great many tropes peculiar to every language which cannot be literally expressed in any other. These therefore, if possible, must be rendered by other figurative expressions equivalent: and if this cannot be done, their meaning should be conveyed in simple language; thus, *Interiore notâ Falerni*, with a glass of old *Falernian wine*: *Ad umbilicum ducere*, to bring to a conclusion, Horat. These and other such figurative expressions, cannot be properly explained without understanding the particular customs to which they refer.

2. REPETITION OF WORDS.

Various repetitions of words are employed for the sake of elegance or force, and are therefore also called *Figures of words*. Rhetoricians have distinguished them by different names according to the part of the sentence in which they take place.

When the same word is repeated in the beginning of any member of a sentence, it is called *ANAPHŌRA*; as, *Nihilne te nocturnum præstium palatii, nihil urbis vigiliæ, &c.* Cic. *Te dulcis conjux, te solo in littore secum, Te veneniente die, te descendente canebat,* Virg.

When the repetition is made in the end of the member, it is called *EPISTRŌPHE* or *conversio*; as, *Pænos Populus Romanus justitiâ vicit, armis vicit, liberalitate vicit,* Cic. Sometimes both the former occur in the same sentence, and then it is called *SYMPLOCE* or *Complexio*; as, *Quis legem tulit? Rullus. Quis, &c. Rullus,* Cic.

When the same word is repeated in the beginning of the first clause of a sentence, and in the end of the latter, it is called *EPANALEPSIS*; as, *Vidimus victoriam tuam præliorum exitu terminatam; gladium vaginâ vacuum in urbe non vidimus,* Cic. pro Marcello.

The reverse of the former is called *ANADIPLŌSIS*, or *Reduplicatio*; as, *Hic tamen vivit: vivit! imo in senatum venit,* Cic.

When that which is placed first in the foregoing member, is repeated last in the following, and the contrary, it is called *EPANŌDOS* or *Regressio*; as, *Crudelis tu quoque mater; Crudelis mater magis an puer imprŏbus ille? Imprŏbus ille puer, crudelis tu quoque mater,* Virg.

The passionate repetition of the same word in any part of a sentence is called *EPIZEUXIS*; as, *Excitate, excitate eum ab inferis,* Cic. *Fuit, fuit ista virtus, &c. Id. Me, me: adsum qui feci, in me convertite ferrum,* Virg. *Bella, horrida bella,* Id. *Ibimus, ibimus,* Hor.

When we proceed from one thing to another, so as to connect by the same word the subsequent part of a sentence with the preceding, it is called *CLIMAX* or *Gradatio*; as, *Africano virtutem industria, virtus gloriam, glŏria amulos comparavit,* Cic.

When

When the same word is repeated in various cases, moods, genders, numbers, &c. it is called **POLYPTŌTON**; as, *Pleni sunt omnes libri, plenæ sapientium venes, plena exemplorum vetustas*, Cic. *Littora littoribus contraria, fluctibus undas imprecor, arma armis*, Virg. To this is usually referred what is called **SYNONYMIA**, or the using of words of the same import, to express a thing more strongly: as, *Non feram, non patiar, non sinam*, Cic. *Promitto, recipio, spondeo*, Id. And also **EXPOLI-TIO**, which repeats the same thought in different lights.

When a word is repeated the same in sound, but not in sense, it is called **ANTANACLASIS**; as, *Amari jucundum est, si curetur ne quid insit amari*, Cic. But this is reckoned a defect in style, rather than a beauty. Nearly allied to this figure is the **PARONOMASIA** or *Agnominatio*, when the words only resemble one another in sound; as, *Civem bonarum artium, bonarum partium; Consul pravo animo & parvo; De oratore arator factus*, Cic. *Amantes sunt amentes*, Ter. This is also called a **PUN**.

When two or more words are joined in any part of a sentence in the same cases or tenses, it is called **HOMOIŌPTŌTON**, i. e. *similiter cadens*; as, *Pellet auctoritate, circumfluit epibus, abundat amicis*, Cic. If the words have only a similar termination, it is called **HOMOIOTRILEUTON**, i. e. *similiter desinens*; as, *Non ejusdem est facere fortiter, & vivere turpiter*, Cic.

3. FIGURES OF THOUGHT.

It is not easy to reduce figures of thought to distinct classes, because the same figure is employed for several different purposes. The principal are the *Hyperbole*, *Prosopopeia*, *Apostrophe*, *Simile*, *Antithesis*, &c.

1. **HYPERBOLE** is when a thing is magnified above the truth; as, when Virgil speaking of *Polyphēmus* says, *Ipsæ arduus, altaque pulsat sidera*. So, *Contracta pisces æquora sentiunt*, Hor. When an object is diminished below the truth, it is called *Tapeinōsis*. The use of extravagant Hyperboles forms what is called *Bombast*.

2. **PROSOPOPEIA**, or *Personification*, is when we ascribe life, sentiments, or actions, to inanimate beings, or to abstract qualities; as, *Quæ (patria) tecum, Catilina, sic agit*, &c. Cic. *Virtus sumit aut ponit secures*, Hor. *Arbor nunc aquas culpante*, Id.

3. **APOSTROPHE**, or *Address*, is when the speaker breaks off from the series of his discourse, and addresses himself to some person present or absent, living or dead, or to inanimate nature, as if endowed with sense and reason. This figure is nearly allied to the former, and therefore

therefore often joined with it ; as, *Trojaque nunc staret, Priamique arx alta maneret*, Virg.

4. SIMILE, or *Comparison*, is when one thing is illustrated or heightened by comparing it to another ; as, *Alexander was as bold as a lion*.

5. ANTITHESIS, or *Opposition*, is when things contrary or different are contrasted, to make them appear in the more striking light ; as, *Hannibal was cunning, but Fabius was cautious*. *Cæsar beneficiis ac munificentia magnus habebatur, integritate vitæ Cato*, &c. Sall. Cat. 54. *Ex hac parte pudor pugnat, illinc petulantia*, &c. Cic. Similar to this figure is the *Oxumoron*, i. e. *acute dictum* ; as, *Amici absentes adsunt*, &c. Cic. *Impietate pia est*, Ovid. *Num capti potuere capi*, Virg.

6. INTERROGATION, (Græc. *Erôtēsis*,) is a figure whereby we do not simply ask a question, but express some strong feeling or affection of the mind in that form ; as, *Quousque tandem*, &c. Cic. *Creditis avectos hostes ?* Virg. *Heu ! quæ me æquora possunt accipere*, Id. Sometimes an answer is returned, in which case it is called *Subjectio* ; as, *Quid ergo ? audacissimus ego ex omnibus ? minime*, Cic. Nearly allied to this is *Expostulation*, when a person pleads with offenders to return to their duty.

7. EXCLAMATION ; (Ecphonēsis) as, *O nomen dulce libertatis !* &c. Cic. *O tempora, O mores !* Id. *O patria ! O Divum domus Ilium !* &c. Virg.

8. DESCRIPTION, or *Imagery*, (*Hypotypōsis*,) when any thing is painted in a lively manner, as if done before our eyes. Hence it is also called *Vision* ; as, *Videor mihi hanc urbem videre*, &c. Cic. in Cat. iv. 6. *Videre magnos jam videor duces, Non indecoro pulvere sordidos*, Hor. Here a change of tense is often used, as the present for the past, and conjunctions omitted, &c. Virg. xi. 637. &c.

9. EMPHASIS is when a particular stress is laid on some word in a sentence ; as, *Hannibal peto pacem*, Liv. *Proh ! Jupiter, ibit hic !* Virg.

10. EPANARTHOSIS, or *Correction*, is when the speaker either recalls or corrects what he had last said ; as *Filiam habui, ah ! quid dixi habere me ? imò habui*, Ter.

11. PARALEPSIS, or *Omission*, is when one pretends to omit or pass by, what he at the same time declares.

12. APARITH.

12. *APARITHMĒSIS*, or *Enumeration*, is when what might be expressed in a few words, is branched out into several parts.

13. *SYNATHROISMUS*, or *Coacervatio*, is the crowding of many particulars together ; as,

————— *Faces in castra tulissem,
Impleissemque foros flammis, natumque, patremque
Cum genere extinxem, memet super ipsa dedissem.* Virg.

14. *Incrementum*, or *CLIMAX* in sense, is when one number rises above another to the highest ; as, *Facinus est vincire civem Romanum, scelus verberare, parricidium necare*, Cic. When all the circumstances of an object or action are artfully exaggerated, it is called *Auxēsis*, or *Amplification*. But this is properly not one figure, but the skilful employment of several, chiefly of the *Simile* and the *Climax*.

15. *TRANSITION* (*metabasis*) is when a speech is abruptly introduced ; or when a writer suddenly passes from one subject to another ; as, Horat. Od. ii. 13. 13. In strong passion, a change of person is sometimes used ; as, Virg. *Æn.* iv. 365. &c. xi. 406, &c.

16. *SUSPENSIO*, or *Sustentatio*, is when the mind of the hearer is long kept in suspense ; to which the Latin inversion of words is often made subservient.

17. *CONCESSIO* is the yielding of one thing to obtain another ; as, *Sit fur, sit sacrilegus, &c. at est bonus imperator*, Cic. in Verrem, v. 1. *PROLEPSIS*, *Prevention* or *Anticipation*, is when an objection is started and answered. *ANACOINŌSIS* or *Communication*, is when the speaker deliberates with the judges or hearers ; which is also called *Diaporesis* or *Addubitatio*. *LICENTIA*, or the pretending to assume more freedom than is proper, is used for the sake of admonishing, rebuking, and also flattering ; as, *Vide quam non reformidem*, &c. Cic. pro Ligario. *APOSIOPĒSIS*, or *Concealment*, leaves the sense incomplete ; as, *Quos ego* ——— *sed præstat motos componere fluctus*, Virg.

18. *SENTENTIA*, (*gnome*,) a sentiment, is a general maxim concerning life or manners, which is expressed in various forms ; as, *Otium sine literis mors est*, Seneca. *Adeo in teneris assuescere multum est*, Virg. *Probitas laudatur*

Et alget ; Misera est magni custodia censis ; Nobilitas sola est atque unica virtus, Juv.

As most of these figures are used by orators, and some of them only in certain parts of their speeches, it will be proper that the learner know the parts into which a regular formal oration is commonly divided. These are, 1. The *Introduction*, the *Exordium* or *Proxmium*, to gain the good will and attention of the hearers ; 2. The *Narration* or *Explication* : 3. The argumentative part, which includes, *Confirmation* or proof, and *Confutation* or refuting the objections and arguments of an adversary. The sources from which arguments are drawn, are called *Loci*, topics ; and are either intrinsic, or extrinsic ; common or peculiar, 4. The *Peroration*, *Epilogue*, or *Conclusion*.

THE QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES.

The quantity of a syllable is the space of time taken up in pronouncing it.

That part of grammar which treats of the quantity and accent of Syllables, and of the measures of verse, is called *PROSODY*.

Syllables, with respect to their quality, are either *long* or *short*.

A long syllable in pronouncing requires double the time of a short ; as, *tēndērē*.

Some syllables are *common* ; that is, sometimes long, and sometimes short ; as the second syllable in *volucris*.

A vowel is said to be long or short by nature, which is always so by custom, or by the use of the poets.

In polysyllables or long words, the last syllable except one is called the *Penultima*, or, by contraction, the *Penult*, and the last syllable except two, the *Antepenultima*.

When the quantity of a syllable is not fixed by some particular rule, it is said to be long or short by *authority*, that is, according to the usage of the poets. Thus *le* in *lēgo* is said to be short by authority, because it is always made short by the Latin poets.

In most Latin words of one or two syllables, according to our manner of pronouncing, we can hardly distinguish
by

by the ear a long syllable from a short. Thus *le* in *lēgo* and *lēgi* seem to be founded equally long ; but when we pronounce them in composition, the difference is obvious ; thus, *perlēgo*, *perlēgi* ; *relēgo*, *-ēre* ; *relēgo*, *āre*, &c.

The rules of quantity are either *General* or *Special*. The former apply to all syllables, the latter only to some certain syllables.

GENERAL RULES.

I. A vowel before another vowel is short ; as, *Mēus*, *alius* : so *nihil* ; *h* in verse being considered only as a breathing. In like manner in English, *crēate*, *bēhave*.

Exc. 1. *I* is long in *fīo*, *fīebam*, &c. unless when followed by *r* ; as, *fīēri*, *fīērem* ; thus,

Omnia jam fient, fīēri quæ posse negabam, *Ovid.*

Exc. 2. *E* having an *i* before and after it, in the fifth declension, is long ; as, *speciēi*. So is the first syllable in *āer*, *dīus*, *ēheu*, and the penultima in *aulāi*, *terrāi*, &c. in *Pompēi*, *Cāi*, and such like words ; but we sometimes find *Pompei* in two syllables, *Horat. Od. II. 7.*

Exc. 3. The first syllable in *che* and *Diana* is common ; so likewise is the penult of genitives in *ius* ; as, *illius*, *unius*, &c. to be read long in prose. *Alius*, in the genit. is always long, as being contracted for *alius* ; *alterius*, short.

In Greek words, when a vowel comes before another, no certain rule concerning its quantity can be given.

Sometimes it is short : as, *Danæ*, *Idæa*, *Sophia*, *Symphonia*, *Simois*, *Hÿades*, *Phaon*, *Deucalion*, *Pygmalion*, *Thebais*, &c.

Often it is long ; as, *Lycæon*, *Machæon*, *Didymæon* ; *Amphion*, *Arion*, *Ixion*, *Pandion* ; *Nais*, *Lais*, *Achæia* ; *Brisëis*, *Cadmëis* ; *Latous*, & *Latois*, *Myrtous*, *Nerëus*, *Priamëus* ; *Achelöus*, *Minnöus* ; *Archeläus*, *Meneläus*, *Amphiaräus* ; *Ænëas*, *Penëus*, *Epëus*, *Acrisionëus*, *Adamantëus*, *Phœbëus*, *Gigantëus* ; *Darius*, *Basilius*, *Eugenius*, *Bacchius* ; *Cassiopëa*, *Cæsarëa*, *Chæronëa*, *Cytherëa*, *Galatëa*, *Laodicëa*, *Medëa*, *Panthëa*, *Penelopëa* ; *Clïo*, *Enÿo*, *Elegia*, *Iphigenia*, *Alexandria*, *Thalia*, *Antiochia*, *idololatriä*, *litanä*, *politä*, &c. *Læertes*, *Dëiphobus*, *Dëijanira*, *Tröes*, *heröes*, &c.

Sometimes it is common ; as, *Chorea*, *platea*, *Malea*, *Nereides*, *canopeum*, *Orion*, *Geryon*, *Eos*, *eöus*, &c. So in foreign words, *Michael*, *Israel*, *Raphael*, *Abraham*, &c.

The accusative of nouns in *eus* is usually short ; as, *Orphëa*, *Salmonia*, *Capkareä*, &c. but sometimes long ; as, *Idomenëa*, *Ilionëa*, *Virg.*
Instead

Instead of *Elegia*, *Cythera*, we find *Elegia*, *Cytheria*, Ovid. But the quantity of Greek words cannot be properly understood without the knowledge of Greek.

In English, a vowel before another is also sometimes lengthened ; as, *science*, *idea*.

II. A vowel before two consonants, or before a double consonant is long (*by position, as it is called*) ; as,

arma, *fallo*, *axis*, *gaza*, *major* ; the compounds of *jugum* excepted ; as, *bijugus*, *quadrijugus*, &c.

When the foregoing word ends in a short vowel, and the following begins with two consonants or a double one, that vowel is sometimes lengthened by position ; as

Ferte citi flammæ, date vola, scandite muros, Virg.

But this rarely occurs.

¶ A vowel before a mute and a liquid is common ;

as the middle syllable in *volucris*, *tenebræ*, thus,

Et primò similis volūcri, mox vera volūcris, Ovid.

Nox tenēbras profert, Phæbus fugat inde tenēbras, Id.

But in prose these words are pronounced short. So *peragro*, *pharetra*, *podagra*, *chiragra*, *celebris*, *latebræ*, &c.

To make this rule hold, three things are requisite. The vowel must be naturally short, the mute must go before the liquid, and be in the same syllable with it. Thus, *a* in *patris* is made common in verse, because *a* in *pater* is naturally short, or always so by custom : but *a* in *matris*, *acris*, is always long, because long by nature or custom in *mater* and *acer*. In like manner the penult in *salūbris*, *ambulācrum*, is always long ; because they are derived from *salus*, *salūtis*, and *ambulātum*. So *a* in *arte*, *abluo*, &c. is long by position, because the mute and the liquid are in different syllables.

L and *r* only are considered as liquids in Latin words ; *m* and *n* do not take place except in Greek words.

III. A contracted syllable is long ; as,

Nil, for *nikil* ; *mī*, for *mibi* ; *cōgo*, for *coāgo* ; *alius*, for *alius* ; *tibicen*, for *tibiicen* ; *īt*, for *iit* ; *sēdes*, for *si audes* ; *nōlo*, for *non volo* ; *bīgæ*, for *bijugæ*, *scīlicet*, for *scire licet*, &c.

IV. A diphthong is always long ; as,

Aurum, *Cæsar*, *Eubæa*, &c. Only *præ* in composition before a vowel is commonly short ; as, *præire*, *præustus* ; thus,
Nec

Nec totâ tamen ille prior præeunte carinâ. *Virg.*

Stipitibus duris agitur sudibusque præuſtis. *Id.*

But it is ſometimes lengthened ; as,

—————cum vacuus domino præiret Arion *Statius.*

In Engliſh we pronounce ſeſveral of the diphthongs ſhort, by ſinking the ſound of one vowel ; but then there is properly no diphthong.

SPECIAL RULES.

I. Concerning the FIRST and MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

Preterites and Supines of two Syllables.

V. Preterites of two ſyllables lengthen the former ſyllable ; as, *Vēni, vīdi, vīci.*

Except *bībi*, *ſcīdi* from *ſcindo*, *fīdi* from *ſindo*, *tūli*, *dēdi*, and *ſtēti* which are ſhortened.

VI. Supines of two ſyllables lengthen the former ſyllable ; as, *Vīſum, cāſum, mōtum.*

Except *sātum*, from *sēro* ; *cītum*, from *cīeo* ; *lītum*, from *līno* ; *sītum*, from *sīno* ; *ſtātum*, from *ſiſto* ; *ītum*, from *eo* ; *dātum*, from *do* ; *rūtum*, from the compounds of *ruo* ; *quītum*, from *queo* ; *rātus*, from *reor*.

Preterites which double the firſt ſyllable.

VII. Preterites which double the firſt ſyllable, have both the firſt ſyllables ſhort ; as,

Cēcīdi, tētīgi, pēpūli, pēpēri, dīdīci, tūtūdi : except *cēcīdi*, from *cædo* ; *pēpēdi*, from *pēdo* ; and when two conſonants intervene ; as *ſēſelli, tētendi*, &c.

INCREASE of NOUNS.

A noun is ſaid to increaſe, when it has more ſyllables in any of the oblique caſes than in the nominative ; as, *rex, rēgis*. Here *re* is called the *increaſe* or *cement*, and ſo through all the other caſes. The laſt ſyllable is never eſteemed a cement.

Some nouns have a double increaſe, that is, increaſe by more ſyllables than one ; as, *iter, itinēris*.

A noun in the plural is ſaid to increaſe, when in any caſe it has more ſyllables than the genitive ſingular ; as, *gener, generi, generōrum*.

Nouns of the first, fourth, and fifth declensions, do not increase in the singular number, unless where one vowel comes before another; as, *fractus, fructui; res, rei*; which fall under Rule I.

Third Declension.

VIII. Nouns of the third declension which increase, make *a* and *o* long; *e, i,* and *u* short; as,

Pietātis, honōris; muliēris, lapīdis, murmuris.

The chief exceptions from this rule are marked under the formation of the genitive in the third declension. But here perhaps it may be proper to be more particular.

A.

A noun in A shortens *atis* in the genitive; as, *dogma, -ātis; poema, -ātis.*

O.

O shortens *inis*, but lengthens *ēnis* and *ōnis*; as, *Cardo, -īnis; Virgo, -īnis; Anio, -ēnis; Cicero, -ōnis.* Gentle or patril nouns vary their quantity. Most of them shorten the genitive; as, *Macēdo, -ōnis; Saxo, -ōnis*: Some are long; as, *Succſſiones, Vettōnes.* *Brittones* is common.

I. C. D.

I shortens *-ītis*; as, *Hydromēli, -ītis.* *Ec* lengthens *-ecis*; as, *Halec, -ēcis.*

A noun in D shortens the crement; as, *David, -īdis.*

L.

Masculines in AL shorten *ālis*, as, *Sal, -sālis; Hannibal, -ālis; Hasdrubal, -ālis*; but neuters lengthen it; as *animal, -ālis.*

Sōlis from *sol* is long; also Hebrew words in *el*; as, *Michael, -ēlis.* Other nouns in L shorten the crement; as, *Vigil, -īlis; consul, -ūlis.*

N.

Nouns in ON vary the crement. Some lengthen it; as, *Helicon, -ēnis; Cliron, -ōnis.* Some shorten it; as, *Memnon, -ōnis; Actæon, -ōnis.*

EN shortens *inis*; as, *flumen, -inis; tibicen, -inis.* Other Nouns in N lengthen the penult. AN *ānis*; as, *Titan, -ānis*: EN; *ēnis* as, *Siren, -ēnis*: IN *īnis*; as, *dolphin, -īnis*: YN *ynis*; as, *Phorcyn, -ynis.*

R.

1. Neuters in AR lengthen *aris*; as, *calcar, -āris.* Except the following, *bacchar, -āris; jubar, -āris; nectar, -āris*: Also the adjective *par, pāris*, and its compounds, *impar, āris, dispar, -āris, &c.*

2. The following nouns in R lengthen the genitive, *Nar, nāris*, the name of a river; *fur, furis; ver, vērīs*: Also *Recimer, -ēris; Byzer, -ēris; Ser, Sērīs; Iber, -ēris*, proper names.

3. Greek nouns in TER lengthen *teris*; as, *crater, -ēris; character, -ēris.* Except *æther, -ēris.*

4. OR lengthens *oris*; as, *amor, -ōris.* Except neuter nouns; as, *marmor, -ōris; æquer, -ōris*: Greek nouns in *tor*; as, *Hætor, -ōris; Aëtor, -ēris; rhetor, -ōris*, Also *arbor, -ōris*, and *memor, -ōris.*

5. Other

5. Other nouns in R shorten the genitive ; AR *aris*, masc. ; as, *Cæsar*, -*āris* ; *Hamilcar*, -*āris* ; *lar*, *lāris*. ER *eris* of any gender ; as, *aer*, *aēris* ; *mulier*, -*ēris*, *cadāver*, -*ēris* ; *iter*, anciently *itiner*, *itinēris* ; *verbēris*, from the obsolete *verber*. UR *uris* ; as, *vultur*, -*ūris* ; *murmur*, -*ūris*. YR *yris* ; as, *Martyr*, -*ŷris*.

A S.

1. Nouns in A S, which have *atis*, lengthen the crement ; as, *pictas*, -*ātis* ; *Macēnas*, -*ātis*. Except *anas*, -*ātis*.

2. Other nouns in A S shorten the crement ; as, Greek nouns having the genitive in *ādis*, *ātis*, and *ānis* ; thus, *Pallas*, -*ādis* ; *artocreas*, *eātis* ; *Melas*, -*ānis*, the name of a river. So *vas*, *vādis* ; *mas*, *māris* : But *vas*, *vāsis*, is long.

E S.

ES shortens the crement ; as, *miles*, -*ētis* ; *Ceres*, -*ēris*, *pes*, *pēdis*.

Except *locuples*, -*ētis* ; *quies*, -*ētis* ; *mansues*, -*ētis* ; *bæres*, -*ēdis* ; *merces*, -*ēdis*.

I S.

Nouns in IS shorten the crement ; as, *lapis*, -*īdis* ; *Sanguis*, -*īnis* ; *Phyllis*, *īdis*.

Except *Glis*, *glīris* ; and Latin nouns which have *itis* ; as, *lis*, *lītis* ; *dis*, *dītis* ; *Quiris*, -*ītis* ; *Samnis*, -*ītis* : But *Charis*, a Greek noun, has *Charītis*.

The following also lengthen the crement : *Grenis*, -*īdis* ; *Psēphis*, -*īdis* ; *Nefis*, -*īdis*, proper names. And Greek nouns in *is*, which have also *in* ; as, *Salāmis*, or *in*, *Salamīnis*.

O S.

Nouns in OS lengthen the crement ; as, *napos*, -*ōtis* ; *flos*, *flōris*.

Except *Bos*, *bōvis* ; *compes*, -*ōtis* ; and *impos*, -*ētis*.

U S.

US shortens the crement ; as, *tempus*, -*ōris* ; *tripus*, -*ōdis*.

Except nouns which have *ūdis*, *ūris*, and -*ūtis* ; as, *incus*, *ūdis* ; *jus*, *jūris* ; *salus*, -*ūtis*. But *Ligus* has *Ligūris* ; the obsolete *pecus*, *pecūdis* ; and *intercus*, -*ūtis*.

The neuter of the comparative has *ōris* ; as, *melius*, -*ōris*.

Y S.

YS shortens, *ydis* or *ydos* ; as, *chlamys*, -*ŷdis*, or -*ŷdos* : and lengthens *ynis* ; as, *Trachys*, -*ŷnis*.

B S. P S. M S.

Nouns in S, with a consonant going before, shorten the penult of the genitive ; as, *calebs*, -*ībis* ; *inops*, -*ōpis*, *hiems*, *hiēmis*.

Except *Cyclops*, *ōpis* ; *scēps*, *sēpis* ; *gryps*, *grŷphōis* ; *Cercops*, *ōpis* ; *plebs*, *plēbis* ; *hydrops*, -*ōpis*.

T.

T shortens the crement ; as, *caput*, -*ītis*.

X.

1. Nouns in X, which have the genitive in *gis*, shorten the crement ;

mēt ; as, *conjug*, -ūgis ; *remex*, -īgis ; *Allobrox*, -ōgis ; *Phryx*, *Phrygis*. But *lex*, lēgis ; and *rex*, rēgis, are long ; and likewise *frūgis*.

2. EX shortens *icis* ; as, *vertex*, -īis : except *vibex*, -īis.

3. Other nouns in X lengthen the crement ; as, *pax*, pāis ; *radix*, -īis ; *vox*, vōis ; *lux*, lūis ; *Pollux*, ūis, &c.

Except *fācis*, nēcis, vīcis, prēcis, calīcis, cilīcis, pīcis, fornīcis, nīvis, *Cappadōcis*, dūcis, nūcis, crūcis, trūcis, onychis, Erȳcis, mastyx, -ȳbis, the resin of the *lentiscus*, or mastich-tree, and many others, whose quantity can only be ascertained by authority.

4. Some nouns vary the crement ; as, *Syphax*, -ācis, or -ācis ; *Sandȳx*, -īcis, or -īcis, *Bebryx*, -ȳcis, or ȳcis.

Increase of the Plural Number.

IX. Nouns of the plural number which increase, make *A*, *E*, and *O*, long ; but shorten *I*, and *U* ; as,

musārum, *rērum*, *dominōrum* ; *rēgibus*, *portibus* : except *bōbus* or *būbus*, contracted for *bōvibus*.

INCREASE OF VERBS.

A verb is said to increase, when any part has more syllables than the second person singular of the present of the indicative active ; as, *amas*, *amāmus*, where the second syllable *ma* is the *increase* or *crement* ; for the last syllable is never called by that name.

A verb often increases by several syllables ; as, *amas*, *amābāmini* ; in which case it is said to have a *first*, *second*, or *third increase*.

10. In the increase of verbs, *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long, *i* and *u*, short ; as,

Amāre, *docēre*, *amātōte* ; *legimus*, *sūmus*, *volūmus*.

The poets sometimes shorten *dēdērunt* and *stētērunt* ; and lengthen *rīmus*, and *rītis*, in the future of the subjunctive ; as—*transierītis aquas*, Ovid. All the other exceptions from this rule are marked in the formation of the verb.

The first or middle syllables of words which do not come under any of the foregoing rules, are said to be long or short by *authority* ; and their quantity can only be discovered from the usage of the poets, which is the most certain of all rules.

REMARKS on the QUANTITY of the PENULT of WORDS.

1. Patronymics in *IDES* or *ADES* usually shorten the penult ; as, *Priamides*, *Atlantiades*, &c. Unless they come from nouns in *eus* ; as, *Pelides*, *Tydides*, &c.
 2. Patronymics, and similar words, in *AIS*, *EIS*, *ITIS*, *OIS*, *OTIS*, *INE*, and *ONE*, commonly lengthen the penult ; as, *Achais*, *Ptolemais*, *Chryséis*, *Ænëis*, *Memphitis*, *Latcis*, *Icariotis*, *Nerine*, *Arisiōne*. Except *Thebais*, and *Phocais* ; and *Nercis*, which is common.
 3. Adjectives in *ACUS*, *ICUS*, *IDUS*, and *IMUS*, for the most part shorten the penult ; as, *Ægyptiācus*, *academīcus*, *lepīdus*, *legitīmus* ; also superlatives ; as, *fortissīmus*, &c. Except *opācus*, *amīcus*, *apricus*, *pudīcus*, *mendīcus*, *postīcus*, *fīdus*, *infīdus*, (but *perfīdus*, of *per* and *fīdes*, is short,) *bīmus*, *quadrīmus*, *patrīmus*, *matrīmus*, *opīmus* ; and two superlatives, *īmus*, *prīmus*.
 4. Adjectives in *ALIS*, *ANUS*, *ARUS*, *IVUS*, *ORUS*, *OSUS*, lengthen the penult ; as, *dotālis*, *urbānus*, *avārus*, *æstīvus*, *decōrus*, *arenōsus*. Except *barbārus*, *opipārus*.
 5. Verbal adjectives in *ILIS* shorten the penult ; as, *agilis*, *facilis*, &c. But derivatives from nouns usually lengthen it ; as, *anīlis*, *civīlis*, *herīlis*, &c. To these add, *exīlis*, *subtīlis* ; and names of months, *Aprīlis*, *Quīntīlis*, *Sextīlis* : Except *humīlis*, *parīlis* ; and also *simīlis*. But all adjectives in *atilis* are short ; as, *versātīlis*, *volatīlis*, *umbratīlis*, &c.
 6. Adjectives in *INUS* derived from inanimate things, as plants, stones, &c. also from adverbs of time, commonly shorten the penult ; as, *amaracīnus*, *crocīnus*, *cedrīnus*, *fagīnus*, *oleagīnus* ; *adamantīnus*, *cristallīnus*, *crastīnus*, *prīstīnus*, *perendīnus*, &c.
- Other adjectives in *INUS* are long ; as, *agnīnus*, *austīnus*, *bīnus*, *clandestīnus*, *Latīnus*, *marīnus* *supīnus*, *vespertīnus*, &c.
7. Diminutives in *OLUS*, *OLA*, *OLUM* ; and *ULUS*, *ULA*, *ULUM*, always shorten the penult ; as, *urceūlus*, *filiūla*, *muscūlum* ; *lectūlus*, *ratiuncūla*, *corcūlum*, &c.
 8. Adverbs in *TIM* lengthen the penult ; as, *oppidātīm*, *virītīm*, *tribūtīm*. Except *affatīm*, *perpētīm*, and *statīm*.
 9. Desideratives in *URSO* shorten the antepenultima, which

which in the second and third person is the penult ; as, *esurio, esuris, esurit*. But other verbs in *urio* lengthen that syllable ; as, *ligurio, liguris ; scaturio, scatūris, &c.*

PENULT OF PROPER NAMES.

The following proper names lengthen the penult. Abdēra, Abȳdus, Adōnis, Æsōpus, Ætōlus. Ahāla, Alarīcus, Alcīdes, Amȳclæ, Andronīcus, Anūbis, Archimēdes, Ariarāthes, Ariobarzānes, Aristīdes, Aristobūlus, Aristogiton, Arpūum, Artabānus ; Brachmānes, Busīris, Buthrōtus ; Cethēgus, Chalcēdon, Cleobūlus, Cyrēne, Cythēra, Curētes ; Darīci, Demonīcus, Diomēdes, Diōres, Dioscūrī ; Ebūdes, Eriphȳle, Eubūlus, Euclīdes, Euphrātes, Eumēdes, Eurīpus, Euxīnus ; Gargānus, Gætūlus, Granīcus ; Heliogabālus, Henricus ; Heraclīdes, Heraclītus. Hippōnax, Hīspānus ; Irēne ; Lacȳdas, Latōna, Leucāta, Lugdūnum, Lycōras ; Mandāne, Mausōlus, Maximīnus, Meleāger, Mēsāla, Mēsāna, Milētus ; Nasīca, Nicānor, Nicētas ; Pachȳnus, Pandōra, Pelōris, & us, Pharsālus, Phœnice, Polītes, Polyelētus, Polynīces, Priāpus ; Sarpēdon, Serāpis, Sinōpe, Stratonīce, Suffētes ; Tigrānes, Thessalonīca ; Verōna, Veronīca.

The following are short : Amāthus, Amphipōlis, Anabāsīs, Anticyra, Antigōnus, & -ne, Antilōchus, Antiōchus, Antiōpa, Antīpas, Antipāter, Antiphānes, Antiphātes, Antiphīla, Antīphon, Anȳtus, Apūlus, Areopāgus, Arimīnum, Armēnus ; Athēsis, Attālus, Attīca ; Bitūrix, Bruētēri ; Calāber, Callicrātes, Callistrātus, Candāce, Cantāber, Carneādes, Cherīlus, Chrysōstōmus, Cleombrōtus, Cleomēnes, Corȳcos, Constantinopōlis, Cratērus, Cratȳlus, Cremēra, Crustumēri, Cybēle, Cyclādes, Cyzīcus ; Dalmātæ, Damōcles, Dardānus, Dejōces, Deiotārus, Democritus, Demīpho, Didȳmus, Diogēnes, Drepanum, Dummōrix ; Empedōcles, Ephēsus, Evergētes, Eumēnes, Eurymēdon, Euripȳlus ; Fucīnus ; Geryōnes, Gyārus ; Hecȳra, Heliopōlis, Hermiōne, Herodōtus, Hesiōdus, Hesiōne, Hippocrātes, Hippotāmos, Hypāta, Hypānis ; Icārus, Icētas, Illȳris, Iphītus, Ismārus, Ithāca ; Laodīce, Laomēdon, Lampsācus, Lamȳrus, Lapīthæ, Leucetīlis, Libānus, Lipāre, v. -a, Lysimāchus, Longimānus ; Marāthon, Mānālus, Marmarīca, Massagētæ, Matrōna, Megāra, Melītus, & -ta, Metropōlis, Mutīna, Mycōnus ; Neōcles, Nerītos, Norīcum ; Omphāle ; Patāra, Pegāsus, Pharnāces, Pisistrātus, Polydāmas, Polyxēna, Pōrsēna, or Porsenna, Praxitēles, Puteōli, Pylādes, Pythagōras ; Sarmātæ, Sarsīna, Semēle, Semirāmis, Sequāni, & -a, Serīphos, Sicōris, Socrātes, Sodōma, Sotādes, Spartācus, Sporādes, Strongȳle, Stymphālus, Sybāris ; Taygētus, Telegōnus, Telemāchus, Tenēdos, Tarrāco, Theophānes, Theophīlus, Tomȳris ; Urbīcus ; Venēti, Vologēsus, Volūsus ; Xenocrātes ; Zoīlus, Zopȳrus.

The penult of several words is doubtful : thus, *Bātāvi*, Lucan. *Bātāvi*, Juv. & Mart. *Fortūitus*, Horat. *Fortuīlus*, Mart. Some make *fortuitus* of three syllables ; but it may be shortened like *gratuītus*, Stat. *Patrimus*, *matrimus*, *præstolor*, &c. are by some lengthened, and by some shortened ; but for their quantity, there is no certain authority.

II. FINAL SYLLABLES.

A.

XI. *A* in the end of a word declined by cases is short ; as, *Musă, templă, Tydeă, lampădă*.

Exc. The ablative of the first declension is long ; as, *Musă, Ænēă* ; and the vocative of Greek nouns in *as*, as, *O Ænēă, O Pallă*.

A in the end of a word not declined by cases is long ; as, *Amă, frustră, prætereă, ergă, intră*.

Exc. *Ită, quiă, ejă, posteă, pută*, (adv.) are short ; and sometimes, though more rarely, the prepositions *contra, ultra*, and the compounds of *ginta* ; as, *trigintă, &c.* *Contra* and *ultra*, when adverbs, are always long.

E.

XII. *E* in the end of a word is short ; as,

Natě, sedilě, patrě, currě, nempě, antě.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables are long ; as, *mě, tě, sě* ; except these enclitic conjunctions, *quě, vě, ně* ; and these syllabical adjections, *ptě, cě, tě* ; as, *suaptě, hujuscě, tutě* ; but these may be comprehended under the general rule, as they never stand by themselves.

Exc. 2. Nouns of the first and fifth declension are long ; as, *Calliöpě, Anchisě, fidě*. So *rě-*, and *diě*, with their compounds, *quarě, hodiě, pridě, postridiě, quotidiě* : Also Greek nouns which want the singular, *Cetě, melě, Tempě* ; and the second person singular of the imperative of the second conjugation ; as, *Docě, maně* ; but *cave, vale*, and *vide*, are sometimes short.

Exc. 3. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declension are long ; as, *placidě, pulchrě, valdě*, contracted for *validě* : To these add *fermě, ferě*, and *ohě* ; also all adverbs of the superlative degree ; as *doctissimě, fortissimě* : But *beně* and *malě* are short.

I.

XIII. *I* final is long ; as, *Dominī, patrī, docerī*.

Exc. 1. Greek vocatives are short ; as, *Alexī, Amaryllī*.

Exc. 2. The dative of Greek nouns of the third declension which increase, is common ; as *Palladi, Minoīdi*.

Mihī,

Mihi, tibi, sibi, are also common : so likewise are *ibi, nisi, ubi, quasi* ; and *cui*, when a dissyllable, which in poetry is seldom the case. *Sicubi* and *necubi* are always short.

O.

XIV. O final is common ; as, *Virgo, Amo, quando*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in o are long ; as, *o, do, sto, pro* : The dative and ablative sing. of the second declension is long : as, *librō, dominō* : Also Greek nouns, as, *Didō*, and *Athō* the genit. of *Athos*, and adverbs derived from nouns ; as, *certō, falsō, paulō*. To these add *quō, eō*, and their compounds, *quōvis, quōcunque, adeō, ideō* ; likewise, *illō, idcirco, citrō, intrō, retrō, ultrō*.

Exc. 2. The following words are short ; *Egō, sciō, cedō*, a defective verb, *homō, citō, illicō, immō, duō, ambō, modō*, with its compounds, *quomodō, dummodō, postmodō* : but some of these are also found long.

Exc. 3. The gerund in DO in Virgil is long ; in other poets it is short. *Ergō*, on account of, is long ; *ergo*, therefore, is doubtful.

U and Y.

XV. U final is long ; Y final is short ; as, *Vultū : Molj*.

B, D, L, M, R, T.

XVI. B, D, L, R, and T, in the end of a word, are short ; as,

Ab, apud, semel, precor, caput.

The following words are long, *sāl, sōl, nīl* ; *pār* and its compounds, *impar, dispar, &c.* ; *fār, lār, Nār, cūr, fūr* ; also nouns in *er* which have *ēris* in the genitive ; as, *Cratēr, vēr, Ibēr* ; likewise *aēr, athēr* : to which add Hebrew names ; as, *Jōb, Daniēl, David*.

M final anciently made the foregoing vowel short : as, *Militum* *o* *Ennius*. But by later poets, *m* in the end of a word is always cut off, when the next word begins with a vowel ; thus, *milit' o* *o* *Ennius* ; except in compound words ; as, *circūmagō, circūmee*.

C, N.

XVII. C and N, in the end of a word, are long ; as,

Ac,

Ac, sic, nōn. So Greek nouns in *n*; as, *Titān, Sirēn, Salamīn; Æneān, Anchisēn, Circēn; Lacedæmon, &c.*

The following words are short, *nēc* and *donēc*; *forſitān, in, forſān, tamēn, ān, vidēn*; likewise nouns in *en* which have *inis* in the genitive; as, *carmēn, crimēn*; together with ſeveral Greek nouns; as, *Iliōn, Pylōn, Alexīn.*

The pronoun *hic* and the verb *fac* are common.

AS, ES, OS.

XVIII. *AS, ES, and OS*, in the end of a word, are long; as, *Mās, quiēs, bonōs.*

The following words are ſhort, *anās, ēs*, from *ſum*, and *penēs*; *ōs*, having *offis* in the genitive, *compōs*, and *impōs*; alſo a great many Greek nouns of all theſe three terminations; as, *Arcās* and *Arcādās, herōās, Phrygēs, Arcadōs, Tenēdōs, Mēlōs, &c.* and Latin nouns in *es*, having the penult of the genitive increaſing ſhort; as, *Alēs, hebēs, obsēs.* But *Cerēs, pariēs, ariēs, abiēs*, and *pēs* with its compounds, are long.

IS, US, ŶS.

XIX. *IS, US, and ŶS*, in the end of a word, are ſhort; as,

Turrīs, legīs, legīmūs, annūs, Capŷs.

Exc. 1. Plural caſes in *is* and *us* are long; as, *Pennīs, librīs, nobīs, omnīs*, for *omnes, fructūs, manūs*: alſo the genitive ſingular of the fourth declenſion; as, *portūs*. But *bus* in the dat. and abl. plur. is ſhort; as, *floribūs, fructibūs, rebūs.*

Exc. 2. Nouns in *is* are long, which have the genitive in *itis, inis*, or *entis*; as, *līs, Samnīs, Salamīs, Simoīs*: To theſe add the adverbs *gratīs* and *forīs*; the noun *glīs*, and *vīs*, whether it be a noun or a verb; alſo *is* in the ſecond perſon ſingular, when the plural has *itis*; as, *audīs, abīs, poſſīs*. *Ris* in the future of the ſubjunctive is common.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables in *us* are long; as, *grus, sūs*: alſo nouns which in the genitive have *ūris, ūdis, ūtis, un- tis*, or *ōdis*; as, *tellūs, incūs, virtūs, amāthūs, tripūs*. To theſe add the genitive of Greek nouns of the third

Z

declenſion;

declension ; as, *Clīds*, *Sapphūs*, *Mantūs* ; also nouns which have *u* in the vocative ; as, *Panthūs*.

Exc. 4. *Tethys* is sometimes long, and nouns in *ys*, which have likewise *yn* in the nominative ; as, *Phorcys*, *Trachys*.

¶ The last syllable of every verse is common ;

Or, as some think, necessarily long on account of the pause or suspension of the voice, which usually follows it in pronunciation.

The QUANTITY of DERIVATIVE and COMPOUND Words.

I. DERIVATIVES.

XX. Derivatives follow the quantity of their primitives ; as,

<i>āmicus</i> , from	<i>āmo</i> .	<i>Decōro</i> , from	<i>decus</i> , -ōris.
<i>Auctiōnor</i> ,	<i>auctio</i> , -ōnis.	<i>Exūlo</i> ,	<i>exul</i> , -ūlis.
<i>Auctōro</i> ,	<i>auctor</i> , -ōris.	<i>Pāvidus</i> ,	<i>pāveo</i> .
<i>Audītor</i> ,	<i>audītum</i> .	<i>Quirīto</i> ,	<i>Quiris</i> , -ītis.
<i>Auspīcor</i> ,	<i>auspex</i> , īcis.	<i>Radīcītus</i> ,	<i>radix</i> , -īcis.
<i>Caupōnor</i> ,	<i>caupo</i> , -ōnis.	<i>Sospīto</i> ,	<i>sospes</i> , -ītis.
<i>Compētītor</i> ,	<i>compētītum</i> .	<i>Nātura</i> ,	<i>nātus</i> .
<i>Cornīcor</i> ,	<i>cornix</i> , -īcis.	<i>Māternus</i> ,	<i>māter</i> .
<i>Custōdio</i> ,	<i>custos</i> , -ōdis.	<i>Lēgebam</i> , &c.	<i>lēgo</i> .
<i>Decōrus</i> ,	<i>decor</i> , -ōris.	<i>Lēgeram</i> , &c.	<i>lēgi</i> .

EXCEPTIONS.

1. Long from short.

<i>Dēni</i> , from <i>dēcem</i> .	<i>Suspīcio</i> , from <i>suspīcor</i> .	<i>Mōbīlis</i> , from <i>mōveo</i> .
<i>Fōmes</i> , <i>fōveo</i> .	<i>Sēdes</i> , <i>sēdeo</i> .	<i>Hūmor</i> , <i>hūmus</i> .
<i>Hūmanus</i> , <i>hōmo</i> .	<i>Sēcīus</i> , <i>sēcus</i> .	<i>Jūmentum</i> , <i>jūvo</i> .
<i>Rēgula</i> , <i>rēgo</i> .	<i>Pēnuria</i> , <i>pēnus</i> .	<i>Vox</i> , <i>vōcis</i> , <i>vōco</i> , &c.

2. Short from long.

<i>Arena</i> and <i>ārista</i> , from <i>āreo</i> .	<i>Lūcerna</i> , from	<i>lūceo</i> .
<i>Nōta</i> , and <i>nōto</i> ,	<i>nōtus</i> .	<i>Dux</i> , -ūcis,
<i>Vādum</i> ,	<i>vādo</i> .	<i>Stābilis</i> ,
<i>Fīdes</i> ,	<i>fīdo</i> .	<i>Dītio</i> ,
<i>Sōpor</i> ,	<i>sōpio</i> .	<i>Quāfillus</i> ,
		<i>quālus</i> . &c.

2. COMPOUNDS.

XXI. Compounds follow the quantity of the simple words which compose them ; as,

Dēdūco,

Dēdūco, of *dē* and *dūco*. So, *prōf ęro*, *antęfęro*, *consōlor*, *dēnōto*, *dępecūlor*, *deprāvo*, *despęro*, *despūmo*, *desquāmo*, *enōdo*, *ęrūdio*, *exūdo*, *exāro*, *expāveo*, *incęro*, *inhūmo*, *investigo*, *pragrāvo*, *prānāto*, *ręgęlo*, *appāro*, *appāreo*, *concāvus*, *pragrāvis*, *dęsōlo*, *suffōco* & *suffōco*, *diffīdit* from *diffīdo*, and *diffīdit* from *diffīdo*, *indīco* and *indīco*, *permānet* from *permāneo*, and *permānet* from *permāno*, *effōdit* in the present, and *effōdit* in the perfect; so *exēdit* and *exēdit*; *devēnit* and *devēnit*; *devēnimus* and *devēnimus*; *reperīmus* and *reperīmus*; *effūgit* and *effūgit*, &c.

The change of a vowel or diphthong in the compound does not alter the quantity; as, *incīdo* from *in* and *cādo*; *incīdo*, from *in* and *cādo*, *suffōco*, from *sub* and *faux*, *faucis*. Unless the letter following make it fall under some general rule; as, *ādmitto*, *pęrcello*, *dęosculor*, *prōhibeo*.

Exc. 1. *Agnītum*, *cognītum*, *dęjęro*, *pęjęro*, *innūba*, *prēnūba*, *maledīcus*, *veridīcus*, *nihilum*, *semisōpītus*; from *nōtus*, *jūro*, *nūbo*, *dīco*, *hīlum*, and *sōpio*: *ambītus*, a participle from *ambio*, is long; but the substantives *ambītus* and *ambītio* are short. *Connubium* has the second syllable common.

Exc. 2. The preposition *PRO* is short in the following words: *prōfundus*, *prōfugio*, *prōfugus*, *prōnępos*, *prōneptis*, *prōfestus*, *prōfari*, *prōfiteor*, *prōfanus*, *prōfecto*, *prēcella*, *prōtervus*, and *prōpāgo*, a lineage; *pro* in *prōpāgo*, a vine-stock or shoot, is long. *Pro* in the following words is doubtful: *propago*, to propagate; *propīno*, *profundo*, *propello*, *propulso*, *procūro*, and *Proserpīna*.

Exc. 3. The inseparable prepositions *SE* and *DI* are long; as, *sępāro*, *dīvello*: except *dīrimo*, *dīsertus*. *Re* is short; as, *ręmitto*, *ręf ęro*: except in the impersonal verb *ręsert*, compounded of *res* and *fero*.

Exc. 4. *E*, *I*, *O*, in the end of the former compounding word are usually shortened; as, *tręcenti*, *nęsas*, *nęque*, *patęfacio*, &c. *Capricornus*, *omnipotens*, *agricōla*, *signīfico*, *bīformis*, *aliger*, *Trīvia*, *tubīcen*, &c. *duōdę*, *cim*, *hōdie*, *sacrōsanctus*, &c. But from each of these there are many exceptions. Thus *i* is long when it is varied by cases; as, *quīdam*, *quīvis*, *tantīdem*, *cīdem*, &c. And when the compounding words may be taken separately;

rately ; as, *ludimagister*, *lucrificio*, *siquis*, &c. *Idem* in the masc. is long, in the neuter short ; also *ubique*, *ibidem*. But in *ubivis* and *ubicunque*, the *i* is doubtful.

ACCENT.

Accent is the tone of the voice with which a syllable is pronounced.

In every word of two or more syllables, one syllable is founded higher than the rest, to prevent monotony, or an uniformity of sound, which is disagreeable to the ear.

When accent is considered with respect to the sense, or when a particular stress is laid upon any word, on account of the meaning, it is called *Emphasis*.

There are three accents, distinguished by their different sounds ; *acute*, *grave*, and *circumflex*.

1. The *acute* or *sharp* accent raises the voice in pronunciation, and is thus marked ['] ; as, *prófero*, *prófer*.

2. The *grave* or *base* accent depresses the voice, or keeps it in its natural tone ; and is thus marked [`] as *doctè*, This accent properly belongs to all syllables which have no other.

3. The *circumflex* accent first raises, and then sinks the voice in some degree on the same syllable ; and is therefore placed only upon long syllables. When written, it has this mark, made up of the two former [^] ; as *amāre*.

The accents are hardly ever marked in English books, except in dictionaries, grammars, spelling-books, or the like, where the acute accent only is used

The accents are likewise seldom marked in Latin books, unless for the sake of distinction ; as in these adverbs, *aliquò*, *continuo*, *doctè*, *unà*, &c. to distinguish them from certain cases of adjectives, which are spelt in the same way. So *poetá*, *gloriá*, in the ablative : *fructus*, *tumultus*, in the genitive : *nostrum*, *vestrum*, the genitive of *nos* and *vos* ; *ergá*, on account of ; *occidit*, he slew ; *Pompiliá*, for *Pompilii* ; *amáris*, for *amaveris*, &c.

VERSE.

VERSE.

A VERSE is a certain number of long and short syllables disposed according to rule.

It is so called, because when the number of syllables requisite is completed, we always *turn* back to the beginning of a new line.

The parts into which we divide a verse, to see if it have its just number of syllables, are called *Feet*.

A verse is divided into different feet, rather to ascertain its measure or number of syllables, than to regulate its pronunciation.

F E E T.

Poetic feet are either of two, three, or four syllables. When a single syllable is taken by itself, it is called a *Cæsura*, which is commonly a long syllable.

1. Feet of two syllables.

Spondæus, consists of two long ; as, *ōmnēs*.

Pyrrhichius, two short ; as, *dēūs*.

Iambus, a short and a long ; as, *āmāns*.

Trochæus, a long and a short ; as, *servūs*.

2. Feet of three syllables.

Dactylus, a long and two short ; as, *scribēre*.

Anapæstus, two short and a long ; as, *piētās*.

Amphimæcer, a long, a short, and a long ; as, *chāritās*.

Tribrachys, three short ; as, *dōminūs*.

The following are not so much used.

Molossus, *dēlēctānt*.

Amphibrachys, *lōnōrē*.

Bacchius, *dōlōrēs*.

Antibacchius, *pēllūntūr*.

3. Feet of four syllables.

Proceleusmaticus, *hōmīnībūs*.

Dispondeus, *orātōrēs*.

Dijambus, *āmānītās*.

Choriambus, *pōntificēs*.

Ditrochæus, *Cāntilēnā*.

Antispæstus, *ālēxāndēr*.

Ionius minor, *prōpērābānt*.

Ionius major, *cālārībūs*.

Pæon primus, *tēmpōrībūs*.

Pæon secundus, *pōtētīā*.

Pæon tertius, *ānīmātūs*.

Pæon quartus, *cēlērītās*.

Epitritus primus, *vōlūptātēs*.

Epitritus secundus, *panītētēs*.

Epitritus tertius, *dīscōrdiās*.

Epitritus quartus, *fortūnatūs*.

S C A N N I N G.

The measuring of verse, or the resolving of it into the several feet of which it is composed, is called *Scanning*.

When a verse has just the number of feet requisite, it is called *Versus Acatalectic* or *Acatalectic*, an *Acatalectic* verse: If a syllable be wanting, it is called *Catalectic*; if there be a syllable too much, *Hypercatalectic*, or *Hypermeter*.

The ascertaining whether the verse be complete, defective, or redundant, is called *Deposito* or *Clausula*.

D I F F E R E N T K I N D S O F V E R S E.

I. HEXAMETER.

The Hexameter or heroic verse consists of six feet. Of these the fifth is a dactyle, and the sixth a spondee; all the rest may be either dactyles or spondees; as,

Lūdērē | quæ vël- | lēm cālă- | mō pēr- | mīsīt ā- | grēstī. *Virg.*
Infān- | dūm Rē- | gīnă, jū- | bēs rēnō- | vārē dō- | lōrēm. *Id.*

A regular Hexameter line cannot have more than seventeen syllables, or fewer than thirteen.

Sometimes a spondee is found in the fifth place, whence the verse is called *Spondaic*; as,

Cāră Dē- | ūm sōbō- | lēs mă- | gnūm Jōvis | īucrē- | mēntūm. *Virg.*

This verse is used, when any thing grave, slow, large, sad, or the like, is expressed. It commonly has a dactyle in the fourth place, and a word of four syllables in the end.

Sometimes there remains a superfluous syllable at the end. But this syllable must either terminate in a vowel, or in the consonant *m*, with a vowel before it; so as to be joined with the following verse, which in the present case must always begin with a vowel; as,

Omniă | Mērcūrī- | ō simī- | līs vō- | cēmquē cō- | lōrēmque
Et flavos crines ——— *Virg.*

Those Hexameter verses sound best, which have dactyles and spondees alternately; as,

Ludere quæ vellem calamo permisit agresti. *Virg.*
Pinguis et ingrata premeretur caseus urbi. *Id.*

Or which have more dactyles than spondees; as,

Tityre in patula recubans sub tegmine fagi.

It is esteemed a great beauty in an Hexameter verse, when by the use of dactyles and spondees, the sound is adapted to the sense ; as,

Quadrupedante putrem sonitu quatit ungula campum. *Virg.*

Illi inter sese magna vi brachia tollunt. *Id.*

Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum.

Accipiunt inimicum imbrem, rimisque fatiscunt. *Id.*

But what deserves particular attention in scanning Hexameter verse is the CÆSURA.

Cæsura is, when after a foot is completed, there remains a syllable at the end of a word to begin a new foot ; as,

At rē-gīnă gră-vī jām-dudum, &c.

The *Cæsura* is variously named according to the different parts of the hexameter verse in which it is found. When it comes after the first foot, or falls on the third half-foot, it is called by a Greek name, *Triemimēris* : When on the fifth half foot, or the syllable after the second foot, it is called *Penthemimēris* : When it happens on the first syllable of the fourth foot, or the seventh half-foot, it is called *Hepththemimēris* : and when on the ninth half-foot, or the first syllable of the fifth foot, it is called *Ennēthemimēris*.

All these different species of the *Cæsura* sometimes occur in the same verse ; as,

Illē lă-tūs nīvē-ūm mōl-lī fūl-tūs hŷă-cīnthō. *Virg.*

But the most common and beautiful *Cæsura* is the penthemim ; on which some lay a particular accent or stress of the voice in reading an hexameter verse thus composed, whence they call it the *Cæsural pause* ; as,

Tityre dum rede- O, brevis est via, pasce capellas. *Virg.*

When the *Cæsura* falls on a syllable naturally short, it renders it long ; as, the last syllable of *fultus* in the foregoing example.

The chief melody of an hexameter verse in a great measure depends on the proper disposition of the *Cæsura*. Without this a line consisting of the number of feet requisite will be little else than mere prose ; as,

Rōmæ mœniă tērrūt īmpīgēr Hānnibāl ārmīs. *Ennius.*

The

The ancient Romans in pronouncing verse paid a particular attention to its melody. They not only observed the quantity and accent of the several syllables, but also the different stops and pauses which the particular turn of the verse required. In modern times we do not fully perceive the melody of Latin verse, because we have now lost the just pronunciation of that language, the people of every country pronouncing it in a manner similar to their own. In reading Latin verse, therefore, we are directed by the same rules which take place with respect to English verse.

The tone of the voice ought to be chiefly regulated by sense. All the words should be pronounced fully; and the cadence of the verse ought only to be observed, so far as it corresponds with the natural expression of the words. At the end of each line there should be no fall of the voice, unless the sense requires it; but a small pause, half of that which we usually make at a comma.

2. PENTAMETER.

The Pentameter verse consists of five feet. Of these the two first are either dactyles or spondees; the third always a spondee; and the fourth and fifth, an anapæstus; as,

Nātū- | ræ sēquī- | tūr sē- | mīnā quī- | quē sūæ. *Propert.*
Cārmīnī- | būs vī- | vēs tēm- | pūs īn ōm- | nē mēis. *Ovid.*

But this verse is more properly divided into two hemisticks or halves; the former of which consists of two feet, either dactyles or spondees, and a Cæsura; the latter, always of two dactyles and another Cæsura: thus,

Nātū- | ræ sēquī- | tūr | sēmīnā | quīsquē sū- | æ.
Cārmīnī- | būs vī- | vēs | tēmpūs īn | ōmnē mē- | īs.

The Pentameter usually ends with a dissyllable, but sometimes also with a polysyllable.

3. ASCLEPIADEAN.

The Asclepiadæan verse consists of four feet; namely, a spondee, twice a choriambus, and a pyrrhichius; as,

Mæcē- | nās ātāvīs | ēdītē rē | gībūs. *Hor.*

But this verse may be more properly measured thus; In the first place, a spondee; in the second, a dactyle; then a cæsura; and after that two dactyles; thus,

Mæce- | nas ata- | vis | edite | regibus.

4. GLYC-

4. GLYCONIAN.

The Glyconian verse has three feet, a spondee, choriambus, and Pyrrhichius ; as,

Nāvīs | quæ tibi crē- | dītūm. *Horat.*

Or it may be divided into a spondee and two dactyles ; thus,

Navis | quæ tibi | creditum.

5. SAPPHIC and ADONIAN.

The Sapphic verse has five feet, viz. a trochee, spondee, dactyle, and two trochees ; thus,

Intē- | gēr vī- | tæ, scēlē- | rīsquē | pūrūs. *Horat.*

An Adonian verse consists only of a dactyle and spondee ; as,

Jūpītēr | ūrgēt. *Horat.*

6. PHERECRATIAN.

The Pherecratian verse consists of three feet, a spondee, dactyle, and spondee ; thus,

Nīgrīs | æquōrā | vēntīs. *Horat.*

7. PHALEUCIAN.

The Phaleucian verse consists of five feet ; namely, a spondee, a dactyle, and three trochees ; as,

Sūmmām | nēc mētū- | ās dī- | ēm, nēc | ōptēs. *Martial.*

8. The GREATER ALCAIC.

The greater Alcaic, called likewise *Dactylic*, consists of four feet, a spondee or iambus, iambus and cæsura, then two dactyles ; as,

Vīrtūs | rēpūl- | fæ | nēfcīā | sōrdīdæ. *Horat.*

9. ARCHILOCHIAN.

The Archilochian iambic verse consists of four feet. In the first and third place, it has either a spondee or iambus ; in the second and fourth, always an iambus ; and in the end, a Cæsura ; as,

Nēc sū- | mīt, aūt | pōnīt | sēcū- | rēs. *Horat.*

10. The

10. *The* LESSER ALCAIC.

The lesser Dactylic Alcaic consists of four feet, namely, two dactyles and two trochees ; as,

Arbitrī- | ō pōpū- | lārīs | aūræ. *Horat.*

Of the above kinds of verse, the first two take their names from the number of feet of which they consist. All the rest derive their names from those by whom they were either first invented, or frequently used.

There are several other kinds of verse, which are named from the feet by which they are most commonly measured ; such as the dactylic, trochaic, anapestic, and iambic. The last of these is most frequently used.

11. IAMBIC.

Of Iambic verse there are two kinds. The one consists of four feet, and is called by a Greek name *Dimeter* ; the other consists of six feet, and is called *Trimeter*. The reason of these names is, that among the Greeks two feet were considered only as one measure in iambic verse ; whereas the Latins measured it by single feet, and therefore called the dimeter *quaternarius*, and the trimeter *senarius*. Originally this kind of verse was purely iambic, *i. e.* admitted of no other feet but the iambus ; thus,

Dimeter, Inār- | sīt æ- | ſūō- | sūīs. *Horat.*

Trimeter, Sūīs | ēt ī- | psā Rō- | mā vī- | ribūs | rūīt. *Id.*

But afterwards, both for the sake of ease and variety, different feet were admitted into the uneven or odd places ; that is, in the first, third, and fifth places, instead of an iambus, they used a spondee, a dactyle, or an anapæstus, and sometimes a tribrachys. We also find a tribrachys in the even places, *i. e.* in the second place, and in the fourth ; for the last foot must always be an iambus ; thus,

Dimeter, Cānīdī- | ā trā- | ctāvīt | dāpēs. *Horat.*

Vīdē- | rē prōpē- | rāntēs | dōmūm. *Id.*

Trimeter, Quōquō | scēlē- | ſū rūī- | tīs aūt | cūr dēx- | tērīs. *Id.*

Pāvīdūm- | quē lēpō- | r' aūt ād | vēnām | lāquēō | grūēm. *Id.*

Alītī- | būs āt- | quē cānī- | būs hōmī- | cīd' Hē-ctōrēm.

In comic writers we sometimes find an iambic verse consisting of eight feet, therefore called *Tetrameter* or *Octonarius*.

FIGURES in SCANNING.

The several changes made upon words to adapt them to the verse, are called *Figures in Scanning*. The chief of these are the *Synalæpha*, *Ecthlipsis*, *Synæresis*, *Diæresis*; *Systole*, and *Diastole*.

1. *SYNALOEPHA* is the cutting off of a vowel or diphthong, when the next word begins with a vowel; as,

Conticuere omnes, intentique ora tenebant. *Virg.*

to be scanned thus,

Cōtīcū- | ēr' ōm- | nēs īn- | tēntī- | qu' ōrā tē- | nēbānt.

The *Synalæpha*, is sometimes neglected; and seldom takes place in the interjections, *ô*, *heu*, *ah*, *proh*, *væ*, *vah*, *hei*; as,

O pater, ô hominum, Divûmque æterna potestas. *Virg.*

Long vowels and diphthongs, when not cut off, are sometimes shortened; as,

Insulæ Ionio in magno, quas dira Celæno. *Virg.*

Credimus? an, qui amant, ipsi sibi somnia fingunt. *Id.*

Victor apud rapidum Simoënta sub Ilio alto.

Ter sunt conati imponere Pelio Ossam.

Glauco et Panopeæ, et Inoo Melicertæ.

2. *ECTHLIPSIS* is, when *m* is cut off, with the vowel before it in the end of a word, because the following word begins with a vowel; as,

O curas hominum! O quantum est in rebus inane! *Perf.*
thus,

O cū- | rās hōmī- | n', ō quān- | t' ēst īn | rēbūs īn- | ānē.

Sometimes the *Synalæpha* and *Ecthlipsis* are found at the end of the verse; as,

Sternitur infelix alieno vulnere, cælumque

Adspicit, et dulces moriens reminiscitur Argos. *Virg.*

Jamque iter emensi, turres ac tecta Latinorum

Ardua cernebant juvenes, murosque subibant. *Id.*

These verses are called *Hypermetri*, because a syllable remains to be carried to the beginning of the next line; thus, *qu' Adspicit*; *r' Ardua*.

3. *SYNÆRESIS* is the contraction of two syllables into one, which is likewise called *Crasis*; as, *Phæthor* for *Phæthôn*.

So *ëi* in *Thesēi*, *Orphei*, *deinde*, *Pompei* ; *üi* in *huic*, *cui* ; *öi*, in *proinde* ; *ëä*, in *aureä* ; thus,

Notus amor Phædræ, nota est injuria Thesēi. *Ovid.*

Proinde tona eloquio, solitum tibi. *Virg.*

Filius huic contrâ, torquet qui sidera mundi. *Id.*

Aureâ percussum virgâ, versumque venenis. *Id.*

So in *antehac*, *eadem*, *alvearia*, *dēst*, *dēerit*, *vehemens*, *anteit*, *eodem*, *alveo*, *graveolentis*, *omnia*, *semianimis*, *semihomo*, *fluviorum*, *totius*, *promontorium*, &c. as,

Unâ eâdemque viâ sanguisque animusque ferentur. *Virg.*

Seu lento fuerint alvearia vimine texta. *Id.*

Villis amicorum est annona, bonis ubi quid dēst. *Hor.*

Divitis uber agri, Troiæque opulentiâ dēerit. *Virg.*

Vehemens et liquidus puroque simillimus amni. *Hor.*

Tē semper anteit dira necessitas. *Alcaic. Hor.*

Uno eodemque igni, sic nostro Daphnis amore. *Virg.*

Cum refluit campis, & jam se condidit alveo. *Id.*

Inde ubi venēre ad fauces graveolentis Averni. *Id.*

Bis patriæ cecidere manus : quin protinus omnia. *Id.*

Cædit semianimis Rutulorum calcibus arva. *Id.*

Semiheminis Caci facies quam dira tenebat. *Id.*

Fluviorum rex Eridanus, camposque per omnes. *Id.*

Magnanimosque duces, totiusque ex ordine gentis. *Id.*

Inde legit Capreas, promontoriumque Minervæ. *Ovid.*

To this figure may be referred the changing of *i* and *u* into *j* and *v*, or pronouncing them in the same syllable with the following vowel ; as in *genva*, *tēvis* ; *arjetat*, *tēvia*, *abjete*, *pitvita* ; *parjetibus*, *Nasidjenus* ; for *genua*, *tenuis*, &c. as,

Propterea qui corpus aquæ naturaque tēvis. *Lucr.*

Genvâ labant, gelido concrevit frigore sanguis. *Virg.*

Arjetat in portas & duros objice postes. *Id.*

Velleraque ut foliis depectant tēvia Seres. *Id.*

Ædificant, fectâque intexunt abjete costas. *Id.*

Præcipuè fanus, nisi cum pitvitâ molesta est. *Hor.*

Parjetibusque premunt arctis, & quatuor addunt. *Virg.*

Ut Nasidjeni juvit te cœna beati. *Hor.*

4. DIÆRESIS divides one syllable into two ; as, *aulâi*, for *aulæ* ; *Tröia*, for *Trojæ* ; *Persëus*, for *Perseus* ; *milius*, for *milvus* ; *solüit*, for *solvit* ; *volüit*, for *volvit* ; *aquæ*, *süetus*, *süasit*, *süevos*, *relangüit*, *reliquias*, for *aqua*, *suetus*, &c. as,

Aulai in medio libabant pocula Bacchi. *Virg.*
 Stamina non ulli, dissoluenda Deo. *Pentam. Tibullus.*
 Debuerant fusos evoluisse suos. *Id. Ovid.*
 Quæ calidum faciunt aquæ tactum atque vaporem. *Lucr.*
 Cum mihi non tantum furesque feræque suctæ. *Horat.*
 Atque alios alii inrident, Veneremque suadent. *Lucr.*
 Fundat ab extremo flavos Aquilone Suevos. *Lucan.*
 Imposito fratri moribunda relangüit ore. *Ovid.*
 Reliquas tamen esse vias in mente patenteis. *Lucr.*

5. SYSTÖLE is when a long syllable is made short ; as the penult in *tulerunt* ; thus,

Matri longa decem tulerunt, fastidia menses. *Virg.*

6. DIASTÖLE is when a syllable usually short is made long ; as the last syllable in *amor*, in the following verse ;

Confidant, si tantus amor, et mœnia condant. *Virg.*

To these may be subjoined the *Figures of diction*, as they are called, which are chiefly used by the poets, though some of them likewise frequently occur in prose.

1. When a letter or syllable is added to the beginning of a word, it is called PROSTHĒSIS ; as, *gnavus*, for *navus* ; *tetuli*, for *tuli*. When a letter or syllable is interposed in the middle of a word, it is called EPENTHĒSIS ; as, *relligio*, for *religio* ; *induperator*, for *imperator*. When a letter or syllable is added to the end, it is called PARAGÖGE ; as, *dicier* for *dici*.

2. If a letter or syllable be taken from the beginning of a word, it is called APHÆRĒSIS ; as, *natus*, for *gnatus* ; *tenderant*, for *tetenderant*. If from the middle of a word, it is called SYNCÖPE ; as, *dixti*, for *dixisti* ; *deum*, for *deorum* : If from the end, APOCÖPE ; as, *viden'*, for *videsne* ; *Antōnī*, for *Antonii*.

3. When a letter or syllable is transposed, it is called METATHĒSIS ; as, *pistris*, for *pristis* ; *Lybia*, for *Libya*. When one letter is put for another, it is called ANTITHĒSIS ; as, *faciundum*, for *faciendum* ; *olli*, for *illi* ; *vultis*, for *vultis*.

Different kinds of POEMS.

Any work composed in verse is called a *Poem*, (*Poema* or *Carmen*.)

Poems are called by various names, from their subject, their form, the manner of treating the subject, and their style.

1. A poem on the celebration of a marriage is called an EPITHALAMIUM ; on a mournful subject, an ELEGY or LAMENTATION ; in praise

praise of the Supreme Being, a *HYMN*; in praise of any person or thing, a *PANEGYRIC* or *ENCOMIUM*; on the vices of any one, a *SATIRE* or *INVECTIVE*; a poem to be inscribed on a tomb, an *EPITAPH*, &c.

2. A short poem adapted to the lyre or harp, is called an *ODE*, whence such compositions are called *Lyric poems*: A poem in the form of a letter is called an *EPISTLE*; a short witty poem, playing on the fancies or conceits which arise from any subject, is called an *EPIGRAM*; as those of Catullus and Martial. A sharp, unexpected, lively turn of wit in the end of an epigram, is called its *Point*. A poem expressing the moral of any device or picture, is called an *EMBLEM*. A poem containing an obscure question to be explained, is called an *ÆNIGMA* or *RIDDLE*.

When a character is described so that the first letters of each verse, and sometimes the middle and final letters express the name of the person or thing described, it is called an *ACROSTIC*; as the following on our Saviour:

I nter cuncta micans I gniti sidera cæl I,
E xpellit tenebras E toto Phabus ut orb E;
S ic cætas removet JESVS caliginis umbra S,
V ivificansque simul V ero præcordia mot V
S olem justitiæ S ese probat esse beati S.

3. From the manner of treating a subject, a poem is either *Exegetic*, *Dramatic*, or *Mixt*.

The *Exegetic*, where the poet always speaks himself, is of three kinds; *Historical*, *Didactic*, or *Instructive*, (as the *Satire* or *Epistle*); and *Descriptive*.

Of the *Dramatic*, the chief kinds are *COMEDY*, representing the actions of ordinary life, generally with a happy issue; and *TRAGEDY*, representing the actions and distresses of illustrious personages, commonly with an unhappy issue. To which may be added *Pastoral poems* or *BUCOLICS*, representing the actions and conversations of shepherds; as most of the eclogues of Virgil.

The *Mixt* kind is where the poet sometimes speaks in his own person, and sometimes makes other characters to speak. Of this kind is chiefly the *EPIC* or *HEROIC* poem, which treats of some one great transaction of some great illustrious person, with its various circumstances; as the wrath of Achilles in the *Iliad* of Homer; the settlement of Æneas in Italy in the *Æneid* of Virgil; the fall of man in the *Paradise Lost* of Milton, &c.

4. The style of poetry, as of prose, is of three kinds, the simple, ornate, and sublime.

COMBINATION OF VERSES in poems.

In long poems there is commonly but one kind of verse used. Thus Virgil, Lucretius, Horace in his *Satires* and *Epistles*, Ovid in his *Metamorphoses*, Lucan, Silius Ital-
icus,

icus, Valerius Flaccus, Juvenal, &c. always use Hexameter verse : Plautus, Terence, and other writers of Comedy, generally use the Iambic, and sometimes the Trochaic. It is chiefly in shorter poems, particularly those which are called Lyric poems, as the odes of Horace and the Psalms of Buchanan, that various kinds of verse are combined.

A poem which has only one kind of verse, is called by a Greek name, MONOCOLON, sc. *poema* v. *carmen* ; or MONOCŌLOS, sc. *ode* ; that which has two kinds, DICOLON ; and that which has three kinds of verse TRICOLON.

If the same sort of verse return after the second line, it is called DICOLON DISTRŌPHON ; as when a single Pentameter is alternately placed after an HEXAMETER, which is named *Elegiac verse*, (*carmen Elegiācum*,) because it was first applied to mournful subjects ; thus,

Flebilis indignos, Elegia, solve capillos ;
Ah ! nimis ex vero nunc tibi nomen erit. *Ovid.*

This kind of verse is used by Ovid in all his other works except the Metamorphoses ; and also for the most part by Tibullus, Propertius, &c.

When a poem consists of two kinds of verse, and after three lines returns to the first, it is called *Dicolon Tristrophon* ; when after four lines, *Dicolon Tetrastrrophon* ; as,

Auream quisquis mediocritatem
Diligit, tutus caret obsoleti
Sordibus tecti ; caret invidendā
Sobrius aulā. *Horat.*

When a poem consists of three kinds of verse, and after three lines always returns to the first, it is called *Tricolon Tristrophon* ; but if it returns after four lines, it is called *Tricolon Tetrastrrophon* ; as when after two greater dactylic alcaic verses are subjoined an archilochian iambic and a lesser dactylic alcaic, which is named *Carmen Horatianum*, or Horatian verse, because it is frequently used by Horace ; thus,

Virtus recludens immeritis mori
Cælum, negatā tentat iter viā ;
Cætusque vulgares, et udam
Spernit humum fugiente pennā.

Any

Any one of these parts of a poem, in which the different kinds of verse are comprehended, when taken by itself, is called a *Sirophe*, *Stanza*, or *Staff*.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERSE in HORACE and BUCHANAN.

I. ODES and PSALMS of one kind of Verse.

1. *Asclepiadēan*, See N° 3. page 270. Hor. I. 1. IV. 8. III. 30.—Buch. Pf. 28, 40, 80.

2. *Choriambic Alcaic Pentameter*, consisting of a spondee, three choriambuses, and a pyrrhichius or iambus : Hor. I. 11, 18. IV. 10.

3. *Iambic trimeter*, N° 11.—Hor. Epod. 17.—Buch. Pf. 25, 94, 106.

4. *Hexameter*, N° 1. Hor. Satires and Epistles.—Buch. Pf. 1, 18, 45, 78, 85, 89, 104, 107, 132, 135.

5. *Iambic Dimeter*, N° 12. — Buch. Pf. 13, 31, 37, 47, 52, 54, 59, 86, 96, 98, 117, 148, 149, 150.

6. *The Greater Dactylic Alcaic*, N° 8.—Buch. Pf. 26, 29, 32, 49, 61, 71, 73, 143.

7. *Trochaic*, consisting of seven trochees and a syllable ; admitting also a tribrachys in the uneven places, i. e. in the first, third, fifth, and seventh foot ; and in the even places, a tribrachys, spondee, dactyl, and anapestus.—Buch. Pf. 105, 119, 124, 129.

8. *Anapestic*, consisting of four anapestuses, admitting also a spondee or dactyl ; and in the last place, sometimes a tribrachys, amphimacer, or trochee.—Pf. 113.

9. *Anacreontic Iambic*, consisting of three iambuses and a syllable ; in the first foot it has sometimes a spondee or anapestus, and also a tribrachys.—Pf. 131.

II. ODES and PSALMS of two kinds of verse following one another alternately.

1. *Glyconian* and *Asclepiadēan*, N° 4. and 3.—Hor. I. 3. 13, 19, 36. III. 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28. IV. 1, 3.—Buch. Pf. 14, 35, 43.

2. Every first line, (*Dactylico-Trochaic*), consisting of the first four feet of an hexameter verse, then three trochees or a spondee for the last ; every second verse (*Iambic Archilochian*) consisting of an iambus or spondaeus, an iambus, a cæfura, and then three trochees.—Hor. I. 4.

3. The

3. The first line, *Hexameter*; and the second, *Alcmanian Dactylic*, consisting of the four last feet of an hexameter. Hor. I. 7, 28. Epod. 12.—Buch. Pf. 4. 111.

4. Every first line, *Aristophanic*, consisting of a choriambus, and bacchius or amphimacer: Every second line, *Choriambic Alcaic*, consisting of epitritus secundus, two choriambuses, and a bacchius. Hor. I. 8.

5. The first line, (*Trochaic*), consisting of three trochees and a cæsuræ; or of an amphimacer and two iambuses. The second line, *Archilochian Iambic*, N^o 9. Hor. II. 18.

6. The first line, *Hexameter*; the second (*Dactylic Archilochian*), two dactyls and a cæsuræ. Hor. IV. 7.—Buch. Pf. 12.

7. The first line, *Iambic Trimeter*; and the second, *Iambic Dimeter*, N^o 11.—Hor. Epod. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10.—Buch. Pf. 3, 6, 10, 21, 22, 27, 34, 38, 39, 41, 44, 48, 53, 62, 74, 76, 79, 87, 92, 110, 112, 115, 120, 127, 133, 134, 139, 141.

8. The first line, *Iambic Dimeter*; the second (*Sapphic*) consists of two dactyls, a cæsuræ, and four iambuses, admitting also a spondee, &c. But this verse is commonly divided into two parts; the first, the latter part of a pentameter, N^o 2. and the second, iambic dimeter, N^o 11. Hor. Epod. 11.

9. The first line, *Hexameter*; the second, *Iambic Dimeter*. Hor. Epod. 14, 15.—Buch. Pf. 81.

10. *Hexameter*, and *Iambic Trimeter*. Hor. Epod. 16. Buch. Pf. 2, 20, 24, 57, 60, 69, 83, 93, 95, 97, 108, 109, 118, 126, 136, 147.

11. The first line, *Sapphic*, N^o 5. and the second, *Iambic Dimeter*, N^o 11. Buch. Pf. 8.

12. *Sapphic* and *Glyconian*. Buch. Pf. 33, 70, 121, 142.

13. *Iambic Trimeter* and *Pentameter*. Buch. Pf. 36, 63.

14. The first line, *Hexameter*; and the second line, the three last feet of an hexameter, with a long syllable or two short syllables before. Buch. Pf. 68.

15. *Hexameter* and *Pentameter*, or *Elegiac* verse. Buch. Pf. 88, 114, 137.

16. The first line, (*Trochaic*), three trochees and a syllable, admitting sometimes a spondee, tribrachys, &c. The second line, *Iambic Dimeter*, N^o 11. Buch. Pf. 100.

III. ODES and PSALMS of two kinds of verse, and three or four lines in each stanza.

1. The three first lines, *Sapphic*, and the fourth, *Adonian*, N^o 5. Horat. Carm. I. 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, 38. II. 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16. III. 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27. IV. 2, 6, 11. *Carmen Secul.*—Buch. Pf. 5, 17, 51, 55, 65, 67, 72, 90, 101, 103.

2. The three first lines, *Asclepiadæan*, and the fourth, *Glyconian*. Hor. Carm. I. 6, 15, 24, 33. II. 22. III. 10, 16. IV. 5, 12.—Buch. Pf. 23, 42, 75, 99, 102, 144.

3. The two first lines, *Ionic Trimeter*, consisting of three *Ionici minores*; the third line, *Ionic Tetrameter*, having one *Ionicus minor* more. Hor. III. 12.

4. The two first lines have four trochees, admitting, in the second foot, a spondee, dactyl, &c. The third line, the same; only wanting a syllable at the end. Buch. Pf. 66.

5. The three first lines, *Glyconian*, No 4. admitting also a spondee, or iambus in the first foot; the fourth line, *Pherecratian*, N^o 6. Buch. Pf. 116, 122, 128.

IV. ODES and PSALMS of three kinds of verse, and three or four lines in each stanza.

1. The two first lines, *Asclepiadæan*, N^o 3. the third line, *Pherecratian*, N^o 6. and the fourth, *Glyconian*, N^o 4. Hor. Carm. I. 5, 14, 21, 23, III. 7, 13. IV. 13.—Buch. Pf. 9, 64, 84, 130.

2. The first two lines, *the Greater Dactylic Alcaic*, N^o 8. The third, *Archilochian Iambic*, N^o 9. The fourth, *the Lesser Alcaic*, N^o 10. Hor. Carm. I. 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37. II. 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20. III. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29. IV. 4, 9, 14, 15.—Buch. Pf. 7, 11, 15, 19, 30, 46, 50, 56, 58, 77, 82, 91, 123, 125, 140, 146.

3. The first line, *Glyconian*; the second, *Asclepiadæan*; the third a spondee, three choriambuses, and an iambus or pyrrhichius. Buch. Pf. 16.

4. The first line, *Hexameter*; the second, *Iambic Dimeter*; and the third, two dactyls and a syllable; Hor. Epod. 13.—Buch. Pf. 138. Sometimes the two last verses are joined in one or inverted; as, Buch. Pf. 145.

ENGLISH VERSE.

The quantity of syllables in English verse is not precisely ascertained. With regard to this we are chiefly directed by the ear. Our monosyllables are generally either long or short, as occasion requires. And in words of two or more syllables, the accented syllable is always long.

Of English verse there are two kinds, one named *Rhyme*, and the other *Blank verse*.

In rhyme the lines are usually connected two and two, sometimes three and three in the final syllables. Two lines following one another thus connected, are called a *Couplet*, three lines, a *Triplet*.

In blank verse similarity of sound in the final syllables is carefully avoided.

In measuring most kinds of English verse we find long and short syllables succeeding one another alternately ; and therefore the accents should rest on every second syllable.

The feet by which English verse is commonly measured, are either *Iambic*, *i. e.* consisting of a short and a long syllable ; as, *alōst, crēāte* : or *Trochaic*, *i. e.* consisting of a long and a short syllable ; as, *hōly, lōstŷ*. In verses of the former kind the accents are to be placed on the even syllables ; in the latter, on the odd syllables. But the measure of a verse in English is most frequently determined by its number of syllables only, without dividing them into particular feet.

I. IAMBIC MEASURE comprises verses,

1. Of *four syllables*, or of *two feet* ; as,
 With ravish'd ears,
 The monarch hears. *Dryden.*
2. Of *six syllables*, or of *three feet* ; as,
 Aloft in awful state,
 The godlike hero sat. *Dryden.*
3. Of *eight syllables*, or of *four feet* ; as,
 While dangers hourly round us rise,
 No caution guards us from surprise. *Francis' Horace.*
4. Of *ten syllables*, or of *five feet*, which is the common measure of heroic and tragic poetry ; as,

Poetic

Poetic fields encompass me around,
 And still I seem to tread on Classic ground ;
 For here the Muse so oft her harp has strung,
 That not a mountain rears its head unsung.

Addison.

Obs. 1. In measures of this last sort, we sometimes find the last line of a couplet or triplet stretched out to twelve syllables, or six feet, which is termed an *Alexandrine* verse: thus,

A needless Alexandrine ends the song,
 Which, like a wounded snake, drags its slow length along, *Pope.*

Waller was smooth ; but Dryden taught to join }
 The varying verse, the full resounding line, }
 The long majestic march, and energy divine. } *Pope.*

We also find the last verse of a triplet stretched out to fourteen syllables, or seven feet, but then it has commonly an Alexandrine verse before it ; thus,

For thee the land in fragrant flow'rs is drest ; }
 For thee the ocean smiles, and smooths her wavy breast, }
 And heav'n itself with more serene and purer light is blest. } *Dryden.*

Sometimes also when there is no Alexandrine before it ; thus,
 At length by fate to power divine restor'd, }
 His thunder taught the world to know its lord, }
 The god grew terrible again, and was again ador'd. } *Rowe.*

Obs. 2. The more strictly iambic these verses are, the more harmonious. In several of them, however, particularly in those of ten syllables, we often meet with a trochee, and likewise a spondee, instead of an iambus. Verses of heroic measure sometimes also admit a dactyle, or an anapestus, in place of the iambus ; in which case a verse of five feet may comprehend eleven, twelve, thirteen, and even fourteen syllables ; thus,

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14
 And many an humorous, many an amorous lay.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12
 Was sung by many a Bard on many a day.

This manner of writing every syllable fully is now generally used by the best poets, and seems much more proper than the ancient custom of cutting off vowels by an apostrophe. Our language abounds too much in consonants of itself: the elision of vowels therefore should be avoided as much as possible, and ought only to be admitted where it is absolutely necessary ; as, *o'er* for *over* ; *e'er* for *ever*, &c. The same observation may be applied to every kind of measure.

II. TROCHAIC MEASURE comprises verses,

1. Of three syllables ; as,

Dreadful gleams,
 Dismal screams, &c.

Pope.

2. Of

2. Of *five syllables* ; as,

In the days of old,
Stories plainly told,
Lovers felt annoy.

3. Of *seven syllables* ; as,

Fairest Piece of well form'd earth,
Urge not thus your haughty birth. *Waller.*

These are the measures which are most commonly used in English poetry, especially those of seven, eight, and ten syllables.

We have another measure very quick and lively, and therefore much used in songs, which may be called *Anapestic* measure, *i. e.* a verse consisting of feet of three syllables, two short, and one long, in which the accent rests upon every third syllable. Verses of anapestic measure consist of two, three, or four feet ; that is, of six, nine, or twelve syllables ; thus,

Let the loud trumpets sound,
'Till the roofs all around,
The shrill echoes rebound. *Pope.*

From the plains, from the woodlands, and groves,
How the nightingales warble their loves! *Shenstone.*
May I govern my passions with absolute sway,
And grow wiser and better, as life wears away. *Id.*

In this measure, a syllable is often retrenched from the first foot ; as,

The sword or the dart
Shall pierce my sad heart. *Addison.*
Ye shepherds so cheerful and gay,
Whose flocks never carelessly roam, &c.
I vow'd to the muses my time and my care,
Since neither could win me the smiles of the fair. *Shenstone.*

These measures are variously combined together in *Stanzas*, particularly in short poems ; for generally in longer works the same measure is always observed.

Stanzas are composed of more or fewer verses, and these variously diversified, according to the nature of the subject, and the taste of the poet. But when they are stretched out to a great length, and consist of verses of many different measures, they are seldom agreeable.

Such poems as consist of Stanzas, which are not confined to a certain number of verses, nor the verses to a certain number

number of syllables, nor the rhymes to a certain distance, are called *Irregular*, or *Pindaric odes*. Of this kind are several of the poems of Cowley. But in the odes of later authors, the numbers are exact, and the strophes regular.

Stanzas of four lines are the most frequent, in which the first verse answers to the third, and the second to the fourth. There is a stanza of this kind, consisting of verses of eight and of six syllables alternately, which is very often used, particularly in sacred poetry. Here for the most part the second and fourth lines only rhyme together; as,

When all thy mercies, O my God,
My rising soul surveys:
Transported with the view, I'm lost,
In wonder, love, and praise. *Addison.*

Sometimes also the first and third lines answer to one another; as,

Keep silence, all created things,
And wait your Maker's nod:
The muse stands trembling while she sings
The honours of her God. *Watts.*

This stanza is used in place of what anciently was comprehended in two verses, each consisting of fourteen syllables, having a pause after the eighth syllable.

Several of these measures are often varied by double endings, that is, by putting an additional short syllable at the end of the verse; as,

1. *In heroic measure, or verses of ten syllables, both in blank verse and rhyme.*

In Blank verse.

'Tis heav'n itself that points out an hereafter. *Addison.*

In Rhyme, where it is called Double Rhyme.

The piece, you think, is incorrect? Why, take it,
I'm all submission; what you'd have it, make it. *Pope.*

2. *In verses of eight syllables.*

They neither added nor confounded,
They neither wanted nor abounded.

3. *In verses of six syllables.*

"Twas when the seas were roaring,
With hollow blasts of wind,
A damsel lay deploring,
All on a rock reclin'd. *Gay.*

4. *In*

4. *In verses of seven syllables.*

As Palemon, unsuspecting,
Prais'd the sly musician's art ;
Love, his light disguise rejecting,
Lodg'd an arrow in his heart. *Shenstone.*

5. *In verses of three syllables.*

Glooms inviting,
Birds delighting. *Addison.*

6. *In the Anapestic measure.*

Ah ! friend, 'tis but idle to make such a pother. |
Fate, fate has ordain'd us to plague one another. *Shenstone.*
Now with furies surrounded,
Despairing, confounded. *Pope.*

Double rhyme is used chiefly in poems of wit and humour, or in burlesque compositions.

Verses with double endings, in blank verse, most frequently occur in tragic poetry, where they often have a fine effect ; thus,

I here devote thee for my prince and country ;
Let them be safe, and let me nobly perish. *Thomson.*
The dropping dews fell cold upon my head,
Darkness inclos'd, and the winds whistled round me. *Otway.*

APPENDIX

A P P E N D I X I.

Of *Punctuation, Capitals, Abbreviations, Numerical Characters, and the Division of the Roman Month.*

The different divisions of discourse are marked by certain characters called *Points*.

The points employed for this purpose are the *Comma* (,), *Semicolon* (;), *Colon* (:), *Period*, *Punctum*, or full stop (·).

Their names are taken from the different parts of the sentence which they are employed to distinguish.

The *Period* is a whole sentence complete by itself. The *Colon*, or member, is a chief constructive part, or greater division of a sentence. The *Semicolon*, or half member, is a less constructive part, or subdivision, of a sentence or member. The *Comma*, or segment, is the least constructive part of a sentence in this way of considering it. For the next subdivision of a sentence would be the resolution of it into *Phrases* and *Words*.

To these points may be added the *Semiperiod* or less point, followed by a small letter. But this is of much the same use with the *Colon*, and occurs only in Latin books.

A simple sentence admits only of a full point at the end; because its general meaning cannot be distinguished into parts. It is only in compound sentences that all the different points are to be found.

Points likewise express the different pauses which should be observed in a just pronunciation of discourse. The precise duration of each pause, or note, cannot be defined. It varies according to the different subjects of discourse, and the different turns of human passion and thought. The period requires a pause in duration double of the colon, the colon double of the semicolon; and the semicolon, double of the comma.

There are other points which, together with a certain pause, also denote a different modulation of the voice, in correspondence with the sense. These are the *Interrogation* point (?) the *Exclamation* or *Admiration* point (!) and the *Parenthesis* (). The first two generally mark an elevation of the voice, and a pause equal to that of a semicolon,

colon, a colon, or a period, as the sense requires. The *Parenthesis* usually requires a moderate depression of the voice, with a pause somewhat greater than a comma. But these rules are liable to many exceptions. The modulation of the voice in reading, and the various pauses, must always be regulated by the sense.

Besides the points, there are several other *marks* made use of in books, to denote references and different distinctions, or to point out something remarkable or defective, &c. These are, the *Apostrophe* ('); *Asterisk* (*); *Hyphen* (-); *Obelisk* (†); *Double Obelisk* (‡); *Parallel Lines* (||); *Paragraph* (¶); *Section* (§); *Quotation* (" "); *Crotchets* [] ; *Brace* (}); *Ellipsis* (. . . or —); *Caret* (^); which last is only used in writing.

References are often marked by letters and figures.

Capitals, or large letters, are used at the beginning of sentences, of verses, and of proper names. Some use them at the beginning of every substantive noun. Adjectives, verbs, and other parts of speech, unless they be emphatical, commonly begin with a small letter.

Capitals, with a point after them, are often put for whole words; thus, A. marks *Aulus*, C. *Caius*, D. *Decimus*, L. *Lucius*, M. *Marcus*, P. *Publius*, Q. *Quinctius*, T. *Titus*. So F. stands for *Filius*, and N. for *Nepos*; as, M. F. *Marci Filius*, M. N. *Marci Nepos*. In like manner, P. C. marks *Patres Conscripti*; S. C. *Senatus Consultum*; P. R. *Populus Romanus*; S. P. Q. R. *Senatus Populusque Romanus*; U. C. *Urbs Condita*; S. P. D. *Salutem plurimam dicit*; D. D. D. *Dat, dicat, dedicat*; D. D. C. Q. *Dat, dicat, consecratque*; H. S. written corruptly for L. L. S. *Sestertius*, equal in value to two pounds of brass and a half; the two pounds being marked by L. L. *Libra, Libra*, and the half by S. *Semis*. So in modern books A. D. marks *Anno Domini*, A. M. *Artium Magister*, Master of Arts; M. D. *Medicinæ Doctor*; LL. D. *Legum Doctor*; N. B. *Nota Bene*, &c.

Sometimes a small letter or two is added to the capital; as, Etc. *Et cætera*; Ap. *Appius*; Cn. *Cneius*; Op. *Opiter*; Sp. *Spurius*; Ti. *Tiberius*; Sex. *Sextus*; Cos. *Consul*; Coss. *Consules*; Imp. *Imperator*; Impp. *Imperatores*.

In like manner, in English, Esq; *Esquire*; Dr *Debtor* or *Doctor*; Acct. *Account*; MS. *Manuscript*; MSS. *Manuscripts*; Do. *Ditto*; Rt Hon. *Right Honorable*, &c.

Small letters are likewise often put as abbreviations of a word; as, i. e. *id est*; h. e. *hoc est*; e. g. *exempli gratia*; v. g. *verbi gratia*.

Capitals were used by the ancient Romans, to mark numbers. The letters employed for this purpose were C. I. L. V. X. which are therefore called *Numerical Letters*. I. denotes *one*, V. *five*, X. *ten*, L. *fifty*, and C. *a hundred*. By the various combination of these five letters, all the different numbers are expressed.

The repetition of a numerical letter repeats its value. Thus, II. signifies *two*; III. *three*; XX. *twenty*; XXX. *thirty*; CC. *two hundred*, &c. But V. and L. are never repeated.

When a letter of a less value is placed before a letter of a greater, the less takes away what it stands for from the greater; but being placed after, adds what it stands for to the greater; thus,

IV.	Four.	V.	Five.	VI.	Six.
IX.	Nine.	X.	Ten.	XI.	Eleven.
XL.	Forty.	L.	Fifty.	LX.	Sixty.
XC.	Ninety.	C.	A hundred.	CX.	A hundred and ten.

A *thousand* is marked thus, *cio*, which in later times was contracted into *m*. *Five hundred* is marked thus, *io*. or, by contraction, *d*.

The annexing of *o* to *io*. makes its value ten times greater; thus, *ioo*. marks *five thousand*; and *iooo*. *fifty thousand*.

The prefixing of *c*, together with the annexing of *o* to the number of *cio*. makes its value ten times greater; thus, *ccioo*. denotes *ten thousand*; and *ccciooo*. *a hundred thousand*. The ancient Romans, according to Pliny, proceeded no farther in this method of notation. If they had occasion to express a larger number, they did it by repetition; thus, *ccciooo*, *ccciooo*. signified *two hundred thousand* &c.

We sometimes find *thousands* expressed by a straight line drawn

drawn over the top of the numerical letters. Thus, $\overline{\text{III}}$ denotes *three thousand*; $\overline{\text{X}}$ *ten thousand*.

But the modern manner of marking numbers is much more simple, by these ten characters or *figures*, which, from the ten fingers of the hands, were called *Digits*; 1 *one*, 2 *two*, 3 *three*, 4 *four*, 5 *five*, 6 *six*, 7 *seven*, 8 *eight*, 9 *nine*, 0 *nought*, *nothing*. The first nine are called *Significant Figures*. The last is called a *Cypher*.

Significant figures placed after one another increase their value ten times at every remove from the right hand to the left; thus,

8 Eight. 85 Eighty-five. 856 Eight hundred and fifty-six. 8566 Eight thousand five hundred and sixty-six.

When cyphers are placed at the right hand of a significant figure, each cypher increases the value of the figure ten times; thus,

1 One. 10 Ten. 100 A hundred. 1000 A thousand.
2 Two. 20 Twenty. 200 Two hundred. 2000 Two thousand.

Cyphers are often intermixed with significant figures, thus, 20202, *Twenty thousand two hundred and two*.

The superiority of the present method of marking numbers over that of the Romans, will appear by expressing the present year both in letters and figures, and comparing them together; CIO,IOCCXCVIII. or M,DCCXCVIII. 1798.

As the Roman manner of marking the days of their months was quite different from ours, it may perhaps be of use here to give a short account of it.

Division of the Roman Months.

The Romans divided their months into three parts, by *Kalends*, *Nones*, and *Ides*. The first day of every month was called the *Kalends*; the fifth day was called the *Nones*; and thirteenth day was called the *Ides*; except in the months of March, May, July, and October, in which the nones fell upon the seventh day, and the ides on the fifteenth.

In reckoning the days of their months, they counted backwards. Thus, the first day of January was marked
Kalendis

Kalendis Januariis or *Januarii*, or by contraction, *Kal. Jan.* The last day of December, *Pridie Kalendas Januarias* or *Januarii*, scil. *ante*. The day before that, or the 30th day of December, *Tertio Kal. Jan.* scil. *die ante*; or, *Ante diem tertium Kal. Jan.* The twenty-ninth day of December, *Quarto Kal. Jan.* And so on, till they came back to the thirteenth day of December, or to the ides, which were marked *Idibus Decembribus*, or *Decembris*: The day before the ides, *Pridie Idus Dec.* scil. *ante*: The day before that, *Tertio Id. Dec.* and so back to the nones, or the fifth day of the month, which was marked, *Nonis Decembribus* or *Decembris*: The day before the nones, *Pridie Non. Dec.* &c. and thus through all the months of the year.

In *Leap-year*, that is, when February has twenty-nine days, which happens every fourth year, both the 24th and the 25th days of that month were marked, *Sexto Kalendas Martii* or *Martias*; and hence this year is called *Bissextilis*.

JUNIUS, APRILIS, SEPTEMQUE, NOVENQUE tricenos;
Unum plus reliqui; FEBRUUS tenet octo viginti;
At si bissextus fuerit, superadditur unus.
Tu primam mensis lucem dic esse kalendas.
Sex MAIUS, nonas OCTOBER, JULIUS, et MARS,
Quatuor at reliqui; dabit idus quilibet octo.
Omnes post idus lucem dic esse kalendas,
Nomen sortiri debent a mense sequenti.

Thus, the 14th day of *April*, *June*, *September*, and *October*, was marked XVIII. Kal. of the following month; the 15th, XVII. Kal. &c. The 14th day of *January*, *August*, and *December*, XIX. Kal. &c. So the 16th day of *March*, *May*, *July*, and *October*, was marked XVII. Kal. &c. And the 14th day of February, XVI. Kal. Martii or Martias. The names of all the months are used as Substantives or Adjectives, except *Aprilis*, which is used only as a Substantive.

APPENDIX II.

Containing RULES from RUDDIMAN'S Grammar, which will be found explained in the Pages of this Book that are marked before each Rule.

I. Concerning the GENDER of NOUNS.

Names of Trees. See page 12.

1. Arbor femineis dabitur : sed mas *oleaster*,
Et *rhamnus* : petit hic potiùs *cytisus*que *rubus*que :
Hic quandoque *larix*, *lotus* volet, atque *cupressus* :
Hoc quod in *um*, *suber*que, *filer* dant, *robur* *acer*que.

Nouns in A of the first declension. p. 13. and 18.

2. Hæc dat A quod primæ est : sed neutrum *Pascha* requirit.
Hadria mas æquor, pariterque *cometa*, *planeta* :
Mascula & interdum *talpam* *damam*que videbis.

Nouns in US and OS. p. 27. 39. and 48.

4. Hæc *domus* & *vannus*, pro fructu *ficus* & *alvus* ;
Sic *humus* atque *manus*, poscunt : *acus* addito quartæ,
Porticus atque *tribus*. Capit hoc *virus* *pelagus*que.

Nomen in OS Græcum, quod in US mutare Latini
Sæpè solent, normam sequitur plerumque virilem :

Femineum sed multa petunt : ut *abyssus*, *eremus*,
*Antidotus*que, *pharus*, *dialectus*, *carbassus* : adde
Ex *odos* & *phthongos* genitum, quæque à generali
Voce genus plantæ & gemmæ capiunt muliebri.

Hic aut hæc donat *balanus*, *specus*, atque *phaselus*,
Barbitus, atque *penus*, *grossus* : sed *grus*, *atomus*que
Femineum potiùs cupiunt ; *colus* adde, virile

Quod rarò invenies : muliebri at contrà *camelus*

Est ubi nonnunquam videas. Vult hic dare *vulgus*,
Sed magis hoc. Ternæ *specus* & *penus* addito neutris.

Nouns of the Third Declension in O. p. 30. and 31.

7. Hic dat O : *femineis halo cum caro dantur & echo ;*
Quæque in IO, seu sint verbo, seu nomine nata,
Rem (numeris demptis) aliquam sine corpore signant.
Adjice femineis DO, GO : sed mascula cudo,
Harpago, sic ordo, simul udo, tendo, ligoque.
Rarius hæc margo, vati est, hic sæpe cupido,
Arrhabo cum cardo, muliebria vix imitanda.

C and L. p. 32. rule 3.

9. Quod fit in L, vel T, C, vel M, neutralibus adde :
Mascula sol, mugil, seu sal, quod rarius hoc vult.

N. p. 32. rule 4.

10. Masculum capit N. Finita in MEN dato neutris,
Quæque secunda creat, cum gluten & inguen & unguen :
Addideris pollen. Sindon petit hæc, & aedon ;
Alcyonem junges, data postea queis comes icon.

AR and UR. p. 33. rule 5.

11. Postulat AR neutrum : sed masculum salar optat.
Hoc dat UR. Hic surfur capiet, cum vulture turtur.

ER and OR. p. 33. rule 6.

13. ER capit hic. Neutrum plantæ fructusve requirunt :
At tuber hic fructus ; tuber quemcunque tumorem
Significans neutrale petit ; cumque ubere spinther,
Verque, cadaver, iter. Dabit hic aut hæc tibi linter.
Hic dat OR. Hæc arbor : cor, adorque hoc, marmor
& æquor.

AS. p. 34. rule 7.

15. AS petit hæc. Neutrum est *vas, vasis*, queisque Pelasgi
Dant atis in patrio : quibus antis masculo funto.

ES. p. 35. rule 8.

16. Hæc dabit ES. Capient *ales* hic hæcve, *palumbes,*
Atque dies : sed mas proles : mas poples & ames,

Fomes,

*Fomes, pes, paries, palmes, cum limite stipes,
 Queis addes trames, termes, cum gurgite cespes ;
 Et quæ fonte fluunt Graio ; sed neutra capeffunt
 Hippomanes, panaces, nepenthes, sic cacoethes.*

IS. p. 36. rule 9.

17. IS dabo femineis. Sunt mascula *piscis & axis,
 Glis, callis, vermis, vectis, mensis, cucumisque,
 Mugilis & postis cum sanguine fascis & orbis,
 Fustis item collis, caulisque & follis & ensis,
 Serpentemque notans cenchris, cum vomere, torris,
 In NIS finitum Latium, lapis, unguis, aqualis.
 Hic aut hæc finis, clunis, cum torque canalis,
 Dant scrobis, ac anguis : corbis muliebri præoptat ;
 Masculæo potiùs gaudent pulvis, cinis, amnis.*

OS. p. 38. rule 10.

19. Os maribus detur. Sunt neutra *chaos, melos, os, os,
 Postulat hæc arbor, cos, dos, & origine Græcâ
 Orta eos, arctos, perimetros cum diametro.*

US. p. 38. rule 11.

20. Postulat US neutrum, quoties id tertia flectit.
*Femineum voluere palus, subscusque salusque,
 Quæque senex, juvenis, cum servio, nomina formant,
 Et Virtus, incus. At mascula sunt lepus & mus,
 Et pus compositum : petit at muliebri lagopus.*

ÆS and AUS. p. 39. rule 13.

21. Æs neutrale petit : *laus, fraus, muliebria sunt.*

S with a consonant before it, p. 40. rule 14.

22. S dato femineis, si consona ponitur ante.
*Mascula sed pons, fons, mons, seps, dum denatat an-
 guem ;
 Et queis P præit S polysyllaba, forcipe dempto,
 Denfque, chalybs, cum gryphe, rudens, quod rariùs
 hæc vult.*

Hic

Hic aut hæc *serpens* dat, *scrobs*, *stirps* truncus, *adepj-*
que.

Dans *animans* genus omne, tamen muliebri præoptat.

X. p. 41. rule 16.

23. Hæc petit X. *Ax*, ex maribus polysyllaba jungere :

Dic tamen hæc *fornax*, *smilax*, *carex*, velut *halex*,

Et cum prole *panax*, & *forfex* atque *supellex*.

Mascula funto *calix*, *phœnix*, pro *vermeque bombyx*,

Et *coccyx*, *fornix*, & *onyx* vas, aut lapis unde

Vas fit ; *oryx*, *tradux*, *grex* his adjunge *calyxque*.

Femineo interdum data *tradux* cum *grege* cernes.

Hæc modò femineis, maribus modò juncta videbis ;

Calx pro parte pedis metâve laboris & *hystrix*,

Imbrex ; *sardonychem* jungas, *rumicem*, *silicemque* :

Hic magè vult *cortex* & *obex*, cum *pumice*, *varix* :

Hæc potiùs *limax*, *lynx*, & cum *sandice* *perdix* :

Atriplici neutrum meliùs dabo quàm muliebri.

II. RULES Concerning the OBLIQUE CASES.

The Accusative Singular of the Third Declension, p. 43.

Finit in EM quartus. Petit *im* sibi *ravis*, *amuffis*,

Vis cucumisque simul, *tuffis*, *sitis* atque *sinapis*,

Cannabis & *gummis*, *buris*, conjunge *mephitim*.

Adde urbes, aliosque locos, amnesque, deosque,

IS quibus est recto : sed & hæc dant *in* quoque quarto.

Sæpiùs *im*, *turris*, *puppis*, cum *reste securis* :

Em, sed & *im* quandoque, volunt sibi *febris aqualis*,

Et *navis*, *pelvis*, *clavis* ; sic *lens*, *strigilisque*,

Sementisque, *cutis*. Cumulant his plura vetusti.

Impurè in patrio casu crescentia Græcâ,

Sæpe & *Tros*, *Minos*, *heros*, quantum per *a* formant :

EUS ea vult. Vix *em* dato *Pan*, cumque *æthere delphin*.

Ablative Singular. p. 44.

Sextus *e* vult : quibus at rectus per E clauditur ; dant,

(Propria ni fuerint :) AL & AR neutralia jungere.

Deme *jubar*, *sal*, *far*, *par* fixum, *nectar* & *hepar*,

Sed solet has leges migrare licentia vatum.

I quoque

I quoque dant *in* & *im* tantum facientia quarto.
Cannabis at *Bætis*, *Tigris*, voluistis utrumque.
Im quibus in quarto est, *ye* dant, aut *m* modo demunt.
Dant *e* vel *i* sexto, queis quartus in *em* vel in *im* fit.
Excipe sed *restis*, quod *e* semper, cum *cutē*, donat.
I magē *sēmentis*, *strigilis* petit atque *securis*.
Quod simul *im* vel *idem* format, capit *i* sibi rarō.
Hæc quoque dant *e* vel *i* : *finis*, cum *rure supellex*,
Occiput & *vestis* : per *UBI* cum quæritur, *urbes*,
Et *pugil* & *mugil*, jungas. Per *e* sæpius effer,
I raro, *civis*, *classis*, *sors*, *anguis*, & *imber*,
Unguis, *avis*, *postis*, *fustis*, simul *amnis* & *ignis*.
Ufus plura tulit *priscus*, quæ respuit *ætas*
Cultior. *I* tantum sexto retineto *canalis*.

Genitive Plural. p. 45.

Præbet ium patrius, si sextus in *i* fuit antè.
Tolle *vigil*, *vetus*, *uber*, *inops*, *supplexque memorque*,
Mugilis & *consors*, quibus & *pugil* & *celer* adde ;
Atque gradus medios ; (sed *ium* plus poscit.) Adhæ-
rent
His composita *genus*, *capiō*, *facioque caputque*.
Sextus *e* si tantum dederit, capit *um* genitivus.
AS sed *ium* Latiale petit : polyfyllaba deme,
Queis magis *um* placuit. Sed *ium* quærentibus adde
Nomen in *IS* vel in *ES* non crescens : jungito & *NS* :
Tolle *parens*, *vates*, *panis*, *juvenisque*, *canisque*.
Donat *ium* *Samnis*, *linter*, *caro*, *dos*, & *os ossis*,
Glis, *nix*, *noxque cohors*, *mus*, *faux*, *uter* : adde *Qui-*
ritem,
Atque *larem*, *litem*, *cotem*, *cor* ; compositumque
Uncia, quod simul *as* genuit : monofyllaba junge
Consona quæ duplex claudit. *Bos* ritè *boum* dat.

Dative Plural of the fourth Declension, p. 48.

Partus ūBUS, *specus*, *artus*, *acus*, dant & *lacus*, *arcus*,
Atque *tribus* : sed utrumque *genu*, *portusque*, *veruque*,
III. RULES

III. RULES concerning ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives wanting the POSITIVE. p. 71.

Hæc viduata gradu sunt pauca sequentia primo ;
Ultimus, ulterior ; prior, & primus ; propiorque,
Proximus ; ocyor atque ocyssimus adjiciantur :
Deterior jungi quibus & *deterrimus* ambit.

Adjectives wanting the COMPARATIVE. p. 71

Nuperus, orba gradu medio, novus ac meritis sunt ;
Par, sacer, invictus, persuasus, & inclytus adde.

Adjectives wanting the SUPERLATIVE. p. 71.

Hæc superante carent : *satur, & diuturnus, & ingens,*
Atque senex, juvenis, adolescens, pronus, opimus ;
 Et finita *BILIS* propè cuncta, vel *ILIS, & ALIS :*
 Cum multis aliis quæ nunc perscribere longum est.

Adjectives wanting the POSITIVE and SUPERLATIVE. p. 71.

Anterior solum, *sequior, satiorque* leguntur.

IV. RULES concerning VERBS.

VERBS of the FIRST CONJUGATION wanting both PRE-
 TERITE and SUPINE. p. 108.

———— *Labo, nexo, cum plico* nil dant.

VERBS of the SECOND CONJUGATION wanting the SU-
 PINE. p. 108.

Quod dat UI neutrum, timeo, fileoque, supina
Nulla dabunt. Valeo, placeo, caret & licet aufer,
Paret, item jaceo, caleo, noceo, doleoque ;
Queis coalet, latet atque meret sociabis, oletque.
Arceo quod simplex nescit, dant nata supinum :
Quod retinent taceo, lateo, fobolique recusant.

———— *Viduata supinis*

Si capiunt urget, cum fulget, turget, & alget.

VERBS of the SECOND CONJUGATION wanting both PRE-
 TERITE and SUPINE. p. 111.

Nil formant lactet, livet, scateoque renidet,
Mæret, æret, pollet, flavet, cum denseo glabret.

VERBS

VERBS of the THIRD CONJUGATION wanting the SUPINE ;
and some also the PRETERITE. p. 113.

SCO. p. 114.

Disco
Vult didici primam geminans : sic posco, poposci ;
Dispescit, comspescit UI dant : cuncta supinis
Orba. Nihil glisco, nihil Inceptiva crearunt.

UO. p. 113.

Nulla, supina dabunt metuo, pluo, congruo, sicut
Annuo, cum fociis ; quibus ingruo, respuo junges.

DO. p. 116.

Tundo facit tutudi, tunsum compositaque tufum.
Et cado vult cecidi casum ; sed nata supinum
(Incido si demas, recido, simul occido,) spernunt.
Præterito DI strido, rudo, dant, absque supinis,
Sidoque, sed soboli sedeo dat mutuo sedi.

GO. p. 118.

Nil vergo capeffit.
XI clango, ningo, dat et angio, supinaque nulla.

VERBS of the FOURTH CONJUGATION wanting the SUPINE
p. 124.

Cæcutit, gestit, glocit, & dementit, ineptit,
Nulla supina dabunt, cum profilit atque ferocit.

DEPONENT VERBS wanting the PARTICIPLE PER-
FECT, p. 128.

Nil formant vescor, liquor, medeor, reminiscor,
Irascor, ringor, prævertor, diffiteorque :
Queis demum adjungas divortor, dequefeticor.

Verbs wanting the first person singular. p. 134.

Dor, furo, for, der, fer, vix unquam fuscipit usus.

V. RULES

V. RULES concerning the QUANTITY of SYLLABLES, &c.

I. Concerning FIRST and MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

A vowel before another. p. 253.

Vocalem breviant aliâ fubeunte Latini.
 Ni capit *r*, *fio* produc : & nomina quintæ
E fervant longum, si præsit *i*, ceu *speciei*.
 Anceps *ius* erit patrio : sed protrahe *alius*,
Alterius brevia tantum ; commune sit *obe*,
Pompei, *Cai*, produc, conformia jungens.
Dianam varia : longa *dær*, *dus*, & *eheu*,
 Et patrius primæ cum sese solvit in *ai*.
 Hic Græci variant, nec certâ lege tenentur.

A vowel before a mute and a liquid. p. 254.

Si mutæ liquida est subjuncta in syllaba eâdem,
 Quæ brevis antevenit vocalis, redditur anceps.
 Hanc tamen in prosa semper breviare memento.
 Sunt *l*, *r*, liquidæ, queis rarò jungimus *m*, *n*.

Contracted Syllables and Diphthongs. p. 254.

Vocalem efficiet semper contractio longam.
 Diphthongum produc in Græcis atque Latinis ;
 In Græcis semper : at PRÆ composita sequente
 Vocali brevia ; veluti præit atque præustus.

Preterites and Supines. p. 255.

Præterita assumunt primam dissyllaba longam.
 Tolle *bibit*, *scidit*, & *fidit*, ac *tulit*, orta que *do*, *sto*.
 Præteritum geminans primam, breviabit utramque,
 Ut *pario*, *peperi* ; vetet id nisi consona bina.
 At quod *cædo* creat tardat, ceu *pedo*, secundam.
 Cuncta Supina tenent primam dissyllaba longam :
 Præter nata *sero*, *cico*, *lino*, cum *sino*, *sisto*,
 Quæ breviant ; *eo*, *doque*, *ruo*, *queo* junge, *reor*que.
 Cætera præsentis mensuram verba reservant.
 Excipe sed *posui* *positum*, *genui* *genitum*que,
 Et *potui* ; quæ dant quoque *solvo* & *velvo* supina.

Præ tum vocalem polyfyllaba cuncta supina.
 Producent, *atum*, quibus, *etum* finis, & *utum* :
Ivi præterito veniens sociabis & *itum*.
 Cætera corripies in *itum* quæcunque residunt.

II. FINAL SYLLABLES.

A in the end of a word. p. 261.

Casibus A flexum brevia. Sed protrahe sextum,
 Et quintum, Græco quando hic de nomine in As fit.
 Casibus haud flexum produc. *Ita*, cum *quia*, & *eja*,
 Et *putà* non verbum subduxeris, *hallequeluja*.
 Curta quoque interdum, *contra*, *ultra*, & *ginta* creata.

E in the end of a word. p. 261.

E brevia. Primæ produc, et nomina quintæ
 Cum natis. Addes pluralia cuncta : secundæ
 Induperativum socians. Monosyllaba, demptis
 Encliticis ac syllabicis, quoque longa repones.
 Adde à mobilibus flexûs quæcunque secundi
 Manârunt, summique gradûs adverbia quævis.
 Sed *benè* cum *malè* corripies, *infernè*, *supernè*,
 Productis *ferme* atque *ferè* jungantur, & *ohe*.

I in the end of a word. p. 261.

I longum pono. Vocitantem corripe Græcis.
 His tamen at ternus dabitur crescentibus anceps.
 Sic variato *mihi*, *tibi* cum *sibi* : sed magè curtis
 Vult *ibi*, vultque *cui*, *nisi*, mox *ubi*, cum *quasi*, jungi.
Sicuti sed breviant, cum *necubi*, *sicubi*, vates.

O in the end of a word. p. 262.

O commune loces. Dabis at monosyllaba longis,
 Græcaque ceu *Dido*, ternum sextumque secundæ,
 Et patrium Græcum, atque adverbia nomine nata,
Quò jungens & *èd*. Variant at *denuò*, *serò*,
Mutuo, *postremo*, *verò* ; *modò* sed breve pones,
Sæpiùs ambo, *duo*, *scio* corripe, & *illicò* & *imò*,
 Et *cedo da* signans, *ego* queis *homo*, cum *citò* junge.
 Sunt aliis variata Gerundia, longa Maroni.
Ergô pro causa produc : secus editur anceps.

U and Y in the end of a word. p. 262.

U semper longis, sed Y raptis jungere oportet.

B, D, L, M, R, and T, in the end of a word. p. 262.

Corripe B Latium : peregrinum at tendere malim.

D breve ponatur. Variare at Barbara possis.

L breve sit. Cum *sol, sal, nil*, tolluntur Hebræa.

M nunc vocalis perimit : rapuere vetusti.

R brevies. Produc cujus dat patrius *eris* ;

Addito *Iber, ær, æther*. Sit *Celtiber* anceps.

At *par, far, lar, Nar*, quoque *cur, fur*, adjice longis.

T breve semper erit nisi quondam syncopa tardet.

C and N in the end of a word. p. 262.

C produc, præter *nec, donec* : sed variabis

Hic benè pronomen : *fac* verbum jungimus isti.

N produc. Demas *en inis* dans, quæque priore

Græca per *on* casus numero tenuere secundæ ;

Et quartum casum, si sit brevis ultima recti.

Sin quoque pluralis ternæ conjunge Pelasgum :

Forsitan, in, forsan, tamen, an viden' insuper addens.

AS, ES, and OS, in the end of a word. p. 263.

AS produc. Patrio sed *adis* quod flectit, *anasque*,

Sit breve : plurales ternæ quibus addito quartos.

Ponitur *es* longum. Pluralia corripe Græca

Quæ crescunt ; velut *es* de *sum* ; *penes* additur illi ;

Cum neutris ; & queis patrii penultima curta est

Ternæ. Tolle *Ceres, paries, aries, abies, pes*.

OS produc. Patrius brevis est, & *compos* & *impos*,

Osque ossis prabens. Rectos breviato secundæ.

(O nisi det patrius :) neutra his dein addito Graiûm.

IS, US, and YS, in the end of a word. p. 263.

IS brevio. Verùm plurales protrahe casus ;

ISque quod in patrio mutatur in *itis* & *inis*,

Aut *entis* ; *gratisque foris, glis, vis* quoque, nomen

Seu verbum fuerit : sicut & persona secunda

Protrahit IS, quoties *itis* plurale reponit.

In subjunctivi *ris* est commune futuro.

US correpta datur. Monosyllaba cum genitivis
 Ternæ vel quartæ produc : numerique secundi
 In quarta primum, quartum, quintumque ; & in *uris*,
 Dumve in *utis* patrius, vel in *udis*, & *untis*, *odisve* est ;
 Aut quintus fit in *u*, longus tum rectus habetur.
 Ergo produces venerabile nomen Iesus.

YS junges brevibus. *Tethys* reperitur at anceps.
 Longaque sunt rectis aliter quæ casibus YN dant.

The last Syllable of a verse. p. 264.

Ultima cujusque est communis syllaba versûs.

III. The QUANTITY of DERIVATIVES and COMPOUNDS.

1. *The Quantity of Derivatives.* p. 264.

Derivata tenent mensuram primigenorum :
 Orta tamen brevibus, *suspicio*, *regula*, *sedes*,
Seciûs, *humanus*, *penuria*, *mobilis*, *humor*,
Fumentum, *fomes*, primam producere gaudent.
 Corripiunt sed *arista*, *vadum*, *sopor* atque *lucerna*,
Duxque ducis, *stabilisque*, *fides*, *ditioque*, *quasillus*,
 Nata licet longis ; quæ pluraque suggeret usus.

2. *The Quantity of Compounds.* p. 264.

Simplicium servant legem composita suorum,
 Quamvis diphthongus vel vocalis varietur.
 At breviant *nihilum* cum *pejero*, *degero*, nec non
Veridicus, *fociis junctis*, & *semisopitus*.
Cognitus his addes, velut *agnitus*, *innubus*, atque
Pronubus : at longis *ambitus* mobile junges,
Imbecillus item : sed *connubium* variabis.
 Quam disjuncta dabat mensuram præpositura,
 Juncta tenet : subiens illam nisi litera mutet.
 Est PRO breve in Græcis, PRO longum ritè Latinis.
 At rape quæ *fundus*, *fugio*, *neptisque neposque*,
 Est *festum*, *fari*, *fateor*, *fanumque* creârunt.
 Hiscè *profectò* addes, pariterque *procella*, *protervus*.
 Atque *propago* genus, *propago* protrahe vitis.
Propino varia, verbum *propago*, *profundo* :
 Cum *pello*, *curo*, genitis, *Proserpina* junge.

SE produc & DI, præter *dirimo* atque *disertus*.
 Est RE breve: at viduum personis protrahe *refert*.
 Pars si componens fini prior *i* vel *o* donat,
 Sit breve: *vaticinor* monstraverit, *Arctophylax*que.
 I quibus est flexu mutabile jungito longis,
 Quæque queunt sensu salvo divellier, addens
 De quibus aut Crasis aliquid vel Syncopa tollit.
Idem masculineum produc, & *ubique* & *ibidem*;
 Huic dein agglomerans turbæ composta *diei*.
 His *intro*, *retro*, *contra*que & *quando* creata
 (*Quandoquidem* excepto) bene junxeris, atque *alioquin*,
 Quæque per *o* magnum scribuntur nomina Graiis.

FIGURES of PROSODY.

Synalæpha and *Ecclipsis*. p. 275.

Vocalem *Synalæpha*, *Ecclipsis* & *m* quoque tollit,
 Altera cùm voci est vocalis prima sequenti.

Synæresis and *Diæresis*. p. 276.

Syllaba de binis conflata *Synæresis* esto.
 Distrahit in geminas resoluta *Diæresis* unam.

Systole and *Diastrôle*. p. 277.

Systola præcipitat vocales ritè trahendas.
 Protrahit huic adversa *Diastrola* corripiendas.

Figures of Diction. p. 277.

PROSTHESIS apponit capiti, sed APHÆRESIS aufert.
 SYNCOPA de medio tollit, sed EPENTHESIS addit.
 Abstrahit APOCOPE fini, sed dat PARAGOGÉ.
 Constringit CRASIS, distracta DIÆRESIS effert.
 Litera si legitur transposita, METATHESIS exit.
 ANTITHESIN dices, tibi litera si varietur.

F I N I S.



9.

